





TO THE MOST NOBLE
AND WORTHIE OF ALL HO-
NOVRS, AND ALL TITLES, THOMAS
EARLE OF SVFFOLKE, LORD HIGH
TREASVRER OF ENGLAND.



Y most honoured Lord, as it
would argue avaine presump-
tion to importune you with
trifles, of whom the weightie
burthen of this Estate doth
chiefly depend; so to distrust
of your Noble acceptance of
the least tributes of dutie and
service which shall be presen-
ted vnto you, would shew a weakenesse and want of
judgement in me, hauing had such worthie testimonies
of honourable fauour, both in countenancing my poore
and weake labours, in bringing me againe into the
world, and giuing me new life: for after eight yeares
spent for the publike service of this Estate, in France,
seeing my Starre without light in our Horizon, and the
hopes of my service, or of further employments dead, I
retired my selfe to this fruitlesse course of life, to the end
I might deceiue the houres of my idle time, and leaue
some testimonie to the world of my liues employment;
during the which I haue past ouer France, the Nether-
lands, and Spaine, vnder your L. honourable prote-
ction;



876:94

The Epistle Dedicatorie.

tion; and now declining towards my graue, and being readie to bid the world adieu, I haue aduentured to take a generall suruey of all the world, and to bring a trauel-
lor home, to make vs a true relation of all Estates and Countries in our owne language, I doubt not but he will giue your L. some content, if your most weightie affaires will lend you any spare houres to peruse him. The title he beares on his forehead, shews the subject wheron he treats. My most humble suit is, That your L. would be pleased to patronize this last labour of an old man, whom a desire to shew his dutiful obseruance, hath enabled, beyond the faculties of his weake bodie, to finish this worke, to the end he might leaue as it were a dying testimonie of his seruice, and let future ages know, that he did both liue and dye

Your L. most deuoted,

EDWARD GRIMESTON.



THE TRANSLATOR
to the Reader.

Gentlemen, It is an vsuall custome for men in my case to write some Appologie or Preface vnto the Reader, either in commendation of the subject he treats of, or for his owne justification and defence: I should be loath to be held lesse respectfull than other men, in omitting any necessarie complement that might giue you content. Touching the subject of this Booke, I will speake little, myne Author hath giuen you full satisfaction in his Preface, the which I haue set downe at large: his Title shewes the profit you may reape by him, and euery discreet and well aduised trauellor knows, That the true vse of trauell into forraine countries, is to know that which he teacheth; wherein he hath shewed much diligence, and great reading, as I found by my owne trauell, confronting him with diuers good Authors that haue written of the same subject: but I will leaue him to your iudicious censures, and to the mercie of the Booke-seller, who, it may be, will commend him in the sale, if he be not interested in some other booke of the like nature. My chiefeest care is, to giue you an account of my labours: I may not aduow it to be a meere translation, for that I haue not tied my selfe strictly vnto the lawes, but haue added vnto it in diuers places, wheras by my owne search and studie, I haue found something: (happily not seene by him) which might beautifie the worke, and giue content vnto the Reader. I haue also in other places omitted some things, where-

The Translator to the Reader.

wherein my Author had bene abused by the relations of others, and in some sort taxed the honour of some Nations, the which in mine owne knowledge were mistaken: it had bene no discretion in me, nor any good plea to haue said, I followed mine Author, as one did lately in the translation of *Nassaus* victories, where he hath fassly deprauid an honest and warthie action at the seige of *Bergben*, the which was held by all the great Commanders that were then present, to be honest and commendable. I haue also, treating of the Religion of euery State, bin forced to varie something from his phrase, but not from the truth of the subiect. There remains nothing but your kind acceptance of those my endeauours: giue them leaue to passe with the rest of my labours; and if you find it not written in elegant termes, consider that it is no *Historicall* discourse, but a *Description* of countries, and that mine Author studied more for matter than words. Such as it is, I bequeath unto you as my last Legacie, if it shall giue you content, I shall thinke my paines well bestowed; but if you find it defectiue in any thing that concernes me, let my desire to do well make satisfaction for that which is amisse. And so I rest

Yours,
E. G.



THE AVTHOVR'S PREFACE
to the Reader.

Some men are borne so farre in loue with themselves, as they esteeme nothing else, and thinke, that whatsoeuer fortune hath set without the compasse of their power and gouernment, should also be banished from their knowledge. Some others, a little more carefull, who finding themselves engaged by their birth, or abroad, to some one place, strue to vnderstand how matters passe there, and remaine so tied to the consideration of their owne Commonweale, as they affect nothing else, carrying themselves as parties of that imperfect bodie, whereas in their curiositie, they should behaue themselves as members of this world. And there are others, which lie groueling in the dust of their studies, searching out with the sciences, the actions and manners of the Auncient, not respecting the Moderne, and they seeme so to admire the dead, as they haue no care of the liuing.

As for the first, they must needs confesse their fault to be meere brutish, seeing that men are not borne solely for themselves, that humanitie requires companie, and the knowledge of that which other men practise, and that to frame a mans life, as it ought to be, it is needfull to see the actions of many. As for the second, we see in them a childish and simple curiositie: for what know they if the Commonweale, which containes them, be a cage of fooles, and whether they haue need to borrow something from strangers, to better the Estate thereof, or else to settle themselves there? And how can they iudge if affaires in their owne Estate be well ordered, if they doe not confront them with their neighbours, or with some more remote to the end they may repaire the defects, or better the beginnings? Touching the third ranke, obserue in them a vanity, worthy of blame, for that besides they busie themselves about dead things, and which are for the most part out of vse, they perceiue not that at the same time, whilst they debate of the rolling
A of

of the Heaueus, they are ignorant after what manner the earth, whereon they liue, doth roll and moue with their Seigneuries and Estates; yet after another sort, than a subtile and phantasticall Mathematician of this age, following the opinion of some of the Auncient, propounds it.

Of these three sorts of men, leaving the first to their pasture, with Lyons and Beares; and passing ouer the second, as incapable to see any farther, I wonder at the blindness of the last, who being endowed with excellent spirits, and exceeding curious, fill them with frivoliuous things, contemning the learning of that which imports them most, and as a man may say, know nothing in knowing all things.

They that make a distinction of the cleare and certaine knowledge of things, diuide all Sciences into Speculative and Practique; and they subdiuide speculative knowledge, into naturall Physicke, the Mathematickes, and Metaphisicks, lodging physicke vnder the first; Arithmetick, Musicke, Geometrie, and Astrologie, vnder the second; and vnto the third, Diuinitie, to the which they giue also for an adjunct the Canon Law. As for practise science or knowledge, they first of all make it to embrace morall Physicke, which they diuide into three, that is to say, into Ethique, which frames the manners of euery particular man, into Oecanonicall, which disposeth of domestick actions; and politicall, which comprehends the ciuile actions that concerne the gouernement of a Commonweale; and this contains vnder it in a manner all the knowledge of the Ciuile Law. They doe also lodge vnder practise, Logicke, the art of Memorie, Grammar, and Rhetoricke, to the which may be added Poesie, and Historie.

But they which by their diuisions (the which I will not draw out at length, as tedious; and in a manner vnprofitable in this place) haue in their opinions truely described all arts and sciences, doe not consider that they haue forgotten the most necessarie, which is called the Science or Knowledge of the world, the admirable Booke of that great and religious Anthonie. It is this knowledge which more than any other thing doth aduance men to honours and dignities, which makes Families and Commonwealths to flourish, and the actions and words of those that vnderstand it, pleasing both to great and small; which causeth all things to succeed wishfully, and doth in a manner force the Destinies. This knowledge is gotten by the conuersation of many, by diuers discourses and reports, either by word or writing, by the managing of affaires, conference with straungers, voyages into diuers places, the knowledge of diuers humors, and in a word, by the iudicious consideration of the manners and life of one and other.

But to come to the poynt, I say, That a good part of this knowledge is comprehended in the discourse of this Booke, where you may see all sorts of persons and nations liuely and naturally described, and represented with their manners and customes, as curiously as might be: so as if there lacked perfection in
any

any part, this defect proceedes rather from the want of true relation, than from my diligence. I neuer undertooke this worke, but with a firme designe, not onely to make it pleasing, as Geographers doe in the description of the Earth, describing and setting downe such singularities as they find: but also profitable, labouring to obserue not lightly, but in intelligible tearmes, whatsoeuer may make the life of man either more happie, or more ciuile.

And for prooffe, if any one will vouchsafe to cast his eyes vpon this worke, although ill polished, he may in a manner at the first view, obserue what I say, and seeing the distinction which I vse, and the order which I hold throughout all the whole booke, he may easily iudge, that beside the Readers content, I haue sought their profit, giuing them herein all the satisfaction they could desire vpon this subiect. For although my first and chiefe desseigne was to deale onely with politicke and ciuile matters; yet to the end, they might find all together, and not be forced to seeke for the description of countreies, whose custome I represent, I haue made the Corographie, and would not faile in that point, painting out the prouinces, whose discourse I vnderooke, it may be with as much care, as my desseigne would giue me leaue setting downe the most remarkable places.

But for the that this representation of countreies would be vnprofitable, if they vnderstood not their qualitie, I haue added it vnto the rest, with all that the countrie yeelds, and the beasts which naturally liue there, and haue their breeding. Yet all this were little, to spend much time in the curious search of things the which are void of sence or reason, if I should not shew you the man which dwells in euery countrie, and for whom all those things seeme to haue beene made, first in his auncient posture, and with his old customes, either altogether, or for the most part abolished; then in his moderne habit, either with more ciuilitie, or with more rudenesse, according to the changes and reuolutions of the world, to the end that euery man may iudge which is the better of these two Estates, and make vse of part of the one, and part of the other, hauing carefully balanced the most considerable particularities of both.

And for that all this labour were little, to giue the Reader a solid content, if I should haue left it thus naked and bare, it importing little to know the actions of nations, if they had not meanes to iudge by the commodities which the place doth yeeld, what they should adde or take away from their manner of liuing, and to know the causes for the which they suffered themselves as it were to runne headlong into some error and defect, or else haue loved or embraced something worthe of great praise and commendation: and if withall they did not vnderstand the meanes which these people haue to liue in the Estate where in they are borne; I haue next vnto their manners, ioined their wealth and riches, which shew by their abundance, how men which enioie them haue abandoned themselves to delights, or else giuen themselves vnto Sciences,
Aij and

The Authors Preface

and by the want thereof in what manner some haue continued rude and barbarous, and others haue applied themselves to arts and trades, to the end, they might repaire the defect of nature by the perfection of their industrie and labour.

Moreover, knowing well that although a countrie be furnished with commodities which suffice or abound, yet the inhabitants are subiect to be dislodged, if they be not able to repell them which shall undertake to wrest that violently from them which they hold: for this cause, I haue presently after the discourse of their wealth, added that of their forces, to the end the Reader may obserue the meanes which Nations haue to resist either the enuie of their neighbours, or to withstand the furie of a multitude of strangers, the which haue come from some miserable countrie to seise vpon another mans right; and to end they may judge if the Estates whereof I discourse may be easily ouerthrowne and changed, and if for their defence they make vse of any which is unknowne to vs, and which might yeeld vnto vs some profit, we might applie it to our owne vse, and haue consideration of the forces of another nation, to make our owne more fearefull: but all this being without policie, is like vnto a building which is in the Aire, without any support or foundation, I haue ioined vnto the rest, the gouernement and conduct of the Estate, whose discourse I haue undertaken, to the end that knowing the humors of those that are subiect vnto it, they may judge if they be gouerned according to their naturall disposition, and by this judgement they may vnderstand that all nations are not to be ruled after one sort; and if vnder such a conduct, the nation whereof we treat, hath not succeeded well, or hath bene often afflicted or ruined, they may seeke out the defects of this gouernement, to make the countrie more calme and quiet, and others which are not engaged vnder the like command much better instructed in that which they haue to do for their assurance.

Hauiug done this, I would not omit the principall peeces of Commonweales, the which is Religion, whereof I haue discoursed, to shew that it is the feare of some diuinitie which maintaines people in their duties, makes them obedient to their princes, and diuers them much more from all bad desseignes, than armes and souldiers which emiuron and threaten them. I doe it also to shew, that whereas religion wants, of what sort soeuer it be, policie and order faile in like manner, and barbarisme, confusion, and rebellion, raigne there in a manner continually: whereas they that seise on them, should presently settle in their rude mindes the apprehension of some power ouer all, to dispose of things at pleasure.

As I was not contented herewith, so desirous I was to giue satisfacci-
on to all men: but I haue annexed and ioined hereunto the names of those which haue gouerned the countries which I describe; and if this curiositie hath not extended to euery discourse, the Authors which haue gone before me, are to bee accused of this defect; for that hauiug forgotten

to the Reader.

to treat particularly of this subiect, or being not able to doe it for want of sufficient instructions, they haue taken from me the meanes to acquit my selfe worthily of that which I haue undertaken, and in like manner they haue as it were deprived the Reader of that satisfaction which he might haue desired or expected.

Thus I haue laboured to make this worke, not perfect and complete in euery point, yet at the least in that estate, as it may yeeld both pleasure and profit to those that shall vouchsafe to lend it some houres, and which shall reioice to read it at leisure, and not in hast, as they doe commonly which desire quickly to passe the time, and not to employ it commendably in some worthe search: for who so will looke narrowly to the benefit which may be drawne from these discourses, shall easily find that there are verie few men but should be invited to the reading thereof, either to exercise their iudgements, or for to make the desigine of some fortune, or else to be profitable and commodious to their countries, or for their owne entertainment, or for the entertainment of others, or for both together.

If they duly consider of all that is treated of in this Booke, they shall first see that Princes, besides the relation of diuers sorts of places, whereon they may ground some enterprises, fortifie themselves with more aduantage, better the trade of their subiects, and employ them either to the beautifying or enriching of their Prouinces, and shall here find meanes to augment and increase their reuenues, making vse of some forraigne inuentions, and applying them to the Nations which they command, according to the disposition of times, and the humour of their subiects, bringing them alwaies in with wisdom and judgement.

Noblemen shall draw instructions from hence to please their Soueraigne Lords and Princes, and also to make their owne subiects pleasing and humble; they shall make themselves capable of some worthe Embassage, whereof they shall acquit themselves much better by this kind of course, and they shall be much better enabled to undertake or execute any enterprize, be it neere or farre off.

As for simple gentlemen, they that are aduanced in yeares shall find wherewith to entertaine themselves, and withall to instruct youth: They that are of a middle age, may obserue particularities, whereof they may make vse, whether that their courage carries them farre from their houses for any desigine or enterprize, or liue in Court, whereas the reading hereof may purchase them reputation and credit, and draw them vnto good employments, if they can make true vse of it, conferring iudiciously that which passeth in the State wherein they liue, with that which is done in many others. Finally, young men before they see any thing, shall in a manner see all things; they shall know the Court, and the humours of Courtiers, before they know themselves; and if their generous inclinations thrust them on to the profession of armes (as it doth commonly fall out) whenas peace is settled in their owne countries, they shall find here

others which are in action, they shall find their means and forces, according to the qualitie of those places whither they will go, they shall see if their natures be able to indure the extreame cold, or violent heat of those countries where the warre is; they shall consider of their manner of living, and iudge if their humors will be compatible with that of the inhabitants of those places; if strangers, especially they of his nation, may purchase any honour there, which is the chiefe end of Nobilitie; and to conclude, to the end they may win reputation, having considered all these circumstances, they will seeke to force their owne nature if it be wayward, lay aside all their passions whatsoeuer, support all kind of discommodities, and fit themselves to any thing that may happen.

Simple souldiers, which seeke to raise their birth and fortunes by the proofe of their valour, have in a manner the same things to consider of: And to this end, hearing of any lewde men to go into countries which are in question, they may instruct themselves before they dislodge of that which they shall encounter there, and by this means resolve with more assurance of the voyage; they shall not find themselves surpris'd with any thing that is strange, having learned the truth before their departure, and seeing it, shall hold it, as a thing well practis'd among them.

They that will deale in the managing of affaires and businesses of Estate, shall draw many Maximes from hence, the which they may use to good purpose (although they be borrowed from the customes of other nations) as they shall seeke their owne, and will make them appeare inuentive, iudicious, and capable to give some good and wholesome counsell for the welfare of their Commonwealth.

The Aduocat who seemes onely to haue need of the laws, or ordinances, and customes, which are in force in the place of his abode, may by the means of this Booke, mingle in his pleading, some custome or forraigne law in fauour of his client, and making the most curious Iudges to obserue it, it may be he shall moue them to haue such regard thereof, as many times it shall win him his cause, or at the least purchase him reputation.

And is not the Merchant to be held happy that shall meet with these discourses, seeing that in short time he may know the places whither he is to traffique, and instruct himselfe sufficiently of the nature and qualitie of the countries, where he may find that which he seeks, or sell that which he hath; and also haue means to learne after what manner commodities are bought and sold in those places, either by exchange, or for readie money, and by what means they must gaine the Barbarians which sell, or prevent the wiles and trickes of the most subtille and warie, who know how to disguise or impair their merchandise.

As for Artizans and Tradesmen, they haue newes here of Provinces which seeme to haue need of their arts and professions; and therefore (methinks) it is no difficult thing for them to resolve to change their abodes, whenas they shall

shall asurcly know that the change will be profitable vnto them, and that they shall benefit themselves more in other places, than where they haue first planted themselves. To conclude in few words, there is no sort of people but may reape some profit by this booke, which contains, as I haue sayd, a good part of that great and most necessarie science of the world, the which cannot sufficiently be esteemed, for that it makes men worthe of esteeme.

I haue not spoken all this for any account I make of that which I haue written, neither will I euer confesse, that any desire of glorie hath inuited me to praise mine owne worke: my humour will not suffer me to be so vaine; only a desire I had to be profitable to my cuntry, to whom I haue vow'd all the good I can, with the losse of mine owne rest. And I protest with truth, that if I haue giuen any ranke or commendation to this worke, I will giue much more to those that shall labour to make it perfect; for that in my opinion it is not yet fully finished, and that any man may adde something daily vnto it, for that from time to time they haue more certaine aduice from all parts especially from those countries which haue not been much frequented, either by reason of the distance, or for their barbarousnesse.

I would willingly end my speech, as desiring the Reader should speedilie make some triall of the truth of my words. But before I proceed any farther, seeing I discourse of the Seignuries of the world, I desire to shew as in a briefe table from what Stockes, in a manner all the Commonwealths, and Monarchies of the Earth at this day are descended, to the end that they may obserue the changes and alterations here below, and see after what manner free people were made subiect to the power of those that were more mightie. This may be chiefly done by the means of the foure soueraigne Empires, the which after some continuance being diuided into many branches, haue suffered a great number of principalities well knowne to vs, to rise out of their shipwrecks, and which in time may feele the like accidents, either by their increase, or by the cutting off of some parts.

The first of these Monarchies owes his beginning to mightie Nimrod, whom some haue called Saturne of Babylon. This was he which he founded the principallitie of the Babylonians (the which was confounded with that of the Assyrians) one hundred thirte and one yeares after the Deluge: and some hold that the nine and fortieth yeare of his Empire, he sent Assur, Magog, and Mosc, with certaine troopes to people countries, and to erect kingdomes by their owne names.

This Nimrod had for successor Bel, called Iupiter Bel, who seized vpon all the countries towards the West vnto Sarmatia in Europe: and his sonne Ninus, who held the Monarchie after him, extended his bounds farther. After the death of Ninus, his wife Semiramis reigned, and brought Ethiopia vnder her subiection, and made warre against the Indians. But her sonne Zameis remained quiet, and did nothing worthe of memorie. Arius, who succeeded him added the Bactrians and Casspians to his Empire. After whom they put these

they follow: Aralius, then Baleus, who extended his bounds into Iudea, and after him, Armatrite, then Beloch, who had for successor a second Baleus. This man was followed by Altadas, Mamite, Manalee, and Sphere: after whom there reigned Mamele, Sparete, and Alcarades, who reduced all Syria under his Empire. After him they reckon twenty kings unto Sardanapalus the eight and thirtieth Emperour, who was forced to burne himselfe with all his treasure, being reduced to that extremitie by two of his Lieutenants, who afterwards divided the Monarchie betwixt them; so as Beloch was king of Babylon, and Arbaces of the Meedes and Persians. This Monarchie had continued one thousand and three hundred yeares, unto the end of Sardanapalus.

Beloch was the nine and thirtieth, or first king of Assyria in the new Monarchie, and made Manahem king of Israel his tributarie; whom the holie Scripture calls Phiel and not Beloch. He had for successor Phul-Aflur surnamed Tiglar-Pilester, who seized upon some townes of Iudea, and led the people captive into Assyria. Salmanazar followed him, who made himselfe master of Samaria, and he had for successor Sennacherib, who was slaine by his owne children. These murderers fled, and yet they tooke armes against Assadon their brother, who had seized upon the Monarchie. Merodach, Lieutenant of the countrie of Babylon, revolted and having vanquished all, he joined the Monarchie of the Assyrians to the Babylonians. Some authors place after him Ben Merodach, and Nabuchodonosor, or Nabuchadnezzar, of whom the Scripture makes mention after Merodach. He made warre against Egyptians, and tooke from them all the countrie which lies betwixt the river of Euphrates, and Pelusium or Damietta; then having vanquished the kings of the Ammonites and Moabites, in the end he subdued all Egypt. After him reigned Euilmerodach, then Labassardach, and after these Balthazar: but some put Balthazar presently after Euilmerodach his father. This Balthazar was the last Emperour of Babylon as all authors hold.

Darius of Media, who ruined the Empire of the Assyrians, and tooke Babylon, is called Cyaxares, some to Albanyes the eight, king to the Medians, called by Daniell, Astuetus, who gave his daughter to Cyrus of Persia, his sisters sonne. This was the beginning of the Monarchie of the Persians, the second in number; for that after the death of Darius, all came into the hands of Cyrus, who alone enjoyed the countries of Assyria, Media, and Persia, and had for successor his sonne Cambyses, after whom reigned Darius, sonne to Histaspes, to whom succeeded Xerxes his sonne, who was slaine by his owne followers, after he had spoiled Greece with two millions of men, and had bene chased from thence with all his power. Artaxerxes Longue-main held the Empire after him: then Darius the last, and after him Artaxerxes Mnemon, whom Ochus the last of Darius the third, sonnes, succeeded. This Monarchie was afterwards governed by the last Darius, vanquished by Alexander, who ruined the Monarchie of the Persians, which had continued two hundred yeares and more.

Alexander was the author of the third Monarchie, the which was presently dispersed,

dispersed, for that it ended with the life of this Prince, after whose death the empire was torne in peeces and divided among the Noblemen and Captaines of his traine, which were, Ptolomeus, Laomedon, Cassander, Antigonus, Leonatus, Eumenes, Python, Lyfimacus, Antipater, Meleager, and Seleucus; among the which, the chiefe were, Seleucus King of Syria, Ptolome of Egypt, Antigonus of the Lesser Asia, or Natolia, and Cassander in the end King of Greece, and Macedonia. These ambitious spirits not able to live in rest, there grew great wars among them, and betwixt their children and successors, which gave occasion to the Romans to invade them; and in the end to become Masters of all that part.

As for the empire of the Romans, for that I have made an ample relation thereof in my discourses, I will passe it over with silence, sending the Reader to that which I have formerly said, to the end he may see how all the countries have bene since divided, and after what manner they have drawne the principalities which wee see at this day, from those foure great and principal peeces dismembered.

Now that I have freed my selfe from this little scruple which remained, I will only tell them that shall busie themselves in the reading of these discourses, that I have transplanted some peeces of certaine Authors which might serve my designe, as well to avoid the reproach of some defect, as to spare the Readers paine in seeking that in many places which they might find in one. Moreover, this, which is a Historie, except in some places which are subiect to the consideration of more important matters, requires no points of wit or subtile inventions, but a naked report of the truth which hath bene learned by the writings or verball relations of men worthie of credit. And of the two principall peeces which shall be found, the first is an Abridgement of the Historie of the Kings of Persia, compiled by a Portugal, who travelling through Persia, and having recovered the Chronicle of Taric Mirkond, a Persian borne, one of the most famous Historians, and of greatest credit and authoritie among the Persians, tooke the paynes to translate it into the Portugall tongue. This worke contains a true relation of the beginning, descent, and succession of the kings of Persia and Hormus, unto the entrie of the Arabians and Portugals into those kingdomes; with a List of the Califes of Bagadet or Babylon, which have commanded in Persia since the entrie of the said Arabians into those countries. This abridgement of the Historie contains truth in stead of lies, which antiquitie would make us believe of the Persian Monarchie: and shall serve for a great light touching the affaires of this realme, the which are verie confusedly written, with great contrarieties and disagreements, by Procopius, Agathius, Genebrard, Zonaras, Tornamira, and other auncient and moderne writers. You shall also find another discourse of the beginnings of Knighthood, and Militarie orders of Christendome, and how, by whom, and at what time they were instituted, and to what entent, and under what rules and disciplines, with the blazons and devises of the said order.

The Authors Preface

The other peece which we haue held necessarie for the finishing of this worke, is a discourse of the beginning of Religious orders instituted in Christendome: the which, for that it could not be fitly inserted in all the places where we haue discoursed of the religion of States, I haue annexed it to the end of this Booke. The reading of this little discourse is not onely pleasing and curious, but profitable, yea necessarie, for such as finding themselves vsfit for worldly affaires, desire to imbrace a contemplatiue life, and leauing the temporall, giue themselves to the spirituall.

I doe willingly offer you this worke, such as it is, and wish you may haue as great a desire to read it, as I had to trace it, and that taking some tast in the reading thereof, you may receiue as much pleasure, as I haue had paynes. Read it then I beseech you, not rashly, but with care and diligence, and if any thing dislikes you, blame not the whole bodie for one blemish or wart. Passe on still so content your selfe, and seeke the subiect that may giue you satisfaction; and whatsoeuer you find, if you will not spare me for mine owne defence, doe it at least in regard of my designe.

Farewell.



The order of all the Estates contained within this booke.

1. A Discourse of the Estate of the king of great Britaine, possessing England, Scotland, and Ireland. Fol. 1.
2. Of the French kings Estate. 37.
3. Of the Estates and dominions of the king of Spaine, both in Europe, Asia, Africke, and America. 102.
4. Of the duke of Lorrains Estate. 283.
5. Of the Estate of the Low Countries, which are now subiect to the Archduke *Albert* of Austria, and *Isabella Clara Eugenia* his wife, and the donation made vnto them by *Philip* king of Spaine before his death. 289.
6. Of the generall Estates of the vnited Prouinces of the Low Countries, and what they now hold, with the articles of truce, which they haue made with the king of Spaine, and the Archduke. 319.
7. Of the Commonweale of Geneua. 349.
8. Of the Communalities or Cantons of the Swisses. 353.
9. Of the Estate of the duke of Sauoy. 381.
10. Of the Estate of the Church, with a chronologicall Catalogue and succession of Popes vnto this day: together with the order, names, and titles of the Cardinalls which now liue. 394.
11. Of the Estate of Florence. 472.
12. Of the Estate of the duke of Vrbin. 484.
13. Of the Estate of the duke of Mantoua. 488.
14. Of the Estate of the duke of Modena. 493.
15. Of the Commonweale of Lucca. 498.
16. Of the Commonweale of Genoua. 503.
17. Of the Commonweale of Venice, with a List of the dukes and princes which haue gouerned in that Estate. 516.
18. Of the Commonweale of Ragoufe. 541.
19. Of the Estate of the Emperour, with a briefe description of the Emperours of the East and West, which haue reigned vnto this day. 548.
20. Of the Realme of Hongarie, with a short relation of the differences which happened in the said realme, since the peace made with the Turke in the yeare 1605, vnto this present. 613.
21. Of the Estate of the king of Poland. 627.
22. Of

22. Of the Estate of the king of Denmarke.	653.
23. Of the Estate of the king of Sweden or Sweeland.	670.
24. Of the Estate of the great duke or emperor of Muscouie.	685.
25. Of the Empire of the great Cham of Tartaria.	700.
26. Of the Estate of the king of China.	714.
27. Of the Estate of the king of Iapon.	745.
28. Of the Estate of the king of Brama or Pegu.	751.
29. Of the Estate of the great Mogor.	760.
30. Of the Estate of the king of Calicut.	766.
31. Of the Estate of the king of Narfinge.	772.
32. Of the Estate of the Sophy of Persia. 779. with a discourse of the kings of Persia, according to Greeke and Latin writers	978.
Another Historie of the kings of Persia, drawne out of the Chronicle of <i>Mirkond</i> a Persian.	872.
33. Of the Turkes Estates in Europe, Africke, and Asia.	936.
34. Of the Empire of <i>Presbyter John</i> .	1077.
35. Of the Estate of the king of Monomotapa.	1092.
36. Of the Realme of Congo.	1095.
37. Of the Emperor of Marocco.	1108.
38. Of the Estate of the knights of Malta.	1141.
39. Of the beginning of Militarie Orders, as well Regular, which hath beene approved by the See of Rome, vnder some rule and discipline, as Secular, instituted by Emperors, & Kings, Christian Princes, with their Blazons, and other deuises.	1174.
40. Of the beginning of all Religious Orders, wherein is briefly set downe, who were the Authors, vnder what Popes and Emperours, and at what time they were instituted.	1195.

A DIS



A DISCOVRSE
OF ENGLAND.

The Contents.

1. **E**ngland in old time called *Albion*, or *Britaine*, and of their Etymologie. 2. Description of this Island, the situation and bignesse. 3. Fertilitye and health of the countrey, yet infected sometimes with the plague. 4. It endures no venomous beast: And why there are no wolves. 5. The river of *Thames*, *Suennor*, *Humber*, *Trent*, and some others. 6. Reires abounding in this Island in *Cæsars* time, and of the conflict all embroydered with pearle, which he did dedicate to the goddess *Venus*. 7. Alloy of *Iron* and *Copper* used by the ancient English. 8. Women in old time common among the English, and commanding Armies. 9. Chastitie, quicknes of spirit, and other good qualities of the moderne English, and their exercises. 10. Humour of the English, haucie, and the basest sort inclined to drunkennesse. 11. Great wealth of priuat men growing by the trafficke of wooll, tinne, and herring. 12. *London* the chief Citie in England, inhabited by three hundred and fiftie thousand Soules. 13. Trafficke of England valued yearly at some millions of gold. 14. Treasure and reuenues of the king of England, what it was whenas king *Henry* the eighth fell from the Church of *Rome*. 15. Ordinarie reuenues of the Crowne of England at this present. 16. Extraordinarie Subsidies of two sorts in England. 17. Expence of diet in the king of Englands Court. 18. Penalties imposed upon such as are Papists in England. 19. Extraordinarie reuenues of the Crowne of England. 20. The strong situation of the Island of England, and of the great number of Shippes it entertaines. 21. Englishmen were expert as Sea-men. Their traffike into far Countries, both East and West. 22. Number of Souldiers which they may raise in England. 23. Armie of England, in what order it went to the siege of *Boulen* in the reigne of king *Henrie* the eighth. 24. English Nobilitie, and of the diuers sorts of Knights in England, and the ceremonies at their creation. 25. Order of the knights of the Garter, and by whom it was instituted. 26. Of the officers of the Crowne of England, and what their Lords be. 27. The three Estates or Parliament of England, their great power, offices, and ceremonies in their assemblies. 28. Three kinds of iudgements in England of *Wofull* iudgements, of Ordinarie punishments, and how Traytors are punished. 29. Courts at *Westminster*, and the *Star-chamber*, when instituted. 30. A Catalogue of the Kings of England. 31. Archbishops and Bishops which were, and are at this present in England.



Should seeme vaine, or rather tedious, if I should make relation of the long contention of the ancient names of this Island; for that it seemes men should rather expect from my desceiue, a consideration of things, than of words. Yet the inopportune punishment of such as might demand it at this entrance, shall inuoluntarily tell me, that according to the fabulous reports of the *Grecians*, it first carried the name of one *Albion*, the imaginarie sonne of *Asie*, or as he according to the *Latines*, it was so called, by reason of the white Rockes which

are seene vpon the shoare, afterwards it tooke the name of Britaine, of the word *Brit*, A
signifying coloured in English; for that the inhabitants of that Island were accustomed
to paint their bodies, and since it changed to the name of England, that is to say, the
land of the English; for that the English Saxons did enjoy it. This should suffice them
that desire to content their minds, or satisfie their flouth that will make no further
search.

II. But to come to the point, The Island of great Britaine is in a manner like vnto that
of Sicile, hauing three points or capes, which extend themselves after diuers forts.
The first which looks towards the West, is that of Belleria, called by the English, *The*
Cape of Cornwall. The second is that of Cantia, which bends to the East, called at this
day *The North Eireland*, of the which all the countrie of that Island which lyes towards
the East, hath taken the name of Kent, according to the Vulgar. The third is that of
Orcas, of Traudece, or Trauise, towards the North, called by some *Dunghumbehead*, or
Dunsibhead, and by some others *Houmbyrne*. This Island is situated towards the West
of Europe, one and fiftie degrees from the Equator, and is opposite vpon the West to
Ireland, vpon the East to the Low Countries, vpon the North to the Islands of Or-
cades, and on the South to France. As for the circuit, the English, who haue more cu-
tiously surueied it, measure it after this manner. They account from the cape of Tra-
uise, vnto that of Belleria, for that the way goes serpent-wise, by reason of the crooked
shoares, taking it from the West, eight hundred and twelue miles. From that place vnto
Kent, three hundred and twentie miles. From thence by windings and turnings they
reckon vnto Trauis seven hundred and foure miles. So as the circuit of the whole Island
contains about 1835. But for that it is a small matter to vnderstand the bounds of a
Countrie, if we doe not in like maner know the bountie; I desire before I engage my
selfe in any other discourse, to consider what this Island doth furnish to her Inhabitants,
and in like manner what it wants.

¶ Qualitie of the Countrie.

III.

The aire of this Island is grosse, and verie subiect to mists, raine, and winds; and the
grossenesse of this aire is the reason why the cold and heat are neuer vehement. The
nights are cleare, and it is not much subiect to diseases, so as they vie lesse phisicke than
in any other part of Europe: yet there happens many times a plague which destroies
many. The soile is so fruitfull in many places, as he that writes the Panegyric to *Con-*
stantine, hath much commended the fertilitye. It brings forth all kinds of trees at all
seasons, except the firre tree and beech trees: but at this daie there are great numbers
found of the latter sort: Yet it wants Oliue trees, Oranges, and other trees, which doe
commonly grow in hotter regions. The flocks of Vines are rather for shew than any
profit vnto their masters, for that they carrie but few grapes, neither doe they ripen in
due season. They sow wheat, rye, barley, oats, and all other kinds of pulses. The come
grows soone, and ripens late, by reason of the abundant humiditie of the aire and
soile. There are many small hills without trees, or water, which carries a verie thicke
and small grasse, sufficient to feede whole troupes of Sheepe which they driue thither,
the which either for the sweetnesse of the aire, or the bountie of the soile haue their
wooll longer, and more delicate than any other. Some hold that the Shepherds of
England will not suffer their sheepe to drink at any fontaine, so as they are onely wa-
tered with the dew, for that they haue found by long experience, that all other waters
were hurtfull, and did kill them. Doubtlesse we may rightly call this wooll the Golden
Fleece, for that it is the chiefe ground of the inhabitants wealth, whereby they ga-
ther a great quantitie of gold and siluer from foraine merchants. And of this wooll
they make such excellent fine Cloth, as the Germans, Polonians, they of Denmarke,
Sweden, and many other Countries doe much esteeme it, and doe buy it more wil-
lingly than any other.

There

A There are in England great numbers of all sorts of beasts, at the least of such as we
haue commonly in these countries, except Asses and Mules, which they haue not in
such abundance, and Wolves which no where are to be seen ranging abroad; for that
the inhabitants haue been so industrious, or so painfull, as they haue cleared the whole
countrie of them, whereas these beasts haue been in former times plentifully amongst
them: This is the reason why their cattell goe freely vp and downe without any keepers,
for that they are freed from this feare, and there are to be seen day and night, great num-
bers of horle, kine, and sheep in their pastures and fields, which are common to all the
neighbours after that Haruest is ended. The countrie as I haue said yeelds no wine,
B but in recompence they vie beere made of barley and hops, the which is pleasing and
profitable to them that vse it.

There are goodly Riuers which water the countrie, as the riuers of Thames, Seuerne,
Humbár, Trent, and some others of lesse fame. The Horses of this countrie, which we
call geldings, are for the most part gelt, to the end they may continue the longer, being
at libertie in the pasture they trot not, but go a kind of amble, with the which they make
great speed: at the least few doe the contrarie. There are more Conies than in any
countrie in the world. The Englishmen haue an infinite number of soule both wild
and tame. The capons of Kent are verie great, like vnto them of Pulerare in territorie
of Padua, or them of Mans, or of Saint Geniez. Their geese are verie delicate before
they haue moulted, but being great, their tast is not verie pleasing. There is great store
C of partridge, pheasants, quails, black-birds, thrushes, and larkes: and the larkes grow
wonderfull fat during winter, which is not verie sharpe, and then they take fo great num-
bers, as their tables are plentifully furnished with them. There are swans in all their
lakes and riuers, and earlie euery morning rauens and crows are heard to crie. Many
hold it for certaine, that there are not so many crows to be found in any countrie in the
world, as in England. This soule doth feed vpon wormes which breed in this Island
in great abundance, by reason of the moisture of the soile: but they doe much harme,
for they not onely eat the come when it is ripe, but they also pull the seed out of the
ground, whereas the blade begins to appeare: so as the husbandman is forced at that
D time often to set boyes in the field to driue them away; for that their cries onely will
not serue to put them to flight.

The English haue verie good fish, and amongst others the turbot, and the pike: As
for the pike (which in former times was not in request) it is now much esteemed; for
that being taken out of pooles, and put into smaller ponds, they grow wonderfull fat,
eating the small fish and eales. Whenas they bring any to sell, they open his bellie with
a knife, and if by chance the fisherman cannot sell him, he dies not by reason of this
opening, but being sowed vp againe, they put him among Tenches, where the wound
is soone closed vp, by reason of the glutinous substance of this fish. Their oysters are
more delicate than in any other place of the world, and in greater abundance.

E Moreouer this Island yeelds siluer, lead, tinne, and copper. There is also great store
of yron, which makes the best Ordnance in the world; And there hath been found
pearles. *Suetonius* doth obserue in the life of *Cæsar*, that the hope of finding pearles in
the Island of great Britaine, made him to vndertake that voyage, and that they were
of that sort, as he could discern the difference of the weight with the hand. But as this
day they find not any but small ones and yellow vpon the coasts of Scotland and the
Orcades, the which shew not much better then the eyes of whittings. *Plinie* also saith,
that the pearles which are found in England are small, and of a bad lustre. Yet not-
withstanding that, *Cæsar* would haue it known, that the conflict which he offered vnto
the image of *Venus*, was imbroydered therewith. This countrie hath also fountains
F of salt and whot Bathes, verie medicinable.

Hitherto we haue made mention of the commodities of England, Now let vs in few
words shew the discommodities, and what it wants and borrowes from others, either
for necessitie, or for pleasure. Amongst those things which the receiues, we must make
speciall mention of Spices, Sugar, and all sorts of fruits which come from France and
B ij Spaine;

Spainie, the Wines, Oyles, and Hops, necessarie to make Beere, (whereof now they have plenty) the Cloth of gold, and Silkes, the greatest part of our Linen cloth, and all kinds of merchandise, besides the Woad, Cochenille, and such like things necessarie for dying. Now that we have discoursed of the qualitie of the Countrey, let vs see that of the persons which inhabite it.

¶ *Manners of the ancient English.*

- VII. THE Inhabitants of great Britaine did in old time vse certaine peeces of Copper, or Rings, as some say, or (according to others) plates of yron of a certaine waight for their coine. They did not hold it lawfull to eat of a Hare, a Hen, or a Goose, and yet they bred many for their pleasures. They of Kent were the most ciuile amongst them, and did not much differ from the Gauls in their behaviour. Few of them did sow any Corne; and therefore they liued of milke and fiesh. They were couered with certayne skinnies, and did colour themselves with woad, to be more fearfull in battell, and euen the women in some solemnities and ceremonies went naked and painted with this hearbe. They were long haire, and all their bodies were shauen, except their head and their vpper lip, where they kept their mullachos. They were sometime ten or twelue which had their wiues common, imitating therein the forme of *Platoes* Commonwealth, renewed in our age by the Anabaptists. But they principally which had their wiues common among them, were brethren with their brethren, and the children with their fathers; and when these women were deliuered, they held them for true fathers of those children who had first accompanied with the women. They vsed chariots in their batailles, and were accustomed to make them run with great speed, calling their darts, so as they did often breake the ranks of their enemies by the terror of their horses, and the noyse of their wheeles; and then being in the midst of troups of horse, they suddainly left their chariots and fought on foot: in the meane time they that guided their chariots retreyed a little out of the presse, but in such sort, that if their maisters were prest by the enemy, they might soone recouer their chariots and make a retreat. Finally *Suetonius* termes them barbarous, for that hauing great abundance of milke, yet for the most part they knew not how to make any Cheefe. They called forrests compassed in with ditches, Townes, whereas they might defend themselves from the sudden inuasions of their enemies. *Tacitus* writes, That the English were accustomed to haue women to commaund our Armies: and according vnto *Dyon* of Niceas, they neuer tilled their land, and did liue onely of hunting, and of the fruits of trees, neuer eating any fish, although they had verie good, and in great abundance. They did easilie endure hunger, cold, and all discommodities and toiles: for being plungeth vp to the necke in water, they endured hunger for many daies, and they were nourisht in forrests with the barks and roots of trees. They made diuers figures vpon the bodies of their children, the which did grow with them. They were wonderfully giuen to Sorcerie, yea in such sort, as they were held more skillfull in that wicked Art, or at least as much as they who had purchased their reputation to know the greatest secrets, and the deepest miseries. They did neuer eat any thing being at Sea, the which they might easilie doe, for that their voyages were short, hauing no kind of trafficke with any forraigne Nations. They vsed a drinke made of Barley, as they doe in this age. Many things more may be spoken vpon this subiect; but it is sufficient to make mention of the chief of some times, to come vnto the manners of the English of our age.

¶ *Their Manners at this day.*

- IX. THE English at this day are neat and ciuile, and the English gentlemen are full of humanitie and courtesie, wherein other nations haue no aduantage ouer them, although that the vanitie of some doe flatter and deceiue them, as they persuade themselves that there can nothing be found gracefulfull, but in their owne countreies: besides they

they haue quick spirits, prompt and subtile, capable of all arts and sciences; and their bodies haue also this particularitie, that they are wonderfull nimble, and fit for all trials of actiuite, and for all exercises. The men of qualitie haue a pleasing behaviour, and a sweetnesse mixt with grauitie, a thousand times more seemly than the lightnesse of manie, to whom some giue the name of propemess or neamesse without forcing: and to speake the truth, I doe not see that their actions are forced, for that they seeme to haue receiued this grace from nature, and not to haue gotten it by art. They take delight to feast strangers, and they spare not any thing to make good chere, with as great freedom as bounty. It is a thing worthe obseruation, that any stranger of fashion may goe and dyne with the Lord Maior of London, who doth keepe open house, and giues royall entertainment at his table. They are excellent Warriors, and valiant in guerre. We thinke that the greatest part of that Nation run into dangers, rather by a furious motion of nature, than by any full resolution of the knowledge of the danger, which proceeds from true valour: Whatsoeuer it be, they seeme to be ignorant of feare and flight, and to haue no other desseigne but to vanquish: so as where there is a good number of this nation in an Armie, it is not ill furnished, and there is no need but to lead them wisely. Yet they doe not easilie endure the discommodities of warre, but are full of impacience, desiring to fight soone with the enemy, and to vanquish or die. They that are giuen to studie, profit so well, as there hath alwaies beene seen in England some worthe man which hath made himselfe famous by the perfect knowledge of many sciences. As for their apparell, they haue for a long time found the fashion of the French so proper and neat, that as soone as they haue any new fashion, the English carrie it into their Countrey and follow it, though not wholly, either for the insufficiency of their Taylors, or for that they will not be held to be without inuention, and to borrow this propensitie, (or to speake more plainly) this phantasticknesse from others. And in truth we may partly draw some prooff of that which I haue spoken from the humour of the English, who excepting some who are well bred, are generally haughtie, holding that they exceed all the world in euery thing. They haue also (specially the baser sort) this infirmity, that they loue wine exceedingly, and drinke more than will suffice them: and whenas they haue exceeded in drinking, they vse Tobacco, which makes them to void a part of that wherewith the head is charged, and doth soone ease them; so as they may returne to their cups and exesse as before. So that in their manners and humors, they are mixt with good and euill, like vnto those of all other Nations. But for that it is not onely sufficient that a Realme should be accompanied with all the qualities aboue mentioned, and whereof we haue knowledge, but it is also necessarie to know in what sort they make their profit, it shall be therefore fit to discourse now of their wealth. For although that riches be an instrument of exesse, and a step to honor, yet it is held for so strong a sinew of Common weales, as we may now say, That a Countrey wantes motion and vigour, whenas it is destitute of that part: I will therefore begin the discourse with the profit of priuat men, and so will shew what the King of England may draw from his Estate.

¶ *Riches of England.*

THE wealth of priuat men in this Kingdome growes first from the sale of their Wools, whereof they make such excellent fine Cloth, as the Germanes, Polonians, they of Denmarke, Sweden, and of many other Countreies, doe much esteeme it, and buy it more willingly than any other. They hold for certaine, that strangers draw in Wooll and Cloth out of England, neere to the value of a million and a halfe of gold yearly. Moreouer they sell great store of Tinne, which comes out of Cornewall, exceeding fine, and in a manner equall to Siluer. And of this Tinne, and of Lead, the English may draw yearly aboue foure or fise hundred thousand crownes. They also make great profit of Herring, which are taken vpon the Northern coasts, the which are sent into many Countreies of Europe. They draw much siluer from their Beere, which they of the low Countreies doe much esteeme, as also of their Leather and Sea-coales.

- XII. The Citie of London, the head of the kingdome, and the aboad of kings, which contains with the suburbs, and Westminster, about three hundred & fiftie thousand soules, is happily seated vpon the riuer of Thames, whereas there is a great aboad of ships of three or foure hundred tunnes burthen, wherein the flowing and ebbing of the sea doth much helpe them, although it be about three score miles from the Sea vnto the Citie. Some hold that in the companies of Adventurers (which are they that may carrie merchandis from Flanders to England, and from thence into Flanders) and of the Staplers, who haue permission to draw forth wools, there are many men worth fiftie or three score thousand pounds sterling, all or the greatest part in readie money, the which according to the ordinarie course, is about two hundred thousand crownes, besides many others of diuers companies; as merchants of Tinne, Spices, and other things called groceries: And that which seemes incredible is, that there are Merchants of salt-fish extraordinarily rich, of these summes, or greater. And as for the whole Realme of England, *Quicquid dicitur* think, that the traffique of England, before the tumults of the low Countries, did amount yearly to twelue millions of gold. Behold what may be spoken of the peoples wealth: Now we will treat of the Treasure and reuenues of the king, which are necessarie to maintain an estate; for that we haue seen how preiudiciall it hath been to Princes that wanted, and were great spenders, giuers, or had small reuenues. To come then vnto the point, before that king *Henry* the eight did withdraw himselfe from the Church of Rome, it is reported, that the ordinarie reuenues of the Crowne of England amounted to about six hundred thousand crownes yearly, which in part was drawn from the wardships of yong Orphans, that were vnder the age of one and twentie yeares: for all they that haue any land, how little soeuer, which doth hold in knights seruice of the Crowne of England, remaine during their minorities, Wards vnto the king, who giuing them small portions for their entertainment, receiues the rest of their reuenues, vntill they come to the age of one and twentie yeares, and then they pay a certaine summe of money vnto the king, to enter into their inheritances: but yet the kings are accustomed in this point to vse them graciously. Besides, there is another kind of reuenues, which all they pay that acknowledge to hold any thing of the Crowne, when as they come to any succession of free lands. And there is also another which is called Reliefe, which consists in the acknowledgement of fees, the which are many, and of diuers sorts, which are of more or lesse profit vnto the king, according to the importance and qualities of the fees: And these reuenues are accounted extraordinary, in regard of the ordinarie, which are the demeanes of the Crowne, called the old Rents; whereunto now is annexed that of the Duchie of Lancaster. But about all, there is the reuenue of the Custome, which is onely of such merchandis as come into the Realme, or go forth, and all pay it indifferently, as well strangers as subjects: but that strangers are charged more than the English. These are the most important reuenues of the Crowne, which were in old time, and are yet: Besides, there is the profit which is drawn from the mynes of Yron, Lead, & Tinne, but especially those of Tinne, there being scarce any part of the Island but is subiect vnto it, for that the land is full of Mynes; but about all the countrie of Cornwall, from whence they draw great abundance, and exceeding fine. There was also, and is yet, the reuenues of Bishopricks and Abbies which are void; and whenas Abbies (which are verie many) were not as they are at this day, it was of great importance; and the nomination of Abbies, as well as of Bishopricks, belongs vnto the King, who enioyes the fruits, as little, or as long as he lists, according to the importance of the thing that is void. The King hath the confiscation of Rebels goods, besides the fines which are drawn from many seats of iustice, but especially from that which is called the Star-chamber, in which court enormous offences of all orders are punished with pecuniarie mulctis, imprisonment, and often with mutilation of their bodies. And all these reuenues, as well ordinarie, as extraordinary, did amount (as they sayd) at the time of their distraction from the Church of Rome, to the summe of a hundred and fiftie thousand pounds, which are fix hundred thousand crownes. Since that time the kings of England receiue the Tenth of all Clergie livings, according to the decreet of *Henrie* the eight, and the Annats in like manner;
- XIII. These summes, or greater.
- XIIII. Now we will treat of the Treasure and reuenues of the king, which are necessarie to maintain an estate;
- XV. Since that time the kings of England receiue the Tenth of all Clergie livings, according to the decreet of *Henrie* the eight, and the Annats in like manner;

- A manner; so now these reuenues are exceedingly increased, the whole ordinarie reuenues are said to be about a million and three hundred thousand and odd crownes. There is moreover the extraordinary subsidies, which are of two kinds; for that sometimes they are leuied generally throughout the Realme, and to this end a Parliament is called, whereas they resolute of that which is necessary, and how they shall proceed: and sometimes all the king requires a kind of subsidie of particular men, which they call a loane, and then every man strives to shew his loue vnto his prince.
- There is no man which doubts, whenas they haue no warre within the Realme (for that there is not commonly any need for her fastitie, of any of the most important charges, as enterpayning of horse and foot, nor the prouision of an Armie, for that it is assured of it selfe:) No man I say will doubt, but it is sufficient not only to prouide for the preferuation of the Kings greatnesse and dignitie, but abundantly to satisfie all his desires, for that in taking away the fees of the kings guard, being three hundred, and of fiftie gentlemen seruants, and of fiftie Pensioners other seruants, and deducting the reparation of ports, and of those few ships which are in being, of ordnance, the renewing of armes, and of all sorts of munition, in like manner, the reparation of the kings houses, whereof there are verie many within the realme, besides entertainment of Iudges, and other publique officers, all ordinarie and necessarie expences for the preferuation of a Realme, taking away I say all this, which is not of any great importance, a good part of the rest is consumed in the necessities of the chamber, dyet, stable, armes, chappell, wardrobe, and other offices, after a verie royall manner; for that there is not any nation which spends more than the English, as well in their dyet, as in other ordinarie things; and the king entertaineth a great number of men, with many distinctions of degrees and offices: So as in the time of the deceased Queene *Elizabeth*, the onely expences of the Court for dyet amounted neere to three score thousand pounds sterling yearly. The reuenues of the Crowne then came from these heads, and a great part of them are spent by these means; for, that when things are best husbanded, there remains not ouer great surplusage for extraordinary necessities, either of warre, or any other publique occurrences. There remaineth one point onely to be added, which is, that the Law imposeth a certaine penalitie vpon such as will lue Romish Catholikes, and will not be conformable, which yields the king a good reuenue. This Realme then hath no extraordinary reuenues, but Subsidies which are graunted by parliament, in the time of publique necessitie, but they are paid with great ease, hauing alwaies two termes of payment giuen them, and they are taxed according to their estate, being bound to giue more or lesse, according to the princes necessitie. But their valuations are reasonable, not onely in respect of euery mans estate, but in regard of that which is practiced in other Countries: yet the same is not so little, but they commonly draw great summes of money. We haue spoken sufficient of the wealth of priuie men, and of the reuenues of the Crowne. And although that they be the finewe of warre, yet haue they need to be fortified with other things, to make a good and firme resistance: So as we will now treat of the forces which this Realme may haue.
- ¶ Forces of England.
- England is better seated than any other Realme, for the strength thereof; for that it hath two excellent properties, which *Aristotle* seeks in the situation of a Towne; the one a difficult entrance for the enemy, the other is to haue an easie going forth for all enterprises. For the Irish Sea which lyes vpon the West, is so shallow, and so full of flats and dangers, as no great ships can passe; and the British sea which is vpon the South, doth flow and ebbe, and rise twelue or fiftene fadomes ordinarily, with so great violence, as it is fearefull. So as to come into any port, they must haue the tyde and wind fauorable, but especially the tyde. And all the coast of this Island is very high and rough, except in some few places, which are well fortified; as Barwicke, Douer, and Plymouth; so as we may say, that the whole Island is nothing in a manner but a great fort. We must

XVI.

XVII.

XVIII.

XIX.

XX.

addē to the strong scituation, the sea and land forces. For as for those at sea (besides the Kings navie, which is of great strength) the Realme hath so many ports, and so frequētly with merchants from all parts, as the English say, that the ships which trade there commonly exceed the number of two thousand. But whatsoever it be, it is most certaine, that they may draw together foure hundred ships, yea more, if necessitie requires. And for prooffe, *Edward* the third past to the enterprise of Calais, and since, *Henry* the eighth to the siege of Boullen, with a thousand saile of all sorts. So as it must be a great and difficult enterprise to invade this Island, whereas their ports are not only for the entrie, but also for the accessē very difficult, besides the fortifications which are made. We must addē to these difficulties, the valour and experience of that nation at sea, and in those affairs; for that there is not any more hardie, nor more apt to fight at sea than the English. They scour the Ocean, as well in Winter, as in Summer, with wonderfull swift sayling vessels, and well furnished with ordnance, whereof they have great abundance. They trafficke to Muscouie, Cataia, Alexandria in Egypt, to Constantinople, Livonia, Barbarie, and Guinee. They have attempted to passe vnto the Indies, sometimes by the West, coasting along the new world, and sometimes by the East, bending their course by Muscouie and Cataia. But it seemes that nature hath most commonly opposed her selfe against their desseignes, and hath stoppt their passage. Moreouer in the year 1580, they invaded the Island of Hispaniola, and the new found world, yea, before the peace concluded betwixt the kings of England and Spaine, they did continually molest the Islands of the Azores, Cape Verd, and Brasil. Two of their Captaines haue with as great courage as fortune, compassed in a manner the whole world.

Besides all this, there are many trained souldiers in the countrie, who are good men at land, and are of no small importance, either in regard of the number, or of the qualitie. As for the number, the Realme is diuided into many Counties, in one of them, which is York-shire, they make account that they can leue three score and ten thousand foot. But what soeuer it be, it is certaine, that the Realme can put to field a hundred thousand foot, and twentie thousand horse. Euery one of these Counties is gouerned by a Vicount or Shirife: but at this day there is a Lord lieutenant, who hath the command and power to leue souldiers when necessitie requires; at which time the deputie, lieutenants, and captaines make choise of such as are fittest to serue: For their foot they make choise of the strongest and ablest men.

As for their horsemen, they chuse men of a meane stature, which are nimble and active. Their horses are not good for the shocke, like vnto the low Countrie and Germane horses (their countrie being too fat to breed them). But their horsemen are of two kinds, the one hath his armes compleat, and serue with lances, and they are for the most part gentlemen: the other are lightly armed, like vnto the light horsemen of Italie, wearing a cosler and a morrion, like vnto the pikemen, and carrying long slender stauies. Although they may put to field about two thousand men at armes, and a great number of light horse, yet doe we not find that their horsemen were euer so famous in any combat as their foot. And king *Edward* the fourth, who had fought so many battails, meaning to shew in which sort of men he had most confidence, left his horse, and did fight among the footmen. But to shew what a king of England may doe, especially this, who withalldo enioy all Ireland and Scotland, I haue thought it fit to set downe the preparation of king *Henry* the eighth, when as he made the enterprise of Boullen. This king past the sea with an armie diuided into three parts. There was in the forward 12000 foot, and five hundred horse lightly armed, besides a thousand horse with shirts of maille and targets, all which were clad in blew, garded with red. The rereward was led by the duke of Norfolk, which consisted of the like number of foot and horse, and wore the same liuerie. Betwixt these went a thousand Irish men, wearing long and straight shirts, with a mantle vpon them, the rest was naked; they wore long haire, and went bare headed; euery one of them was armed with three darts, and a long sword, and they wore a gauntlet on the left hand vp to the elbow; when they came to fight, they trusse vp their shirts, and are good runners. The battaille wherein the kings person was, did consist of twentie

thousand foot, and two thousand English horse, all clothed in red, garded with yellow. They drew after them a hundred great cannons, besides smaller peeces. They carried a hundred mils in carts, euery one of which was turned with a horse, and were brought to grind their corne; they had ouens also vpon wagons to bake their bread. The number of carts was so great, as they did inuiron the whole armie like a trench; and to draw these carts, the artillerie, and baggage, there came out of the Island about 2000 horse; and besides all sorts of victuals, they brought fiftene thousand Beeces, with an infinite number of other cattell. I should be too tedious in my discourse, if I should particularise the great quantitie of ladders, bridges, bullets, powder, munition, wood, and other thin gs belonging to militarie actions, wherewith they were furnished, hauing not left any thing behind which they held necessarie. But as for their shipping, those which were ordinarilie entertained, are much diminished, for that there is not much aboute fortie. But we must consider, that these few, with the rest of his priuat subiects, whereof the king makes vse in all occasions, as of his owne, paying them as he doth strangers, when necessitie doth presse him; all these ships I say will not only serue for a defence, but will be able at need to offend, and invade; for that it is reported there is so great a number dispersed in diuers parts of the Island, of great and small, fit to serue and to go against an enemy, as if they were drawn together (the which the king may easilie doe vpon any command) they would amount to a great number, the English say four hundred. But admit the number were lesse, yet without doubt there would be so many, as arming one part of them with souldiers, artillerie, munition, and armes, the which they may easilie doe (for that this Realme, in regard of all these necessarie provisions, doth not enuie any other) if they did not invade any man, yet at the least they would not feare standing vpon their defence, any force that should assaile them.

As for men of action, some hold that the king is able to arme fve and twentie thousand Corslets, besides the Noble men and priuat Barons, wherewith euery one of them is furnished according to his traine and meanes. And although they be not all trained souldiers, yet being in the companie of them that haue been practised (for that many of this Nation, as well as of others, goe here and there to the warres) they would worke great effects, for the naturall inclination they haue to warre: and euen they that shall be vnarmed, would by the same reason shew great proofes of their persons. Whenas England was not vnted vnto Scotland, the sea did tortifie it sufficiently against all other Nations, except the Scottish, who are in the same Island. But the English had assured that frontier with a good garison at Barwicke, a strong place, seated vpon the riuer of Tweed, and of great traffique, by reason of the fishing for Salmons; this place was in old time taken by the English from the Scottish men. This is all that can be spoken of the Forces of England. It is now fit to treat of the gouernment of this Realme, for that it were not sufficient to be rich, strong, and peopled, if it were not also well gouerned; for that we know well, that many Commonweales which haue not wanted any thing of that we haue obserued in this Realme, haue notwithstanding come to ruine for want of good conduct.

Gouernment of England.

The Crowne of England is successiuelly hereditarie to them that are next of the blood, and whenas the Males faile, the Females succeed, and hereupon the English alledge that which is written in the booke of Numbers, That whenas a man dieth without any sonnes, the succession shall belong vnto his daughters; which custome is not receiued in France. The realme is diuided among the Nobilitie, Gentrie, Burgeses, and Commons. Among the Nobles, next to the king, they put the Princes, Dukes, Marquesses, Earles, Vicounts, and Barons, who are called Lords and Noblemen; and these are followed by Knights, Esquiers, and Gentlemen. All Dukes, Marquesses, Earles, Vicounts, and Barons, receiue their dignities from the Prince, or take that of the Father, who hath carried some one of these tytles; for the eldest sonne of a Duke, during his fathers

XXV.

xxvi.

AII-2072

XXVII.

There are three kinds of triall in England, that of the Parliament, the Combar, and the Iudicial courts. We haue alreadie declared what their manner is to giue sentence in the parliament. As for the Combar, it is not now in vfe, yet is it not forbidden, so as the King may hold it, but they will not refuse it any man that demands it iustly: the forme is to be seene in the Commentaries of *Briston*. These two first kinds of triall are absolute and without Appeal, like vnto that which the Iudges decree in their assembles. The king without Appeal is called, for that the kings of England were wont to sit there, and that all causes which concerne the Crowne, and which are pleaded at the kings instance, are tried there.

XXVIII

there. The chiefe Iustice of England is judge in this Court, with three assistants. The Court of Common pleas is that whereas priuie mens suits are tried, and there is in this Court one chiefe Iustice, and three assistants. All iudgements giuen by Iudges, are most commonly executed by the Shiriffes. There is also an Exchequer, for that which concerns the kings treasure and reuenues. As for punishments, they haue not in a manner any other, for murder, felony, raiufments, and such like crimes; which are not high Treason, but hanging, and it is not veyie viall to racke any man, to cut off his head, to quarter him, or to laie him vpon a wheele. If any one attempts to murder or poison another, he shall not die; for that the king hath not lost a subiect. If any murder be committed, all that haue assisted are taken for murderers, and condemned to die. Traytors are first hanged, then being cut downe aliue, their bowels are pulled out, their heads cut off with an axe, and their bodies quartered, and set vpon poles in diuers places: All Noble men that be of the Parliament, haue this priuiledge, that being accused of Treason, they are iudged by their peers.

XXIX.

There is another Court in England, the like whereof is not to be seene in any other place, called the Star Chamber, whereas the Chanceller, and all the priuie Councell with other Iudges do sit. It was ordained to iudge of all riots, and to suppress the insolencie of great men, whereas the partie delinquent is most commonly committed to the Fleet, and condemned in a fine to the king, and expences to the partie. Some write that it was instituted whenas Cardinall *Wolsey* Archbishop of Yorke was Chanceller. The matter being pleaded by the Lawyers; and all proofes produced, then they go to sentence, every one of the Iudges and Lords giues his censure of the fact and punishment; the Iunie speaks first, and the Chanceller, who presides in the Court concludes all, and giues the definitive sentence; the ordinarie punishment is a pecuniarie fine and imprisonment: whereunto they doe sometimes add a corporal punishment; as for forgerie and perurie. There is also the Court of Wards, which doth iudge of all that concerns Orphans: and in the Court of that Duchie of Lancaster, all real and personall actions which do in any way concerne the Duchie. There is the Court of Requests, which was first instituted to take notice of all petitions and complaints that were presented vnto the king. But now they decide controuersies betwene partie and partie: It is also called a Court of Conscience.

There is also an Ecclesiasticall iurisdiction, called the Christian Court, whereas the Archbishops and Bishops do preside: Their iurisdiction doth chiefly consist in foure causes; in Testaments and Legacies, Tythes, Mortuaries, Marriages, Adulterie or fornication: finally of all that concerns the preservation and ornament of the Church, and which belongs to the emendment of Religion. And this is the order of the iustice of England, and their forme of government.

¶ Religion of England.

The English as some write, receiued the Christian Religion from *Isaph* of Aramathia, and then from Pope *Elauther*, by the preaching of *Eugene* and *Damian*, who baptized king *Bice*; and many of his people, about the yeare of our Redemption 180. But the Island being afterwards held by the English Saxons, Pope *Gregorie* the great sent *Augustine* and *Aethel*, with many others thither, who renewed the Faith, and confirmed *Ethelbert* king of Kent about the yeare 506: from which time it did begin still to degenerate into the later Roman superstition, vntill king *Henry* the eight, finding some oppositions and notorious fraud at Rome, vpon his diuorce from *Katharine* of Castile, who had been wife vnto his elder brother *Arthur*, withdrew himselfe from the obedience of the Pope at Rome, and tooke vpon him the title of Supreme head of the Church of England, with the consent of the Estates; Then he dissolved all the Religious houses, and gave the lands to lay men, yet he retained the Masse still, and most of the ceremonies of the Romish religion. But king *Edward* the sixth his sonne and successor, abolished the Masse, and all the superstitious ceremonies of the Romish Church, planting the

A the true profession of the Gospell, and causing diuine Seruice to be said in the English tongue. But after his death, Queene *Marie* his sister coming to the Crowne, restored the Masse, with all other Popish ceremonies; whereupon followed great perfection of those that made profession of the Gospell, and did impugn the Pope, so as many were forced to flee into other Countries for refuge, during this storme, the which continued about foure yeares. After whose death, Queene *Elizabeth* his sister succeeding her, she settled the same Religion which her brother king *Edward* had embraced, calling home all those that had fled from persecution, giuing them spiritual dignities, according to their merits. This profession of the Gospell did flourish all the time of her reign, (notwithstanding the malicious practices of the Popes of Rome her aduersaries:) and doth more and more, vnder the happie and peacefull raigne of king *James* the first now reigning. Thus hauing related at large all the parts and conditions of this Realme, we must end this discourse, to come vnto that of Scotland: hauing first represented the names of the Kings of England, with the ancient Archbishops and Bishops of that Realme.

¶ Kings of England.

The historie of England is full of confusion, vntill *Egbert*, who reigned in the yeare 801. And therefore I will make no difficultie to passe ouer with silence those that haue gone before: And to begin with him.

XXX.

Egbert began his raigne in the yeare 801. he reigned 37 yeares, and died in the yeare 838. There succeeded him,

Edephe, who reigned 20 yeares: he died in the yeare 858.

Ethelbald reigned 5 moneths.

Dethelbert reigned 5 yeares: he died in the yeare 863.

Ethelrede reigned 9 yeares: and died in the yeare 872.

Alured reigned 28 yeares: he died in the yeare 900.

Edward the ancient reigned 24 yeares: he died in the yeare 924.

Adelstan reigned 16 yeares: he died in the yeare 940, hauing subdued the whole Island.

Edmund reigned 6 yeares: he died in the yeare 946.

Eldred reigned 9 yeares: he died in the yeare 955.

Edmyn reigned 4 yeares: and died in the yeare 959.

Edgar reigned 16 yeares: he died in the yeare 975.

Edward the Martyr reigned 3 yeares: he was slaine by the ambushes of his mother in law *Afrede*, he was afterward put in the Catalogue of Saints.

FHe died in the yeare 978.

Ethelrede reigned 38 yeares: and died in the yeare 1016.

Edmond Ironside reigned 1 yeare: and died in the yeare 1017.

Canutus king of Norway and Denmarke, and afterwards king of England, hauing expelled *Edmond* and *Edward*, children to *Edmond* Ironside, reigned in England 20 yeares, he died in the yeare 1037.

Harald reigned 4 yeares: and died in the yeare 1041.

Canutus the second, he reigned 2 yeares: and died in the yeare 1043.

Edward, a holie king reigned 23 yeares: and died in the yeare 1066.

Harald the second reigned 3 yeares: he died in the yeare 1067.

William Duke of Normandie, expelled *Harald*, and made himselfe maister of all England: he reigned 21 yeares: and died in the yeare 1088.

William Rufus reigned 13 yeares: he died in the yeare 1101.

Henrie the first reigned 35 yeares: he died in the yeare 1136.

Stephen Earle of Boullain, nephew to *Henrie*, seized vpon the realme, he reigned 19 yeares: and died in the yeare 1155.

Henrie the second reigned 33 yeares, he died in the yeare 1190.

Richard the first reigned 10 yeares: he died in the yeare 1200.

John reigned 17 yeares: & died in the yeare 1217.

C Henrie

Henry the 3. reigned 56 yeares, he died in the yeare 1273.
 Edward the first reigned 35 yeares, and died in the yeare 1308.
 Edward the second reigned 19 yeares, he died in the yeare 1327.
 Edward the third reigned 51 yeares, he died in the yeare 1378.
 Richard the second reigned 22 yeares, he died in the yeare 1400.
 Henry the fourth reigned 14 yeares, he died in the yeare 1414.
 Henry the fifth reigned 9 yeares, he died in the yeare 1423.
 Henry the sixth reigned 38 yeares, he died in the yeare 1461.
 Edward the fourth reigned 23 yeares, he died in the yeare 1484.
 Edward the fifth reigned two moneths, he

was murdered by his vnckle being but A 11 yeares old.
 Richard the 3. reigned 2 yeares, he died in the yeare 1486, being slaine in battaile by his Competitor Henry.
 Henry the tenth reigned 24 yeares, he died in the yeare 1510.
 Henry the eight reigned 37 yeares, and died in the yeare 1547.
 Edward the sixth reigned 6 yeares, and B died in the yeare 1553.
 Mary married to Philip of Spaine, reigned 5 yeares and three moneths, she died in the yeare 1538.
 Elizabeth reigned 45 yeares, and died in the yeare 1603.
 James king of Scotland hath succeeded her in the Realme of England, and reignes at this present.

Archbishops and Bishops of England.

XXXI. There were in old time, and are yet at this day, two Archbishops in England, who haue vnder them many Suffragan Bishops: as may be seen in a Booke set forth by Aubrey a Chanon of Andwerpe, intituled, *Notitia Episcopatum Orbis Christiani*, as followeth.

Archbishopsricke of Canterburie.

London.
 Winchester.
 Ely.
 Lincoln.
 Salisbury.
 Bath and Wels.
 Couentrie and Lichfield.
 Peterborough.
 Exeter.
 Gloucester.

Hereford.
 Norwich.
 Rochester.
 Chichester.
 Worcester.
 Briſtow.
 St. Davids.
 Bangor.
 Landaffe.
 St. Asaph.

Archbishopsricke of Torke.

Durham.
 Chester.
 Carlisle.

A DIS

F



A DISCOURSE OF SCOTLAND.

The Contents.

1. **S**cotland in old time called Albania. Description, and the Prouinces 2. Chiefe Rivers of the Countrie. 3. Forest of Calidonia, where there are wild Bulls 4. A myne of Coales, which doth abound with Bitumen. 5. A myne of Gold in Cranford. 6. The lake Lomond, and the singularities thereof, remarkable for a floating Island. 7. Butghubania, a Countrie which endures no Rats. 8. A Fontaine from whence flow drops of Oyle of great vertue. 9. Scottis-men in old time called Picts, for that they did paint their bodies and haire: Their manner of fighting and armes in warre. 10. Scottis-men diuided now into High-land and Low land men, their armes and suffering in warre: Reminded for their fidelitie. 11. Sterilitie and wants of Scotland. 12. Edenborough the chiefe Citie; the description: It is called the winged Castle. 13. Nobilitie of Scotland. 14. Galloway Knights, Barons, Gentlemen. 15. Estates of the Realme consisting of three sorts of people, and how assembled. 16. Colledge of Iustice, called the iurisdiction. 17. Scotland, when it received the Christian Faith. 18. Archbishops and Bishops in Scotland. 19. A Catalogue of the king of Scotland, and their reignes.



He most Northerne part of great Britaine is called Scotland, and was sometimes termed Albania, yea the Scottis-men which retain their ancient language, call it Albain, and the Irishmen Allabani. This Countrie is diuided from England towards the South by the riuers of Tweed and Soluay. On the other three parts, it is bounded by the Sea. It is in length from the riuier of Tweed, vnto the furthest part of the North 257 English miles; and it is 190 broad. It is diuided into many Prouinces, that is to say, Lauden, sometimes called Pictland, that is to say, the Countrie of the Picts, that is hilly and without trees; but the people are ciuile and courteous. Edenborough which is the aboad of the kings of Scotland, is seated in this Countrie, with many other good Townes. Next vnto it is the Countrie of Merk, that is to say, the bounds of England and Scotland: that of Teisidale, that is to say, the valley of the riuier of Teisse, neere vnto England; which is full of rockes: Elchedale, neere to the riuier of Eique: Eufedale, Niddesdale, so called of the riuier Nith: the valley of Anandale: Galloway, which lies towards the West, the which abounds more in pasture than in fruits: Cariege, which hath reasonable good pastures: Coyl, which is a leane and barren soile: Sterlingh, Menetheth, Cluidisdale, Lennox, Ernouale, Strathern, Soorie, Rossen, and Argile, which abounds in lakes, and hath more pasture than corne: this was the Countrie of the Calendoniens, by whom all the Region is named of the inhabitants, Allibanum: Cantire, which signifies a corner of a land, a wast Countrie, and full of marishes: Strathinthern:

C ij

Fife

small province more fertile than the rest, in the which is the towne of Saint Andrews: Angulus, a pleasant countrey situate vnto the river of Zau: Marre, and Murrey, countreys lying vpon the Sea: these are Galloway, Rosbe, Marry, Netherland, and Tarbath: after that Bearroffen, and Sutherland; and in the end Cathnes.

Of the Countrey.

- I.** Scotland is rough and hilly, and nothing so fertile as England, but it abounds more with fish. The sea which enuiours it, hath great store of Oysters, Herrings, Gorrall, and Caprells. And in the vallies there are many lakes, marshes, rivers, and fountaines, wherein they find abundance of fish. Most of these lakes come from the mountaine Grampie, where are also the springs of three rivers, which carrie boats: the river of Cloude, sometimes called Aleuth, which falls into the Irish sea: that of Taytis, which passeth all the rivers of Scotland in greatness, whereof a part comes out of the countrey of Argyle, from the west of the firth of Clyde, and a part out of the countrey of Strathern, and discharge themselves into the Germanie sea, and that of Forthea, which falling into the Germanie sea, makes that great gulfe which is commonly called the Scottish sea.
- II.** The Scottish countrey is diuided into three partes, which are called the north, the middle, and the south. The north is called the shires of Moray, Nettle, and Bouth. There are mountaines which haue certaine little plaines, which haue verie good pasture, and some of them haue both Alabaster and Marble.
- III.** The south is full of Deere, and other wilde beasts, especially that of Caledonia, where there are also white bulls, which are so wilde, as they cannot be tamed; and their flesh is like vnto a lions. There is a certaine place called the Myne of Coales, which abounds with Pyrites, that doth sometimes burne, to the great hurt of the inhabitants.
- IV.** The countrey of Scotland hath mynes of gold, silver, quicke silver, lead, and copper, especially in Craanford, they say there is a myne of gold found. In Galloway there is a lake called Myrtow, whereof the one part doth frize in winter, and the other is neuer frozen in the sharpest cold. There are in Caribie great oxen, whose flesh is verie tender and pleasing to tast, and their suet hath this property, that it is as good as water.
- V.** In Lennox there is a great lake called Loumond, which is aboute a thousand paces long, and eight broad: in it there are thirtie Ilands, whereof the greatest part are full of villages, well inhabited. In this lake there are three things worthy of memorie, that it yeelds verie good fish without any fyennes: that without any beuall of wind the waues are sometimes so great, as they amaze the hardiest mariners: and lastly an Iland which floats continually where the wind drives it, and yet there is good pasture in it.
- VI.** In Buthquarie they see not any Rats, and if any be brought thither, they presently die. In the countrey of Fife they draw forth abundance of a kind of blacke stone, verie fit for firing. Some two miles from Edenborough (as some say) there is a fountaine, where as are seen drops of oyle floating, which is of that nature, as if you take not up any, they doe not increase, and if you take vp much, yet there still remains the same quantitie of oyle. This liquor is good against the roughnesse of the skin.

Of Manners of the ancient Scots.

- VII.** Some hold that the Scottishmen were in old time called Picts, that is to say, painted; and that they were accustomed to paint their bodies. But this name was not common to all, for the two nations of Picts and Scots, haue their names to the inhabitants of the most southerne parts of great Britaine, which they invaded, according to the place whereas either of these Nations stayed. These Picts made their hayre also blew by art. Boetius sayes they were verie sober in their eating and drinking, and slept little; that they made bread of any come, and that they did commonly eat beefe, or what they coule in hunting; but they did vse their beenes not like vnto other Nations, for they did not value their eales, or did geld them for their tillage; and they did eat their Cowes when they were with calfe, for they were then fattest: and sometimes they fed vpon fish.

Some-

- A.** Sometimes they did not eat till night, hauing made a light breakfast, and at night they made good cheere, hauing a drinke compounded of tyme, mynts, anys seeds, and other good herbes, of a good scent, or else beere; but in the time of warre, they dranke nothing but pure water, and they carried with them as much meale as would suffice them a day. They did eat flesh halfe boiled, holding it to be of better tast, and to retaine the substance: and they did also feed vpon fish dried in the sunne, if they found not any thing else to eat. In time of peace they were alwaies bare-headed, and had their haire cut; only they left a little tuft vpon the forehead. They did willingly go barefooted, to harden themselves for all discommodities. Their netherstocks went not beneath the knee, and their breeches were of flax or hempe. In Summer their cloakes were of fine cloth, and in winter it was of a course wooll: their lodging was on the ground, or on a forme with a mattrasse. Their children were onely fed with their mothers milke, and if any one did put forth her child to nurse, she was suspected of adulterie. If they were vanquished in battaile, they fled to the mountains, & were neuer quiet, untill they were reuenged. If the gentlemen were in danger in battaile, their subiegs and seruants did hazard themselves to saue their liues, or to die with them. They did plant vpon Noble mens tombes, as many Obelisks as there had been enemies laine in fight vnder their commands. He that going to the warre, or being in campe, was found without his yron to strike fier, or without his sword by his side, or in his hand, was whipt for ignomie: and in those daies they were lightly armed with certaine coslets of yron, but much more of boyled leather; and for their other armes, they had the bow, the lance, and the sword. If any one went from the Campe without leaue, the first that met him might kill him, and his goods were presently confiscate. Going forth to fight, they slew the first beast they encountered, and wetting the points of their swords in the blood, they tasted of it; hoping that this ceremonie should be vnto them a happie preface of the victorie. They downed them that were much giuen to eating and drinking. They vsed Hieroglyphike letters, like vnto the Egyptians. And this is all that can be spoken of their ancient manners.

D.

Of Manners of the Scottishmen of these times.

- B.** Before we proceed any further, we must note, that the Scottishmen are diuided into High-land & Low-land men, the one being more courteous than the other, and the first verie rude, yet Christians, and verie valiant in the warre, as hauing no apprehension of death. The ciuile are they which liue in the Southerne parts, which is called Low-land, more fertile than the Northerne, and the inhabitants are called Low-land men, who commonly speake the English tongue. The rude are they which dwell towards the North, and they are called men of the High-land countrey. They retaine the manners, language, and armes of the Irish, from whom they had their beginning. They haue for their armes a bow and arrowes, a broad sword, with a sharpe pointed dagger. Finally, the Scottishmen are verie witty, and industrious; but giuen to reuenge, when as they find meanes to take it. They are also verie subtle and politike, and inclined to factions and seditions, and verie capable of all sciences. They haue been held for a long time to be verie faithfull: whereof the French kings, who vse them for the guard of their bodies, giue sufficient testimonie.

Of Riches of Scotland.

- T.** The countrey of Scotland is in some parts leane and barren. The trafficke of come, of wooll, and sale of Smithes coals, of carseys, of lynyngs, of flax, of hydes, and of herring, and of salmon, which is the most profitable, frees them from discommodities, and makes them to vse that which forraigne Nations brings vnto them, if it be necessarie. And they are not without rich Merchants, who trafficke into all parts, especially towards the North; and there comes vnto them much shipping, by reason of the many

C iij

safe

XI:

ports they find there. But a great part of merchandise, especially of that which is more for pleasure than necessity, is transported into England.

¶ Forts of Scotland.

Scotland and England are under one King, I do not see that any other doth exceed this Realme in strength of situation; for that it is compassed about by the Sea, and within it, the Countrey is so full of rocks, mountains, and fouldnes, that it is held for this cause to be invincible, so that the inhabitants are forced to flee, they fly to their mountains, where they live of dried fish, and of the flesh of wild beasts. For this cause should assault them in these places, they are so favourable vnto them, as a hundred men were able to defeat a great armie. They have two Forts onely vpon the frontiers of England, whereof the one is Dunbar, a great port on the English coast, and in the gulf of Edenborough, which is opposite to Barwick. The other is towards the fouldnes of Edenborough, which is a high mountain, separated from others, and this fort is called in some sort Starling. As for other places, there is Edinborough, called by the Scottish Irish, Muir Baden, that is to say, the Towne of Eaden. Some hold that it is the place which *Adam* called the winged Castle; for that Edinborough signifieth a winged Castle. This is the capital Towne of Scotland, seated on high, being a mile long from East to West, but much lesse in breadth. This Towne is strong, and of reasonable strength, being compassed in with good wals. Vpon the West part there is a high rocke, and vpon this rocke a strong Castle, vnder which is scene a deep valley on every side, but towards the Towne, and for this cause they hold this Fort impregnable, unless they contend with them that are masters of the Towne. This Fort is called the Maiden castle, for that the Kings daughters were in old time kept and bred vpon it, until they were fit for marriage. There is also Aberdene, which is a good fort vpon the Germane Sea. Moreover, there is a Mannie a good and strong Towne called Fordun, whose situation will trouble them that should assault it. As for the men, we haue already spoken of their courage, and their number is sufficient: so as they are able to resist a great foraine power, especially at this time, whenas one king enioyes both Scotland and England, the Scottishmen should alwaies be assisted by the English, who without doubt being vnited, would make a great defence.

¶ Government of Scotland.

Scotland is composed of three Orders, that is to say, of the Nobilitie, the Clergie, and the third Estate. The King, to speake after their manner, is direct Lord of all the lands, and hath Royall authoritie and iurisdiction both ouer Secular and Clergie. The kings eldest sonne, as soon as he is borne, is called Duke of Rothaile, and Senechall of Scotland. The kings other children are simple called Princes. The most honourable among the Nobilitie, were in old time the Thanes, who were Officers vnto the king, whereof the chiefe were called Abithanes, and they that were inferior, vnder Thanes. But these names are lost by degrees, since the time that *Malcolme* the third of that name, King of Scotland, gaue the title of Earle and Baron, receiued from the Normans, to gentlemen of best merit. Since which time there is also crept into Scotland as well as into England, the titles of Dukes, Marquises, Earles, Vicounts, and Barons. The first that brought the title of Duke, was *Robert* the third, about the yeare 1400, as the king of England, who reignes at this present, hath brought in the honourable titles of Marquis and Vicount. These are held for the chiefe of the Nobilitie, and haue place and voice in Parliament, they are called Lords, like vnto the Bishops.

Among the other Nobles, they put in the first rancke the golden Knights, who take their oath with great solemnitie. In the second rancke are they whom they terme Lairds, who in high number no man is admitted, unless his lands did hold immediately of the King, and had high, middle, and base iustice. In the third rancke they put those that are

issued from honorable families, but without any title, and they are particularly called Gentlemen. All the rest, as Citizens, Merchants, Artificians, and others, are rancked among the people; yet the multitude doth in a manner terme them all gentlemen, that are rich, or keep good houses. Moreover, the younger sonnes of Earles, Lords, and Knights, succeed not to any part of their fathers patrimonie; for that the whole succession descends vnto the elder by the Lawes of Scotland, to the end they may preferre their families. As for the people, to the end that no insupportable thing be ordained against them in Parliament, it is lawfull for them to send three or foure Bourgeses of every Towne; there to speake their opinions freely of any thing that shall be propounded, with the other two orders. In regard of power, there is not any one so potent as the Vice-Roy, Regent, or Gouvernor of Scotland, who gouernes the whole Realme, either in the absence of the king, or at his decease, or else during the Kings minority. The authoritie of the Parliament of the Realme is verie absolute, and this assemblie consists of three sorts of persons, that is to say, of Lords spirituall, as Bishops, Abbots, and Priors; of Lords temporall, as Dukes, Marquises, Earles, Vicounts, and Barons; and in the third place, of the deputies of Townes. It is not long since that they haue added to this number, two Deputies for every Countie. The king prescribes the time when they shall assemble, and sends forth the Summons. The causes of the assemblie being declared by the Chancelor, the Lords spirituall doe apart chuse eight of the temporall Lords, and the Temporall Lords as many of the spirituall, and all these being together, name eight of the Deputies of the Counties. And as many Bourgeses of Townes, which make two and thirtie, who with the Chancelor, Treasurer, Keeper of the Priue Seale, Kings Secretarie, and others, allow or reject that which shall be propounded to the Parliament, hauing first imparted it vnto the king. Those things which are admitted are carefully debated, by the three Estates, and that which is allowed of by the pluralitie of voyces, is presented vnto the king; who presently doth signifie his pleasure; and if any thing dislikes him, it is presently raised out.

That which holds the first rancke next vnto the Parliament, is the Colledge of Iustice, which they terme the Session, the which was instituted by king *James* the fifth, in the yeare 1532, appointing a President, and foure Councillors; whereof seven were Clergie men, and seven of the Laitie, (to whom they haue since added the Chancelor, who holds the first place, and five other Councillors) three chiefe Registers, and as many Advocates as shall be thought good by the Parliament. This Court is held every day except Sunday and Munday, from the first of Nouember, vnto the 15 of March, and from the day after Trinitie Sunday, vnto the first of August. The rest of the time is spent in vacations. They iudge according to the Lawes and ordinances of the Realme, and whenas they faile, they haue recourse vnto the Ciuile Law.

There are also Subalternall Courts in every Countie, whereas the Vicount, or his Lieutenant doth iustice to them of the countie, and sometimes they appeal from his sentence to the Colledge of Iustice: Most of these Vicounts are by succession; and their titles are hereditarie: for, the Kings of Scotland, to bind the Nobilitie more straightly vnto them, did in old time institute Vicounts to be perpetuall and hereditarie. There are also ciuile Courts in Royall fees, in which there are Bayliffes, euen as there are Magistrats in Burghes and free Townes. There are other Courts, which they call the Commissaries Court, whereof the chiefe is at Edinborough, whereas they plead before foure Iudges; touching Testaments, the rights of Ecclesiasticall livinges, Tithes, Diuorces, and such like, whereof the knowledge doth of right belong vnto the Church.

As for criminall causes, the chiefe Iudge Royall hath his seat at Edinborough, (his office hath been long in the house of the Earle of Argathelie) and these Iudges appoint two or three Lawyers, to take Informations of capital crimes, and that concerne the coming off of any member, or the confiscation of any mans goods. Many times the king appoints particular Iudges to take knowledge of a crime. The Vicounts in like manner in their iurisdicions, and the Magistrats in their Townes take notice of a murder, and

put the murder to death, so as he be taken within twentie foure houres; but at that time the knowledge belongs to the Judge Royall, or to them that haue Commission. Some Noble men haue the same priuiledge against theues, which are taken in their iurisdictiones. This is all which can be spoken touching the politike Government: Now I come vnto the Church.

Religion of Scotland.

XVII. Scotland received the Christian Faith in the time of Pope Victor the first, in the year 373. and the first Christian King was *Crakinte*, who died in the year 373. *Crakinte* the first sent *Caladus* thither to root out the Pelagian heresie; which began to be false there vnder *Eugenius* the second, who died in the year 460. Since this time the Realme continued long in the profession of the Romish Church, vntill these latter times, when it began to embrace the true profession of the Gospells, which hath beene the chiefest ornament of the Realme of King *James*, who now liues, as all Romish Kingdome, and all their ceremonies, at least in the publike profession of Religion, and order of their Church government.

XVIII. There were Archbishops in Scotland. The one of Saint Andrewes, and the other of Glasgo. Vnder the Archbishopricke of St. Andrewes, there are eight Bishopricks, that is, Duneldene, Aberdeen, Moray, Dumblan, Brechin, Rossen, Cathanesse, and the Orkneys. And that of Glasgo hath three, that is to say, of Galloway, Argyle, and of Sodor, or of the Islands of Sute, Mule, Yle, and others. The Clergie were in former times gouerned by the authoritie of Decrees and Councils; but now they are subject vnto Lawes made by the King, and confirmed by their owne mouthes. All Ecclesiastiques liue after the manner of England, according to such Ordinances as haue been made since the change of Religion, and rejecting the superstitious ceremonies of the Church of Rome.

Kings of Scotland.

XIX. *Fergus* was the first which carried the name of King of Scotland; 320 yeares before the coming of *Christ*. He reigned 25 yeares.

To him succeeded these that follow.

Fergus reigned 25 yeares.
Adair reigned 19 yeares.
Dunadale reigned 48 yeares.
Reathen reigned 26 yeares.
Kenbe reigned 14 yeares.
Therese reigned 72 yeares.
Isle reigned 30 yeares.
Eiman reigned 30 yeares.
Duff reigned 9 yeares.
Eugene the first reigned 19 yeares.
Alfer reigned 2 yeares by usurpation.
Eugene the second reigned 17 yeares.
Fergus reigned 48 yeares; and in his time Scotland was made tributarie to the English.
Ebene the first reigned 7 yeares.
Adair the second reigned in the time that our Saviour came into the world, his reigne was 40 yeares, and he died in the year of grace 34.
Isle the second reigned 20 yeares, he died in the year of grace 100.

Corbrede reigned 18 yeares; he died in the year 71.
To *Corbride*, *Dardan* succeeded, he reigned almost 4 yeares; and died in the year 74.
Colbrede Galle reigned 35 yeares; he died in the year 109.
Duchash reigned 3 yeares; and died in the year 112.
Mogale reigned 36 yeares; he died in the year 148.
Conare reigned 14 yeares; and died in the year 162.
Ethodie the first succeeded him.
Satrabel succeeded him.
Donald the first reigned 21 yeares; and died in the year of grace 216.
Ethodie the second succeeded him.
Athrie succeeded *Ethodie*; of these two the one was slaine, and the other flew him self.
Nathalie succeeded, and was slaine as a cruell

A. cruell tyrant in the year 253.
Findoe reigned 10 yeares, he died in the year 263.
Donald the second reigned 1 yeare, and was slaine. *Donald* the third was also slaine. *Cratin* he succeeded him.
Fincormack succeeded him.
Romash succeeded *Fincormack*.
Angulan. *Fetelmack*.
B. *Eugenius* the first reigned three yeares; he died in the year 379. and then *Maximus* being sent by the Emperour, and afterwards becoming a tyrant, inuested himselfe of the Island of great Britaine, so as Scotland remained fortie foure yeares without a king, vnto the year of Grace 423.
Fergus the second nephew to *Eugenius* was made king; he reigned 7 yeares, and died in the year 430.
C. *Eugenius* the second reigned 31 yeares, he died in the year 461.
Dungard. *Constantine*.
Congal, he died in the year 501.
Conar, he reigned 35 yeares.
Eugenius the third succeeded him.
Connall reigned and died in the year 578.
Rimastille.
Aidan reigned 27 yeares, he died in the year 606. *Kenneth Reir*.
Eugenius the fourth reigned 13 yeares, he died in the year 632.
Fergusbeard, he was put in prison.
Rebeard reigned 14 yeares, he died in the year 646.
Fergusbeard succeeded him.
Maldun died in the year 684.
Eugenius the fifth. *Eugenius* the sixth. *Ambirkeles*. *Eugenius* the seauenth a religious Prince: he died in the year 716.
E. *Mordac*. *Ethfin*. *Eugenius* the eighth. *Fergus* the third. *Saluathie*.
Acheue, he died in the year 820.
Congal. *Dungal*. *Alpin*. *Remeth*.
Donald the fifth, he died in the year 860.
Constantine the second *Ethe Gregorie* reigned 22 yeares, and died in the year 893.
Donald the sixth. *Constantine* the third, who in the fortieth yeare of his reigne became a Monk. *Malcolme* 1. *Duffe Chlen*.
F. *Kemek* died in the year 1000.
Constantine the fourth reigned 3 yeares.
Grimme. *Malcolme* the second reigned 13 yeares, he died in the year 1040.

Duncan. *Macabee*.
Melcome Camnoir, reigned 30 yeares, he died in the year 1097.
Donald the seauenth. *Ethgar*, he was the first which caused himselfe to be appointed in Scotland. *David*. *Malcome* 3. *William* the Lyon, he reigned 49 yeares, and died in the year 1204.
Alexander the third who hauing no heires of his body left Scotland in great troubles, the which was gouerned by six men during the contention for the succession betwixt *John Balliol* sonne to the eldest daughter of king *David*, and *Robert Bruns* father to *Alexander* the third. *John* came vnto the crowne by the means of the king of England, to whom he did homage contrary to the will of the Scottisshmen: In the end the English led him as a prisoner into England, and the countrie was gouerned by regents, at the deuotion of the English.
Robert was called to be king of the Scottisshmen, he defeated *Edward* the third, and made himselfe peaceable master of Scotland.
David sonne to *Robert* succeeded him, but he was expelled by *Edward* sonne of *John Bailliol*, and fled into France: yet this *Edward* is not put into the number of lawfull kings. Scotland also was gouerned by *Robert Stuart*, in the name of king *David* the second who did valiantly vntill the returne of his king out of France.
After the death of *David* the Estates of Scotland chose *Robert Stuart* nephew to the last king *David*, and sonne to his filter, and to *Robert* Gouvernor of Scotland during the absence of king *David*, *John* bafe sonne to *Robert*, who also tooke the name of *Robert*. *James* the fifth. *James* the second. *James* the third came to the crowne at the age of 7 yeares, in the year 1463. *James* the fourth. *James* the fifth who first married with *Magdalen* of France, daughter to king *Francis* the first, and after, with the Duke of Guis's daughter, of whom came *Marie*, who was married to *Francis* the second the French king, and after his death to the Earle of Lenox, from whom she had *James* the sixth king of England and Scotland now reigning.



A DISCOVERSE OF IRELAND.

The Contents.

Ireland, what names it carried in old time, the description and situation according unto Ptolemee the Geographer, the length and breadth. 2. Division of Ireland into five principall Countries or Prouinces, and how many Counties there be in every Prouince, with the number and names of the Townes and Castles contained in every Countie, and also of the chiefe Lords and Gentlemen of every Prouince. 3. The aire, sweet and temperat, and what diseases the Irish are subject unto. 4. Singularities of this Island in the production of Beasts, Fish, and Fowle. 5. Martines, birds of an admirable property, which being dead putrifie not. 6. Irish in old time lined of many flesh, and did eat these dead bodies. 7. A gillie and great courage of the Irish. 8. The Irish praise commonly to the new moone. 9. Galloway and Waterford good Townes of traffique. 10. Souliars of Ireland, diuided into three ranks. 11. Forts built in Ireland. 12. When Ireland was made subject to the English. 13. Wilde Irish how they are governed by their Lords and Judges. 14. Jurisdiction and Officers of Ireland. 15. Christian Religion when received in Ireland. 16. Archbishops and Bishops which be in Ireland.

Ireland, which some of the auncients called Hibernia, others Iuvernia, Iuernia, and Ierne, Iris, and Ogigia, and by the Irish themselves Erin, is seated betwixt the Arctike circle, and the Tropick of Cancer, yet approaching to the Pole Arctike, it contains in latitude foure degrees and a halfe from the Meridian, and is inclosed according to the computation of the Moderns, betwixt the twentieth & one and twentieth Paralell, vpon the Southern parts the longest day hath sixteen houres and about three quarters, and in the farthest parts Northward it hath neere eightene houres. In regard of the terrestiall Globe, this Island called by Ptolemee little Britaine, lies betwixt great Britaine and France, toward the East it hath Ireland, diuided by a tempestuous sea, of about a daies sailing. This Island is neere of an equall forme from South to North, and is not halfe so big as great Britaine. Some make it to be 70 German leagues, and the breadth from West to East, 23 German leagues; and others measure it after another manner; but Camille, Counte worthy of credence, teacheth vs that it hath foure hundred thousand paces in length and two hundred thousand in breadth. Some affirmeth that Ireland containeth in length from Blackebandon in the South (which is West, and by North Saint Michaels Mount in Cornwall) unto St. Coleman Island, alias Carnagh in the North of Wiltshire, which is West upon Donfris in Scotland) three hundred and twentie English miles, and in breadth from Dublin (which is South West from Chester) to Crough in the North of Wiltshire, two hundred miles.

Ireland

A Ireland is diuided into five principall prouinces, that is to say, into Leinster, which lieth on the East, into Munster, which lieth on the South; Conaugh which lieth on the West, Ulster which lieth on the North, & Meath which lieth in the middle of midland.

A BRIEFEE DESCRIPTION OF THE PROVINCE OF LEINSTER, DIVI DED INTO EIGHT COVNTIES.

The prouince of Leinster containeth that part of land which was first conquered by the English hauing in it these counties, that is to say, Dublin, Kildare, Caterlough, Waxford alias Walsford, Kilkenny, Kings Countie, Queens Countie, and Wickloe.

¶ The first Countie.

The countie of Dublin containeth all the land from Balkrothery (neere to the countie of Meath) to Bray, which is the length of the countie, and includeth all the land between it and the towne of Dublin, the Kings lands, part of the mountaines of Otooles, and the Crosse of the countie of Dublin, being the Archbishops libertie, also his Islands in the sea, as Lambay, Irelands Eye, and Dalkey.

There are also in this countie fifteene townes, that is to say, the towne of Dublin, Swords, Ballothery, Luspicke or Luske, Clenshane, Hothie, New Castle, Kingsland, Ballamore, Fowlides towne, Bray or Breen, Wickloe, Macboygon, Arkloo, and Cloularkin.

There are moreover in this countie twentie foure castles, that of Dublin, Swords, New Castle, Tulloy, Dunshaglin, Poores Court, Castle Knock, Malahide, Castle Keunen, Rathferman, Moncton, Merion, Turucy, Dronnaugh, Donber, Belgard Lucan, Kilmanny, Donamore, Holme Patrick, Dercouragh, Ballgriffin, the Ward, Hothie Blawicke, and Ballutterell.

The names of the lords and chiefe gentlemen of this countie of Dublin, are, the Archbishop of Dublin, Lord Chancellor of Ireland, *Ierlande*, Lord of Hooth, Sir Dudley Loftes, *Fitz-Williams*, *Wingfield*, *Obernes*, *Otooles*, *Collier*, the Deane of Saint Patrick, *Barnemell*, *Batbe*, *Neuternill*, *Feugh Mac Hugh*, *Allin warren*, *Segrave*, *Fitz-simons*, *Burwell*, *Finglas*, *Talbot*, and *Walch*: In the tenth yeare of King Richard the second Robert Peere Earle of Oxford was created Marquis of Dublin; and afterward made Duke of Ireland in the same kings reigne.

¶ The second Countie.

The second countie in the prouince of Leinster is the countie of Kildare, and it is placed betweene the counties of Dublin, Caterlough, the Kings and Queens counties, and Meath: it hath Dublin toward the East, Caterlough to the South, the Kings and Queens counties to the West, and Meath vpon the North.

There are in this countie seuen townes, the names of which are Kildare, Manouth, Athy, the Naus, Kilkullen, Leixlip, and Castle Dermo.

There are in this countie 21 castles, that is, the castle of Kildare, that of Manouth, Leixlip, Baltinglas, Molhuffey, Euan Tipperer, Harrifon, S. Wolltons, Lispicke, Woodstocke, Carbery, Marlace, Conall, Rath Coffy, S. Katherines, Killka, Castle Marten, Donfrin, Monaster, Rathangan, and Osbertes towne.

The lords and chiefe gentlemen of this countie are, the Earle of Kildare, the Bishop of Kildare, the Baronet of Rebin, *Walsley*, baronet of Narcowe, *Enslact*, *Fitz-Gerald*, *Fitz-Lancel*.

The Earle of the King of great Brittain.
 The Earle of the King of great Brittain is *John, Earl of Arundell, Saint Michael, Eye, Woogan, Banerells, Al. A.*
Baron of Arundell, Duke of York, Surrey, Essex, and Flatsberry.

The Earle of the King of great Brittain is *John Gerald and baron of Ophaly.*
 The Earle was created in *Queene Maries* time, by the name of *Gerrard Fitz-Garret*
 baron of Ophaly.

The third Countie.

The third countie in the province of Leinster, is *Caterlough*, *alias* *Carlough*, and it is a long slip of land lying for the most part betweene the rivers of Slane and Barrowe, and containeth diuers lordships, anciently inhabited by the Englishmen; but now long after, it was recouered by the *Caucenagues*, which do inhabit both it, and much of the countie of *Wexford*. It hath in it certaine high mountaines vpon the East part, and shored is more plaine. The third part of the whole shire belongeth to the Earle of Ormond, and his brother *Sir Edmund Butler*. It is bounded with the countie of *Kildare* to the North, to the West and South with the *Queenes* countie; and with *Kilkenny* to the North-West.

Townes. There are in this countie but two townes of any note, that is, *Caterlough*, (from which the countie takes the name, which also *Lionell* Duke of Clarence began to wall, and *Bellingham* a most renowned lord deputed fortified with a castle) and *Leighlin*, where there was an Episcopall chaire, now vnitd to the See of *Fernes*, as *Camden* reports. Castles. As for castles, this countie hath the castle of *Caterlough* (as I haue said) that of *Leighlin*, *Barthomew*, *Rathalley*, *Fortenollon*, *Tully*, *Saint Molins*, and other of lesse note. Lords and Gentlemen. The lords and chiefe gentlemen of this countie, are, the Bishop of *Lawghlin* or *Leighlin*, *Sir Edmund Butler*, *Ragnal*, *Turlo Mac Donel Galloghly*, *Hugh Mac Shane*, *Harpole*, *Daniel O'Connell*, *Oge Brian Mac Camer*, *Caucenagues*, and *Oger wagon Barry*.

The fourth Countie.

The fourth countie of the province of Leinster is *Wexford*, *alias* *Waterford*, this countie containeth all the land betweene the haues of *Waterford*, to the demesnes of *Auklo* Castle vpon the sea coast. It hath the sea to the East, and South; the countie of *Wicklow* to the North; the river of *Barrow* neere *Roske*, and the countie of *Caterlough* to the West.

Townes. This countie hath but few townes of any importance and these are, *Wexford*, *Roske*, *Fernes*, and *Colmine*.

Castles. But it is well fortified with castles, for there are the castles, of *Wexford*, *Fernes*, *Intisheorch*, the tower of *Hooke*, *Belmagir*, *Donbrody*, *Bally hac*, *Adams towne*, *Bromfont*, *Tnirreme*, *Doncannon*, *Roskegarland*, *Old Croffe*, *Mountgarret*.

Lords and Gentlemen. The lords and gentlemen of this countie are, the Bishop of *Fernes* *Sir Henrie Wallop*, *Deuore*, *Browne*, *Stafford*, *Lampore*, also the *Sep of Crean Mac Morough*, *Donel Spinaugh*, *Thomas Masterson* seneschall, *Williams* in the right of the Lady *Colclonghe*, *Newel*, *Chewers*, *Edmunds*, *Hayer*, the three lords of the *Knitheloughe*, *Mac Pado*, *Mac Damar*, and *Edmund Duffe*, *Ketinge*, *Sinoti*, *Roches*, *Powers*, *James*, *Turners*, *Suroots*, and *Caucenagues*.

The fifth Countie.

The fifth countie in the province of Leinster is called *Kilkenny*. This countie hath the most show of ciuillitie of any other of the bordering counties, in respect of the faire feasts, of houses, the number of Castles and English manner of inclosure. It is bounded on the East by the river of *Barrow*; on the South by the river of *Shewore*; with the *Queenes* countie and *Ophaly* to the North; and with *Tipperary* to the West.

Townes. The chiefe townes in this countie are the Townes of *Kilkenny*, *Thomas towne*, *Calan*, *Inystrong*, and *Ganran*.

Castles. There are also the castles of *Kilkenny*, *Ganran*, *Balley rigate*, *Kelhs*, *Ballingtongh*, *Bane Church*, *Grace towne*, *Whites haule*, and others.

The

A The lords and chiefe gentlemen of this countie are, the Earle of Ormond and Offerie, Lord Vicount, *Mount Garret*, *Cantwells*, *Archdeacons Arches*, *Blanchewits*, *Birch Lonet*, and his sonnes, the Bishop of *Offery*, the Baronet of *Burnt Church*, *Comberfordes*, *Wessles*, *Dormers*, *Saint Legers*, *Bromesford*, *Butlers*, *Graces*, *Shees*, *Denes*, *Roskes*, *Stonge*, and of the English *Staffords*. The Earle of Ormonds eldest sonne is lord *Butler* and vicount *Thurles*.

The first Countie.

The first countie of this province is called *Kings* countie, but it was in old time called *Ophaly*, and is both wealthie and quiet, because it is by nature strong, and hath few passages and those well guarded. It containeth all the land between the countie *Kildare* and the river of *Shenin*; and it is bounded on the East with the countie of *Kildare*, on the west with the *Shenin*, and *West-Mearth*, on the South with the *Queenes* countie, and part of *Tipperary*; and on the North with *East-Mearth*.

Philips towne is the chiefe towne of this countie, which tooke the name of *King Townes*; *Philip*, as also this countie was in honour of him, called *Kings* countie.

In this countie there are the castles of *Fort Dingan*, *Crohan*, *Bally Butley*, *Bally Britaine*, *Minister Oris*, *Earon Dirrey*.

C The names of the chiefe gentlemen of this countie are, *Sir George Burcher* Lieutenant, *Sir Edward More* Constable of the fort, *Sir John Mac Connelan*, *More*, *Cowley*, *Fitzgarret*, *Philips*, *Omeloyes*, *Morrice*, *Sankey*, *Tirrell*, *Lany*, *Roske*, *Densies*, and *Foxes*.

The seventh Countie.

The seventh countie in the province of Leinster is the *Queenes* countie, *alias* *Leece*, this countie containeth all the land in effect betweene the river of *Barrow* and *Ormond*, including all that did belong to *Omore*, *Odiun*, *upper Oslery*, and *Slemarge*. It is bounded with the countie of *Kilkenny* to the South, with *Tipperary* to the West, with the *kings* countie, and the mountaine *Slebloom* to the North, and the river of *Barrow* to the East.

There are not any townes of account in this countie, but the chiefe towne is *Maryborough*, so called by *Queene Mary*.

The castles of this countie are the *Queenes Fort*, the *Shian*, the *Abbey of Leece*, *Strudabally*, *Donamaze*, the *Blacke Fort*, *Ballicockan*, and *Diserte*.

The lords and gentlemen of greatest reputation in this countie, are the baron of *Vpper Oslery*, *Warham Seintleger*, Lieutenant, *George Haruy* Constable of the Fort, *Brian Mac Douel*, *Pierce Butler* brother to the Earle of Ormond, *Cosbies*, *Harpole*, *Bowen*, *Mac Callough*, *Burnerton*, *Danels*, *Pigot*, *Barington*, *Lamden*, *Odini*, and diuers others.

The eighth Countie.

The eighth and last countie of the province of Leinster, is the countie *Wicklow*, this was lately made a countie in the government of *Sir Arthur Chichester*. It is bounded on the East with the sea, on the South with the countie of *Wexford*, on the West with the counties of *Carlough* and *Kildare*, and on the North with the countie of *Dublin*.

As for townes in this countie there is no mention made of any of importance and therefore I passe them ouer at this time.

There is the castle of *Lamraddon* and diuers others of lesse importance.

The chiefe gentlemen of this countie are *Sir Charles Occarrell*, and diuers others of his name. Now that I haue briefly touched euery particular both in the province of *Linster*, and also in euery particular countie of this province, I will now returne and shew you the commodities of the province of *Munster*, with the counties, townes and places of importance vnder the iurisdiction thereof.

Dij

A B R I F E

A BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF
THE PROVINCE OF MUNSTER, DIVI-
DED INTO SIX COUNTIES.

The second Province. The second province is called Munster, and is of all the other provinces the most commodious, in respect of the soile, haueins, rivers, and townes, and is diuided into six countie, that is to say, into Waterford, Limerick, Corke, Kerry, Desmond, and Tipperary, and the whole province is gouerned by a Lord president.

The first Countie.

The first countie of this province is Waterford, which containeth all the land betwene the riuer of Shoure (which falleth into the sea beneath Waterford) and the riuer of Youghall, called the Blacke water, and much of the land betwene the riuer of Bude and Blacke water, and includeth the mountaines called the Decies; the Bishopricke of Lismore vnitd to the See of Waterford, also Prendergrastes lands, and Powers countie. It hath for bounds vpon the East and South, the sea; vpon the North the Shoure; part of the countie of Corke vpon the South; and part of Limericke, and Tipperary to the West.

There are in this countie these townes of importance, the towne of waterford, Dongarvan, Lismore, and Kill-Mac-Thimas.

There are moreover in this countie these castles: that of Dongarvan, Kill-Mac-Thomas, the Passage, Derinleir, Cappalimi, Bellecouchin, the Hooke, Moncollon, Pilton, Domano, Kilmadin, Strangally, Kilmanahim, Ardmore, Clouey, Carraghmore, and Shian.

The lords and chiefe gentlemen in this countie of Waterford are these, the Bishop of Waterford and Lismore, the lord Power baron of Carraghmore, the heires of Fitz-Gerall late vicount baron of Dromano, Powers, Welles, Wifes, Maddens, Geraldines, Whites, Mandevilles, Condons, Craghes, Madings, Sherlockes, Prendergrasts, Newgents, Brownes, Dobnies, Lees, Lyes, and others.

The second Countie.

The second countie in this province is Limericke, and it contains all the land from the mountaine nere the red Shard ioyning to the countie of Corke, to the Shenin, as well about Limericke as beneath, in a manner as farre as Carigfoile, and from the mountaine of Slewlongher which diuides it from Kerrey, to the farthest part of Mac Brighams countie. It hath for bounds vpon the North-East, Tipperary; to the West, Slewlongher; to the South the countie of Corke; and the riuer of Shenin to the North-West.

The chiefe townes of this countie are these, the towne of Limericke, and the towne of Kilmallocke.

The castles of this countie are those of Blinry, Rakell, Carigonell Carignilshie, Adare, Cromie, Newcastle, Loughiray, Asketin, Shenier, Roberts towne, Castle Doiell, or Canell.

The lords and gentlemen of chiefeest note in this countie are these, the Bishop of Limericke, the lord Burke of Castle Conell, Burckes, Lacy, Stretches, Geraldines, Fwells, Shules, Welles, Obrisnes, Riens, Arthurcel, Fant, Shees, Foxes, Whites, Jordens, Flemings, and some others.

The

The third Countie.

The third countie of the province of Munster is called Clare, and it taketh the name of the Castle of Clare, now in the possession of the Earle of Twomond. It containeth nine Lordships, and hath in it two small Bishopricks: It hath for limits, from the Bay of Limericke to the Bay of Gallway, the sea: On the West, the countie of Gallway; to the North, and all the coast East and South it is enuironed with the riuer of Shenin: Some place this countie with the countie of Corke; others hold it to be the same that Twomond, in the province of Connaught.

The townes of note in this countie, are the towne of Inchequin, and the towne of Townes Clare.

As for Castles, there is that of Clare, Inchequin, Ballwanghan, Bouratry, Clowrane, Castles, Bridgetowne, and Donfany.

The chiefe lords and gentlemen of this countie are, the Earle Twomond, the Bishop of Killmaco, the Bishop of Killaloe, Mac Macon, O Garay Ochanah &c, the Baron of Inchequin. The Earles eldest sonne is called Baron of Ibracan, Sir Turlo O'Brien, Mac Ne Marro Reagh, Mac Ne Marro Fenn, O Laughlin, O Veylane, and others.

The fourth Countie.

The fourth countie in the province of Munster is that of Corke, and it containeth all the land adioyning to the sea from the riuer of Youghall, to the bay of Dingley, and the riuer of Manger ioyning to the countie of Kerrey; and includeth also the lands of the two Vicounts Barry & Farmey. It hath for bounds on the East, South & South-West, the sea; on the West, the mountaines of Slewlongher; and on the North, partly with the great water, and partly with the countie of Limericke.

The principall townes of this countie are those of Corke, Cloue or Clone, Rosse, Townes, Youghall alias Yoohill, Butiour, and Kinfale.

There are also in this countie these Castles of note, that is to say, the Castle of Liff, men, Ballimartor, Castleton, Corcklebege, Moyallo, Roch, Butevunt, Beare, Ballinfolly, Glanuer, Couceys, Barreys Court, Shondon, Closfoe, &c.

The chiefe lords and gentlemen of this countie are these, the Earle of Clancarke, the Vicount of Butevunt or Barry, the Vicount Rosse, or F. Ermye, the lord Convey, Sir Owen Ofulian, Meagh, Donoh Okeife, Emien, Mac Carty, Cormocke, Ocraldines, Condons, Barrots waters, Meaghes, Skides, Rafells, the Bishop of Corke and Clone, the Bishop of Rosse, S. Warham S. Leger, Sir Owen Mac Carty Reagh, Mac Thomas Barry Oge, Sir Finn Odriscoll, the sonnes of Sir Dermot, and Sir Cormock Mac Teage, Ogallegan Mac Auly, Donell Pappo Mac Cartie Fitz-Edmonds, seneschall of Imokelly, Desmond, Ofulian More, Flemings, and diuers others of good note.

The fifth Countie.

The fifth countie in this province, is that of Kerry, and it containeth onely that land which lyeth betwene the riuer of Manger, and the riuer of Shenin, and includeth the most part of the mountaine Slewlongher, which being the most Easterly part of the countie boundeth vpon the countie of Limericke, and Corke to the East, vpon the Shenin to the North, vpon the Sea to the West, and vpon the riuer of Manger to the South.

The chiefe townes of this countie are those of Ardirt, Dingley, and Traily, as for therest they are of no great importance, and therefore I will not trouble the reader with too tedious relations thereof.

The Castles of note of this countie are those of Lixfuaue Ardirt, the Island Tar-brett, Castle Mange, and Carigtoyle.

The lords and gentlemen of greatest reputation in this countie, are, the Baron of Lixfuaue, alias lord Fitz-Morice, the Bishop of Ardirt, Patrick Fitz-Morice, Fitz-Garries, Rice, More, Trant and others.

Diig.

The

¶ The first Countie.

The first countie of this Province is Tipperary, and it is divided into two, the one called also Orlagh of Tipperary, the other the countie Palatine or libertie of Tipperary, and is a most fertile, that of the Croffe is under the Archbishop of Cashell, the other is under the Bishop of Ormond. It containeth all the land in a manner from the town of Kilkenny to the countie of Kilkenny, to the countie of Omitians Mac Ibrion Arva Omitians, and Nether Ormond, Conishinaugh, Coshesherly, Musky, Guricke, the greater part of Arlow, and all Onaught. It is bounded with the countie of Kilkenny, and the Queens countie in the East; with the countie of Limericke and Cork to the South; with Shenin & part of Limericke to the West; and with part of Kings countie to the North.

This countie comprehendeth the castles of Carig, Caier, Nenaugh, Thurles, and Kilkenny, and of these the Earle of Ormond is Vicount: then that of Temple-More, and Districke, Redgray, Loughmay, and Killelall. And this countie hath in it many old religious houses, wherof Acahill is chief. The Lords and Gentlemen of greatest account in this province, are the Archbishop of Cashell, the Bishop of Emely, the Lord of Donboyne, the Lord of Caier or Keray, the Baron of Loughmay, Baskers, Barrells, Cantrells, Kelenys, O'Byers, Englisbes, Burkes, and others.

A BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE PROVINCE OF MEATH, DIVIDED INTO THREE COUNTIES.

The province of Meath hath his name of Medium, or the middle part of the land, for it is placed in the midst of the other foure Provinces: and as the first is contained but one shire or countie, commonly called by the name of Meath: but in the time of K. Henrie the eight (to the end that justice might with more facilitie be ministered, and for that this countie was too large to be governed by one shire) it was divided into two counties, namely the countie of East Meath, and the countie of West Meath: and now also the countie of Longford is reputed thereof.

¶ The first Countie.

The first countie containeth all the land between Balrothery in the countie of Dublin, & the town of Boyne, and the town of Drogheda; then not far from thence it extendeth itselfe from that river to the countie of Louth, and to the border of Caution, and from thence in breadth to the countie of Kildare: so that it hath the sea to the East: the countie of Down to the West: West Meath, Kildare, and the kings countie to the South: and the countie of Louth to the North. There are in this countie the townes of Trim, Nouan, Athboy or Abbey, Kellis, Drogheda, and Calicke.

The

Castles.

The Castles of this countie are many, that is, that of Trim, Kelline, Donfany, Ar-moham, Stane, Goltrim, Castle Ricard, Dullerston, Gormanston, Donimere, Crixton, Cellcarne, Trimbleston, Rathmore, Molingar, Bedlowes towne, Stackallon, Ruerciton, Castle Iorden, Arberchane, Gilliafston, Colpe, Veste, Moynaltie, Dooth, Maylaugh, New Castle, Castleton of Athboy, Moyner, Dangan, Bellebogan, Culmolten, Murmudry, Platten, Castle Twerby, Beduine, and many others.

The lords and chieftest gentlemen are, the Bishop of Meath, the Vicount of Gormanston, the Baron of Donfany, the Baron of Kilny, the Baron of Trimbleston, the Baron of Stane: Barnewells, Haffenes, Darriotts, Segraues, Missetts, Drakes, Bathes, Wessels, Fleminges, Eeners, Rochferts, Pollocks, Cheuers, Whites, Prouefote, Ecoflaces, Cefackes, Newt-niles, Hills, Darcey, Preflans, Mores, Bethanghes, and others.

Lords and Gentlemen.

¶ The second Countie.

The second countie in the province of Meath is called West Meath, this countie contains all the land from the Red more beyond Athboy to the Shenin & Deluin Mac Coughlan, and in breadth from the kings countie to the countie of Longford. It hath for bounds vpon the East, the kings countie: vpon the South, the Shenin: vpon the West, the countie of Longford: and the countie of Caution and a part of East Meath vpon the North.

The chieftest townes of this countie are, the towne of Molingar, Athlone, Ballimore, Fower, Deluin, and Kilkenny West.

The Castles of this countie are those of Killucan, Castleton of Deluin, Waterstone, Tutestone, and others of lesse importance, as Ruwier, Triffertmaugh, and Roblstone and others.

The lords and gentlemen of greatest reputation in this countie are, the Baron of Deluin, Nugents, Delamers, Sir Thomas le Strange, Darcey, Tyrrells, Daltons, Tuts, Dillons, Lacus alias Pettits, Slopes, and the heires of Sir George Stanley, and others.

Lords and Gentlemen.

¶ The third Countie.

The third countie of this province is Longford, and it is a large quantitie of ground possessed by a people called Offarolls. It is bounded on the West by the riuer of Shenin, and a part of the countie of Latrim; on the North by the countie of Caution; and on the East, and South, by the countie of West Meath.

There is not any towne nor Castle of importance in this countie, but the towne and Castle of Longford.

The names of the gentlemen of greatest note in this countie are, Offarall buy, Offarall hane, Nugents, Eirgus Offarall, and diuers of the same name, and Dillons, and some others.

Towne and Castle.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE PROVINCE OF CONNAGHT DIVIDED INTO FIVE COUNTIES.

The Province of Connaught, bendeth all Westwards from the riuer of Shanin, betwene that riuer and the sea, and containeth five counties, that is to say, Sligo, Mayo, Gallway, Roskoman, and Lettrim: and Camden writes, that Sir Henry Sidney Lord Deputie of Ireland, hath ioined to this Province the countie of Clare: but because it did in former times belong vnto the province of Munster, you shall finde it among the counties of that province, in the description thereof.

The 4. Province.

¶ The

The first countie of the province of Connaught is called Slego, this countie containeth all the land between the borders of *Maglough* and the plaines of Connaught, by the skirts of the mountaines of the *Corlewes*, to the river & Lough of Boyle in *Mac Dermod* Countie; and from thence North-West by the river of Moyne, which divideth the countie of Mayo from that of Slego. It hath for bounds to the East the countie of *Maglough*, to the West Mayo, to the North the sea, and the countie of Rosloun to the South.

There are not any townes of importance in this countie but the towne of Slego. There are the Cattles of Slego, and that of Ballimore, then those of Bondrois, and Bleeke, both which are belonging to Odonell.

The chief gentlemen of this countie are *Odinell, Oshaw Slego, Mac Phillipin, Mac*

The second Countie.

THIS second county in the province of Connaught is Mayo; and this county containeth all the land of *Mae William Ewter*, and all the lands of *Omales*; *Mae Donnell*, *John Justice*, *Mae Jordan*, *Mae Ofterlongh*; and the *Omales*: it hath also certaine Islands in the sea, both fertill and commodious for fishing. It is bounde toward the West and North with the *Omales*; towards the East with the countie of Slego and Roscomen, and with the County of Galway towards the South.

There are no townes in this countie of any importance.
There are some Castles in this countie, which are these; Castle Barre, Ardenary, and
the Castle of Browne, belonging to the Earle of Ormond.

The men of greater wisdom and experience in this country, are the Bishop of Allander, Mr. Auadonne, Sir Richard Burke, Mac Jordan, Mac Morris, Sir Richard Iure, Sir John Burke, Jastian Mac Donnell, Mac Sullougher, Barker, Mac Dinell a curraue.

● The third Count

The barbourie of this province is the county of Gallway, this countie containeth a great quantitie of land lying in manner square, betwene Maio and Twomond North and South and the Shen Ine and West, faying the Northerly part thereof, with the river of Sacke and Rofcomen to the East. It hath three Ilands in the sea within the bempne of the countie of Gallway.

The chief towne is Gallway, which is exceeding faire, and that of Artheury an auncient towne, but ruined and in decay, and there is also that of Toam.

There are in this county the Castles of Glansferr, Milecke, Gort, Portumno, Ouran, Divilaughlin, Lettrim, Balliloughbreugh, and Louford.

The Lords and chief gentlemen of this countie, are, the Archbishop of Toamth
Bishop of Clonard, the Lord *Brangham*, Sir *Hubbert Mac Dany*, the Bishop of Clonsfer
upon the Shenin, the Bishop of Kilmead, the Baron of *Detrim*, *Mac Cough*, & the *Burke*.
The Barons eldest sonne is Lord *Burke*, baron of *Dunkellin* or *Eskelline*.

● The fourth Countie.

The fourth county of this province is called Rockman, and it containeth all the plaines of Connahghe or Moughery, beginning at Abbey Boyle, neere to the town of Curlew, and stretcheth along by the shenn to the river of Suella thence to the East and South, the countie of Olegio to the North and the counties of Sligo and Mayo to the West.

A The chiefe townes of note in this countie, are the townes of Roscoman, and Abooc. Townes.
This countie hath in it these castles, that of Roscoman, Athlone, Saint Iones, Ballin- Castles.
cabler, Ballimestow, and Alege.

The chiefe lords and gentlemen of this countie are the Bishop of Elphine, O *Conor* Dun, O Hanley, Mac Edmond, Brabson, Tuts, Dillons, O *Conor* Roo, Mac Dermot, Obern Offlagan, Mac Gerrot, S. Thomas le Strange, Nugents, the heirs of S. Nicholas Manby, & others.

The first Countie.

THe fifth countie of this province of Connaught is called Letrim: It hath the countie of Slego to the South and West; the Shenin to the South and South-East; the countie of Longford to the South-East; and the counties of Donagall, and Fermanagh to the North; and Caoun to the East.

There are no townes of importance in this countie.
 There is but one Castle of importance in this countie which is the castle of Lettrim. Castles.
 As for the gentlemen, *O'Rourke*, and those of his kindred are the chiefe in this county. Gentlemen.

A BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE PROVINCE OF VILSTER divided into ten Counties

THis prouince of Vlster lieth in the farthest part of realme Northward; and it is diuided from the prouince of Meath with the riuier of Boyne on the South- East part: & with the Breney which is *the fifth Prouince* *Releys* countrie on the South part; and on the South- West part, it boundeth vpon Connaght, namey vpon *O Rorakes* countrie, & *O Conor Sleaght* the refis inuironed with the sea. It hath in it ten counties, namey, Louth, Downe, Caoun, Antrim, Armaugh, Monaghan, Fermanaugh, Tyrone, Donegall, and Londonderry.

Lionell, sonne to king Edward the third, was created Earle of Ulster in the time of his fathers raigne.

The first Countess

THe first countie of this prouince is called Louth: and this countie containeth in it all the land by the sea side, from the riuer of Boyne nere Drogheda vnto the haven of Carlingford. It confines towards the East, with the sea; towards the South, with the prouince of Meath; with the countie of Monaghan to the West; and with the countie of Armaugh to the North.

The chief townes of any importance are, Louth, Drogheda, Dundalke, Ardee, and Carlingford.

The lords & gentlemen of chiefe note in this countie, are the Bishop of Ardeigh, the lord of Louth, *Brandons, Taffies, Cassbells, Barinwells, Reytens, Dowdalls, Six Garrat More, Sir John Bedlow, Plunkets, Bedlowes, Clintons* and many others.

¶ *The second Countie.*

THe second countie of the prouince of Vlster is called Downe: this countie containeth all the countries betwene the hauen of Carlingford, and the Bay of Knockfergus, with the lordship of Newry, and some others. It hath for bounds to the East, the sea; to the South, the hauen of Carlingford, and that riuer; to the West, the countie of Armaugh; and the Bay of Knockfergus to the North.

The chiefe towne of this countie, are the towne of Downe, and the Newry. Townes.
There are in this countie these castles, that of Dondrom, Scattricke, Raunhedy, Castles.
Greene Castle, Castle Reagh, and the Castle of the narrow water.

The lords and gentlemen of greatest reputation in this countie, are, the Bishop of Downe, Sir Henry Bagnall, Sir Hugh Mac Guines, Mac Cartan, Iuan Roo Mac Coulle, Sauges, Bensons, Russells, Fitz. Simons, Donalds, Cormack O Neale, Brian Oge O Neale & some others.

¶ *The third Countie.*

The third countie of this prouince is called *Cauon*; and it contains all the lands called heretofore *Oreighles* countrie. It is bounded with the countie of *Letrim* to the West,

with the countie of Fermanagh; and Managhan to the North, and with the countie of West-Meath to the South.

There are in this countie no townes nor castles of importance but the towne and castle of Carrickfergus.

The chiefe men of this countie are the O'Reillys.

¶ The fourth Countie.

The fourth countie of the province of Ulster is called Antrim. It containeth all the land between the bay of Knockfergus and the river of Ban, to the sea. It hath the river of Ban to the West, the sea to the East, Clandeboye to the South, and the maine

The chiefe townes of this countie are those of Antrim Knockfergus, Kells, and Coleraine.

The chiefe castles of this countie are, Castle Marten, and Dunluce.

The chiefe gentlemen of great reputation in this countie are, Sir Brian Mac Phelin,

¶ The fifth Countie.

The fifth countie of this province is called Armagh it containeth all the land between the river of Dundubay and the Blacke water. It is bounded to the South with the countie of Louth; with the Blacke water to the North, with the river of Newry to the East, and with the countie of Monaghan to the West.

There are no other townes of importance in this countie but the towne of Armagh from whence the countie hath the name: it is an Archiepiscopall See, and the Metropolitane of the whole Island.

The chiefe castles are, the fort or castle called Elizaabeth where the Earle of Essex built a bridge, and the fort of the Blacke water.

The lords and chiefe gentlemen of this countie are, the Archbishop of Armagh, Primate and Metropolitan of all Ireland, Art Mac Baron, the clergie of Armagh, O Hanlons, O Lough Brallough, Turlo Mac Mahon, Mac Henries Fonnes, Turlo O Neale, & some others.

¶ The sixth Countie.

The sixth countie of this province is that of Monaghan: this countie was in times past called Errill, given at the time of the conquest to one Reginald Fitz-Ryse or Beare-fonne, supposed to be one of the foure knights that slew Thomas Beckett. It bordereth vpon the countie of Louth, Eastwards; vpon the countie of Caoun to the South and South-West; vpon the Longhame South-West; and vpon the countie of Armagh towards the North.

There are not any townes or castles of importance in this countie but the towne and castle of Monaghan.

The chiefe men of this countie are at this day called the Mac Mahons, and were at first the offspring of the Fitz-Ryses.

¶ The seventh Countie.

The seventh countie in the province of Ulster is Fermanagh: It confines on the North with the countie of Tyrone; on the West with Ormesburie countie; on the South with the countie of Caoun; and with the countie of Monaghan on the East. In this countie there is not any towne of importance.

There are the Castles of Kneskellin, and the Abbey of Leekool.

The chiefe gentlemen of this countie, are the offspring of MacGwier, who was very noble and successful untill he overthrew himselfe and his state in the late rebellion.

¶ The eighth Countie.

The eighth countie of this province is Londonderry: it containeth all the countie called O'Connell, the countie of Colran, and one Baronie of Tyrone, formerly called Inisholin: these lands are lately made an entire countie at the suit of the Londoners, who have undertaken to plant them with English.

There are no townes of importance in this countie.

The countie hath diuers castles, that of Colran and others, with two small frieries.

The

A The chiefe men of this countie are the O'Chanes or O'Canes, who are the chiefe that create O Neale by casting a shoe ouer his head vpon a hill in Tyrone.

¶ The ninth Countie.

The ninth countie of this province is called Tyrone, and it containeth all the land between the Blacke water, and the riuers of Liffey and Finne. It hath for bounds the North, the countie of Londonderry: on the South the counties of Fermanagh and Ar-magh; and Tironell on the West.

It hath not any townes of importance in it.

The chiefe castles of this countie are these Dongannon, Omagh, Strabane, Benburb, and Old Castle.

B The chiefe lords and gentlemen of this countie are, the Earle of Tyrone, the Bishop of Clogher, Sir Turlo O Neale, Turlo Lennugh, and O Cane.

¶ The tenth Countie.

The last countie in this province is that of Dongall or Tyrconnell, and this countie is the greatest and longest of all the counties of Ulster. It hath for bounds, on the East, North, and West, the sea: and the river of Finne on the South.

There is not any towne of importance in this countie but the towne of Dongall.

There are the castles of Dongall, Ballinewin, Red Castle, Leefe, Finne, New Castle, Belecke, and Boudroies.

C The lords and chiefe gentlemen of this province are these O Donel, the Bishop of Derry, the Bishop of Raboo, Hugh Duffe O Donell, O Golghan, Sir John O Doherty, Sir Owen O Gallhae, the fionnes of Con O Donell, Mac Swyn Nattoo, Mac Swyn Fawed, and others.

There are also in this countie these Abbeyes, that of Dongall, Atherowe, Derry, and other small Frieries.

Thus having shewed to you (as briefly as might bee) the whole description of Ireland, I will now come to speake of the Qualitie of the countrie.

¶ The Qualitie.

D This Island doth enioy a sweet and temperat aire, although it be not excellent to ripen that which is put into the ground. The heat of Sommer makes them not to seeke for shade, nor the rigor of Winter for fire: this countrie doth not breed any venomous beasts, neither can it endure any if they be brought thither: the aire and soile is too moist and rheumaticke, so as both Inhabitants and strangers are much troubled with catarrhes and the bloudie flux, which they seeke to prevent by Aquavite: the countrie is hilly, moorish, and full of woods, exposed to winds, and it hath many pooles, even in the top of the highest mountaines: there are many good ports, and some goodly plaines, but they are little in regard of the woodlands and mountaines which are pleasing with their verdure. All Ireland in generall is fertile except in Ulster, which is fruitful in many places also, and barren in others by reason of mountaines, and Conach which is lesse tilled then other countrie, and hath much woodlands, bogges, and mountaines. In all places the mountaines are covered with cattell, and for this cause they abound with milke, butter, and cheese: it hath this inconuenience, that the come is short and small, and vines growe there, more for ornament than for any fruit they beare: for when as the signe enters into Virgo, there blowe cold windes in that countrie, & the sun after noone in Autume hath not force sufficient to ripen the grapes. This Island hath good horses for lightnes and the iorneys of that countrie, which they call Hobbeyes. It breeds no hurtfull beasts but wolues and foxes: all other tame beasts are lesse than in other places, except their grayhounds. The woodlands are full of beasts, & the faggots being very large are sometimes in the yeare very fat: there are many swine, goats, and some fallow deere, and no mowles, but they haue abundance of rats. Moreover this Island hath many falcons, gothawks, eagles, and cranes, and good flocks of swannes, towards the North, but in all the Island there are no storkes, neither are there any pices, or nightingales, but there is a kinde of fowle called the heath cocke of a blackish colour, which hath a reddish

Some time
the Bar-
nack which
is called fifty
Eles or any
old timber
being in
great abun-
dant in the
North and
are good
timber.

and head, and usually lieth in heathie grounds. There is also great store of A both of sea and fresh water, which are taken in the rivers and lakes of the countrie: with also yelde a certaine black earth mixt with sulphure, which the inhabitants doe use to kinde their fire. The Irish have small pearles many of them of a blackish colour, and many others very fine and orient, some valued at fortye pounds and upwards; these are found in a Isalon of the yare in muske shells for the most part in the Northerne rivers, and especially the river Omei which runneth to Loughfole. Girald writes that from a certaine wood which floats vpon the sea, there flowes a gumme which doth liden afterwards; and that within it there breed certaine creatures which first haue life, then they take wings and a bill, and in the end they flie into the aire, or swim vpon B the water; and the same Author saith, that he hath seene many of these birds halfe-formed, which would haue flowne like vnto the rest if they had had their perfection. There are also other birds called Martins, as some write, lesse than a Thrush, and short as a Quail, having the belly white and the backe blacke; which haue this propertie, that if beine dead they be put in a dry place, they doe not putrifie; and being put among C some other things, they come from moother; yea if they be hung in a drie place when they are dead they renew their feathers every yere.

¶ The Manners of the Auncient Irish.

Strabo saith that the Auncient Irish were more sauage than the inhabitants of great Britaine, that they fed vpon mans flesh and were great eaters. Solinus addes more, that when they were victors they rubbed their faces with the blood of them that were slaine in the fight, after they had drunke some, when a woman was deliuered of a man child, she laid his first meate vpon her husbands sword, and thrust the point of it gently with the meate into the infants mouth, wishing (according to the ordinarie desire of all the nation) that he might not die but in bataille, and in the midst of armes: they that would make any shew of brauery among them, did put vpon the hilts of their swords the teeth of certaine great fishes which they found along that coast; for that those teeth were white as Iuory, & the chiefe glory of the Irish consisted in armes. This is all that can be gathered out of auncient writers touching their manners, which were for the most part vnkowne, by reason of the rudenes of the people, to whom they could not haue any free access: I speake this in regard of the auncient manners, but if thou desirest to see those of latter times, thou shalt finde them at large in Girald, from whom many others haue drawne what may be spoken.

¶ The Manners of the Irish at this day.

The Irish are generally strong, active, and of great courage, they expose themselves freely to all dangers, and doe easily endure all toyle, cold, hunger, and other discomforts: they are much inclined to ioue, courteous to strangers, constant in their friendship, and irreconcilable in their hatred, light of belife, desirous of glorie, and impatient of any wrong: finally they are extreme in all their passions, so as they that are bad cannot be worse, nor the good better.

¶ III. The meer Irish (for they are diuided like vnto the Scottish) kneele downe when they see a new moone, and speaking vnto her, saie, *Leane is in good health as thou hast found* vnto the old that a tree or green buist planted before their doores the first day of May will in their coves yelde abundance of milke. It is not lawfull to commend a horse of any mans beast vnto any preyntly, Godbleseit, and they spit against a horse when he is roweth himselfe, if any mischance happen to the horse within three daies, they tell him that he committed him, to the end that he may say a *Pater* in his care: the women haue incantments for all diseases, and they doe allwayes after supper and at the beginning and ending of all their incantments, they sing, they liue vpon heares, roots, thalghane, and with buttermilked with

A with oate flower, with milke, beefe broth, and oftentimes with flesh without bread, for that they doe most commonly keepe their corne for their horses, whereof they haue great care, when they are preit with hunger they eat broyled flesh, and to digest it they drinke much Viquebaugh. They drawe blood from their kine, and when it is curded and caked with boyling they put it vpon butter, and so eat it. These be the manners of the mere Irish. There are also many others, but I feare I should be tedious in relating them, or else grosse mine owne disfigure.

¶ The Riches of Ireland.

B That which may make the Irish rich is the access of merchants, which come from all parts, and the traffique of the inhabitants of the Island, who haue not much else to sell, and send into forraine countries but hydes and some wooll. Among other townes there is Galloway, whereas forreine merchants frequent, it is full of rich inhabitants, who haue great traffique into all parts: and Waterford yelds nothing vnto it in number of merchants, who thrive as well there as in any countrie of Europe. The greatest part of Ireland is able to entertaine the inhabitants, and to furnish them with all things necessary, yet the riches are not so great as in many places of Europe. Their most pleasing, and sole wealth are their kine, which giue no milke in Ireland, as some hold, but when they haue their calves by their sides, or the skin of a dead calfe filled with strawe, that it may resemble it; As for the reuenues which the king of England drawes from thence they be small by reason of his officers and souldiers maintained there.

¶ The Forces of Ireland.

Their warlike bands consist of foot and horse; the horsemen haue horses so tractable and well taught, as they doe easily leape on them, although they be armed, and this is as well by reason of the dexteritie of the horse, which yeeldes vnto them, as the disposition of the Irish of whom we haue lately spoken. As for their footmen there are some whom they call Galloglasses which carrie axes sharper than razors, at the end of long staves, and these are all the force of the Irish armies: they which hold the second ranke, are called Kerne, they vse darts and a broad sword, and doe not thinke any man dead till they haue cut off his head: they put in the third place their horseboyes, whom they call Stokoagh, who goe disarmed, and are ready to serue the horsemen: Both footmen and horsemen doe crye *Pharo, Pharo*, when as they goe to battaile. The Irish are many in number, and valiant; so as they might be held invincible if they were not opposite one vnto another: but they haue bene euer diuided, and for this cause they haue giuen entrie to the kings of England. He that reignes at this day maintaines diuers forts manned with horse and foot, the which were begun by Queene Elizabeth, after the late enterprises of Pope Gregorie. There is the Archiepiscopall towne called Armaugh, the which is strong: and nere vnto it towards the East is Tredath, which is the greatest fort next vnto that which we haue named: after that there is Dublin, where the lord Deputy doth usually remaine, which hath a reasonable good Fort, and a Port whereas they imbarke that passe into England, who arriue at Chester, right against Dublin; and towards the North there is one onely Fort called Knockfergus: But vpon that part which lookes toward England, and Westwards, there are seauen Forts with their Ports, that is to say, (after Dublin) Arkloe, and Wexford, Limericke, Waterford, Rosse, Corke and Kind-sale, which is vpon the South.

The passage of this chanell is very dangerous, by reason of the riuers which fall from many contrarie parts; so as they cause a confusion of waters with a contrarie current, which makes the passage difficult. To conclude, the king of England hath no great cause to feare that any forraine prince should become maister of Ireland, as well for the discomfortie of the seate, as for the Forts there be in it, and the souldiers which he entertaines, as also for that many of the inhabitants of the countrie are well affected vnto him.

¶ The

¶ The Government of Ireland.

A

XII.

Ireland in former times had many petty kings, but it is now vnder the power of the English, into whose hands it fell in the year 1175 when as *Roderick* king of Conaught termed himselfe king of all Ireland, who seeking to make himselfe king of the whole Island, fought against the other kings, who submitted themselves, without any effusion of blood, to *Henry* the second king of England, since which time all the kings of England haue bin called *Soueraigne* Lords of Ireland, untill *Henry* the eight, who had the title of King giuen him by the Estates of Ireland. Finally the king of England sends a Vice-Roy thither to gouerne, and these Vice-Royes were first called Conseruers of Ireland, then Iustices, Lieutenants, & last of all Deputies, by the patents which gaue them this Royall iurisdiction and power; for they may make war and peace, ordaine and dispose of all Magistrates, except some fewe, remit all crimes, except high treason, make knights and such like things. These Letters Patents, are read whenas any one is publickly receiued, and then taking the ordinarie oath before the Chancellor, they put a sword into his hand, and then they set him in a chaire, in the presence of the Chancellor, and the chiefe of the realme which are of the Councell, with the king at armes, sergeant at armes and other officers of honour: he hath for assistants, the Chancellor, Treasurer of the realme, Earles, Bishops, and Iudges, who are of the Councell. Ireland hath the same orders that England, and it is diuided according to the manners of the inhabitants, into two parts, for they that will not obey the lawes, but liue more barbarously, are commonly called meere Irish, but they that obey the lawes are called English Irish, and their countrie is called the English Pale. The meere Irish haue lords, or rather tyrants, who liue not vnder the power of the English but by constraint: these lords haue an O before their names, or else the word Mac, as *O Neale*, *Mac Mahowne*, and these haue a particular right, by reason whereof they liue with an insupportable authoritie, and dispose of their followers goods at their pleasures: These lords haue their Iudges whom they call *Breahans*, as the Gothes had their *Bellagines*. These *Breahans* are altogether ignorant, and yet they doe Iustice vnto the neighbors at certaine daies, vpon some hill: they that are accused, and can deny it, escape easily; and if they be taken in open theft they are condemned to restitution, and a fine to the lord. As for the other Irish they follow reason more, and gouerne themselves after the English manner. There are in Ireland siue Iudiciall Courts, as in England, that is to say, the Starchamber, the Chancerie, the Kings Bench, the Common Pleas, and the Exchequer: there are also Iustices of Assise to heare and determin, and Iustices of the peace in euery countie: the king hath also his Sergeant at law, his Attorney Generall, and Solicitor. Ireland hath the same municipall lawes that England, and the acts of Parliament of England were in force there untill *Henry* the seuenth, for in the tenth year of his raigne they were confirmed in Ireland by the authority of the Parliament, but since they haue had their priuat statutes. Besides these ciuile magistrates, Ireland hath a military officer, that is to say, the Marshall, which is to restrain the insolencie of souldiers and rebels.

¶ The Religion of Ireland.

XV.

This Island received the Faith of Christ in the year 335 when as *Fincemore* reigned in Scotland; and this happened by means of a woman among the *Pictes*, who growing familiar with the Queene, in the year 322. preacht the Christian Faith vnto her, and conuerterd her: the Queene woon the King, shewing him what had bene preacht vnto her, and the king disposed his people to receiue baptisme, about the year 335. The Irish haue liued since in the Romish religion vntill the time of king *Henry* the eight when as the Protestants religion began to be preacht, the which hath bene since in that countie planted by Queene *Elizabeth*, and by King *James* now raigning: yet the Irish are generally giuen to Poperie and superstition, by reason of their ignorance, and haue made religion the subiect of rebellion, as we haue seene by many experiences during the raigne of Queene *Elizabeth*. Ireland hath foure Archbishops, that of Dublin, Armaugh, Cashill, and Toome: and these foure haue nine and twentie Suffragans.

DIS.

A



B

DISCOVRSE OF
FRANCE.

The Contents.

- C** Aule what it did in old time containe, according vnto *Cesar* and *Ptolome*.
 2. Description of France as it is now, the length, breadth, and limits. 3. N. number of Parliaments of France, & what Archbishopsricks & Bishopsricks are in either of them. 4. Ample description of the Provinces of France, & first of Picardie. 5. Of the Prositie and Countie of Paris, situation and stately buildings of this Citie, and of the Isle of France, and consequently of all the other Counties and Provinces of the realme. 6. Number of the Islands, Capes, Forests, and chiefe Rivers of France. 7. Fertilitytie of the Provinces of France, and wherein euery Countie doth abound. 8. Custome of the ancient Gaules, to wear longe heire; they were studious of eloquence, and did worship *Mercurie*, and *Hercules*, *Ogones*. They did offer men in sacrifice. 9. Druides instructors of the youth of Gaule, and Admirers of Iustice. 10. Gaules fearefull in warre to all Nations, and what armes they used, and their manner of proceeding in battaile. 11. Attire of the ancient Gaules, their lining and manner of their funeralls. 12. Nature and manners of the *Parysiens*, Chariotmen, and of all other Provinces of France. 13. Manners and disposition of the French in generall. 14. Ciuitie of the French Nobilitie, and their exercises in time of peace. 15. Riches of the Realme of France, whence it growes. 16. Reuenues of the Kings of France, wherunto it amounted, during the raignes of *Francis* 1. and *Henrie* 2. 17. Ordinarie taxe of one year what it comes to in France: And what money hath bene leuied, as well ordinarie, as extraordinary, since the year 1542. vnto the year 1580. 18. Forces of France at Sea. 19. Companies of horse entertained in France at this day. 20. French footmen, and what companies of foot are entertained at this present. 21. Ordinance of France reduced all to one forme, and what length the Canon of France hath. 22. Number of the forts and best places of France. 23. Realme of France successiue, and not elective, and the males admitted to the Crowne, and not the females. 24. Priuileges and authoritie of the Queenes of France. 25. Ancient and moderne forme of Crowning and anointing the Kings of France. 26. Beginning and institution of the Peers of France, and other Officers of the Crowne. 27. Number of the Presidiall Courts and other iurisdicitions vnder euery Parliament. 28. Number of the Bishopsricks of France, and what parishes euery Diocesse containes. 29. Catalogue of the Kings of France, the Raigne and death.

F

F He name of Gaule is a large extent, if we comprehend all that which hath bene so called; for by this meanes, it will not onely containe the Realme of France, but also a good part of *Germanie* and *Italie*. For the ancient diuided Gaule into *Cisalpine*, and *Transalpine*; calling that *Transalpine*, or *Gaule* on that side the Alps (according to their abode) which is now termed *Lombardie*; and giuing the name of *Cisalpine*, or of *Gaule* on that side the Alps, to the Countie, which is inclosed by the Riuer of *Rhine*, the *Ocean* sea, the

E

Pyrenees

Pyrene Mountains, the Mediterranean sea, and the Alps. But Caesar diuided Gaule into Belgick, Celtrick, and Aquitanick. And Prolome propounds vnto vs Gaule diuided into foure parts, that is to say, Aquitaine, the Countrie of Lyons (which is all one with *Cæsar's* Celtica) Belgia and Narbonese. And of these parts Belgia is now for the most part belonging to Germanie.

II. But to take France, it is at this present, towards the North which lookes to the Low Countries, they giue it for a limit or line drawne from Callis vnto Strasbourg, which leaues on the left hand, the Countries of Artois, Henault, and Luxembourges; and on the right hand, Picardie, and Loraine, and on that part which lookes towards England, the Ocean sea, called by the ancients the Brittilsh. Towards the West, the same Ocean sea doth bounde it in, making a great gulf in Aquitaine. On the South side, where it ioynes to Spaine, it hath the Pyrene Mountains, and where it is least restrained and more large, it hath for limits the Mediterranean sea. Finally on the East part, it hath the Alps, which diuides it from Italie, as Mount Iura doeth from the Switzers, and the Rhine from Germanie. The whole realme, if we take it in a direct line from East to West, from the Island of Heilant, opposite to the furthest shore of Brittanie, vnto the banks of Rhyne, hath in length little more than three hundred French leagues; or if we shall measure the length according vnto others, from North-West, to South-East, from the Isle of Aldernay in Normandie vnto Glice, we shall find three hundred & thirtie leagues, which is almost as much ground as there is betwixt Paris & Rome. The breadth to take it from the most Southerne parts, which are towards the Mediterranean sea vnto Callis, is about two hundred and twentie leagues, and the whole circuit of France, is about 1020 leagues, euery league being two good English miles or more. This realme is included betwixt the 13. and 19. parallele, that is to say, it holdes in breadth from the middelt of the fift climate, whereas the longest day is of 15. houres, vnto the middelt of the eight, where it is of 16. houres and a halfe. And as for the length, it contains all the Meridiens, which are comprehended betwixt the 15. and the 19. Meridien. Finally to diuide France into all her parts, I thinke fit it to take it according to the Parliaments, being subiect to their iurisdiction.

III. Shee hath then eight principall Parliaments, which are Paris, Toloufa, Rouen, Bourdeaux, Rennes, Dijon, Grenoble, and Aix, and two others that are not of such note, that is to say, that of bafe Nauarre, which is held at Saint Palaiz, and that of Metz. The Parliament of Paris contains these Dioceses following.

The Archbishopsricke of Reims.
The Archbishopsricke of Sens.
The Archbishopsricke of Lyon.
The Bishopsricke of Soissons.
Of Boullen.
Of Amyens.
Of Noyon.
Of Senlis.
Of Beauuais.
Of Paris.
Of Chartres.
Of Orleans.
Of Angers.
Of Mans.
Of Cleremont.

The Archbishopsricke of Bourges.
The Archbishopsricke of Tours.
The Bishopsricke of Laon.
Of Chalon in Champagne.
Of Neuers.
Of Auxerre.
Of Troyes in Champagne.
Of Meaux.
Of Poitiers.
Of Maillezay.
Of Luçon.
Of Angoulême.
Of Saint Flour.
Of Langres.
Of Mâcon.

And the chiefe Provinces where the aboue named Archbishopsrickes, and Bishopsrickes are contained, be the Isle of France, high and lowe Beaulle, Soloigne, Berry, Auvergne, Lyonnois, Foret, Beaujolois, Poitou, Anjou, Angoumois, Maine, Brie, Picardie, Champagne, Touraine, Niernois, Bourbonnois, and Malconois, of all which

A which Provinces we will hereafter discourse particularly.

The Parliament of Tolouza hath vnder it,

The Archbishopsricke of Narbonna.
The Archbishopsricke of Auch.
The Archbishopsricke of Tolouza.

The Bishopsrickes be.

Nîmes.	Vabres.
Viez.	Cahors.
Lodeua.	Pamiers.
Saint Pons de Tomieres.	Mirepoix.
Alct.	Saint Papoul.
Montpelier.	Montauban.
Bessiers.	La Vaur.
Agde.	Rieuz.
Carcaffonne.	Lombes.
Mende.	Comenges.
Casters.	Couferans.
Alby.	Tarbes.
Puy.	Laïctoure.
Rodez.	Viuiers.

The principall Provinces are called high and lowe Languedoc, which is of a great cercuit, high and lowe Viarez, Velay, Geauaudan, Albigeois, Rouergue, Languois, Quercy, the countrie of Foix, and a part of Gascoine.

The Parliament of Rouen hath vnder it.

The Archbishopsricke of Rouen.

The Bishopsrickes be.

Auranches.	Seez.
Eureux.	Costance.
Bayeux.	Lisieux.

This is the Parliament of Normandie.

The Parliament of Bourdeaux hath vnder it
The Archbishopsricke of Bourdeaux.

The Bishopsrickes be.

Bayonne.	Sarlat.
Aqs.	Agen.
Bafaz.	Limoges.
Aire.	Condom.
Saintes.	Tulle.
Perigueux.	

The chiefe Provinces are a part of high and lowe Gascoine, Biscaye, Xaintonge, F Perigord, and Limosin.

The Parliament of Reines hath vnder it these Bishopsrickes.

Saint Brieu.	Triquier.
Saint Malo.	Comouaille.
	E ij

Saint Paul

Saint Paule de Leon.
Nantes.
Vannes.

Dol.
Renes.

This is the Parliament of Brittanie.

The Parliament of Dijon hath vnder it,
The Archbifhoprick of Autun.
The Bifhoprick of Chalou upon Sone.
This is the Parliament of Bourgondy.

The Parliament of Grenoble hath vnder it
The Archbifhoprick of Ambrun.
The Archbifhoprick of Vienne.
The Bifhopricks be,

Valence.

Dic: thefe two are gouerned by one Bifhop, and yet one vsurps not vpon anothers
rights.

Grenoble.

Gap.

Brianfon.

Saint Paul three Castells.

This is the Parliament of Dauphiné

The Parliament of Aix hath vnder it,
The Archbifhoprick of Aix.
The Archbifhoprick of Arls.

The Bifhopricks be,

Digne.

Riez.

Grasse.

Frejuz.

Glandeu.

Cifteron.

Senas.

Marseille.

Saint Paul de Vences.

Tolon.

Apt.

This is the Parliament of Prouence.

The Parliament of Bearn hath vnder it,
The Bifhoprick of Efcars, and that of Oloron.
The Parliament of Saint Palais hath vnder it,
Bifcaie, Nauarros, or bafe Nauarre.

The Parliament of Metz hath vnder it the Bifhopricks of

Metz,

Toul,

Verdun.

IIII.

To difcoursfe more particularly of France, I will begin firft with Picardie, which hath at this day for bounds on the Weft part (with a part of Normandie) the Englifh Sea; on the North, Artois and the countie of Haynault, which did in old time, make a part of Belgike Gaule; towards the Eaft, the counties of Luxembourg, & Lorraine; & to the South Champagne and the Ifle of France. The chiefe towne are, Amiens, Soiffons, Abbeuille, Corbie, Peronne, Dorlen, Saint Quentin, Noion, Laon, Boullen, la Fere and Beauuais. This Prouince is diuided into the true, the heigher and the lower Picardie, whereof the higher is at this day, in a manner, all within the countie: the true which begins at Creuecoeur, comprehends the Vidamies of Amiens, of Corbie, and of Piguigny, the countie of Vermandois, and the Duchie of Tiraſche, and of Rethelois. The Earledome of Vermandois, did comprehend Soiffons, Laon, and la Fere, three of the beft townes of Picardie, with Saint Quentin, which is a ftrong place. Rethel is the chiefe towne of Rethelois, which lies betwixt Haynault, Lorraine, and Barre. The chiefe towne of the Duchie of Tiraſche, is Guife, where there is a reasonable good Caſtell. Baſe Picardie comprehends Santerre, where Montdidier is, Peronne, Roye, and Nelfe, places of good ſtrength, the countie of Ponthieu,

A Ponthieu, whereof Abbeuille is the chiefe towne; the other places are Crotoy, Rue, Treport, and Creffy: and they hold alfo that this countie comprehends thoſe of Saint Paul, and Montreuil. Baſe Picardie doth alfo embrace the counties of Boloign and Guynes, which are diuided from the countie of Oye by a great chancell which paſſeth through the midelt of the towne of Guynes, and this Earledome hath vnder it two Baronnies, that of Ardres, and that of Courtembrone. Two leagues from Ardres towards the ſea is the towne of Calais, which is of the countie of Oye, which extends vnto Dunkerke a towne of the Lowe-Cuntries. The chiefe riuers of Picardie are that of Somme, on the which ſtand Amiens and Abbeuille; the riuier of Oyle, neere to the which is la Fere, Mame, Ayne, Eſcau, and Scarpe. Of all the townes of Picardie, Soiffons was in old time the abode of kings, but ſince the title of the realme of Soiffons was transferred to an Earledome. The laſt ground which the Englifh held in France, was the countie of Oye, where Calais ſtands, the which was taken from king Philip of Valois, after the battell of Creffy in Ponthieu, in the yeare 1347. and was recovered during the raigne of king Henrie the ſecond, by Frances of Lorraine Duke of Guife in the yeare 1557.

This is all that remains at this day of Gaule Belgike. Now it is fit to treat of France taken more particularly, which is of Gaule Celtique, and which lies neere vnto Picardie on the Weſt part. This countie which they call more particularly France, was ſometimes inhabited by the Beauuoifins, and Pariſiens; and now Paris is the chiefe Citie, this countie doth now containe the Prouoſtie and countie of Paris the Duchie of Valois, Hurepois, and Gaſtinois. The Prouoſtie and countie of Paris is diuided into foure, that is, that which is called Pariſis, which containes on the one ſide all vnto Pontoife, and on the other ſide to Clais towards Brie, this name of Pariſis is in a manner extinct, and it remains but vnto certeine Villages, Loure, Corneille, Eſcouan, and others which they call in Pariſis, and in the taxes of Parliament, whereas they make mention of ſoulzes, and deniers Pariſis. The citie of Paris was ſometimes no bigger than the Iſland which the riuier of Seine doth enuiron: But it hath bene ſince much augmented, and doth at this day contend for circuit with the greateſt of Europe. It is diuided into three parts, whereof the greateſt which looks towards the Eaſt and North, and is lower than the reſt, is called the towne, the leaſt which ſtands high vpon the South and Weſt, is termed the vniuerſitie; and the middle which is enuironed of all ſides with the riuier, is called the citie. The towne hath ſeu-en gates, Saint Anthonies, the Temple, Saint Martins, Saint Denis, Montmartre, S. Honore and the newe Port, which is neere vnto the Loure. It hath five Suburbes, Saint Martins, the Temple, Saint Denis, Montmartre and Saint Honore. And that which makes that part more remarkable than the reſt, is, that it containes Loure, the ordinarie abode of our Kings. The citie hath for her ornament the Pallace or ſeate of Juſtice, and moreover the newe bridge, a royall worke, begun by King Henrie the third, but ended by Henrie the great, who hath ſurmounted the deſſeine of his predecessor, & made this bridge pleaſing & very profitable. This quarter doth alſo comprehend our Ladies bridge (made of ſtone like vnto the newe bridge) where there is nothing to be ſcene but ſhops full of rich merchandize, and ſo well furniſhed, as we cannot leaue any better. And if you paſſe from thence to the Changers bridge, the Goldſmiths haue ſuch ſtore of Jewells and glistening ſtones, as the moſt curious of ſuch things cannot but content himſelfe. After all this if you come to the merchants bridge (which was ſometimes the millers bridge) you will preſently ſay, that it is one of ornaments of Paris, and that the ſtreet which is vpon this bridge, exceeds all the reſt in beauty. As for the Vniuerſitie, it hath the gates of Saint Victor, Saint Marceau, Saint Iaques, Saint Michel, Saint Germain, that of Buſſy and of Nelfe; with the Suburbs of Saint Germain, Saint Michel, Saint Iaques, Saint Marceau and Saint Victor. As for the Churches or Chappells, whereof the number is very great, that of our Lady exceeds the reſt: it is ſupported by 120. pillars, it is 174. paces long, and 60. broad and 100. high, it hath about it 45. Chappells with barres or grates of Iron. There are

in all eleuen doores, whereof three which are in the front haue ouer them 28 statues A
or images of our Kings. On the one side you may see the towers, 34 Cubits high.
These towers serue for steeples; in the which there is to be scene the great Bell which
is so weightie, as it requires 20 men to ring it, and the sound is heard seuen leagues a-
bout. Touching other places of deuotion, there is not any more admirable than
the holy Chappell, ioyning to the Palace, the which was built by Saint Lewis, ha-
uing no pillar in the middelt to support the great and high vault, but only on the sides.
In this chappell they keepe (as they say) a part of the crowne of thornes, the purple
robe, the reed, and the sponge of the passion. There are many Monasteries, whereof
that of the Temple, taken from the Templers in the yeare 1309, and giuen vnto the B
Knights of Rhodes, is very great: the Abbie of Saint Geneuiefue, is also very spaci-
ous; and that of Saint Germain de pres, in the suburbs of Saint Germain, the which
yields vnto the Abbot three thousand pounds sterling yearly rent. As for Col-
ledges, there are in all fiftie, thereof that of Nauarre, founded by *Iean Queene* of
Nauarre, *wife to Philip the faire*, is the most famous. The Colledge of Sarbonne
was instituted by *Robert* of Sarbonne a Diuine, in the time of the king Saint Lewis.
As for the shoppes of handicraftsmen, they haue certaine places appointed them in Paris,
that is to say, for parchment-makers neere to Saint Michaels bridge, for clothworkers
by Saint Iohn in Greue, and so of the rest. There are very many goodlie houes, where-
of the most remarkable are Soiffon place, that of Longueville, Montmorency, Guise, C
Ost, Langres, (which is now belonging to the Duke of Maine) Sens, Marke, (now
in the possession of the Lord Chancellor) Nemours, Epernon, Sau, Luffan, and many
other goodlie houes within the cite; and in the suburbs of Saint Honore, Mercœur
place, and in Saint Germain suburbs, that proud Palace of Gondy, and Luxembourg
houe. There are many others, but it were tedious to number them: it shall suffice to
say that a fourth part of the houes of Paris yea a third, are like vnto Palaces. I will
adde hereunto, that if you cast your eyes vpon the Arcenal, you shall find the abode
very faire and the building very pleasing, in which there wants not any thing that
should be in a house whereas a kings Ordnance and munition is kept. But if you desire
to see an admirable and royall buiding, you must looke vpon the Pallace Royall, where D
besides the galleries, which doe delight and rauish the beholders, you may see a great
number of lodgings, so vniormly built, and supplied so that all may serue for neces-
sity or pleasure, as the most curious can find no defect. The towne house is none of
the least ornaments of this abridgement of the world. As for the great & little Cha-
steler, and the Bastille, they are buildings whose antiquitie recommends them more
than their beautie. He that would knowe more particularities of Paris, let him read
the booke which hath bene expressly made, where he shall find what may be spoken.
The whole cite is some eight miles compasse, Neere vnto the cite is pont Charenton,
where there is an Echo, which doth answere a voice thirteene times, and if you speake
a word of foure syllables neere vnto it, it deliuiers it wholly againe foure or five times. E

The second part is that which is vulgarly called la Goelle, the which is little known,
and whose name remaines onely to some villages. In this countrie is contained the
countie of Danmartin, which is a borough seated vpon a little hill.

The isle of France (which is in the third place) contains all which is from S. Denis,
Poissy, and Mortmorency, and generally all that is betwixt the turnings and windings
of the riuer of Seine, bending towards Picardie, and Normandie. Some giue it other
bounds; but my intent is not to dispute it. Saint Denis is statly, by reason of the fe-
pulchres of our kings, and for many holie and precious reliques, and a great number of
rich ornaments. At Poissy you may see a goodlie convent of religious Women of the
best houes of France. At Saint Germain in Laye, which is betwixt Poissy, and Paris, F
is that Royall houe, which hath bene made a worthie abode of kings by *Henrie 4.*

Then follows Vexin Francois, or Vauxin, which doth reach to Cleremont in Beau-
nois: but the memorie is almost lost, and is not preferred but in some old records.
And thus much for the prouostie and countie of Paris, with the foure parts. The o-
ther

Ather part of France taken more particularly, is the countrie of Valois, which doth reach
vnto Picardie, whereof the chiefe towne beyond Creppy, is Senlis, a Bishopricke;
the other are Angy, pont Saint Maixant, Pongoing, Brenonville &c.

The countrie of Hurepois begins at Seine vnder the little bridge of Paris, & runnes
along the riuer vnto Corbeil, Melun, and Moret, where it is diuided from Gaskinois
by the riuer Verine, which falls into Loing. In this countrie stands Fontainebleau
the goodliest, most pleasing and statelie building of our kings, beautified after that
manner by king *Henry* the fourth.

In the fourth place they set Gaskinois, which comprehends the Duchies of Estamps,
B and Nemours, the counties of Rochefort, Moret, and others, and the townes of
Milly, and Montargis.

Now follow Beausse, which some diuide into three parts: the higher extends from
Ablis, to the countrie of Chartres, and beyond, containing the counties of Dreux,
and Montfort: bafe Beausse contains the counties of Orleans, Soloigne, and Loris:
and as for the middle, in it they place the countie of Blois, vnder which is that of Du-
nois, then the Duchy of Vendosme, and that of Touraine. The towne of Orleans is fa-
mous for the deeds of armes of *Iean* the Virgin. Soloigne contains the townes of
Gergeau, la Ferte, Clery, and Saint Laurens. Touraine lies betwixt Blois, and Sau-
mur. Ambois is of Touraine, where there is one of the best castles of France. There
C is also Lisle Bouchard, seated vpon the riuer of Vienne, which doth compasse in the
towne; Chastillon vpon Indre, Loche, a strong place, Afay le Bruffe vpon Indre, and
Afay le Ferron vpon the riuer of Chaire, and Montrichard, to which some adde Lou-
dun, but others place it in Poitou.

Anjou begins at the banke of Chouzay, and ends betwixt Montcontour, and Her-
raut, whereas Poitou begins, which lies vpon the South of it: vpon the East it hath
Touraine, and Vendosme, on the North Mayne, and Laual, and on the West part
that toucheth Britaine. There are many riuers in this prouince, as Loire, Maine, Vienne,
Diue, Loir, Sarre, and many others. The chiefe towne is Angers; the others are Sau-
mur, Montreueau, Bauge, Beaufort, Brissac, Monstreul Belay, Mauleurier, Chantor-
ceau, Duretail, la Fleche, Chateau-Gontier &c. Anjou came vnto the crowne of
France vnder *Lewis* the eleuenth, by the death of *Charles* the last Duke, nephew to
Rene.

Maine, which ioynes vnto Anjou, and Touraine, comes next, and this Prouince
hath three principall riuers, Mayne, Loir, and Sarre: the chiefe towne is Mans, this
Prouince comprehended vnder Aquitaine was sometimes subiect vnto Dukes, vntill
the accord made betwixt *Lewis* the ninth king of France, and *Henry* the third king
of England, that the English should rest satisfied with Guyenne, which should be lim-
ited on the North part by the riuer of Charante, and on the South with the Pyrene
mountaines, and that he should quit his pretensions to Normandie, Mayne, & Anjou,
E and that in consideration thereof he should haue fiftene hundred thousand crownes.

As for the countrie of Perche, it is diuided into two parts, whereof the one is called
Perche Gouet, and the principall towne is Nogent le Rotrou; the other is properly
the countie, whereof the chiefe towne is Mortaigne, where the Bayliffes seat is. For
bounds it hath Verneuil towards Normandie, and Meniers vpon Maine. Champagne
is bounded in with the counties of Brie, Bourgondie, Charolois, and Lorraine. It is
diuided into high and lowe: the lowe comprehends Troies, Iuigny, Bassigny, and
Vallage. Iuigny is a countie which seprats Champagne from Bourgondy, and is
neere vnto Sens; the chiefe towne of Iuigny. Bassigny hath the riuers of Mame, and
Meuse, and a small part of the Moselle. The chiefe towne is Chaumont which they
F terme in Bassigny, where there is a strong castle vpon a rocke; they call the tower a
dungeon. They giue vnto the countrie of Bassigny (besides Langres) Montigny, Goe-
ffy, Nogent le Roy, Monteclar, Andelot, Bifnay, Choiseul, Vifnorry, Clefmont; all
which in a manner haue castles. Vallage confines with Parthois and Barrois: the chiefe
townes are Vassy, Saint Didier, Jauville, Montirande, Domleran, the castle of Forges,
Eclaron,

Eclaron, and Arsy vpon the riuer of Aube. High Champagne contains Partois, A which takes his names of a litle Borough which is vpon Marne, named Perte. The chiefe towne is Vitry, then Argilliers, Lafaincourt, Louement and other townes.

They add vnto these two parts, that which is ioyning vnto it, that is, the Duchies of Reims and Langres, and the Counties of Chalons, Ligny and la Motte. The countie of Champagne was vntied vnto the Crowne of France after this manner, *Theobald* the second, Earle of Champagne, had one sonne named *Theobald* the third, who died without children, and had for succesor *Henrie* sonne to *Stephen* King of England, who was brother to *Theobald* the second. *Henrie* had one sonne of the same name, who dying without children, his brother *Theobald* (who called himselfe Count Palatine of B Champagne) seised thereon, and being King of Nauarre by the death of his Grandfather by the mothers side, he had for his succesor, both in Nauarre and Champagne, *Henrie*, whose daughter *Joane* married to *Philip* the faire, vntied Champagne and other Prouinces to the Crowne.

Commonly they put Champagne with Brie, which ioynes vnto Hurepois: This countie begins neere vnto Pont Charanton, whereas the riuer of Marne ioynes with Seine, and the riuer of Marne diuides Brie from Champagne, as Seine doth from Gastoins, and in a manner all that lyes betwixt these two riuers, vnto the Duchie of Bourgondie, is commonly called Brie: There is also in this countie, the towne of Brie Count Robert, so called of Count Robert sometimes Lord of Brie, who made his abode there. The other townes best known in Brie are, Chateau-Tierry, Meaux and Nogent; and some place the towne of Sens in this countie.

The last part of Gaule, which they call Celtique and Belgique, and which are vnder the Parliament of Paris, is the countie of Lyonnois, which hath for limits on the North side, Bresse, on the East, Sauoye, on the South, Dauphine and Viuaire, and on the West, Forets and Auvergne. The chiefe towne of this countie is Lyon, seated vpon the riuers of Soane and Rofne, whereof Soane passeth through the middelt of the citie. The grauesse, beaurie and reputation of this towne is so well knowne, as it needs not more discourse.

I must now come to the prouinces of Aquitaine, which acknowledge the iurisdiction of the parliament of Paris, as the counties of Berry, Bourbonnois, Poictou, Angoumois, the countie of Aunis and Auvergne. Berry hath for bounds on the left side Soloigne, from the which it is diuided by the riuer of Chair: On the East, Hurepois, Niemois and Bourbonnois, and in this place it is limited, by a litle riuer called Fay: On the South, it hath Limosin, whereas the riuer of Croure runnes: and on the West lyes Poictou and Touraine, from which it is diuided by a litle riuer called Clerie. The chiefe towne of this countie is Bourges: This towne had seuen gates, but since the wars three of them haue bin shut vp: These gates are called, the one, Bourbonne, the other S. Priuat, the third S. Sulpitius, and the fourth Arogne. There are seuentene Collegiall Churches, and seuentene parishes, the foure orders of begging Friars, two Abbies of men, the one without the towne called S. Sulpitius, the other within the towne named of S. Ambrose, both very rich. There are three of women, the first of the Annonciade, the second of S. Laurence, and the last of the begging sisters of S. Clare. They make much cloth there, and it hath the Faïres of Saint Lawrence, S. Lazare, S. Martin and S. Oursin, where there is a great concourse of Merchants. The other townes of the Duchie of Berry are Yssoudun, Dunle Roy, Vierzon, Mehun, Concreffant. They doe also place in this countie, the counties of Sancerre and S. Aignan and the Baronie of Montfaucon. There is also in this country 40. Chastellenies. Sancerre hath vnder it, Sancerres, Beaufeu, Chapelle, Anguillon, Boucard, Jalonges, Tarenay, Verdigny, Menefme, Charentony, and other places. F The Baronie of Montfaucon comprehendeth the Seigneuries of Baugy, Gron, La Fane, Lyuron, Cony, Villabon, Seury, Marciilly, Marnay, Farges, Auor, Saligny, Percigny, Cru, Laffay, Boiboson, Nuyfement, Villiers and Compy. The Chastellenies are Aix d'Angillon, Sury in Vaux, S. Soulange, S. Palais, Salle du Roy, Beuil, Quantilly,

A Quantilly, Femorigny Francheuille, la Chapelle, Nanfay, Drye, Leureux, Beaulieu, Brecy, Bengy, S. Fleurant, Neufuy vpon Baraion, Morthonnier, Marmaignes, Maubranche, S. Vrsin, Tillay, Brilliers, Vatan, S. Satur, Lury, Eitrechies, Maupas, Villeneuve, Cloyes and Bouge. I should be too tedious if I should name in particular all the other places of Berry; wherefore I will end this discourse, hauing related how this Duchie was vntied to the Crowne of France, in the time of *Hugh Capet*, when as *Godfrey* was gouernour for the king: Of this *Godfrey* descended *Harpin*, who bought the countie of Berry from king *Henrie* the first: he going to warre, sold the said countie to *Philip* the first, to be vntied to the Crowne. Some yeares after, *John* of Valois obtained this countie (erected to a Duchie) of his father king *John* for his portion. *John* dying without heire male, the Duchie returned vnto the Crowne. It was afterwards giuen to *John* sonne to *Charles* the sixt, who dying without children, left his brother *Charles* for his succesor, who comming to the succession of the Crowne of France, and chased, in a manner, out of it by the English, hee was called in mockerie king of Bourges: So by the means of *Charles* the seuenth it came vnto the Crowne.

The countie of Bourbonnois hath for bounds on the West part, Berry and Limosin, on the North, Niemois, on the East, Bourgondie, and on the South, Lyonnois. This countie was sometimes vnder Dukes, whereof, the last was *Archibaud*, who had no heire but one daughter, called *Agnes*, who was married to *John* Duke of Bourgondie, and he hauing but one daughter, called *Beatrix*, hee married her to *Robert*, sonne to *Lewis* the ninth, king of France, and gaue him the Duchie of Bourgondie, vpon condition that he should carry the name of Bourbon, the which was done. *Robert*, sonne to S. *Lewis*, begat *Lewis*, surnamed the great, who was made the first Duke of Bourbon, by *Philip* of Valois, about the year 1329. He had for his succesor, in the direct lyne, *Peter* the first, (who had a brother, called *James*, of whom came the Earles of March and Vendosme) then *Lewis* the second, *Bon*, *John* the first, *Charles*, and *John* the second: He dying without children, *Peter*, the second, succeeded him, whose daughter and heire *Susan*, being married to *Charles* of Bourbon, Earle of Montpensier (sonne to *Gilbert* of Bourbon) she made her husband Duke of Bourbon: It is this *Charles*, who D being Constable of France, and adhering to the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, against king *Francis* the first, was slayne before Rome, in the year 1527. After the death of *Susan*, the king seised vpon the Duchie of Bourbonnois, and then the Dukes of Vendosme tooke onely the title and armes by the right of parentage. The countie of Bourbonnois is diuided into high and low: the lower contains the townes and two counties: the chiefe towne is Molins, seated vpon the riuer of Allier, abounding in fish, especially in Salmons. There is a goodly castle at Molins, and as pleasing a garden as can be seene, where there are many Lemmon and Orange trees. The other townes are Bourbon, Archambaud, and Bourbon Ancy, Montmerant, Montliffon, S. Porcin (which some put among the townes of Auvergne) Cussier, Chancelle, Charroux, E Verneuil, Varennes Ganat, vpon the frontier of Auvergne, Mont aux Moines, Souigny, Palisse, S. Geran, S. Peter le Montier, Aynay le Chateau, S. Amand and others. They did also comprehend the two counties of Foret and Beaujolois. Beaujolois doth embrace all that which is betwixt the riuers of Loire and Saone, and is seated towards the East, betwixt Foret and Bourgondie: the chiefe towne is called Beaujeu. The countie of Foret hath for his principall towne, Montbrison: the rest are, Saint Stephens, Saint Guernier, Saint Germain Laual, Saint Bonet le Chateau, Saint Rambert, and some others lesse famous. High Bourbonnois containes onely the countie of Combraille, where Montaignu is, this countie is more hilly than the lower Bourbonnois.

F Poictou is a great Prouince, containing one thousand two hundred parishes, vnder three bishopricks of Poitiers, Maillelay and Luffon. This countie hath for her bounds, towards the South, Angoumois and Xaintonge, towards the West, the Ocean, on the North side, Anjou and Brittain, and the rest is bounded by Berry, Touraine and Limosin. This countie had sometimes the title of a Realme among the

Gothes,

Goths, who were expelled by *Clouis* and out of all Aquitaine. The Emperour *Lewis* A the gentle gaue the realme of Aquitaine to his sonne *Pepin*. And *Charles* the bald haue expelled *Charles* and *Pepin*, the sonnes of *Pepin*, and put them into Monasteries, he seized vpon this principallitie, and gaue it vnto *Arnold* his kinsman, but vpon condition, that all these countries should from thenceforth carie but the title of a Duchie. *Arnold* had for his successors, *William* the good, *Eblon* 1. and 2., *William* 2. and 3. *Guy* *William* 4. and 5., and his daughter called *Elenor*, being sole heire, was married to *Lewis* 7. king of France, who doubting some treason, and suspecting her of adulterie, put her away, and she soderly married with *Henry* duke of Normandie, who succeeded *Stephen* king of England. *Henry* had for his successors, as well in the realme of Eng. B land, as in the prouinces which hee held in France, his sonnes *Richard* and *John*. But it happening that *Arthur* sonne to *Godfrie* (who was also sonne to king *Henry*) contending that hee should bee preferred to king *John*, and being perswaded and sollicit by king *Phillip* *Augustus* to take *Poitou* from *John*, hee attempted to make himselfe master thereof by force: but hee was defeated by *John*, taken prisoner, and caried to Rouen, where hee dyed in prison: whereupon *John* being accused of Patricide before king *Phillip*, by *Constance* mother to *Arthur*, hee was condemned, and his goods presently adjudged to king *Phillip*, as direct Lord, when among other things *Poitou* did accure vnto him. But *Lewis* 8. his sonne gaue it to *Alphonse* his sonne, who dying without children, it came vnto king *Phillip*, and remained in the possession of our kings, until that C *Edward* 3. recovered it in the time of *Phillip* of Valois, and held it more ample with all Aquitaine, by the treatie which was made betwixt him and king *John*. King *Edward* gaue the principalltie of Aquitaine to his sonne; who hauing ouer-charged the countrie, hee lost a great part of it, which yeelded to *Charles* 5. king of France, and afterwards *Charles* 7. expelled the English out of all Guienne, in the year 1453. and left it to his sonne *Lewis* 11. hee gaue it to his brother *Charles*, after whose death, king *Lewis* left it to *Charles* 8. Since which time Guienne (whereof *Poitou* is a principall part) hath remained in the hands of the French kings. The chiefe towne of all this Prouince is *Poitiers*, from which the rest of the countrie hath taken the name: the other towne D are *Niort*, *Fontenay le Conte*, whereas the little riuer of *Vendee* doth passe, *Lusignan*, *Montmorillon*, base *Marche*, *Dorat*, *saint Maixant*, *Suiray*. There is also in *Poitou* the principalltie of *Talmont*, and that of *Roche Suron*. There is the Duchie of *Castellant*, vpon the riuer of *Vienne*, the vicountie of *Touars*, *Brosse*, *Bridieres*, *Roche-chouart*, and the Baronies of *Mainlars*, *Partenay*, *Melle*, *Chizay*, *Chauignay*, *Lussac*, *Bressuire*, *Charrou*, *Chasteneaye*, *saint Melmin*, *saint Gilles*, *Chasteaumur*, *Sables d'Aulonne*, *saint Hermine*, *Montaigne*, *Mirebeau*, *la Motte*, *saint Beray*, *Vouant*, *S. Hilaire*, *Mortemer*, *Luzay*, *saint Saun*, *Lisle*, *Lourdain*, *saint Beniot du Saut*, *Bourgneuf* *Meroil*, *Meruant*, *Bridge*, *Vouuert*, *Ville-fagnaux* and others.

Angoumois is bounded on the North side, by *Poitou*, on the East, by *Xaintonge*, on the South, by *Bourdelois* and *Perigord*, and on the West, by *Limousin*. From East E to West it is foure and twentie miles long, the breadth from South to North is fixteene. The chiefe towne of this countrie is *Angoulême*: the other lesser townes are *Marton*, *Chasteauneuf*, *Blaisiac*, *Chabannes*, *Confallant*, *Ruffec*, *Aigres*, *Gourville*, *Rochefoucaut*, which is an Earledome, *Mercuill*, *Manfac*, *Villebois* which are of the house of *Marcuil*, *Momberon*, and *Bouteuille*, which are of the house of *Montmercy*.

Charles the French kinges surnamed the wise, gaue the Earldome of Angoulême taken from the English, to his sonne *Lewis*, who being king left it to his sonne *John*, to whom *Charles* succeeded. *Charles* had for successeur *Francis* 1. who coming to the crowne of France, made this Earldome a Duchie, and gaue it to his mother, after whose death, his sonne *Charles* caried the title of Duke of Angoulême, and hee dying without children, the Duchie was vntied vnto the crowne.

The countrie of Aunis comprehends the territorie of *Rochelle*, & is of a verie small compasse,

The

A The countrie of Auvergne hath for limits on the East side, *Forest* and *Lionois*, on the South, the last Dioceses of *Languedoc*, on the West, *Quercy*, *Perigord* and *Limousin*, and of the North part, *Berry* and *Bourbonnois*. This Prouince is diuided into high and lowe. The chiefe towne of high Auvergne is *Saint Flour*, the others are *Orillac*, *Carlat*, *Murat*, and *Billon*. Base Auvergne comprehends *Alimaigne* (y may bee it was so named of the riuer *Lamone* or *Lymone* which falls into *Allier*) it is in length from the old bridge of *Briat* vnto *Ganac* (yet some extend it farther) about 40. miles. The bredth from the mountaine commonly called *Poy de Dome*, vnto the towne of *Thiers*, is about sixteene miles. The chiefe towne is *Clermont* faire and B pleasing for the situation and fountaines. The rest are *Rion*, *Montfranc*, *Yffore*, *Brioude*, *Aigueperfe*, and many others.

These are all the Prouinces, which are vnder the iurisdiction of the parliament of Paris, let vs now come to those, which acknowledge the parliament of Tolouse.

Quercy hath for limits, the Countrie of *Perigord*, that of *Rhodes*, *Auvergne* & *Limousin*, in which are two Dioceses, that of *Cahors* and *Montauban* vpon *Tarn*. The lesser townes are *Burelle*, *Nazaret*, *Souillac*, *Gourdon*, *Martel* and others.

The countrie of Rouergue ioines to Quercy vpon the East, the rest is inuironed by *Languedoc* and *Auvergne*. The chiefe towne is *Rhodes*, the others are *Villefranche* of *Rouergue*, *Estauges*, *Elpeyron*.

C Languedoc hath for limits towards the West, *Gascogne*, from the which it is diuided by the riuer *Garonne* about *Quercy*, to the North *Auvergne* and *Forest*, and vpon the East Prouince, and *Dauphine*: so as all the riuer of *Rosne* is held to be of *Languedoc*, and vnder the parliament of Tolouse: Vpon the South side it hath the *Mediterranean* Sea, and part of the *Pirenee* mountaines. This Prouince is very large, containing two and twentie Dioceses, whereof *Viarez* alone which runs aboute twentyleagues along the riuer of *Rosne*, is taken but for one. The Dioceses be *Tolouse*, *Narbonne*, *Alby*, *Carcaffonne*, *Bessiers*, *Adge*, *Montpelier*, *Nismes*, *Viez*, *saint Pons de Tomiers*, *Alet*, *Castres*, *Pamies*, *Mirepoix*, *saint Papoul*, *Lodève*, *Eaulx*, *Lanaur*, *Montauban*, *Viarez*, *Velay* & *Geudon*. The chiefe towne is *Tolouse*, seated vpon the riuer of *Garonne*, in a champion and very fertile contrie. The others are *Narbonne*, *Alby*, *Carcaffonne*, *Beziers*, *Pefenas*, *Montpelier*, *Nismes*, *Viez*, *Baignolet*, *Aliaz*, *Sommieres*, *Pont saint Esprit*, *Bourg*, *Viuers*, *Voure*, *Tournon*, *Aubenas*, *Annonay*, *Mende*, *Meruege*, *Puy* and a great number of others which would bee tedious to name. At *Nismes* there is to be seene the *Arenes*, or the antient *Amphitheatre* which is wonderful worke, but *Pont de Garde* which is vpon the riuer of *Gardon*, where there are three bridges one vpon another, is much more admirable: the stones of the *Arenes* and of the bridge are of an extraordinary greatness. Of late yeares they haue attributed vnto *Languedoc* the countrie of *Foix*, which was before of *Guyenne*. This countrie hath *Languedoc* vpon the East, *Comingois* on the West, the territorie of E *Ruiere* on the North, and the *Pirenee* mountaines on the South: and in it there is onely the Bishopricke of *Pamies*, which towne is situated whereas the two riuers of *Lers* and *Lagere* ioine. The other townes are *Sauerdun* and *Mafares*, the antient aboade of the *Barles* of *Foix*.

For that *Gascogne* hath some part of the iurisdiction of Tolouse, it is fit now to discourse thereof, that wee may commit no disorder.

Gascogne in our time comprehends all that which is betwixt the riuer of *Garonne*, the *Pirenee* mountaines, the Ocean and the *Guienne* of *Lewis* xi. Some parts of *Gascogne* are bounded by the riuer of *Garonne*, as *Armagnac* and *Bigorre*: others lye as well on the one as the other side of the riuer, as *Aginois*, the Duchie of *Albret* and the countrie of *Cominges*. The countrie of *Armagnac* contains two Bishopricks, the one of *Auch*, and the other of *Laidour* which are the two chiefe townes, besides the which there is *Lisle Tordain* and some others of no great moment.

The countrie of *Bigorre* is betwixt the countries of *Beam* and *Cominges* neere to the *Pirenee* Mountaines, whereof a great part is vnder this countie, from the mountaines

taines of Aure, vnto those of Saut and Aspe which are of Bearn. The chiefe townes is Tarbe, where is the Castele of Bigorre. Vpon the frontiers of Bigorre are the counties of Gaure and Estrac.

Agenois hath for limits to the East, Quercy, to the North, Perigord (and on this side Agenois reacheth vnto Biron in Perigord) on the West, Gascoine and Garonne, which is also vpon the South. This countie contains two Bishopricks Agen and Condom. The smaller townes are Villeneuve, of Agenois: Clairac, Marmand, Foy the great, and some others vpon the riuer of Garonne, with Valence vpon Baïse, Larnac, Romien, Montreall.

The countie of Cominges is diuided into high and lowe, the high is in the mountaines, and the townes are S. Bertrand, Coulerans, Saint Bear, Saint Fregou, Montregeau, Saliers and others. In bafe Cominges is the new Bishoprike of Lombes, and the townes of Samathan, Lisle in Dodon, Muret, Rumes, with many great bouroughs and rich villages. And this is all that belongs to the iurisdiction of the parliament of Tolouse.

The parliament of Rouen comprehends all Normandie, which after it had bene taken from the English by Charles 7. falling afterwards into the hands of Charles his sonne, it was taken from him by Lewis xj. his brother, and in exchange hee gaue him Guienne, since which time, Normandie hath alwaies remained in the power of our Kings, and hath not bene giuen to any of the children of France. This Prouince hath at this time, for bounds towards the East, the riuer Eppe, towards the place which is called Saint Cler vpon Eppe, vpon the West, it extends to the riuer of Canon which parts Normandie from Brittain, for that this riuer coming out of Fougères, and watering Pontorion, falls into the Sea at the foot of Mont Saint Michel, called Tombelaine, at Cap de Genefts: and from the North vnto the South it hath in length the countie which is from the Sea vnto the riuer of Sarre, which diuides the Normans from the Manceaux by Alançon, and from Perche. And by this meane the Normans haue the Picards of Beauuois on the East, the Manceaux on the South, the Ocean to the North, and Brittain vpon the West, hauing his eleuation from 46. to 47. degrees, being by this meane one of the coldest Regions that is vnder the French kings iurisdiction, except the countie of Oye in Picardie. The chiefe townes of this Prouince is Rouen, the seate of the parliament: the other townes are Auranches, which is very neere the sea; Eureux which hath within its iurisdiction the townes of Vernon, Aigle, Pafsey, Tulieres, Ingles, Canches, Rugles, Bruin, Hermenuille. Then there is the townes of Bayeux, which is reasonable good: and Sars, vnder which are manie townes, and among other countries in a manner all that of Alençon, and a part of Perche: then Constantines and Lisieux: There are in it the Duchies of Alençon, Aumale and Longueuille, the Earledomes of Eu, Harcourt, Eureux, Tancarville, Maleurier Mottain, Montgommery, Thorigny, Gisors. There is also the Realme of Yuetot, of a fine extent, the which was erected in the time of Cleliaire i. who slue Gaultier Lord of Yuetot on good Friday. This realm is in the contrie of Caux. Moreover Normandie is diuided into high and lowe: high Normandie (besides the Duchies and Counties aboue named) contains the countie which is called Vexin Norman, whereof the chiefe townes is Gisors, whether refoit for Iustice Estrepagny, Ecoucy the great Forest of Lybonis, saint Clair vpon Aistre, the two Andelys, and Chateau Gaillard. Bafe Normandie is diuided into the countie of Caux, Bessin and Constantine. The chiefe town of Caux is Dieppe: those of lesser fame bee Harfieu, Honfleur, Newhaues, Gaudede and Elcamp. The countie of Bessin hath besides the townes of Bayeux, whereof I haue spoken, those of Caen, Falaise, Hiesmes, Vire, Mortain. The countie of Constantine comprehends, besides the townes of Constance, and the realme of Yuetot, the townes of Valoigne, Cherbourg, saint Lo, Quarentan, Montebourgh, S. Sauueur, S. Hermont, and saint Gilles.

The parliament of Bordeaux hath vnder it the counties of Perigord, Limosin, Xaintonge, Bourdelois, the Tandes, Albert, Basadois, high Gascoine, and part of Bascaie and Medoc,

A Medoc, beyond the riuer of Garonne. Limosin hath for boundes vpon the North Berry, on the East Bourbonnois, on the South Auvergne, on the West Perigord, and on the North-west Poitou. There is a great Ealne betwixt Maison neuue, and Argenton which serues for a limit to Berry, Bourbonnois, Auvergne and Limosin. There is high and lowe Limosin. The higher hath Limoges for the principall town: the other townes are Souleraine, Boisson, Barat, Dorat, Confolat: bafe Limosin is properly called la Marche, and is bordering vpon Auvergne and Perigord. The chiefe townes is Tulle, seated in a rough and hilly countie. There are also the townes of Vifarche, Briuela gaillarde, Treignac, Donzenac, Allasac, Belloe, Meyfac, Vifer, Belmont.

B Perigord is in fortie degrees eleuation from the Pole. It hath vpon the East the countie of Limosin, on the West Angoumois and part of Xaintogne, on the North Angoumois, in to which it runs, and on the South Gascoine, according to the riuer of Dordogne, which makes the seperation of Agenois and of the countie betwixt the two seas, from Perigord. The chiefe townes of this countie is Perigueux: the rest are Sarlat, Bergerac, Ribérac, Nontron, Lunel, Biron, Brathoume, la Roche, and Miramont. The parliament of Bourdeaux hath also vnder it in Guienne, Bourdelois, Basadois, the Lands, and Xaintonge. The chiefe townes of Bourdelois is Budeaux, a faire and antient cite, whereas that famous poet Ausonius (one of the ornaments of France) was borne. The other townes are Blaye, Bourg vpon the sea, Libourne, Condat. There is also in the Seneschalcy of Bourdeaux (which is called the countie betwixt the two seas) Medoc, Buch and Fronlac. The countie of Medoc comprehends all that which is betwixt Bourdeaux, the Ocean sea, and Garonne which falls into it. This countie is in a manner all sand, and sometimes ouerflowed by the sea. In this countie is Pauliac and Donissay. The countie of Buche whereof the lord is called Capital, iointes to Medoc, and is subiect to the Earles of Candales. The Fronlados hath the towne of Fianfac, whereof it hath taken the name.

The chiefe townes of Basadois is Basas a dayes iourney from Bourdeaux, the others are saint Bazeille and Reule seated vpon Garonne, Monfeguer vpon the riuer of Drot, saint Ferme, Castele Morou, Geronde, and Sameterie, and there are many villages euen D vnto Dordonne.

Then follows the countie of Lapord, or Lourde, which hath two Dioceses, that is to say, Bayonne & Aqs. Bayonne is the chiefe towne of the countie, whose iurisdiction extends to the riuer of Iron, which is beyond saint Iohn de Luz.

The countie of Xaintonge hath on the North side Poitou, on the East Angoumois and Perigord, on the South the riuer of Garonne, and on the West the Ocean. The chiefe townes is Saintes: the others are saint Iohn d'Angely, Lorgaire, Archaut, Pont, Loublerie, Taillebourg, Lamac, Barbefieux, Iolac and Brouage, famous for the salt which is made there.

The parliament of Rennes contains the higher and bafe Brittain, and hath vpon the E East Normandie, Maine and Anion, on the South Poitou, and on the two other sides the Ocean. It is six daies iourney in length, and three in bredth. They speake two languages, that of high Brittain is French, the other is Breton bretonnant, or bafe Brittain, which hath no affinitie with the French. High Brittain is more Eastward, and is diuided from bafe Brittain by a line drawn from Chasteau Andron and continued betwixt Quintain and Corlay towards the gulfe of Vannes vnto the riuer of Vilaine, so as saint Iohn is in bafe Brittain. The Metropolitan towne of this countie is Nantes. The place of parliament is at Rennes: the other townes are Dol, saint Brieu, saint Malo, Dinan, Rieux, Chasteaubriant, Lamballe, Vitray, Iugon, saint Aubin du Cormier, Plerel, Locelin, Malefroit, Pontigny, saint Iulien Ancenex. Vannes is the chiefe towne of bafe Brittain, the rest are saint Paul de Leon, Landrigney, Blauet, Brest, Morlay, Guinecamp, Quimpelray, Conquerneaux, Quimpercorantin, saint Renaulde des bois. To conclude Brittain of an Earldome was made a Duchie in the time of Henry 2. king of England, and was vnto France after the death of Anne of Brittain, who being contracted to Maximilian of Austria sonne to the Emperour Frederick was in the end married Charles

Charles the eighth, the French king, and after him to *Lewis* the twelfth, and by this means *A* the Duchie came vnto the Crowne.

The Parliament of Dijon comprehends at this day that which is called the Duchie of Bourgondie, which they say was so named of a place called Bourg-ogne in the countrie of Langres. The limits are vpon the North, the countries of Champagne and Auxerrois, whereof a part is of this Province: on the West, Niurnois and Bourbonnois: on the South, Beaujolois and Lyonnois: and on the East, the riuer of Rofne, which diuides it from Sauoy, Brefre, and the Franche Countie. The chiefe towne of this Duchie is Dijon, seated almost vpon the frontier of France, on the riuer of Oufche. Although this towne were burnt, in the yeare 1227, yet is it now fairer and more stately than euer. **B** Next there is Autun, sometimes a great and famous towne; where there are goodly markes of antiquitie, it did contend for the primacie with all the rest of France. This was the capitall towne of the Heduois, which was one of the two factions which did trouble all France. Then they came Beauen, Chalons vpon Saone, Semur in Lauffois, Tournus, Nuyz, Aualon, Saulieu, Flaugny, Aulonne, Noyers, Rauieres, Leigne, Mombard, Chastillon, S. Seigne, Seioigne, Creuant, Vitau, Verdun, Arnay, Scurre, Tonnerre and Senefcey. They place their Episcopall townes, which are of the iurisdiction of Paris, that is, Neuers, which is the chiefe towne of the Duchie of Niurnois, Aulierre and Mafcon. They add also vnto the parliament of Dijon, Brefre, whereof Bourg is the chiefe towne, and the Bishopricke of Bellay, Bugey, Veromen, and the new **C** countrie which ioynes vnto Sauoy. The Duchie of Bourgondie hath continued in the power of the French Kings, since the death of *Charles* the last Duke of Bourgondie, who was slayne before Nancy, for that presently after his death *Lewis* the eleuenth seized thereon. As for the countie of Mafcon, the king *S. Lewis* bought it of *John* Earle of that countrie, and of *Elie* his wife.

The parliament of Grenoble comprehends all Dauphine, which hath for bounds, on the South part, Prouence, and the towne of Ambrun is the Metropolitane of this countrie, which is called high Dauphine: on the North it hath the countries of Lyonnois and Brefre, and on this side is bafe Dauphine, of which Vienne is the Archbishops seat: on the West it hath Rofne, which parts it from Lyonnois and Viarez, and to the East **D** Sauoy. The chiefe towne is Grenoble, the seat of Parliament situated almost in the midst of the province. The townes along the Rofne, or neere it, are, Ternay, Vienne, Roffillon, S. Vallier, Theim, la Roche, Valence, Montelimar: within the countrie and in the plaine, Quirieu, Cremieu, Bourgoin, la Tour du Pin, la Colte, S. Andre, S. Marcelin, Voyron, S. Anthoine of Viennois, Morelet, Beauraipaire, Moras, Romans vpon Isere, Lorient, Chabeul, Crest, Die. In the mountaines, Ambrun, the Archiepiscopal towne, Gap, Talart, Brianfon, Chorges, Serte, Momburn, Mure, Effiles. There is in the mountaines, the countries of Trielues, the Baronies, Gapenlois and Brianfonois. The chiefe countries of the plaine are, Graiuidan, which is neere to Grenoble, Viennois, which is some twentie miles long, Valoire, in which are the townes of Moras, Beauraipaire, & la **E** Colte, S. Andre, one of the best parts of Dauphine, and Valentinois, which is also of a great circuit. King *Philip* of Valois got this province of *Humbert* Dauphin of Viennois, in the yeare 1340, vpon condition that the eldest sonne of France should carry the name of Dauphin.

The parliament of Aix containes Prouence, which is bounded towards the North by Dauphine and the riuer of Durance: on the East, by the Alpes and the riuer of Vaire, vpon whose banks, on the left hand, stands Nice: on the South part, the mediterranean Sea: and on the West part of the principallitie of Orange, and part of the countie of Aignoun. The chiefe towne of Prouence is Aix, the seat of the parliament. The rest are Marseille, Arles, neere vnto which is the Camarque, which is a peece of ground lying between two armes or channels of the riuer of Rofne, containing feuen great prouencial leagues, which is aboue foure and twentie good English miles; in this Camarque there growes great store of corne: and moreover, they haue goodly pastures both for cattell and horses, whereof the inhabitants feed a great number: Moreover, there is the plaine **F** of

A of S. Chamar, of Miramas, Senas, Maillemort, vnto Ourgon, and Ardage towards the riuer of Durance, which may be compared to Beausse, and in all this extent of countrie there may be seene great numbers of Orange trees, of Lemmons, Pomegranets, Oliue and Figge trees, and the goodliest Vines that may be seene: there are also in this countrie Palm trees, which carry as good fruit as those of Afrike. The other townes are Riez, Frejus, Grasse, Senez, Gandeluse, Vence, Digne, Cisteron, Brignoles, Ourgon, Saint Tropes, Hieres, Frejus, Antibes, Tolon, Craux, Saint Maximin, Tarascon, Draguignan, Forquiquier, Vallanfolle, Petruis, Berre, Puy or Peucho.

Berwtix Aix and Marseille, is Saint Baume, whether *Mary* Magdalen had retired **B** her selfe. Touching the manner how this countie was vntied vnto the Crowne, you must vnderstand that *Joane* Queene of Naples, and countesse of Prouence, left for her successor, in her other principallities, and in this Earledome, *Lewis* of Anjou, sonne to *John* the French king, after that he had adopted him to be reuenged of her enemies. *Lewis* had for his successor his sonne *Lewis* the second, and he, *Lewis* the third, adopted also by *Joan* the second, Queene of Naples, to be king of Sicile, and Duke of Salabria. *Lewis* the third, dying without children, left his estates (with the consent of *Joane* the second) to *Rene* of Anjou his brother, who refusing to resigne his rights to the realme of Naples, and countie of Prouence, to *Rene* of Lorraine his grandchild, issued from his daughter *Talant*, transported them to his brother *Charles* Earle of Mayne, who hauing lost his sonne **C** *Charles*, made *Lewis* the eleuenth his heire generall. Others say, that this was done by the testament of *Rene*, not without grieuous complaints of *Rene* of Lorraine.

The parliament of Beam containes two bishopricks, that of Escar, and Oledon. This countrie lies all at the foot of the Pirenee mountaines, the length being from South to North, and it hath vpon the South side the countie of Bigorre, and on the North, Biscay the royall, from the which, Beame is separated by the riuer of Gaue. The breadth is from East to West, and it hath on the East, the countrie of the Lands and Chalosse, according **D** vnto Adur, and on the West Biscay of Nauarre.

The countrie of Beame is diuided into two, on the one side are the mountaines, where **E** Oleron stands, on the other, the valleis where Escar is situated. The chiefe towne is Pau, the seat of the parliament. The other townes are Orthez, the ancient abode of the Earles of Foix, and Lords of Beam, Moilas, a place where they did coyne money: Nay, a towne of great trafficke, which was all burnt with lightning about the yeare 1545. Pontac, Coderch and Nauerreins, seated at the foot of the mountaines. There is also bafe Nauarre, whereas S. Palaiz stands.

The parliament of Mets containes Toul and Verdun, which are vnder the protection of the French king, who keeps garrison in them. The towne of Mets was made subiect to the French by king *Henrie* the second. This towne is walled by the riuers of Moselle and Seille. It was sometime the chiefe of the realme of Austraz, and now all about it is called the countrie of Messin.

E There are some Islands which belong vnto France, the which are in the Ocean vpon the Westerne coast, as the Iland of our Lady of Bouin.

The Iland of Dieu, or God, where there are two or three good villages.

The Iland of Marmotier, where there is an Abbey, commonly called the White Abbey.

The Iland of Raiz, right against Rochelle, abounding in wine, in which is the towne of Saint Martin, at this day it carries the title of a Duchie.

The Iland of Oleron, where they make great store of salt.

The Capes or Promontories of France are that of S. Mathew, or du Four, which extends beyond all France towards the West.

F After this is Blankenett, right against the Cape of Kent which is in England. The Cape of Talmond.

The Cape of Buch.

• The Cape of Gercel is to be seene in the Mediterraean sea, it is called by some Cabo de Saint Sigo, and by others Cabo baxo.

The Cape of Sete, which is in Languedoc.

The Cape of la Haque.

The Forests of France are many. In the countrie of Mayne, are found the Forests of Verſay, Longoulney, Perſi, Sille, Charnay, Audain, Mayne and Concife. In ſome Britaine the Forests of Boſt blanc, Toriant and Guierche. In Poitou the Forests of Mouliere, Dine, Bibſte and Ligne. In Berry, the Forests of Robert and others. In Aijou, thoſe of Louriſay and Marſon. In the countrie of Bouleſin, the woods of Surene, Celles, Hardeſot, Dalles and Bourſin. In Vermandois, Recoigne and Bourhan. In Picardie, the woods of Baine, la Fere, Beaulieu and Conſſy. But about all theſe muſt eſteeme the Forest of Orleans, which is much greater than any one in France; and the Forest of Fontaine belleau, the pleaſure of our Kings, as oftentimes that of Meunſtargis is. There are many others, but it were tedious to number them.

The chiefe riuers of France are Seine, which hath her ſpring in the mountaine of Voſgein Bourgondie, and from thence it runnes to Paris, then to Rouen, and ſo goes and diſſchargeth it ſelfe into the Sea.

Seine receiues into her ſtreame the riuſer of Maine, which comes out of the mountaine of Fauſſilles, a litle about Langres, and paſſing by Iannille, Saint Didier, Chalſon Dormant and Meaux, and receiuing ſome ſmall riuers of leſſe note, as Saut, Bloiſſe, Ourq, and Treſme, it mingles it ſelfe with Seine, at pont Charanton, neere C vnto Paris.

Oyle comes from a place about Guiſe, towards the Eaſt, neere vnto the village of Orſen, it paſſeth through Picardie, and watering Guiſe, la Fere, Compiègne, Saint Maixant, and ſome other townes; it falls into the riuſer of Seine, neere vnto Poſſyſ, a litle beneath Pontoiſe. The riuſer of Aine is according vnto Ceſar in Gaule Belgick vpon the extremities of the Diocleſſe of Rheins. Her ſpring is in Barrois, about Clermont, neere vnto a village called Souilly.

The riuſer of Loyre hath her ſpring in Auvergne at a place called la Font de Loire. This riuſer hauing runne a great countrie, and paſſing by Roane, Marcigne, Deſile, Neuers, Seully, Gyen, Gergeau, Orleans, Blois, Amboiſe, Tours, Samur and Pont de Ce, falls into the Sea, neere vnto Nantes. It receiueſh many nauigable riuers, as Allier, Chair, Vienne and Maine. Allier hath her ſpring about Clermont, and hath greater ſtore of fiſh than Loyre, although it be not ſo great. It paſſeth by Molinet, and falls into Loire at a place called Bec d Allier.

Rofne comes out of the mountaine of Fourche in high Valois, and paſſeth by the Lake of Geneva, and then to Lyon, whereas Soane enters into it. This riuſer deſcends from thence to Vienne, Tournon, Valence, Auignon and other places, vntill that it caſts it ſelfe by two branches into the Mediterranean Sea, neere vnto Arles in Prouence. This riuſer receiues Soane at Lyon, here betwixt la Roche & Valence, and beſides theſe, Droume and Durance.

Soane hath her ſpring neere vnto the ſprings of Menſe and Moſelle, it paſſeth through Bourgondie, and falls into Rofne beneath Lyon, neere vnto the Abbey of Elnay.

Here paſſeth by Grenoble and Romans in Dauphine coming from Sauoy, and falls into Rofne neere to Valence in Dauphine.

Droume deſcendeth from the Alpes, and then ioyneth with Rofne beneath Valence.

Durance comes alſo from the Alpes, and is the moſt troubleſome riuſer in France, hauing no ſafe ſoord.

Garonne according vnto Ceſar, did diuide the Gaules from the Aquitains. It comes from the Pyrene mountaines, neer to a place called Cadalup, and coming from the mountaines of Foix, it paſſeth by Tolouſe and Moſſac, and from thence to Bourdeaux, neer to which it falls into the Aquitaine ſea. This ſtoud receiues the riuers of Tary, Gers, Qold or Loth & Dordoignes great nauigable riuſer, & which yeelds litle to Garonne.

A It were too long a diſcourſe to ſet downe all the nauigable riuers of France; wherefore I will forbear, contenting my ſelfe to haue made mention of the principall.

Qualitie of the Countries of France.

VII. AS France hath diuers prouinces, ſo they haue diuers qualitties, which I will ſeeke to comprehend in a few words as I can. Firſt, the ſoyle about Paris is very pleaſant and ferill, and wants neither come, wine, white meats, fruits, hay, graſſe, nor waters, which doth furniſh it in ſuch fort, as it is admirable. Among other you ſee the litle ſtreine of Gentilly, which is alſo called the riuſer of Gobelins, ſitter than all the riuers of France to dye Scarlet. You haue alſq at Montmartre, neere vnto Paris and in other neighbour places, great ſtore of plaſter, which they ſeek Paris for all their build- ings; and it is that which makes the meanes eaſie to build in this great citie. The ſoyle about Chartres abounds in come, wine, and fruits, it is watered by a litle riuſer called Dœure, which paſſeth through the towne.

Beauſe is one of the moſt ferill countries of Europe for wheat, ſo as neither Sicile nor England doe equal this Countrie in fertility, being one of the chiefe Garniers and nurseries of Paris: There is but one riuſer in all this Countrie that hath any current, the whole countrie being flat and plaine; So as Beauſe being without water, the inhabitants draw their water from marſhes, lakes and pits, which drie vp in ſommer.

Soloigne is a ſandie countrie, where there growes much Ric.

The ſoyle about Bloys abounds in come, wine, fruits and other commodities which ſerue for the vie of man, it hath much vnder-woods and timber, many riuers, brookes, Pooles and fountains, wherein it exceeds Beauſe. There is Terra Sigillata found betwixt Orcheze and Blois.

The countrie about Orleans is as ferill as any other in all ſingularities. There they ſhall finde pleaſure, whether they will fiſh, haue or hunt, for that there is abundance of fiſhes, ſoule and game. But about all, the ſoyle of Orleans is famous for the excellent wines, both white and claret, which grow there, and which they come and fetch, not onely from Paris, but many times from England.

The Countrie of Gaſtynois is not verie ferill, ſandie in many places, and yeelds litle, yet pleaſing for her forests and riuers.

The ſoyle about Sens abounds in all things that may ſerue for the life of man. There is ſtore of come and delicate wine. Fleſh is very cheape, they haue plentie of butter, cheefe, wooll, and other commodities. There is abundance of fiſh, and oyle of nuts, for that the whole countrie is couered with wal-nut-trees, eſpecially the Champian which lyes betwixt the riuers of Yonne and Seine, from Montreau ſaut Yonne vnto Sens; and on this ſide the riuſer of Yonne towards Gaſtynois, there are goodly hills couered with E Vines.

The countrie about Auxerre is no leſſe profitable for vines, for there is ſuch abundance of wine, as it doth furniſh Paris a great part of the yeare.

Champagne is a flat countrie and fit for tillage, yet in ſome places the ſoyle is verie light, and yeelds litle. As for Brie, although it be full of woods, yet it is a good countrie, hauing a cleare heauen, a ſweet and temperate aire, and great riuers. Finally, there wants not any thing that is neceſſarie for the life of man: There is wine, come, cattle, fruit, wood, ſoule, game for hunting, and abundance of fiſh.

The countrie about Prouins is famous for the conſerue of roſes which is made there, and ſent into all parts of France. They fetch wine from their neighbours, but it abounds F in come, paſture and water.

Picardie, which is watered by the Riuers of Some, Oyle, Aynau, Lufcau, Scarpe and others, is one of the chiefe Garniers of France, neither doth it want any thing but wine, which grows not rather for that the inhabitants care not to plant any vines, than for any defect in the ſoyle, which might carry grapes, & they would ripen aſwel as in many o-

these places, which are not so fit for this plant.

Niurnois hath three navigable rivers, Loire, Allier and Yonne, with others that are not navigable, as Nyeure, recommended for the goodly meadows which it doth water: There is also Lixentes, Laubois, Aron, Alenc, Acolin, Bresbre, Arrou and Qui-eure. The Champian countrie is full of wood and pasture, which makes the people to attend the feeding of cattell, and not greatly to care for tillage, nor Vines, but in some places betwixt Neurs & la Charie, and in some other Chastellenies. That which is most rare in this countrie, it abounds with mynes of silver and Iron. In former times they drew out silver neere unto S. Leonard, but the mynes of Iron are at this day more used, and the countrie hath this commodity, that they have store of wood, and they use coale which they find neere to Deziere. Two leagues from Neurs they doe finde excellent stone for building, the which is transported to Orleans, Blois, Amboise, and other places, whose buildings are made of this stone, for that it is easily transported by the Loire.

The countrie of Berry is fertill for the greatest part, and abounds in all that is necessary for the life of man, having woods, vines, arable ground, flesh, fruit and wooll, with many rivers, as Cher, Indre, Creuse, Azin, Choefre, Colin, Tripand, Moulon and Auron, whereof the greatest part ioyned together, and falling into Loire, is a means to carry commodities out of Berry into other places.

Touraine is one of the most fertill countries of France, and is that which they call the delight and garden of France, for that the aire is so good, as the fruits are excellent, yea the best in Europe, so as they are carried unto Paris, where they are preferred before all others. There is abundance of come and wine, and there wants no woods, as well for hunting, as for fire and building. There is also found a kind of faire white stone easie to cut, with the which, even the country men build their houses.

The countrie of Mayne is watered by the rivers of Mayne, Sarre, Loir, and many other smaller rivers and brookes, which doe fatten it, and make it fitter for pasture than for tillage: So as the Manceaux may better furnish cattell than come or wine; yet the countrie is not wholly unfurnished, for that they have it in some places; so as neither Anjou nor Touraine exceeds it in bountie of wines, nor abundance of graine, but it is not generall.

The countrie of Anjou is uneven in many places, and hath little hills covered with vines for the most part: and as for the Champian countrie it is beautified with forests and woods of growne timber, and with vallis, where there are good meadows and pastures for the feeding of cattell. To conclude, all things necessary for mans life, yea and for delight, are to be found there: the white wines which grow in this countrie are much esteemed, as the best of this realme. It is also watered with many rivers, which some say to be forty, not comprehending the fontaines, Pooles (which are many) marshes, brooks and referuirs for fish; and to speake in one word, it is one of the pleasantest abodes in France, from thence comes a great part of the slate which we see in France. The houses in Angers, and elsewhere, are partly built, and almost all covered therewith, for that slate is better cheape there than tyle. We may also see about Angers inclosures of gardens and Orchards made of great stones of Slate, sometimes higher than a man, set fast in the ground. There is also in Anjou great store of flax and hempe.

As for Normandie, there is first about Rhoan many faire and fertill plaines, as that of Rhommois, which is one of the best of France. But this countrie is rather given to traffique than to labour, and so in a manner is all Normandie, by reason of the commoditie of the Sea. The foyle about Caen hath this particularity, that although Normandie beares no wine, yet there grows some which is passable: but at Argences, which is three leagues off, the wines are verie good, and there the inhabitants of Caen doe commonly furnish themselves. And not to stay the Reader overmuch, if you take Normandie in general, you shall find that it wants not any thing that may serve man. There is good provision of corn and flesh. There is abundance of butter and cheefe, & great store of fruit. If any one objects that there wants wine, which they must fetch from other places, I answer that

A that they have cider and perrie whose taste is sometimes very pleasing; and this doth supply the want of wine: There is onely (as in Picardie) some places neere unto the sea all covered with sand, which yeelds small profit unto the owners.

As for Brittain, it is a good Prouince, it hath excellent ground for tilt, store of meadows, pasture and forests for many uses: It hath the sea for traffique, from whence the Brittaines drawe salt made with the heate of the sunne, the which they send into their neighbour Prouinces. They have iron and leade, and in some places mines of silver. They have also some wine growing, but not in such abundance nor so delicate, but the inhabitants of the countrie seek it elsewhere, and goe into Anjou and to Bourdeaux to fetch Gaicoine wines.

B If we come unto Poictou, wee shall finde that the countrie is good, fat and rich having no want of any thing that is held necessary; for there is store of come, flesh, wine, wood, fish, wooll, flax and fruit, neither doe they want forests, whereas huntmen may finde game to exercise themselves.

Xaintonge abounds in come and wine, and is one of the best Prouinces in France, so as it doth furnish Spaine, England and other countries with these commodities. And the countrie of Angouleme is no lesse fertile in come and wine, whose bounty is well known. There are also vallis to fit for gardens as there are not any more beautiful in Italie, and in these vallis there doth also growe abundance of hempe. There is also great store

C of wood which comes out of the forest of Braconne, the which is the greatest of that countrie, containing 14500. acres of land.

The countrie of Perigord is hillie, stonie and rough, and for the most part wooddie, whereof there is some oake, which the call Iarry in their Language; but most commonly they are Chestnut trees, the which are very profitable to the poore people, as well for their owne nourishment, as for to feede their swine. But one of the greatest commodities of this tree is, that being cut it growes againe soone, and carries a fairer and better fruit. And if this were not, it were impossible to entertaine so many forges of iron and steeles as are in this Prouince. So as it seemes this countrie is barren, and beares not any graine for the nourishment of man: But they have come inough: yea of wheate to feede

D the inhabitants, and sometimes to spare for their neighbours. As for the wine it is good and bad according to the soile where it growes; for towards Montrent, neere Limosin it is small, there are places along the river of Bandiat where the wine is better; but drawing neere unto the towne of Perigueux, and beyond it towards Agenois, the wine is delicate, good and nourishing, not fuming, but wholesome for the stomack, and the ayre is so good and subtile as you shall seldom see any plague, or other contagious diseases there, there are waters also which call the Sulphur and Allome, the which are very phisicall. Neere unto a borough called Marfack, there is a fontaine which doth ebbe and flowe like unto the arme of the sea which doth passe before Bourdeaux, although bee two good daies iourneys from it. Neere unto Linde, which is a little towne vpon the river of Dordonne, there is a fontaine coming out of a square tower, about tenne foot high, and halfe a faddome wide, which doth continually cast such abundance of water, as two mills doe grinde at all seasons. The countrie of Perigord abounds also in simples, which are very good for diuers diseases. And lower leagues from Perigueux, in a place called la Roche there is a large and spacious caue in a rocke, from whence they drawe a great quantitie of red earth, which hath the like colour and vertue to that which our apothecaries call Bolea Armoniac, so as they come from many places to fetch it. Limosin hath not much wheate, the soile being cold and leane, but it beares much rie, barley and panick. There is also abundance of chestnuts and turnips. There is also good store of wine about Limoges, but it is greene and vntasting; yet there comes goods wine out of bafe Limosin; bread, flesh, fruit, wilde foule, venison and such like are good cheape, so as is good living in Limoges. There are great store of vines in bafe Limosin, and the best soile is neere unto Brinc la Gaillarde, where there are many vines, meadows and lands for tillage.

Auvergne which is diuided into high and lowe, is of diuers qualities according to the

A the diffusion. For high Auvergne doth chiefly abound in pasture, and hath much rie, but is without wine; whereas base Auvergne in which Limagne is, abounds in come, wine, woode, meadowes, fontaines, rivers, lakes where there are store of fish, as also in saffron and mines of siluer: finally Limagne is one of the best countries of France, and which yeeldes most vnto the owners. Neere vnto the spring of the riuer Allier, they finde a goodlie myne of gold and azure, neere vnto Clermont there passeth a little riuer called Liretane, vpon the current whereof is to be seene a wonderfull bridge of stone, made of the water of a fontaine, which doth harden and become stone. This fontaine is some three hundred paces from the riuer, and the bridge which the water doth make, running into the riuer, is about thirte and six fadome longe, six thicke, and eight broad. It is a remarkable thing, that this water by means of the transformation leaues the meadowes through which it doth passe full of stones. There is also neere vnto Clermont, in the midst of a plaine a little hill, from which Bitumen doth flowe as water doth from a fontaine; and this Bitumen is very black, fast and glutinous, which they of the countie doe use to seale their shooes and for other occasions. There are also many hot bathes in Auvergne, as they of Vichy and Chaudes Aignes. As for Bourbonnois and Forez, they yeelde little wheat, being for the most part a fardie countie: yet there is in many places reasonable good wine, and great store of rie. Both countries are full of wood, and rough in many places; but Forest much more than Bourbonnois.

C The countie of Melun is fat & fertile, and it abounds in come, wine, flesh, fish, hay, salt, wood and mineries, so as they haue no great need of their neighbours.

As for Bourgondie, the soile doth scarce yeeld sufficient for the inhabitants. That of Beaune is reasonable fertile, especially of good wine which is famous throughout all France. The aire is very temperate, & there is great store of water. That of Autun is leane in many places. Those of Chalon, Malfon, and Tournus are reasonable good, where there are delicate wines, and in abundance, especially at Tournus.

D Lionnois is leane in some parts, and the land very light; but it is a goodly thing to see that part which they call franc Lionnois along the riuer of Saone, where there is much good ground, and store of vines and meadowes, with a great number of fruit trees, which make this countie very pleasing.

Dauphine yeeldes much come in the mountaines, especially rie; there is much good pasture, where they feed an infinite number of cattell, and so by consequence they haue much butter and cheefe. As for wine, all that mountainie countie beares little: In regard of Champian countie, it is in manner all good and fertile along the riuer of Rhodane, and caries verie good wine, whereof the most famous is that of Vienne, Tein, Valence and Montelimar: within the countie, and neere to Grenoble is Graissinodan, which abounds in come, and beares excellent wine, especially neere to Grenoble, where they make great accompt of that which they call of faint Martin: Three or foure leagues from thence, there is very good ground and goodly meadowes, neere vnto Moyrans. Then you shall see Valoire, which doth not yeeld to any countie of France in abundance of wheate and beantie of the graine, neither in quantitie of hay, for that you may see in a great plaine the goodliest meadowes of the world mixt with some pastures, all which are watered with a little riuer called Veuze, the which doth fatten the land wonderfully, and by the riuer of Oron, at the least from the towne of Beaurepaire bending towards Rosne. Manna doth also come in the countie of Brianconnois.

Province beares all that which is commonly found in the most fertile countries of France and exceeds them in many things: for there are places which abound so in come, as the Isle of France is not better furnished, and namely the Camarque of Arles and the plaine of faint Chamar, Miramas, Senas and Malemort, from Orgon vnto Aix and Marseille, and from Marseille vnto Yerres, Frejus and Antibie, and vnto the riuer of Var. **F** All this continent of contry beares flore of oranges, lemons, olives, pomegranats and figges, with great store of wine of the best of France. The lands or wash countie is couered with rosemary, mirtle, genneper, sage and palmetrees, saffron and rice abundance in many places, and the oyle olue is exceeding good. Normandie is representd vnto you by

A by the countie of Prouence, and according vnto the sea ports, as at Escalle, Seine, Colmars, Castelbaume and other places whereas wine grows not; but all the countie is full of fruit trees like vnto Normandie, as Peares, Apples, Chestnuts and other trees which growe in cold countries: For this part of Prouence is cold by reason of the mountains which are alwaies couered with snow, & yet the inhabitants are rich, by reason of their abundance of cattle, and cheefes which they make onely of sheeps milke and goates. But this Prouince hath this inconuenience, that there is little woode and that verie deare. And in the mountaines of Esterell betwixt Frejus and Antibie there are great trees which beare Corke. Prouence is also furnished with goodly salt pits which are at **B** Berre, Yerres, Eltang and Valench.

Languedoc in my opinion is one of the Prouinces of France most to bee considered. For if you looke vnto the soile which is about Tolouse, you shall finde it one of the best of France, abounding in come and wine, and so fat a countie, as it is almost impossible to get out of it after any great raie. You may trauell almost seuen or eight leagues in this countie and not finde a flint stone. The countie of Lauragais hath all that can bee necessar for man, and there wants not things which nature hath giuen more for pleasure then necessity. Albigeois is a countie in like manner furnished with all things, and if you bend towards Carcaffonne you shall finde one of the fastest soiles of Europe: neere to Beziers you shall finde the ground good, with many olue trees and vines which

C beare good wine. From Pefenas vnto Mont Basin is a wast and rockie countie, and wee must confesse that these three or foure leagues of ground are not worth much, no more then those foure going from Nismes to Vize. But betwixt Nismes and Montpellier the soile is very good, and beares all sorts of fruit, store of come and excellent wine, with many olue trees, and from Nismes vnto Pont faint Elsprie (excepting some few places) the countie brings forth all that is necessarie. The flat countie of Viarez which lies along the riuer of Rhodane, yeelds all that may serue for the life of man. There is come sufficient, excellent wine, especially at Cornaz, and at Tournon, all sortes of Pulles, store of hemp and fruit of all sorts, yea olives whereof there is abundance neere faint Aldeol. **D** The mountaines of Viarez beare nothing but rie, but most of them beare good wines, and the inhabitants there are so painefull and industrious, as they doe in a manner force the rocks to beare Vines. But these mountaines haue this in particular, that by reason the pastures are good, there they feede a great number of cattell.

Velay and Geaudan are two countries of one nature, they yeeld abundance of Rye and pulles, and haue scarce any other thing, onely great store of milke, wherewith they make cheefe, which the inhabitants sell in other places, as they doe their Rye to haue wine. To conclude, Languedoc is one of the best prouinces of France, for that it not onely hath whatsoeuer is needfull, but also wherewith to furnish many other Counties.

E The countie of Rouergne is rough and hilly, and not very fertill: But Quercy hath abundance of come and wine, which yeeldes not to the best of Aquitaine, but to those of Bourdehois, there is store of cattell, they want no woods: they haue pit-coales, and the riuers are full of fish. Aboue all, the riuer of Tarn hath much good fish, namely, sturgeons, which they of the countie call Creacs, Lamprys, Shads, Pikes, Barbles and Daces.

The mountaines of Foix are full of good pastures, and infinit mines, which are discovered by their waters which tast of Sulphure. Doubtlesse, there is not any Countie where there are better mynes of yron than in Foix. There is also much rosin, turpentine, Pitch, incense, corke, marble, Iaspis, slate, and other stones, and great store of venison, maruailous lakes, fearefull precipices, fertill valleis, towards Pamies, and pastures vpon the top of the highest mountaines, with goodly and cleare fontaines. There are in the mountaines of Lauedan the best horses of France, the which exceed the genets of Spaine in force & nimbleness, but they haue not so many as in Spaine, for that the mountaine is not very great. There is also to be seene many boores, stagg, fallow Deare, wild goates & other wild beasts; & as sweet plants as the most curious searcher of simples can desire.

As

As for the countrie of Comiffes it is almost like to that of Foix in many places, and in some it exceeds it; for that there is much corn, wine, fruit, hay, oyle of nuts, miller and other things necessarie for the life of man.

In regard of the countrie of Armaignac, all that towards Lectour, Auch and Vieis most fertile; but approaching neere the lands of Bourdeaux, it beares nothing but chest-nuts and other trees, and there is nothing but pastures and wast ground, yet in some places out of the high way it is very profitable to the owners.

Bigorre is of a diuers qualitie: for the valley from Bagneres vnto Armaignac, along the riuer of Aulbe is one of the most fertile places of Guienne, and that which is by the riuer of Adour yeelds nothing vnto it, hauing on the one side woods, and on the other B good vines, and vnder it meadowes and plowed land fit for wheat: but that which is higher is somewhat drie and barren, so as there growes little else but millet.

The countrie about Bourdeaux beares excellent wine; so as the wine of Graue is well knowne in all the Western and Northern parts of Europe. Besides Graues wine there is that of Larmont la Bastide and the neighbour places, with the white wines which come from Melon, which are not inferior vnto the Greeke. They also make great esteeme of the bread of Potence neere to Bourdeaux. There is also great store of flesh and fish, and to speake in a word, Bourdeaux were one of the best abode in France, if the aire of the sea, and the watric vapours did not make this towne so subiect to diuers diseases, and often to the plague. The countie of Buch abounds in pine trees which yeald rose, fen, the which the poore people of that countie, Armaignac, Beam and Bigorre vse in steed of candles, so as their houses are all blacke with the smoak of this rosen. The lands are full of sand and heath and the countie is so drie, as there is not any water to be found. Neere vnto this countie is Chalosse, which is commended for the good white wines that growe there. In the territorie of Dax, there is a fountaine of salt water, from which they draw much salt; but this salt (although it be verie faire) is corrosiue; for that by nature it doth participate of allome. It is also verie fertill, and hath baths and mynes both of Iron and other mettals, and it doth also carrie bitumen. The countie about Bayonne is something leane, yet it yeelds good profit to the owners. There is great store of fruit trees to make cider, whereof they haue abundance.

Beam hath in it the countie of Iuranfon, where there is wine equall in bountie to the best of France. Moreover, there are excellent baths, which they call Aigues-caudes, or Caude-aigues, and Cauderets, the best simples that can be found, and store of mynes. This countie abounds in millet for the most part, and yet they want neither corn nor wine in many places. About all there are good pastures, and by that meanes much cattell, milke, butter and cheefe. There is also much hemp and flax, and this prouince hath this particularity, that it is better furnished with goates than any countie of France, for that they haue meanes to feed them, without any hurt to their fruit trees, in the rocks and heath whereof the countie abounds.

Manners of the ancient inhabitants of France.

VIII.

Clement Alexandrinus and Strabo write, that the Gaules were accustomed to keepe their haire long, and Agathie saith, that the kings of France did neuer vse to cut their haire, but diuided it in two, on the top of the forehead. Diodorus saith, that they wash their heads often with lyme, to make their haire white. Strabo writes also, that the noble-men did shau their cheekes, and did let that of the chin grow, and that they did auoyd by all meanes to be fat and great bellied, and if any young man were bigger than a certaine measure, he was blamed. Simmacus commends them for their industrie to learning, and Cato in his originals saith, that the Gaules did affect two things, warre, and to speake properly. The Gaules haue beene often commended for their eloquence about other nations. Yet Diodorus doth blame them for their short and obscure speech. He saith moreover, that they were giuen to preach their owne praises, and to contemne others, that they were full of threats, slanderous, and had a good opinion of themselves. So

Percinge.

A *Percingetorix* vaunts in *Cesar*s Commentaries, that hee would make an assembly of all France, which all the earth should not be able to resist.

As for the religion of the ancient Gaules, and their customes touching sacred things, *Cesar* saith, that they were much giuen to religion, and the seruice of the Gods; that they did chiefly worship *Mercurie*, whom they held to be the inuenter of all arts, and the guide of traouellers: and they though also that this God had great power ouer merchandise, and did rule in game, and gouerne in all things. After *Mercurie*, they did worship *Apollo*, *Mars*, *Iupiter* and *Minerua*, concurring almost in opinion of these Gods with other nations: They did thinke that *Apollo* did driue away diseases; that *Minerua* did giue the first knowledge of all workes and arts: that *Iupiter* gouerned heauen, and *Mars* did preside in warre, and had all power ouer armes. *Plinie* saith that *Xenodorus* made an image of *Mercurie*, greater than any of his time in a towne of Auvergne. *Strabo* writes that *Diana* of Ephesus had a Temple at Marseille. But a Marblestone that was found, shewes that the Gaules did also adore another *Diana* surnamed of *Ardenne*. *Lactantius*, *Lucian* and *Minutius* report, that the Gaules did worship the gods *Hese*, *Ten-tate* and *Zarane*: but many learned men doe hold that they are the same that *Mars*, *Mercurie* and *Iupiter*. *Ansonius* names *Bellennus* for god of the Gaules. *Lucian* saith also, that they worshipped *Hercules* surnamed *Ogmien*. The Gaules did worship their gods turning towards the right hand, as *Athenes* writes. They did sacrifice men to their gods, and namely to *Mars*, as *Cesar* doth witnesse in these words: When they haue resolved to fight, they doe vow vnto him, that which they shall take in warre. They offer vp the beastes which they take, and bring all the rest into one place. In many townes you may see heapes of such things, and it doth seldome happen that any one in contempt of religion doth conceale those things that are taken, or enbelle any thing that hath bene so layd vp: and there was a grieuous punishment ordained against them that should inke in this custome. They that were visited with any grieuous sicknesse, or in danger in battell, or in any other place, offered vp men, or else made a vow to offer some; and they vse the Druides in such sacrifices, thinking that the gods cannot be pacified; but in giuing the life of one man for another. They hold that the sacrifices of them that are taken

D in any theft or other crime, is more pleasing vnto the gods; but when they want offenders they take innocents. *Strabo* also saith, that they were accustomed to strike him on the backe with a sword that was appointed to bee sacrificed, and that they did predaie what should happen vnto them by his starting. *Tertullian* writes that they spent whole nights about the Tombes of valiant men to receiue Oracles from them. And the Gaules neuer made any sacrifice without calling some Druide. The Bardes were the Gaules Poets, who did write the praises of famous men, and did blame cowards. *Ammianus Marcellinus* makes mention of the Eubages, who made profession among the Gaules to search out the deepest secrets of nature. *Laertius* and *Suidas* make mention of the Seumothees, who differed nothing from the Druydes, no more E than the Saronides of *Diodorus Siculus*: and *Plinie* doth many times terme the Druydes Magicians. For the Druides in Gaule were the same thing that the Magicians in Persia, the Caldeans in Assiria, and the Gymnosophists in India. These Druydes had many young men to instruct, and they were wonderfully honoured among the Gaules, for they referred themselves vnto them in all controversies, both publike and priuate, and if any crime had bene committed, they did iudge and appoint what punishment they thought fit. If any publike person or priuate did not obey their decrees, they did forbid them to cometo the sacrifice, which was a great punishment among them. And they that were interdicted after this manner, were held impious, and shunned of all the world, yea when they demanded iustice, it was refused them.

F Among all the Druydes there was one about the rest who had soveraigne authoritie ouer them. After his death they put him that best deserved into his place, and it there were many of one ranke and equall in merit, the Druydes were assembled for the election, carried by the pluralitie of voyces. Sometimes they were so obstinate in the pursuit of this dignitie, as from words they fell to blowes. The Druides did assemble euery year

IX.

yeare vpon the frontier of the countrie of Chartres, whether all came that had any suits, and obeyed their sentence. And it seemes that *Caesar* notes, that this place was no other but the towne of Dreux, which doth yet in some fort retain the name of Druydes. They were not accustomed to goe vnto the warre, and did not contribute to any thing that was imposed vpon the countrie. So as these priuiledges did inuite many to be their disciples, and many fathers to fend their sonnes to be instructed by them, and to make themselves capable to be of this ranke. They that submitted themselves vnder their discipline, did learne a great number of verses, and held it not lawfull to write them. One only of their opinions was published (saith *Melo*) that the soules were immortal, and according to *Diodorus*, that they past from one bodie to another, as *Pythagoras* held. *Strabo* saith also, that they dispured of manners, and were giuen to that part of philosophie, besides naturall. There were also among the Druydes women which made the like profession. Some hold that these words a *Guythe new yeare*, come off that the Druydes were accustomed to fend by their disciples, *Guy* to all men, in the beginning of the yere, as wishing it happy vnto them. These were the manners of the auncient Gaules touching sacred things.

As for prophane, they were accustomed to goe armed to assemblies. *Plutarch* writes, that the women determined of peace and warre, and that their resolutions were followed. *Strabo* writes that if any one interrupted him that spake in an assemblee, an officer came and threatened him with a sword in his hand, and enioined him silence, if hee did not obey, hee did the like the second time, and so the third, and if hee then found him obdurate, hee cut off such a part of his cassack, as the rest was not fit for seruise. There custome was to aske newes of passengers, and the people inquired of merchants from what countrie they came, forcing them to tell what they had seene, and the Gaules did often relie vpon these reports, which where many times false, therupon they held their assemblies, and did resolute many things which were afterwards very preiudiciall vnto them, for these resolutions had false brutes and light beliefe for there foundation. They were accustomed to punish him more greuously that had killed a stranger, then him that had taken away the life of any one of the countrie, for the latter was but banished, but the other was sodenly condemned to die. When any remarkable thing happened, they did presently publish it openly in the villages, and this past from hand to hand with great speede.

As for matters which concerne warre, the rest of the Gaules did learne of the inhabitants of Marfille to inclose the places of their habitations with walls. *Elianus* saith that they were the promptest men in the world to expose themselves to all dangers. *Poysen* saith, that they were men of turbulent spirits and could not liue in rest. *Titus Linius* holdes them for men that could not commaund when they were in choller. Libertie was in such recommendation with them, as *Florus* reports that certaine Gaules being taken in the warre, fought to breake their chaines with their teeth, and in the end they presented their throates one vnto an other to be strangled. *Caesar* holds that they were readie to vnder take warre, but not able to endure the discomforts; and *Titus Linius* sayth, that the Gaules in the beginning of the fight were more than men, and in the end lesse than women. But *Leois* of another opinion, saying that the Gaules neuer faint, and that they hold the least retreat for a shamefull fight. And *Salust* saith, that in his time the Gaules were so feared, as they had made all Italie to tremble, and whereas they did fight with other nations for glorie, they were forced to take armes against these to defend their liues. And *Iustine* saith, that the kings of Asia, and all others did so esteeme the courage of the Gaules, as they thought they could not well preferue that which they had gotten without them, nor recouer what they had lost. *Aristotle* saith, that the Gaules did not feare the quaking of the earth. Wee read in *Strabo*, that *Alexander* hauing demanded of certaine Gaules what they feared most, they answered, that they feared only least the heauens should fall vpon them. And *Elianus* teacheth vs, that they held all flight to bee so ignominious, as oftentimes they would not retier out of a house that was falling downe or burning, so as they were sometimes consumed in the flames. But to come vnto

A to their manner of proceeding in time of warre, *Caesar* saith, that before they began any warre, they caused an assemblee to bee published, whether all should come armed that had attained to the age of fourteen years, and hee that came last was put to death before all the assemblee with strange torments. Men of all ages went to the warre, and no man was exempt by reason of his many years. They had a care neuer to want victuals, and on the other side to haue their enemies distressed, burning to that end their boroughes and townes.

The Gaules armes were a weightie sword, according to *Polibius*, and long according to *Titus Linius*, but without a point, being not fit as *Strabo* saith, to thrust, but to B strike, and these swords did hang by a chaine on the left side, as *Diodorus* doth witness. They did also carry long targets; and in like manner two darts. They did also vse launces, whose head was a cubit long. They had their heads armed with a Morion, vpon which they had hornes grauen, or the representations of birds, or some foure footed beast, which was the cause that *Caesar*'s ninth Legion consisting of Gaules was called Alouette or Larke, for that on the head peeces of the souldiers of this Legion, there were Larkes grauen, or else the crests. Or els it was so named as some thinke, for that the souldiers vsed Morions made like the crest of a Larke. The Gaules did also vse bowes and slings. They did also garnish the hilt of their swords with corall, as they did their targets, and some put gold vpon their coslets. Many Gaules did fight naked about the waist, as *Titus Linius* doth write in his discourse of the battaile of Cannas. They did esteeme the horsemen much more than the foot, and *Caesar* himselfe had a feeling of the valour of the French horsemen, which he employed against *Petereius* and *Africanus*, and afterwards in Africke against the rest of the ciuill wars. They vsed great squadrons in their battailes, yea, to the number of sixe thousand, as we may see in *Vegetius*. When they entred into fight, they made fearefull cries, leapt, stroke their targets, and made so greata noise with their armes, as it seemed all the places round about did echo againe and erie out with them; they did also vse Trumpets; and as for their valour in the midst of combates, the Author of the African warre saith, that they were free men who were accustomed to fight, not with ambushes, and stratagems, but in open warre. As for the ordering of their armie, for that it did consist of men of diuers townes, the souldiers were diuided into townes and villages, and the troupes of euerie towne were appointed apart, to auoyd all disorder, and to make the men of euerie troupe more earnest to defend one another. Hauing gotten a victorie of their enemies, they did sacrifice the prisoners to their Gods, as we read in *Athenens*; and *Strabo* writes, that they did hang the heads of their enemies about the neckes of their horses, and then did fasten them to their Towne-gates to serue for a spectacle.

There were two sorts of men in reputation amongst the Gaules, that is, the Druydes and the Knights, whereof the one assisted at the seruice of their Gods, and did deliver and preface their wills; and the other went to the warre when occasion was offered, and led with them, according to their meanes, what men they could. They that were of the number of the people were held as bondmen, so as the Knights had power ouer them, as the Masters haue ouer their slaues. They did not suffer their children to come in their preface before they were able to carrie armes. The husbands did put in common with their wiues as much goods as they had brought in marriage, and both together kept an accompt of the whole, and the fruits were reuerend; If any of them did dye, the part of both did accrue vnto the other, with the fruits of the precedent yeares; and the husbands had power of life and death ouer their wiues, as well as ouer their children. They had also this custome, that when as any one was charged with debtes, or overcharged with taxes, or opprest by the power of great men, hee made himselfe a bondman vnto some gentleman, who for that time had as great power ouer him as ouer a slaue. Their houses (according to the testimonie of *Caesar*) were for the most part in forests, or neere vnto riuers, to auoyd the heate of Sommer. They did neuer shut the doores, if wee shall beleuee *Strabon*, and they vsed stones as they

XI.

doe in Germanie, as we may see in the Misopogon of the Emperour *Julian*. As for their habits, they did weare Cassockes of wooll, made in lozanges of diuers colours. They did weare breeches, and rings, but of the middle finger onely, as *Plinie* sayth. They did vse earthen vessels verie thicke, and pouldred with diuers flowers that were represented. They did not eat sitting, but lying vpon the ground vpon dogs and Wolues skins, and according vnto *Strabo*, vpon beds; and they were fed by young children. They made the fire neere them, where was to be seene the pots and spits covered with meat, especially of hogs, both bothe and fowls. But most commonly they had nothing but milke for their meat. The richest drunke wine, which they had freish of Italie, or from about *Marceille*, for that there were not any vines to be seene elsewhere; and sometimes they did put a little water into their wine. They did also make strangers to supper, and inquired of them what they were, and what subjects had drawne them from their houses. *Athenens* reports, that aunciently they were accustomed to set members of Mutton, or of some other beast, vpon the Table, whereof the most valiant tooke the thigh: If any one thought that this tytle was better due vnto him than to the other who had challenged it, they did fight vnto his death. Hee sayth moreover, there were some which tooke gold and silver in Theaters, or some certaine number of pipes of wine, swearing they should endure that for the which they receiued these presents; then distributing them vnto their friends, they layed themselves flat vpon their targets in the presence of them that should cut their throats. *Amianus Marcellinus* sayth, that they were much giuen to swimming and hunting, where they did vse poysoned arrowes. Their funerals were statly among the Gaules; for *Caesar* saith, that they cast into the fire whatsoever the deceased had loued best in his life time. And *Mela* saith, that there were some men did cast themselves into fire, in the which the dead carcase did burne, as thinking to goe and liue with him. They did also cast, as *Diomedes* writes, letters into the fire, as if the dead man should read them. And *Valerius* the Great reports, that the Gaules did lend money in their life times, vpon condition to be paid another day in hell.

Manners of the French at this day.

XII.

SEing we haue vndertaken to discourse of the manners of all France, it shall be fit to speake of the capitall cite, which is Paris, the ordinarie aboad of our kings, and the abridgement of all the realme, as man is of the world. The Parisiens are of a reasonable milde disposition, neither doe they shew themselves so harsh as the inhabitants of diuers other townes of France. Yet they are easie to moue, and a witty fellow is able to mutine a thousand: This is spoken in regard of men of base qualitie. In former times the Parisiens were but simple, so as they tearmed them dolts throughout all France; but they are growne at this day so subtil as they are able to deceiue the rest. And yet there are many who are not accustomed to see or doe any thing, which deserue well this tytle. But they haue no sooner lookt into the world, but they are much more hard to circumuent than many others. It is true in my opinion, that they distrust of all things which is still recommended vnto them (by reason of the infinit number of cheaters which are seene in Paris) is the greatest policie they haue. The women of all sorts desire to be braue, and to be better attired than their condition will beare, whatsoever it cost: And their husbands, who seeke for the most part to please them (for that the women do in a manner gouerne all) employ all their meanes to satisfie their desires. But the women are to be commended for one thing, that the sayrest, most delicate, and richest, doe not disdain to visite Hospitals, to handle viceried and diseased men, and to feed and dresse them. They are verie desirous to heare what newes passe (as *Caesar* speakes of their ancestors.) They loue all kinds of sports, and to liue in delights, being inuited thereunto by the ordinarie object of them that frequent the Court, who for the most part haue no other exercise, but to play, sport, and make good chere. If there be any marriage among

A among handie-crafts men, they spend much more than men of the best qualitie of the cite, where at this day all is past ouer without bribe. But me must obserue, that in these marriages of tradesmen, they doe often giue presents which doe exceed the charges, and they obserue this custome among men of base condition, that when they are inuited euerie one payes his shot, as they doe in many places of Touraine. Moreover, the Parisiens, who were wont to wonder at euerie new thing that came, are not now amazed at any thing, they are so accustomed to see strange fights. These people are alwaies iealous of strangers that come, and therefore they are still watchfull, least their guests should goe away in their debts. It is true they are many examples of such as haue beene deceiued in vsing too much courtesie, not knowing the persons with whom they had to deale; But if they haue found you a man of worth, and that you haue lodged long in their houses, you shall receiue more courtesie than from any. They haue this in particular, that they goe not out of their houses in the night, notwithstanding any noyse that is made in the street; or that any crie that hee is robd or murdered. So as if any man falls into the hands of such sharkers, next vnto God, hee must trust to his hands or legges. And that which keeps them in their houses after this manner, is, that there are often false alarms which some drunkards giue them, or else they see the cries of some rogues which take delight to put the world in action, and then to laugh at them, or else they see some wicked persons who make this noyse of purpose, to draw men out of their lodgings, and then to murder them they hate. To conclude, the people of Paris are of a reasonable milde humor, and verie tractable, and in my opinion they passe all the rest of France in ciuitie. All that are about Paris differ little; But yet I must say, that the Pefants are as arrogant as in any other place whatsoever, by reason of the neerenesse of the parliament: So as you cannot speake a word that shal dislike them, but they will presently answere, and vrge you to strike them; which done, they wil gather together & seek to trouble you. They haue also this custome about Paris, that they will exact and draw all they can possiblie from trauelers. So as from what part soeuer you come neere vnto Paris you shall find all things exceeding deere.

The Charrtrins are louing, courteous, affable and kinde to all men, and commonly they liue quietly together, they loue strangers that haue any good parts in them, they are giuen to deuotion, and doe much affect the religion of their ancestors, they are charitable, and giuen to traffick.

They of Beausse are almost of the same disposition, that the Charrtrins, of a reasonable good humor, giuen to labour and traffick of come. In many places they are subtil, by reason of the number of passengers that come from all parts. The inhabitants of Chasteaudun haue good wits, sharp and subtil, they vnderstand by a word what a man would say, and they vse not many words. But their speech is so quick, as they doe not sometimes heare one an other, neither doe they suffer them that speak to end their discourse, which is naturall vice of the cuntry.

The citizens of Blois hold of the bountie of the soile and sweetnesse of the aire: they are courteous, mild, affable, warie, very subtil, and witty, great husbands and in continual action. They are giuen to the seruice of God, loue strangers and liue louingly together. Finally all the inhabitants of this cuntry, yeeld nothing in neatnes to the rest of France.

The Vendosmois are of a milde disposition, courteous, and giuen to all things that are most neat: yea borne to be excellent in some thing, as *Peter Ronfard* a gentleman of this cuntry was, whose works are wel known to all Europ, and haue made him not onely the honour of this cuntry, but also the ornament of France.

They of Orleans and there abouts are neat and ciuill, and haue a very pleasing speech, but they are of a lower and waspish disposition, which hath made them to be called Gueffins. They are full of courage, and support one another much, and are giuen to traffick which they vse in many places.

They about Sens haue giuen good testimonye in former times how couragious they were, being the first that resolued to passe with *Brennus* into Italie. The people are reasonable

sonable good, and lesse craftie than in many other places, and they are in a manner all well affected to religion. The Auxerrois are like vnto them, being people of a reasonable good temper, but courageous, mutinous, and otherwise giuen to trafficke with their commodities.

As for them of Champagne and Brie, although their neighbors blame them for their obstinacie, and call them headstrong, yet this imperfection is hidden with a number of vertues which makes them commendable, for that reason makes them to subdue chollier, from whence this vice proceeds wherewith they are taxed. They are affable, ready to doe pleasure, fearing God, and are not subiect easily to imbrace new opinions.

The Picardes are of as good an humor as any people of France, wonderfully free, courteous, ready to doe pleasure, valiant, and exceeding courageous: but they are wonderfully quick, whereupon they are called hot braines: they loue to make good cheere, yea to exceed; and they doe not esteeme any, but such as drinke hard with them, so as he that will obtaine any thing must drinke carous. They loue well together, so as he that toucheth any one inhabitant of a towne, shall presently see all the rest vpon him. To conclude, it is a nation which doth not dissemble, vpon whose word a man may relye.

They of Touraine are verie courteous, and affect trafficke, but aboute all things they are faithfull to their kings, as the retreat of king Charles the seuenth to Tours, and that of king Henry the third, doth witnesse. The countrie is so good, as it inuities them to take delight in plaie and in all sortes of sports, so as they are called the Laughers of Tours. The Manceaux are giuen to labour, industrious, of a subtil wit, hard to decieve, good husbands, and something more politique than their neighbours: finally they are fit for any thing they vndertake, and this countrie doth breed vp as braue and valiant gentlemen as any be in this realme.

The Angeuins and Poiteuins haue good wits, but the Poiteuins are more cunning. They leste with a good grace, and incounter very fitly. The Pelants are verie subtil, and if I may so say, wicked, and the gentlemen are gallant and courageous, as they be in Anjou.

The Normans are cunning and subtil, they are not subiect to the lawes and customes of any strangers, but liue according to their ancient pollicie, which they defend obstinately. They are very cunning in suits, and know all the tricks, quirks and surprises that pettifoggings can inuent: so as strangers dare not conuerse with these people. Finally, the men haue very good wits (as some personages of this age doe make knowne, and the common practise and knowledge of some doe witnesse.) They are very deuout, and full of courage, whereof the conquest of William Duke of Normandie, who made himselfe king of England, and of the sonnes of Valonges, and of Hauteville Gufchard, who made themselves lords of Pouille, Calabria, Naples, and Sicilie, giue vs assured proofes.

As for the Brittons they are more or lesse cunning, according to the countries they inhabit: For that they that are neereft vnto the Sea are not by nature so courteous as the rest: but all the Brittons in generall are sociable enough, and of a good conuersation, yet cunning and subtil, although they seeme grosse. They loue their profit, and are giuen to wine more than were fit; and for this cause they frequent tauerne, where most of their affaires are treated: and to conclude, they are very deuout and good Catholics. They haue this particularitie, that they hate the Normans mortally, as the Normans doe them.

In regard of the Angoumoisins, they that liue in Angoulesme haue good wits: they seeke to maintaine themselves in reputation, they vaunt willingly, take small delight in traffique, liue for the most part of their reuenues, and play the gentlemen: they loue learning, and are sumptuous and courteous, and take delight (like to most of the French) in new things. As for them of the Champian countrie, they are grosse and rude, giuen to labour, and wilfull, yet fit to armes.

The Perigordins are nimble, active, and sober, they content themselves with little, and vse great exercises; and although they be taxed to be rude and grosse, yet they that shall conuerse with them, shall find them discreet and fit for all honest exercises, bee it either of learning or armes. The gentlemen houses of Perigord are true

scholes

A Schöles of vertue and courtesie, and the Bourgeois of townes imitate the fashions of the Gentry, which is verie great. As for the women they are chaste, good huswives, haue no other care but of their families, and are no gadders, although their husbands be not seuerer vnto them.

The Lymosins are sober, and drinke little wine, but in good townes. They are good husbands. Kinsmen liue alwaies in concord, so as you shall see houses in villages whereas an old man shall see his children vnto the third generation, yea, there are families whereas you may see aboute a hundred of the same blood, which liue in common, as in a Colledge. They are for the most part laborious and subtil; but they haue this fault, B that they will ground a proceffe vpon nothing; and which is worse, they are taxed to make a trade of bearing false witness. They hold the inhabitants of Tulle to be chiefly of this disposition. But as for them of Verche they doe not much care for Merchandise, and are more willingly giuen to armes. As for the gentlemen, they are in a manner alwaies giuen to quarrell one with another; but yet they are stately and generous: and as for the inhabitants of townes they doe imitate them in this later part.

The Auvergnas are wonderfull subtil and cunning, verie laborious, greedie after gaine, and giuen much to trafficke: They are dissemblers for the most part, quarrellers, full of violence, and dangerous men to deal with. The Nobilitie is verie courteous and valiant, but the people loue suits, and contest maliciously for a small matter.

C The inhabitants of Bourbonnois which ioynes to Auvergne, are almost of the same disposition, but they that are farther off are more milde and courteous, they haue subtil wits, they are good husbands, and giuen to their profit, yet affable to strangers.

They of the countrie of Messin saueur something of the rudenesse of the Germaines, and participate of their freedome. They are valiant, strong, laborious, religious and simple, but obstinate to maintaine their libertie all they can. They are not giuen to loue learning.

As for the Bourgondians, they of Dijon are resolute in their opinions, they loue and frequent together, they are ialous of their honour, courteous of greatnesse and offices, and are familiar. The women goe brauely, and yet they are chaste and loyal to their husbands.

D bands. The common people are giuen to labour, especially in their vines. They are deuout, and good Christians, enemies to reuolt and to new opinions, valiant and hardie, & such as may not be dealt withall but after a good sort. As for them of Beaune, the chiefe inhabitants are men of iustice, and therest apply themselves to plant vines, or to make cloth, both of wooll, flax and hemp, whereof the countrie abounds. They of Sens are peaceable, courteous and charitable, they loue one another, and liue in good accord, and take delight in the acquaintance and knowledge of strangers. They of Chalon are witty, and giuen to speake well, they hold of the bouenamed, in a manner in all the rest. We may say the like of all the other countries of Bourgondie, who are for the most part full of freedome, and of a good disposition. But in some places they abuse wine as well as in

E Germanie. The people of Lyonnois are milde and gracious, after a simple manner: but in effect, they are not so grosse as they make shew. For the Pelant is cunning; and as for them of a better condition, they doe their businesse wittily. They be people of great traffique, who make money of euery thing. And as for them that dwell in Lyons, there are more strangers among them than in any place in France, and in a manner hold the Italian humour, and both men and women loue to goe verie sumptuously.

The people of Forrest are subtil, cunning and witty, they can wisely provide for their affaires, they loue gaine, and to this end they trafficke throughout all the world. But they are charitable to them of their countrie, when as they are reduced to any necessitie in F foraine land. He hath need to be carefull of himselfe, that hath any businesse to treat with a Forreiner.

The Dauphinois, to speake generally, are much affected to their Prince, but verie ialous of their libertie, constant in the pursuit of their affaires, and carefull to keepe their owne. The inhabitants of townes are courteous, affable and witty, capable of sciences, and

G iij

about

above al of the Mathematicks, curious searchers into the secrets of nature, free of speech, A
and fociable, but somewhat dissembling & proud, having a good opinion of themselves
and vanter. But if we will looke into this people more particularly, we must diuide it into
them of the mountaines, and Champian countrie. They of the mountaines are rude and
grosse, not bred to learning, but fit for armes, and above all, giuen to trafficke and labour.
These Mountaigners haue a custome, that whē as winter draws neere, they send abroad all
them that are able to trauell, so as not any remains at home but old people, and children
who cannot goe and get their liuing. They call all them Bics, or Bifouards, which goe
thus abroad and returne at Easter: and sometime these Bics (who are painefull, and for
the most part cunning) become rich merchants by their sparing. As for the gentlemen
of the Mountaines, they did in former time fauour of the rudenesse of their abode: But
now that they conuerse at Grenoble, they yeeld nothing in ciuilitie to them of the Chā-
pian country, who are as compleat in euery thing as any be in France. They of the moun-
taines are also verie sparing, and seeke to gather by many meanes, especially by their cat-
telle which they breed, whereas they of the flat countrie (who are ciuill and generous)
spend their reuenues freely, and conuerse more together than any in France. And to con-
clude, all the Nobilitie support one another what they can, so as although in the heat of
warre, a gentleman be lodged in a weake house in the middelt of a wood, yet shall he
hardly be annoyed, if he haue liued louingly before with his neighbours, more if he be va-
liant and coragious. In regard of the people of the flat countrie, they are more ciuill than
them of the Mountaines: but they do not much loue labour, especially in fertill places,
for they take great delight in idleness. They are courteous, and respect the gentlemen
much, who haue as great power there as in any prouince of France. They may draw
good souldiers out of the Mountaines, as also out of the Champian countrie, where the
men seeme to be as little bred to learning as in the Mountaines. The men are not so
greedie of gaine as in other places, and content themselves, so as they may passe their
dayes without want, not but that there are some exceeding couetous as well as in other
places, but I say it is not commonly practised. At Grenoble and in other good townes,
as at Vienne, Valence and Romans, the women desire to be braue, and of late dayes
this vanitie hath crept into the whole prouince. I will speake one word in the commen-
dation of the gentlewomen of Dauphine, that there are few scene in France to equall
them in wit and spirit, and that with their libertie and familiarity they haue their honor
in recommendation above all the women of the world, so as it is almost a wonder to
heare speake of a woman that makes loue to the preiudice of her honour.

The Protenfals are of a strange disposition, and are verie sober when as they liue of
their owne charge, they are valiant enough, but inconstant, couetous, dissembling and
faiethlesse. They are all great talkers, and take delight to vaunt and tell tales of them-
selves. They are arrogant and proud in their owne countrie, and carrie no respect vnto
their Lords, or to them that are in authoritie ouer them, whom they haue many times
wretchedly slaine. The women are verie sumptuous after the Italian manner. E
The Pefants are as witty as in any countrie of France, and deliuer their mindes so well, as one
would say that some sufficient man bred vp in affaires had instructed them. They that
liue towards the Sea are much giuen to trafficke, and mannage their businesse wittily.
They are great Ballet makers, with the which they doe often passe their heat, when any
thing troubles them. Finally, they are much affected to religion, and are good Catho-
lickes.

If we shall stay to suruey Languedoc, we shall first see the Toloufains bred to lear-
ning, and to haue good spirits, but subiect to be moued vpon the least bruit: vncon-
tentous to strangers, but they are deuout, good Catholickes, and verie ciuill: yet they agree
not well among themselves. They about Carcasonne, Beziers, Montpellier and Nismes, F
are sodaine, great talkers, and vanter of themselves, not secret nor confidante, full of
freedom, actiuenesse and courage. In all the countrie which is from Tolouse to S. Es-
prit, and there also the women are exceeding braue, and take delight in painting, al-
though it be not so much with an intent to doe ill, as to be held faire; for that the whole
countrie

A countrie is naturally enclined to this vanitie. And the men desire to go well attired beyond
their conditions and reuenues. The women doe most commonly labour all the weeke
in works of silke, and fare hard, that they may get something by their gaine to make
them neate and handsome on Sundaies and hollie daies, especially from Beziers to Pont
Saint Elprit: But this is not much practised at Carcasonne or Narbonne.

If we come vnto Viuarçz, we shall finde, in the Champian countrie which is very
narrowe, a people which is nothing giuen to delights or idleness, but loues labour, and
makes the best of that little land hee holds. The husbandman is chiefly giuen to ma-
nure his vines, which doe commonly yeeld him great profit. They keepe good cheere and
B are ill attired contrary to all the rest of Languedoc. Their wines and children labour al-
so in their vines and plowed lands. There are many good wits found in this countrie,
which they make knowne in their discourse and actions, so as they neede not to enuie a-
ny others in France. The gentlemen are so ciuill, and receiue strangers so courteously
(especially they that are worthe of commendation for any good parts) as a man would
say vertue had made choise of this countrie for her abode. As for their valour it is so wel
knowne to all men, as it were to doubt of truerh it selfe to dispute of it, the nobilitie
haue giuen such proofes of their courage. But it is not the nobilitie alone that shewes
this valour, for that among the people you shall finde more souldiers for the quantitie
of grounde, then in any countrie of the world, and so hardie, as the greatest dangers
C make them more resolute and courageous. Euery part swarms with men bred for the
warre, and in a short space you shall finde so many trained souldiers, and men which
haue commaunded in troupes, as you would thinke this countrie the very place where
to raise armies, at the least for footmen. The greatest inconuenience I finde, is, that com-
monly the mountaine countrie is full of quarrells and murders, and that oftentimes
they assemble in troupes, as if they would giue a battell, and these assemblies are some-
times dispersed by them that haue authoritie in the countrie, and many times they are
broken with effusion of blood. And as for single combats, before the kings Edict they
were so ordinarie, as they talked of nothing else. To speake something also of the moun-
taines, the nobilitie is very courteous, and delights to make them good cheere that come,
D but they are not altogether so neate as others of the flat countrie, except such as haue
frequented the court, and learned the fashions. But as for the Pefant he is rude in his
actions; but not grosse witted, for that hee doth mannage his affaires discretely, and
speakes of those things hee knowes with iudgement. Hee is very laborious, so as he will
toile three daies in a rocke that hee may plant one stocke of a vine, and this labour is the
cause of his wealth.

They of Velay and Geuaudan are to bee put in the same ranke with the inhabitants
of the mountaines of Viuarois: For the nobilitie and the people liue there after
the same manner, except that in Velay they are fuller of quarrells, and the people are
not so good a nature as in Viuarçz. And there are also troupes of Bandoliers or
theues, as in the mountaines of Foix, and many other places, whereas all law con-
sists in force. Finally they are giuen to trafficke with their commodities, and other
things.

The inhabitants of the countrie of Foix are giuen to labour, they endure all discom-
modities, bee it to march in a bad countrie, whereunto they are accustomed, or to remaine
long without eating. They are also full of courage. But the countrie hath this inconue-
nience, that many not able to liue in a worse countrie, demaund a custisie of passengers,
with a Perronell in their hands like theues. Yet for the most part they haue this good
humor, that if you content them willingly they doe you no harme, and sometime the
first you meete and giue contentment vnto, will set you out of danger, and free you from
F all bad passages. Sometimes also these Bandoliers will strip you of all, passing out of Spain
into France, or from France to Spaine.

The countrie of Cominge abounds with valiant men; but they are little giuen to lear-
ning, notwithstanding that they haue as good wits, and are apt to all things as any
nation of the Earth. They doe easily endure all discommodities; they are sober discrete
in

in words, and hate all superfluities of apparel and delights, or any thing that may make a man effeminate. As for the women they are chaste, great husbands, obedient to their husbands, and love not to be idle.

In Armagnac the people are grosse, simple, and good husbands; making profit of every thing, they are given to traffike, especially of cattell, and they want no courage.

As for Bigorre, the people are proud, borne to armes, sodaine in their enterprises, and yet great dissemblers, vncourteous, vntractable and vnpleasing, vnlesse it be in towns. Moreover they endure not an iniurie easily, and commit murders for a small occasion yet they are good and loiall, and naturally simple. The nobilitie is braue, sociable, courteous, good and renowned for their valour.

The Gascoignes are of an aduise spirit, prompt & sodaine, all ferie and full of courage, and fit for anything they shall undertake: But they are proude and will alwaies haue the better, so as most commonly they make themselves odious and insupportable. Yet when they see themselves among other nations where they are too weak, they hide their nature and become tractable. But this is no hinderance but a man may discouer their insouciance, which they cannot dissemble. They take delight to preach their owne praises, and to hear them. By their owne saying no man is poore among them, and when they are in any vnkowne place, the most wretched & needy plaies the prince. They are for the most part courteous, and greedy to get by what means soeuer, they are wary and knowe well how to doe their busines. Moreover they are enuious of an other mans good, more then any nation whatsoeuer, and are so full of disdain, when they haue need of men, as they disdain many of their friends by their looks. But when they haue need to vie any, you neuer saw men more humble. As for the nobilitie they are as braue, courteous, gallant and courageous as any can be seene. They doe so visit one another, as the houses of gentlemen may iustly be termed Innes, & when as they entertain any one, they make him the best chere they can. But they are by nature sodaine and chollerick, whereby quarrels doe daily grow.

As for Bearn, the people are aduise, affable and courteous, but cunning and subtill, well spoken in their language, valiant, and a friend to libertie. They are also proud, thinke wonderful well of themselves, and contemne others, and it is that which is found odious in their actions, which are otherwise commendable. The Bemois are reasonable apt to learning, and take delight to learne, & to heare strangers. The gentlemen are braue and courageous, and are not much pleased with gaie apparel, thinking that the greatest or name of a man consists in vertue, wherewith they are well fitted.

Yet we haue discoursed particularly of the people of France one after another; now it is fit to consider what may be spoken in general.

XIII. The people of France are good, and free, and yet the warres haue depriv'd them of part of this first integritie, which made them to be esteemed through out the world. But at the least they haue this particularitie, that they will not so easily be drawne into a bad action as their neighbours, for that the greatest part abhorre trecherie and villanie. They are aduised enough, yet most commonly sodaine, and doe not pierce so farre into a business, as the Italian and Spaniard, before they undertake it. It is a nation borne to warre, and they doe more esteeme them that make profession of armes, than those that follow learning, for that, the onely neede they haue of learned men makes them to honour them. They doe much feare the nobilitie, who haue great power where they liue, so as they carie themselves alwaies worthe of that title. They loue their kings more than any other nation of the Earth, and wee may say that they are rather full of a free affection vnto them, then of a seruill feare of their power. They are fit for any thing they shall undertake, they are of so aduise a spirit. You shall see few of them subiect to madness, but many light headed, and few gawie; the which proceeds from their free humor, and naturall plainnesse, more then for any want of government or iudgement. This people is given to all sort of trades and liberal artes, they are venturous and full of courage, they goe throughout the world either for traffike or for warre, they loue nouelties,

are

A are curious, and sometimes keepe no secrets, they are spenders and desirous to liue as they. Sometimes they haue too much tongue, and many times the blow is giuen before a word bee spoken. Euery man affects honour, and they were growne to that passe before the edict aginst combats, as the meanest man being wronged in word, by any other of the same qualitie, would not faile to challenge him, to get a satisfaction of the wrong by armes, imitating therein gentlemen and fouldiers. Since the peace, they are much given to studie in France, for that they see how lawyers are honoured, and grow rich during this calme: So as many men of base condition send their children to studie, seeking to make them the pillars of their house, and chiefe supporters of the Pallace: But there is so many at this day, that one starues another, and hee that is most fortunat carries it from his companion sooner than he learned; for that at this day it is not needfull in those courts where Iustice is held, to bee verie learned, but onely to bee well instructed in the formalities of Iustice, to vnderstand the course of the Pallace, to haue knowledge of the ordonances, and (to say in a word) to haue the practise in their head, and not to care for speculation: So as it is almost a folly for fathers to haue their children studie long, who should profit more in one year liuing with an attorney, haue but a few scraps of latine, than he should in ten years reading of good bookes. Yet the courts of Parliament and other seats of Iustice are not without men full of all learning, as wee may see by their pleadings and other works.

C As for the Nobilitie, I thinke the earth doth not beare any more valiant nor more gracious; and courtisie is so bred with the gentlemen, as it were a prodigie to see any one discourteous and vnciuile. And for prooffe, strangers come to learne all kind of ciuilitie in France, and they doe not thinke themselves well fashioned, if they haue not made a voyage. The Nobilitie take great delight in hunting, and are given to play at weapons, to ride great horses, and to all kinds of good exercises; as also to entertaine Ladies, who are as compleat as in any countrie of the world. And this libertie which they haue in France to see and to be seene, in stead of thrusting them into a carelesse contempt of their honour, drawes them rather to the preservation thereof, and to contemne that desire which is incident to those that are restrained, in whom constraint and seruitude doth breed a more violent passion to infringe this defence. They are so courageous, as I hold for certaine that an armie consisting wholly of French gentlemen would be invincible, and able to strike terror into all the world, and to bee victorious in all enterprises. They maintaine their authoritie ouer the people; so as one gentleman alone liuing in a borough or village, would make all the rest to bow. It is ordinarie for gentlemen to visit one another, and one of them is no sooner affronted by a man of an other condition, but they all gather together to make him repent it that dare contest with one of their qualitie; and if two gentlemen be in quarrell, all their neighbours seeke to reconcile them, if they be aduertised in time. They loue learning, not to make a gaine of it, as men of an other condition, but to entertaine their spirits, and for that they know that learning is none of the least ornaments of a man well bred: Yet they doe not often make shew of it, neither will they make profession of what they know but among their friends. But above all they affect to speake well, and doe what possible they can to purchase this perfection, whereby they thinke to win glorie; also they thinke it a fit meanes to get the fauour of ladies. They that remaine commonly in court are held more near than they that liue continually in the countrie. But I dare say there are some so well bred, that neuer haunted the court, as they are nothing inferior to them that frequent it daily: and this happens, for that there is much good companie in euery countrie, where, they that make their profit of what they see may fashion themselves; for that in these companies, there are alwaies some that haue seene the court, and that know after what manner they should liue, and these bee for the most part they by whose actions they gouerne themselves. At this day the best part of the nobilitie, at the least they that are most gallant, and haue best meanes in euery Prouince, come to the king, there to spend a part of the yere, and there are which neuer abandon his traine, so as the Court is alwaies great. The ordinarie exercises of courtiers are riding, dancing, or fencing; and that wherein the

young

younger sort busie themselves, are running at the ring, or at the quintin, or fighting at barriers at shrouetide. Play is none of their least diuersions, and that which spends a great part of their time, is loue and the fight of Ladies. But they employ the best part in following the king wherefoeuer hee goes; bee it a hunting or elsewhere, so as hee shall alwaies bee well accompanied, although hee part sodainly. The French king is alwaies more familiar, and suffers himselfe to be seene more freely than any prince in the world. For the French are of this nature, that they are not content when as they may not see their prince; and if any one receiue the least good countenance, he esteemes more than all the good another man can giue him. If France in former times hath had gracious and amiable kings, these may now vaunt to haue one who without blemish to his ranke, lends his care more to all the world, than any Monarch that euer was seene, and doth gouerne his actions; that in assuring the most fearefull and timorous by his mildenesse, hee makes an impression of feare; and respect by the lustre of his maiestie, which doth commonly shine in his face. There is not any man that doth equall him in all the rest, and it is most certaine that hee doth possess the glorie of all the kings that euer were; and doth make himselfe known into them that liue; and shall bee the most perfect Modell that kings of any age can haue, to make themselves compleat in all things, and yet shall they neuer be able to attaine to the perfection of this inuincible prince.

Thus farre I haue followed mine author touching the disposition of the French, who hath not forgotten any parts worthe of commendation in his countrie men, and hath but glanced at their imperfections. Some others who by their curious search and observations largely haue discouered more than he is willing to confesse, and haue layd open in their writings published to the world, their defects, or rather peccant humors, taxing them to be talkatiue, vaine, and inconstant, the which they shew in their speech, conversation, apparrell, credulitie and lightnesse of belief, impatience, and rashnesse in their most important consultations; and that they haue such stirring spirits, as they cannot liue long quiet, but for want of foraine employment, they will be at warre among themselves: Wherefore they are held to be an inconstant and wauering kinde of people, as they haue shewed in most of their actions. Thus much I haue set down by the way, touching the opinion of some, concerning the manners of the French nation, vnto whom I will retere the curious reader.

Riches of France.

- XV. I Should neuer end, if I should examine the riches of France in particular, for that there is scarce any little corner of the countrie, where there is not store. Wherefore I will omit the lesser particularities, to speak onely of those countries, whereas this wealth is most considerable, and whereby France may be enriched. I will begin then by Paris, and will tell you that this citie draws vnto it the best part of the siluer of France, and that if you will accompt the wealth of the noble men which doe commonly liue there, of the officers of E parliament who are very rich, of aduocates and proctors, who for the most part haue their houses full with the substance of a million of persons; of them of the chamber of accounts, whereof the matters are richer than any noble men of France, which haue good reuenues, in like manner, of Presidents, Counsellors, Aduocates, Treasurers, Receiueurs, and Indentants of the Finances, yea of Citizens and Merchants of Paris, you shall finde there are few or not any cities in the world that can equall it in riches. For not onely all the siluer of France comes thither vpon diuers subsidies, but also a great part of that of Italy, Spain, England, Germany, & almost all Europe. There is abundance of plate, and in my opinion, more than in all the rest of France, much siluer coined, and great store of merchandize: so as Paris, alone all compried, would be able to entertaine a good army. And as for the countrie about Paris, it must needs be very rich, by reason of the siluer which they draw forth from the commodities which the inhabitants come and sell there. The scarlet which they make at Paris, passeth throughout all Europ, yea into Asia, and is many times sent into China, and this stuffe is admired of all men, and yeeds

This is written
of Henry 4.

A great reuenues to them that make it. This is in a manner all which is caried from Paris into foraine Prouinces, vnlesse it be the trash and trifles of the Palace, which are not deere vpon the place, but their value is augmented, and they are much esteemed the farther they are from the place where they were made.

I should neuer end if I should number the Lewels which are in the Abbey of Saint Dennis, the which are inestimable and without number. The Chartrains make great gaine of their trafficke of corne, wheat and tye, which they sell into all parts, like vnto them of Beaulieu and Soloigne. But I will not make any accompt of this profit seeing it comes not from foraine countries. The wine of Orleans draws not onely the Merchants of France, but also them of England to come and buy it: and that which fauours the Orleansois for this trafficke, as it doth many other prouinces, is the riuer of Loire, whereby they transport many things easilie both within and without the Realme. Besides this, Orleans should be rich by reason of the great number of Germanes and Flemings which come to make their residence there, as well to studie as to learne the French tongue, for that they of Orleans haue the reputation to speake as well as any in France.

The territorie of Beauuais hath a little towne called Bule, neere vnto which grows the finest flax that can be seene; and for this cause the Flemings, and Hennuyers come thither to trafficke & to buy this flax, wherewith they make their finest cloth, which they afterwards carie to be sold throughout the world, both by sea and land. In this soile there is also found earth fit to make vessell, as good as that which comes from Venice, and it is also caried out of the Realme. But that which doth most import for the riches of this countrie, is their great trafficke of farges, and cloth-ras, which they not onely transport throughout France, but also into Germanie, Spaine, and Italie, yea into Greece, and Turkie.

The country of Niuernois hath iron, which they carie into foraine prouinces, in like manner a thousand toyces of glasse which are made in the towne of Neuers.

Besides the wine which Anjou sends into England and other places, there is also cloth as in Poiçou, from which they draw great sums of money, especially from Spanish merchants, who haue great trade for it.

D There is no towne in France that is more frequented by merchants than Rouen, nor where the inhabitants haue more experience of trafficke, or make greater voiaiges, be it to the West in passing the Equator, or going to the East Indies; wherefore it gets many commodities from strangers, and it is one of the richest towns in France. To conclude, all Normandie is much giuen to trafficke, and as for those things which they send forth, it is some cloth, Normandie Canuas, and Cider.

As for Bretagne, there is the Parchemin of the countrie of Lambolois, which passeth euery where in like manner iron, lead, and some little siluer which they draw out of their mines, besides the great trafficke which is in the countrie, by reason of the sea ports which abound there. Rochell is also very rich, by reason of the necresse of the sea, E and the trafficke of the English and Dutch that come thither.

In Xaintonge they make much money of their corne, which the Spaniards come and fetch euery year, or els merchants goe and sell it there. In Angoulesme beside their corne they haue abundance of hemp, which they gather together to sell vnto strangers.

Perigord hath Hogs whereof they make great trafficke, yea into Spaine: and there are also mines of iron and Steele, and many men put it in worke and draw money from all parts. Limosin hath great store of cloth which they carie out of the Realme: and above all, the towne of Limoges, although it be farre from the sea or any riuer, is one of the greatest trafficke in France; for there are such excellent workmen, as they make the rarest workes that be in France, and these are caried into forrain countries, and so are the E enameled workes which are made there, the which are faire and much sought after. They of Tulle make great profit of the oyle of walnuts, whereof they haue abundance.

As for Auergne, it sends forth great store of Cheefe, haire cloth, Chamlets, and Tapestries, whereof they make great summes of money, as also of Saffron, and their Moyles which goe into Italie and Spaine. Bourgondie sends come into Spaine and I-
talie,

sale, and drawes from thence much siluer.

Lyon is a towne of as great traffike as most be in France; so as all Italie and part of Spaine (which is from the strait of Gibraltar towards the mediterranean Sea) haue commerce there. And by the kings edict, silkes and such like merchandise must passe there, and be viewed at the Doane or custome house: yet the traffike and gaine is not so great as it hath bene, for that the ships passe rather by the Ocean sea. There are Bankers also who haue correspondencie not only in Europe, but also in Asia and Afrique.

Forest sendeth her workes of Iron and Steele into all parts, especially the towne of Saint Stephens, where there are as many excellent workmen, as any be in France. There are many very rich merchants of this countrie, who are well accommodated without the Realme.

Dauphine makes much money of the corne they send into Spaine. They of the mountaynes enrich themselves by the Moyle, horses and other cattell which they sell in Piedmont and Italie. They haue also their Chamois which bring them money.

Languedoc hath wood which they send into forraigne countries, and it growes principally in the countie of Lauraguez, and the plaine of Montpellier. This traffike alone is able to enrich this prouince, it is in such request in all parts of Europe, and elsewhere for dying, so great abundance there is in this countrie. The Albigeois make great profit of their labour: A good part of Languedoc is enriched by their Oyle of Olives. They that are about Florenac and Pomerols, and they of Lauraguez also make great sums of the corne which they send into Spaine. They of Montpellier enrich themselves with their drugs, compositions, and waters which they make and send out of France, as being more excellent than any other. They about Montaignac make much money of their wools. They of Frontignan and Cantaperdris grow rich with their muscat wines, and their dried grapes which they send into all Europe. Viarez makes money of their firre boards and joists which they sell without the realme. Velay hath many workes of wool, as coops, stockings, socks and such like, and also brooches which are made at Puy. Pecaïs hath salt which they send into Suifferland, and to other places out of the realme, and make a wonderfull profit.

As for Prouence it sends come out of the realme which growes in great abundance in Camarque, and in the plaines of S. Chamar and Miramas, Senas and Malemort, vnto Qurgon & Ardage, & elsewhere. They haue also lemons, oranges, dried grapes, dried figs, pomegranets, oyle and corke, with the which they draw great profit from strangers. And this prouince is full of siluer, by reason of the ordinarie traffike of the inhabitants and their sea ports, whither many forraigne merchants come.

Foix makes great profit of Iron, and of cattell, as those countries doe which are neere to the Pirenée mountaynes: They make no lesse benefit of their rosin, turpentine, pitch, incense and corke. Armagnac makes no lesse profit of honie and wax. As for them of the parliament of Bourdeaux, they of Albret vent out of the realme much corke, pitch and rosin. All Gascoigne, especially Bourdelois, make great profit of their wines which are sold into the low countries and England: And Baïonne doth the like of Ciders. To conclude, Gascoigne is rich by reason of the great abode of Spanish, English and Flemish Merchants.

We haue related as particularly as we can of the riches which France receiues from forraigne prouinces, and haue discoursed of the means it hath to draw money for that which is sought for by neighbour nations.

And although it be the viall manner to come from generall things to particular, yet I haue herein followed a contrarie course, to the end, that after we haue seene wherein this realme abounds, and wherewith it may furnish others, we may the more easily see, that it hath means to passe without their neighbours, and that her neighbours are forced to come thither and seeke for their necessities, and that after we haue noted, what it wants not, I may the more easily sentle a beliefe of the happinesse of the countrie, in the generall discourse which I take in hand, wherein I desire to shew, not only the riches of the realme, but also the reuenues which come to the crowne.

All

A All the soyle of France, of what sort soeuer it be, is good for something, for in places where there is no wine, there growes come, and where there is no come, there are cheffnuts and pasture. To conclude, there is not any thing but doth serue; whereas if we consider Italie, the Appennine hills containe, in a manner, a fourth part, all which is for the most part rockie, and of no profit: and Spaine being a great countrie, is full of unprofitable wafts. The mountaines of Auerngne haue much good ground, and many places that are rich, full of fruit, abounding in cattell, from whence they draw much flesh, butter and cheefe, like vnto the mountaines of Viarez, Velay, Geauidan, Seuenes, Dauphine, Forest and Prouence. The rest extends it selfe into goodly Champian

B fields full of come, or into little hills which are verie fertile, or valleys covered with grasse, fit to feed cattell. A man would say, that there is abundance in all places with diuersitie, and profit with the beautie of the countries. And this realme hath also this particularitie, that all her prouinces may easily communicate their commodities and fruits one vnto another, by the meanes of a great number of nauigable riuers that are in it; for in the prouince of Anjou alone, they number fortie riuers great and smal. Wherefore the deceased Queene mother *Katherine de Medici*, sayd, That there were more nauigable riuers in France, than in all the rest of Europe: wherein she did not much stray from the truth. The fertilitie of the soyle, and the commoditie of riuers, for the transporting of wares, is the cause of the multitude and beautie of the townes and places of France, most of which are seated vpon their banks. And although that France

C doth not want good ports, and many, yet the greatest townes stand not vpon the Sea; the which shewes that their greatnesse comes not from abroad, but is domesticke: For the maritime townes are greater than those that are within the countrie, when as they receive more profit and support from the sea, than from the land, as we see in the cities of Geneua, Venice, and Ragoufe. But in places whose greatnesse depends essentially of the land, the townes which are within the countrie, are greater than those that are vpon the sea: as we may perceiue by the citie of Millan, and other places of Lombardie, as also in Germanie and Hongarie. And for that all the prouinces of France are rich, and the commoditie of riuers is generally, thence it growes, that

D except Paris (whose greatnesse proceeds from the abode of kings, the Parliament, and the Vniuersitie, together with the neighbourhood of riuers) all the townes and places of France are, for the most part, of a middle bignesse, or small, but faire, commodious, and verie well peopled. *Bodin* writes, that in a computation made in the time of king *Henrie the second* (in the which *Bourgondie* was not comprehended) they did number seven and twentie thousand places inhabited, which had steeples. As the townes of France are fauoured with many riuers, so haue the castles and houses of priuat gentlemen many pooles and lakes neere vnto them. And although there be no lakes in France equall in greatnesse to them of Italie or Suifferland, yet those we see, are full of verie good fish, which supplie the want of their greatnesse by the multitude. We may

E say the like of woods, which being not great, are many in number: and thereby in former times the kings made great profit, by reason of the great number of their demaines; and at this day gentlemen make much money thereby, selling the cutting of their woods not only to burne, but also for building. There are also many other things which draw money from strangers into France, especially the corne which they carrie into Spaine and Portugal, and sometimes into Italie; the salt which other nations fetch, namely at Berre in Prouence, at Pecaïs in Languedoc, and at Brouage: whereas it seemes the vertue which the Sun hath to transforme the water of the sea into salt, staies, and passeth no farther towards the North. There is salt also in other places, as in a fontaine of Lorraine, and in fontaines and mines in diuers places of Polonia, England and Germanie; but this salt is of no great worth, no more than that which is found in a myne in Swethland. There is also hempe and cloth, the importance whereof is incredible, and he onely can iudge that knowes the great quantity that is carried away for the fleets of Seville and Lisbonne, and for so many sayles and ropes as are made of hempe in France. There is in like manner the wines which they fetch into England and the Low-countries, wherof they make so great

H

a maff

a masse of money yerely, as it would be tedious to undertake the account, for that strangers carrie away so much wine out of this realme. We must add herunto woad and saffron, with other things of lesse importance, all which being put together, make a gre at summe to enrich a realme. And the importance is, that neighbour nations cannot live without all these things. And although there hath been sometimes strict defences, not to send any thing out of the realme, yet in the end, they have suffered them to passe with permission, for that the profit which growes thereby, is at the least of 15 or twentie in the hundred. And even at such time as France had war with the king of Spaine, the traffique was not interrupted with the Spaniards, for the want they had of victuals, and the gaine they brought. So as it is no wonder, if during the former wars, B not onely in Italie, but also within the realme, the fouldiers received all their pay in royals, pistollers, and doubloons of Spaine.

XVI.

A million of gold in France is three hundred thousand pounds of sterling money.

As for the reuenues of the kings of France, besides their demeanes, which have been in a manner all ingaged, and is now redeemed by little and little, and will be within few yerres out of their hands which hold them: that which is drawn out of all the provinces, amounts to verie great sums. When as silver was more scant, our kings received lesse, as it was fit. *Lewis* the twelfth, did not raise in the whole realme, but about a million and a halfe of gold yerely. *Francis* the first, made three millions; *Henrie* the second, came to 6; *Charles* the ninth, to seven; and *Henrie* the third, past 10 millions. *Lewis* the twelfth, left the realme full of gold and silver, and was for this cause called the Father of the people. King *Francis* the first, although he had great wars, and much cause of expence, yet he left eight hundred thousand crownes in his coffers. But *Henrie* the second, dyed indebted many millions of gold: so as *Charles* the ninth, and *Henrie* the third, his sonnes, were forced, not onely to charge the people, but also the Clergie, with great impositions. Which shews, that we may not esteeme kings rich when they have great reuenues, but when they know how to mannage them well; for that king *Francis* the first, maintained greater wars with lesse reuenues, and left readie money to his children; whereas *Henrie* the second, had not such wars, neither did he entertaine armies so long time, and yet he left debts to his sonnes, and miserie to the realme.

As for our time, we cannot make an exact account of all the king receiues of his taxes, D customes, casuall parties or casualties, of the Clergie, and such like, for that the taxes are not alwaies alike, but are imposed according to the occurrents; & although that the ordinary were certain, and were leuied after one rate, yet the extraordinary would be alwaies doubtfull. Then the number of casuall parties is so great, and in many things so secret, as the search would not onely be tedious, but imperfect. Yet to satisfie the curious, I have thought good to shew wherunto the ordinarie tax of one yerre amounts, to the end he may iudge of the rest, and what our kings receiue yerely of the realme.

¶ An extract made upon a breuiat of the taxes of the yere 1609. of such sums of money as were leuied during the same, for the ordinarie of the taxes and subsidies, and for the payment of officers wages: all particularly set downe in either of the generalities hereafter named.

The Generalitie of Paris.

For the tax, 769000 liuers.
For the payment of officers wages, 147000 liuers.

The generality of Soissons.

For the chiefe of the tax, 362465 liuers, 18 soulz, 10 deniers.
For the payment of officers wages, 2634 liuers, 1 soulz 2 deniers. F

Chalons.

For the chiefe tax, 473000 liuers.
For officers wages, 72000 liuers.

Amiens.

For all the tax, 263000 liuers.
For

Henric French liuer is two shillings of English money.

A For officers wages, 36000 liuers.

For all the tax, Rouen. a million and 72000 liuers.
For officers wages, 110000 liuers.

For the tax, Caen. 638280 liuers.
For the wages of officers, 9720 liuers.

For the tax, Orleans. 537500 liuers.
For the wages of officers, 70500 liuers.

B For the tax, Tours. 919000 liuers.
For the wages of officers, 102000 liuers.

For the tax, Bourges. 360740 liuers.
For the wages of officers, 49260 liuers.

For the tax, Montlins. 423993 liuers 10 soulz.
For the wages of officers, 66406 liuers 10 soulz.

C For the tax, Poitiers. 670000 liuers.
For the wages of officers, 75000 liuers.

For the tax, Rion. 656000 liuers.
For the wages of officers, 9000 liuers.

For the tax, Lyon. 365000 liuers.
For the wages of officers, 45000 liuers.

D For the tax, Bourdeaux. 623036 liuers 7 soulz.
For the wages of officers, 40663 liuers 13 soulz.

For all that is leuied, Languedoc, Tolouse, and Montpellier. 651517 liuers 4 soulz 3 deniers.

For the ordinary grant comprehending the tax, Dauphine. 20160 liuers.
Moreover, to supply the affaires of the said cuntry, 30000 liuers. Tailion was a
For the tailion, 27513 liuers. tax imposed
Summe, 77673 liuers. to increase
the pay of the
men at armes.

E That which is leuied, amounts to the sum of Prouence. 86463 liuers.

The kings rights there, amount unto Bourgenie and Breffe. 168250 liuers.
For the wages of officers, 9445 liuers.

There is imposed vpon it, Bretagne. 380460 liuers.

For the tax and subsidies, Limoges. 670000 liuers.
For the wages of officers, 75000 liuers.

F But to let you see, in some sort, the riches of the realme, and what comes vnto the Crowne, leauing these times, when as money is lesse rare than it was euer, I will onely shew the ordinarie and the extraordinarie summes of money leuied, as well of the kings demeanes, as of his subjects, and the three estates of the realme, since the comming of *Henrie* the second vnto the Crowne, which was in the yere 1547. vnto the yere 1580. during the raigne of *Henrie* the third.

First, of the particular receivers of the demeanes, the sum of secentie nine millions A
four hundred thousand liuers, whereunto the revenues of the demeanes did amount,
comprehending all the demeanes alienated, and since reunited.

A million of
liuers is a hun-
dred thousand
pounds Bar-
ling, and a li-
uer is two shil-
lings.

Of extraordinary fines and amerciements, secentie millions six hundred thousand
liuers, besides those that were farmed out.

Of extraordinary confiscations, twelve millions seven hundred thousand liuers, be-
sides the confiscations referred to farmers, and generally vnder takers of the demeanes by
their grants.

Of legitimations, escheats, and successions of bastards, nine millions three hundred
thousand liuers, besides the right, part, and portion due to farmers and vnder takers of the B
demeanes.

Of the increase or decrease of the price of pieces of gold and silver, of the lords right
vpon quoyes and mines, the sum of nine millions of liuers.

Of free gifts, or duties laid vpon houses, threescore nine millions of liuers; not com-
prehending therein the money which the estates appoint for the wages of prouost Mar-
shals and their gards, for fortification, renewing of come, wine, and other victuals, for the
munition of frontier places.

Of the sale of wood taken in the kings forrest, the sum of nineteen millions of liuers,
not comprehending the fines for the which the receivers of the demeanes make a partic-
ular account.

Of the farmes, aides and elections of this realme, as wel alienated as not alienated, and
that were redeemed vpon condition to pay vnto the redeemers, rent, after eight in the
hundred, the sum of secentie nine liuers.

Aid was a kind
of tax or sub-
sidie imposed
vpon mer-
chandise that
was souled.

Of the Doiane or custome of Lion, two and twentie millions of Liuers, not compre-
hending many abatements made to Italians and vnder takers.

Of the equivalent or toale and imposition of exportage and high passage, fortie nine
millions of liuers, comprehending the sums of money granted by the 3. estates of some
prouinces, for the suppression of forraine imposition of merchandise imported.

High passage
is an imposi-
tion laid vpon
merchandise.

Of the custome of salt, a hundred fortie eight millions of liuers, comprehending the in-
crease and diuers new impositions. Some write that in the yere 1581, the king being for-
ced to let out this custome, he lost yerely about 800000 crownes.

Of the prelates and clergie men beneficed within the realme, a hundred twentie foure
millions of liuers, whereunto do amount the ordinary and extraordinary subventions of
tenths, not comprehending the 6 deniers, 12 deniers, 18 deniers, & other sums, imposed
vpon every liuer, besides the principal sums which came clerely vnto our kings; and not
comprehending also the sum of 36000 liuers or pounds, granted euery yere vnto there-
ceiuer general for the subvention for his wages, and the 12 deniers vpon the liuer which
the particular ar receiuers tooke for their wages.

Of free fees and new purchases, nineteene millions of liuers, for the which the prelates E
and other clergie men of the realme compounded with king *Henrie the second, Francis
the second, Charles the ninth, Henrie the third.*

Of the plate, jewels and relics, taken from churches or the clergie, nine millions of li-
uers.

Of the sale of clergie land, thirtie nine millions of liuers.

Of Churchwardens for the building of Churches in the realme, ten millions of liuers,
whereunto do amount the diuisions made euery time by reason of twenty liuers for the
steeple of euery parish.

Of the pay of fiftie thousand foot, the sum of fortie nine millions, leui'd vpon all the
walled towns of the realme: and vpon all persons priuiledged from taxes, except gentle- F
men.

Tailion was a
tax raised to
increase the
pay of the men
at armes.

Of the ordinarie taxes, four score & fiftene millions of liuers, comprehending the two
foult, and foure foult vpon the liuer, with other increases.

Of the pay of the tailion or tax, increase or augmentation for the men at armes, a
hundred and two millions of liuers.

Of

A Of the Annates, which is the annuall reuenue of certain benefices, six millions, seven
hundred thousand Liuers, which were leui'd as benefices fell voyd.

Of the imposition of fine foult for the entrie of euery pipe of wine twentie eight
millions of Liuers.

Of general and particular loanes, fiftie eight millions of Liuers or pounds, leui'd at
diuers times vpon them that were best able within the realme.

Of aides in the elections of this realme, six millions, five hundred thousand Liuers.

Of casual parties, a hundred thirtie nine millions of liuers, whereunto doth amount
the composition for the sale of offices, accustomed to be taxed; were it by death, resigna-
tion, or otherwise, comprehending also the new creation of many offices.

B Of the confirmation of offices eightene millions of liuers paid at the comming of
kings.

Of the subvention of a subsidie for suits, nine millions of liuers or pounds, according
to the edict, ordaining 100 s. which was wont to be paid before contestation in any cause.

Of the suppression of offices, nine millions of liuers.

Of the contribution of the Ban and Arriere-ban, fee and arriere-fee, eleuen millions of
liuers.

Of the cutting of the wages of officers, nine millions of liuers.

C Of the impost of come and wine sent into forraine countries, ten millions of liuers,
not comprehending the kings come and wine, which he hath along the sea coast, and o-
ther places.

Of wracks and prizes at sea, one and twentie millions of liuers, the rights of the admi-
raltie, officers, masters of the ports, and Sergeants being paid both in the Leuant and
Western seas.

Of the freeing them that were subiect to taxes, nine millions of liuers.

Of the increase of many officers wages, fourteen millions of liuers, giuen by many of-
ficers that would haue the said augmentation.

Of wafts, commons, and pastures, with confirmation of priuiledges, creation of free
fayres, and such like rights, seven millions of liuers.

D Of proctors, notaries and sergeants at diuers times, fourteen millions of liuers.

Of vnexpected sums, nine millions of liuers, growing of the forfeitures of many of-
fenders.

Of the new subvention or subsidie, five and thirtie million & a liuers, leui'd vpon all
the cities, townes, and walled boroughs of the realme.

Of Iron, copper and other mettals, three millions of liuers, for a certain subsidie which
was extraordinarily imposed vpon them.

I account that onely which hath bene clerely receiued, which in shew would haue
exhausted a greater realme than France: And if we shall enter into consideration of the
spoyles and ruines which the wars haue bred, waiting a world of things without profit,
E we shall find reason to be amazed, and to beleue that France is one of the richest realmes
of the world, and that the kings of France are able to work great effects with their money,
as they may vnder take great matters by the meanes of their subiects that obey them.

And if we consider, that the French king doth at this present draw much more from
many things than they did in former times, as of salt; where finding the farmers to make
an excheiue profit, paying them little; they haue augmented their rents, so as now they
receiue verie great sums, as of the Polette, of the entries of wine and cattell into townes,
and of many other things which passe within the realme.

And if France hath vnder gone (with the spoiles of continuall war) the charges which
we haue mentioned, and yet remains verie rich, and doth at this day flourish, who will
F not giue it the title of the best realme of Europe? Doubtlesse, I do not think there is the
like in abundance of all commodities, although some be much greater.

But before we end this discourse of the Kings reuenues, it shall not be impertinent to
add something of the officers which haue the charge and manning of these reuenues.
The supreme officer is the superintendant of the finances or the Echequer, without

Euery French
pound or li-
uer is two
shillings.

Ban and Ar-
riere-ban are
gentlemen
which hold of
the Crowne,
and are called
to serue the
king in person

Polette is a du-
tie which an
officer pays
yerely vnto
the king to
allure his of-
fice vnto his
hires if he
dies within
the yere.

H ij

whose

whose warrant nothing doth passe: he is equal in authoritie to our Lord Treasurer here in England, yet he is no officer of the Crowne, but hath his place only by commission. There are vnder him foure intendants, who are controllers of the Elchequer: They haue an oversight ouer all the Treasurers and officers that belong to the Treasure. There is a Treasurer of the Elchequer, one of casualties, a Treasurer of the kings pleasures (which is like to the keeper of the priuie purse in England) Treasurers both ordinarie and extraordinarie of the wars, whereof the first payes the men at armes, and the second, the regiments of foot. There are also Treasurers of France, whereof there is one in euery generalitie; and in euery generalitie there are diuers elections or places for the receipt of the reuenues, in some more, some lesse, and in all about 160. in euery of which elections there are diuers receiuiers, some for the taxe, some for the taillon, some for the ayd, some for the tenths, and some for the woods; with as many controllers, besides other inferior officers: & in the chamber of accompts where their accompts are taken, some write that there are not lesse than two hundred officers, besides vnder-Clerkes. To conclude, there is such an infinit number of officers belongs vnto the receipt of the kings reuenues, as scarce a third part comes cleerly into his cofers.

The Forces of France.

The realme of France, being in the midst of Christendome, is more commodious than any other, to vnite and diuide the forces of the greatest princes of Europe; for before it there is Italie, behind England, Spain on the right hand, Germanie on the left, the Swisses on the one side, and the Flemings on the other; and besides, it lies betwixt 2. seas, the Mediterranean and the Ocean. By reason whereof it may easily fauour and trouble either by sea or land, all the enterprises and designs of the princes and potentates of Europe, at the least, of them that are his neighbours: and as for him he is assured of all parts, both by nature and art; for that he is defended by the Alpes and Pyrenées from Spaine & Italie; by the sea, from England and other countries which lye farther off; and by riuers from Germanie and Flanders: and in all places vpon the frontier, there are good forts; and great store of armes, artillerie, and other things fit for war; and in all good commaunders and good men, to mannage all things as shall be fit. And as for her own defence, we find not that since France was a realme, it was euer vanquished by any other Nation, but by the English, who by a long & continual war held a great part of it. But besides that their victorie grew by the diuision of the French, who assisted the kings of England, it continued not long; for that they were not onely dispossessed of that part of the realme which they had gotten by force, but also of Normandie and Guienne the ancient patrimonie of the kings of England, which came vnto our kings by forfeiture. And that which makes France stronger at this day than euer, is, that in former times there was alwaies a Duke of Brittain, a Duke of Guyenne, of Normandie, of Bourgondie or of Bourbon, which gaue them passage, and receiued them; as when the English had any designe, the Duke of Brittain gaue the entrie, from whence they past into Normandie. But now that Brittain, Guienne, Normandie and Bourgondie are the kings, there is no great cause of feare, vlesse we should doubt some storme from the French countie of Bourgondy. And that which makes France the more strong, is, that the lands of the great houses of France are not diuided into many parts, as in Germanie, and in many places of Italie; but the greatest part comes vnto the eldest, who are true heires, and the other brethren haue a small portion; so as to attaine to any ranke and meanes which may raise them according to their houses and qualities, in which they are borne, they giue themselves to follow armes, and seek to make themselves excellent; and simple gentlemen seeing the gate of honour open vnto them, endeavour their best in all occasions, that they may be rewarded with some charge. And hence it growes that France hath alwaies had such great warriors.

XVIII. France hath two kinds of souldiers, that is, at sea and at land. As for the souldiers at sea, we cannot speake much, for that the want of those of shipping, and of men of command

A maund, and to row, would neuer suffer them to draw together so great a power, as it were able to make any great offensive enterprise; and for this cause king France resolved to imploy the Turkes at sea. True it is, that there was neuer any need of forraigne succours to defend the realme, for that in the Ocean they might draw together about two hundred saile, and in the sea of Prouence, they haue sometimes armed fortie galleis, the which are reduced to a smaller number, and these galleis haue sometimes serued in the Ocean sea, but more to passe men into Scotland than to put any prince in ielousie, or for any other effect. But the chiefe strength of the French consists in land men, and more in horsemen than in foot, for that the commoditie they haue of Germans and B Swisses, and the little pleasure they take to see the common people of the realme armed, hath made the Cavalerie to bee in more reputation, who in former times were very gentlemen, and by consequence very valiant; but now there is a mixture of all sorts of people, whereof some are paid, and others are bound to go to the wars at their own charge. Those that are bound are commonly called the Arriereban, which is no other thing but gentlemen bound to serue the king in person with so many horse, according to the quality of his fees, the which the king did put in practise in the last war of Sauoie. And for that there are many gentlemen, the number of the Cavalerie is great. The companies of men at armes, some are of hundreds, others of fiftie. Those of a hundred are commonly commaunded by some prince, or by the Constable or Marshalls of France. At C this day being in full peace, there are very few companies of horse entertained, which be these.

The Kings companie of light horse.

The Queens companie of men at armes.

The Dauphins companie of men at armes.

The Duke of Orleans companie of men at armes.

The Duke of Anjou's companie.

The Duke of Vendomes companie.

The Chiualler of Vendomes companie.

The Marques of Verneuil's companie.

D The Duke of Mayennes companie.

The Constables companie.

The Master of the horse his companie.

And these bee all the companies of horse which are entertained at this present in France.

But if any war should happen, we should presently see such multitudes of horse fall vpon the enemy, as they should bee able to amasse them, and to breake them; for all the Nobilitie doth practise riding at this day more than euer, and all other exercises which make a horseman actiue, and more disposed to fight. And as for the common people, there are many which haue been in the late wars, who yet take delight to keepe good E horses; and there are many young men, which bee rich and valiant, bred vnto war, who would willingly go to horse, if they might heare the trumpet found.

As for the foot, although the Gascois and they that approach neere vnto Spaine are held the best footmen of all, as more able to endure the paine and discommodities of war, and holding much of the inclination of the Spaniards (of whom they may draw forth to the number of eight or nine thousand) & although also that they of Viarez, and of the mountaines of Dauphine are nothing inferior to the Gascois in any thing, in their iudgements that know them, and that together they can leuie a greater number than the Gascois; yet they may make many thousands of footmen in all the other parts of the realme, which would bee good souldiers, as they that haue been long accustomed to the war: and moreover, in a manner all that are borne in France haue so much courage, as wee may easily find a great number of warlike souldiers, at the least resolute for any enterprises.

In former times the kings of France did not much imploy their foot, fearing some reuolt, and although that Charles the eight knowing the necessitie of footmen, would haue

XIX.

XX.

have five thousand French foot entertained, and king *Francis* afterwards would have five thousand, yet it soon vanished away, and was dissolved by the estates of the realme, to the end that the people, being unarmed, might be kept in awe by the magistrate, and should not leave their trades, and the manuring of their land, to the prejudice of curie man, and to the end also, that in the time of peace they should not practise theueing, and breed a confusion within the realme. But all the conclusions of the estates, would bee of no force, when the king resolues the contrarie. *Lewis* the second was the first, who to passe what he pleased, kept the people unarmed, and leuied Swisses in stead of French, the which hath beene followed by his successors. But he is much deceived that thinks, that his subjects are faint hearted and weake, if he leuies strangers: for resolution is gotten by experience of armes, and dangers of war; and this experience should be common within the realme to souldiers and people, if they become good souldiers, for the profession they make of armes; these also must needs be by the necessitie of defence. And as to comerte with good men, makes men good, so to frequent souldiers makes the people warlike. Besides many factions cannot be committed to strangers, for that they want the practise of places, and also, for that there are many enterprises of too great importance to commit to any that are not of the realme. So as it is necessarie that the people in whose countrie the war is made, become warriors, partly by necessitie, for the neede the prince hath, and partly by the fight and practise of things which concerne the war, as it hath happened in France during the last wars, where, in an instant it was seen full of souldiers.

At this day there are few footmen entertained in France, and yet they would make the greatest force of an armie. And these they be.

The four companies of the gard of the kings person, who haue for their capitaines *Vitry, Montepan, Laforce and Pralin*.

The regiment of the gards, which should consist of twentie companies, it hath for collonell monsieur de Crequy.

The regiment of Piemont which should be also of twentie companies, the collonell is monsieur de Vauselas.

The regiment of Picardie of twentie companies, it hath for collonell monsieur de Biron.

The regiment of Nauarre, of twentie companies, their collonell is monsieur de Boisse.

The regiment of Champagne, which should be of twentie companies, the collonell is monsieur de la Guelle.

The regiment of monsieur de Nereslan, which is of ten companies.

The regiment of monsieur du Bourg Espinasse, which is of ten companies.

Moreover there is a regiment of Swisses, and the hundred Swisses of the gard of the kings person.

But if the king had need of men, there are also foure thousand old souldiers entertained in forraigne countries, who would not faile to come at the least bruit of war. And as for the number of men of experience, that hee might leuie, and which are not entertained, they cannot be numbered, for that France doth but in a manner take breath, and hath yet an infinite number of men, whose armes are no more tired, neither their hearts lesse courageous, than in the last wars, where they haue bene, for the French haue this in particular, that they doe alwaies affect honour, and they thinke (as it is true) that their is not anyone greater than he that fight by armes.

Finally, there is such abundance of victuals in France, as it is able to feed any armie whatsoever, and the victuals may so easily be transported from one place vnto another, by reason of the commoditie of riuers. Wherefore when as *Charles* the first entered France by Prouence, and afterwards by Champagne, it did feed (besides the Garrisones) about an hundred and fiftie thousand souldiers: and in our time, vnder *Charles* the ninth, there was found twentie thousand horse, and thirtie thousand foot, all strangers, and fiftene thousand horse, and a hundred thousand foot French, and yet there was no dearth within

the

A the realme, and in old time the kings entertained three thousand and five hundred launces, foure thousand and five hundred archers, yea sometime foure thousand launces, and six thousand archers, paid continually. Euery launce had an archer and a halfe, so as euery companie of launces had an other companie of archers, which were onely distinguished by their ensigne, which they called Guidon, for they had all one capitaine: so as to a hundred of launces there were a hundred and fiftie archers. The pay of all these souldiers came yearly to thirtene hundred thousand crownes. For euery launce had two hundred and fiftie crownes, euery archer foure score, the ensigne three hundred, the lieutenant four hundred and eightie, and the capitaine eight hundred and twentie. These souldiers were reduced to their perfection by *Charles* the eighth, who determined the number, and confirmed their pay, training them in exercises, and distributing them into frontier places, vnder Capitaines, Lieutenants, Ensignes, and Guidons; and deuoted them into men at armes, and archers, adding moreover Harbingers, Treasurers, Paimasters and Commisaries, and giuing the charge of them to the Constable, Marshalls of France, and the chiefe Noblemen of the realme. With all these souldiers about mentioned, the precedent kings of France haue not onely gotten a great estate, and bene able to defend it against the force of all neighbour princes, but also to make their armes knowne in Asia and Africke, to fight against Germanie and Spaine, go into Italie, and to make all the world to tremble: for that the French are by nature prompt, hardie and courageous to vndertake, and in the beginning inuincible. And this happy successe in the beginning is of so great importance, as oftentimes it draws all after it; and any losse in the beginning is of bad consequence for him that looseth. By reason whereof the French are held so strong and terrible, as it is a daungerous thing to assaile them. It is also a very difficult thing to stay the course of this first furie, whereof the good successe giues them more courage.

As for the artillerie, there is one thing in France worthe of consideration, which is, that they haue a care to reduce all their pieces to one common forme, not too great, least they should be cumbersome, nor too little, least they should worke but small effect, but meane, and all of one measure, to the end that the same boulet and the like quantitie of powder may serue for all, and the same instruments to conduct and manage them: The which is found wonderfull profitable, as well in places as in armies, for that when as all boulets will serue for all pieces, they take away the confusion which grows in preparing them, and when as a piece is spoiled, yet they make vse of the boulets and other instruments, for that all pieces are of an equal waight, or differ little, and where as one of these pieces may goe, they may conduct the rest. The Cannon of France is about ten foot long, and the carriage some fourteen, and being mounted, it makes in all about nineteene foot, and the breadth (which is considered by the axletree) is of seven foot. There is also an other thing to be considered touching artillerie, which hath bene invented by the industrie of the French, which is, that in the place whereas they giue fire to the piece, they put a peece of yron, for that it feares not the fire like vnto brasie, which consumes soone, and when as the hole is big the blow hath no great force, so as the peece remains vnprofitable, neither is it held good if it continue not a hundred, or at the least foure score shot in one day.

All these things added to the natural situation of France, make this realm powerful, especially vnder to great a prince, so full of valour, wisdom and foresight, and furnished with so great treasure and all things necessarie. For as for an offensive war, this realme hath left the markes of her power in many Provinces both neere and far off. And to speake of things more auncient, the French haue in old time spoiled Italie, ouerthrowne in a manner the greatnesse of the Romans, and done many exploits in other countries. F And if wee come to times neerer vnto vs, *Charlemaine* was so powerful with the force of this realme, as he subdued Saxony and Bautaria, fought in Spaine with the Sarrazins, ruined the kingdom of the Lombards, conquered the best and greatest part of Italie, and left to his posteritie, almost the moitie of Europe. Wee cannot read of any thing more famous than the enterprise of Ierusalem and of the Holie land, resolved in France

at

at the counsell of Clermont, and executed by the French at their priuat charge, with A
 a vntion of wills, and so great constancie and vertue, as it hath surmounted
 the glorie of all the enterprises that euer were celebrated in histories. Greece and Asia
 haue also felt the armes of the French, in the conquest of the Empire of Constantinople.
 Barbarie and Egypt haue felt their forces in the time of the king *Saint Lewis*, who not-
 withstanding that he was taken had this aduantage, That the king of *Tunes* yielded to
 pay him forty thousand duckets of yerely tribute. And at the same time *Charles* of Anjou
 conquered Sicilie, and the realme of Naples, and his posteritie past into Hungarie, where
 they reigned many yeares. And since, in the time of our fathers, *Charles* the eight, with
 a strange and wonderfull successe and course of victorie, seised vpon a great part of Italie B
 in a short time, which was a meane, to inuite his successors againe to the conquest of
 Italie; for that king *Lewis* the twelfth, *Francis* the first, and *Henry* the second had bin
 desirous to seeke, who won goodly victories, and had caried it all, if fortune had bin
 answerable to their courage.

XXII.

As for defence, beside the great number of men which are in France, the which did a-
 mount to about twentie millions in the time of king *Charles* the ninth, according to a
 estimate which was made; and the victuals and artillerie wherewith it is sufficiently fur-
 nished; and also the fauorable situation, there are so many strong places, and in euery
 part, as there is not any countrie that can haue so many. There are diuers things which
 haue been the cause of these Forts. The one is, that when as the realme was diuided in-
 to many principalities and feignories, euery man fortified his frontire; an other reason C
 is, that the warres of the English (who were for a time masters of a good part
 of France,) made them to encrease the number of Forts. The situation and nature of pla-
 ces hath aided much in this fortification; and also the diligence and inclination of the
 people: for that there cannot be a nation more industrious to fortifie, than the French,
 nor that cares lesse to bestow paines and money to that end. But to the end we may con-
 sider of things more particularly, let vs run ouer France, and take view of some of her
 best places.

I will not speake of Paris which is a world, the which although it had not any walls,
 (as in truth they are weak in many places) yet there are so many inhabitants, as this citie D
 cannot be taken, but for want of victuals.

Corbeil might bee made wonderfull strong, if it were not commanded by two hills,
 but that which is towards Gastinois, neere to the Magdeleine, is not so offensive, for that
 it is far off, as the other which is towards Seyne comming from Ville-neufue Saint
 George.

Chartres is strong enough to stay the furie of an armie, as wee haue seene during the
 last wars: And *Chasteaudun*, which is seated vpon a rocke, where the access is very dif-
 ficult, and it is a towne of importance: This was the fort and castle of the *Dunois*, being
 a retreat in time of war; for that the enemies could haue no access but of one side, which
 is towards the Port of Beaulieu. B

Orleans is of more regard than the precedent townes, as being stronger and of greater
 importance, by reason of the passage of the riuer of Loire; and the testimonie of her
 strength may bee drawne from the siege of *Attal* king of the Huns, who was slayed (with
 his victorious armie) before Orleans, and from the siege which the English laied before
 it, in October 1428. which continued vntill May, and was raised by *Jane* the virgin.
Gergeau six leagues from Orleans, although it bee but little yet is it reasonable well for-
 tified, and it is of importance, by reason of the bridge and passage ouer Loire. *Montra-
 ris* is also a good place, but not so well fortified as Orleans, nor of such consequence.
Chasteau-landon is a towne which hath done harme enough during the last warres, and
 it is able to resist for a while with a meane garison. The towne of *Sens* seated vpon the F
 riuer of Yonne, which runs at the foot of it towards Gastinois, hath good walls and
 ditches, and is able to make defence.

Auxerre stands vpon the bankes of Yonne, and is a good strong place, which begins
 in a valley, and riseth to the top of a litle hill, on the which it is built, and whereas the
 ancient

A ancient castle stands fortified with great and old walls, which in old time did serue for a
 defence for all the countie in time of war.

Troie in Champagne is also strong and hath good walls, with resolute inhabitants,
 readie vpon any occasion, as well as they of *Auxerre*. *Chaumont* in Bassigny hath al-
 waies had good and strong walls, with many towers and good ditches, and the *Dun-
 geon* is now called *Haute-feuille*. But *Vitry le Perthois* was reedified and fortified in the
 time of king *Francis*, as being vpon the frontier of Champagne, not in the old place,
 but in a village called *Montcourt*, vpon a litle hill halfe a league from the place where it
 formerly stood; *Jerónimo Marino* a Boulloinois was imploied to make the designe, and ac-
 cording to his plot this towne was built as it is at this day. There is also vpon the frontier
 of Champagne, *Saint Disier*, which was roially fortified, after that it had beene ruined in
 the year 1544. *Montereau* which is far within the countie hath a strong castle and spa-
 tious. *Meaux* is seated vpon a mountaine, hauing the riuer of *Marne* at the foot of it
 on the West part: this towne is diuided into two bodies, whereof one is called the towne,
 and the other the marker place or fort of the towne, and these two places are diuided by
 a litle brooke running vpon the rocke, and the ditch is very deepe; within the towne
 stands the castle vpon a high place, and commands the marker: there are good walls,
 but it is not well fortified. *Chaalon* in Champagne is a place neither litle nor of small im-
 portance, no more than *Rheims* the chiefe towne of the Prouince.

C But if wee come vnto *Picardie*, wee shall find neere vnto the frontier, places wonder-
 full strong, as *Laon*, *La Fere*, *Saint Quentin*, *Peronne*, *Capelle*, *Andres*, *Ham*, *Dorlens*,
Corbie, *Amiens*, and *Abbeuille*; with others lesse fortified, as *Boullieu*, *Montreuil*, *Bo-
 han* and others. *Soissons* is also a place reasonably strong, and able to make defence. *Beau-
 nois* which is more within the countie towards Paris, is well fortified and would en-
 dure along siege. But if wee looke vnto *Calis* vpon the sea as it is now fortified by mon-
 sieur *de Vie* the gouernor, with her *Richban*, wee shall find that this towne exceeds all
 the rest of *Picardie* in fortification, and when it shall be finished according to his de-
 signe, I thinke there will be few defects, and little meane to offend it.

Langres is a place whole situation is exceeding strong, and the walls good. *Mon-
 teclair* was wonderfully well fortified with good bulwarkes and rampiers by king *Francis*
 the first and *Henrie* the second, for that it is the first strong place in the power of the kings
 of France towards *Lorraine*.

Neuers is a towne lying far within the countie, hauing good walls and deepe ditches,
 and a bridge vpon the riuer of Loire: This towne is of good defence and great im-
 portance for the passage. *Bourges* hath also good ditches and walls, and is one of the best
 places in France. *Sancerre* seated vpon the top of a mountaine, is able to make head a-
 gainst the most obstinat; and *la Charrie* vpon Loire is able to stay a good armie. *Yssou-
 dun* in Berry is also a strong and well rampired place, hauing a castle standing somewhat
 high, the which is well fortified and flanked, and hath good ditches. *Argenton* which is
 E vpon the confines of Berry is a good town, hauing a strong castle with ten towers, where-
 of six bee great, and foure small. *La Chastre* is also inuironed with good walls, hauing
 strong townes and deepe ditches.

The citie of *Tours* is well fortified, and hath good walls and ditches, with the riuer of
 Loire that ioines vnto it, the which makes it a place of importance. The castle of *Am-
 boise* which is seuen leagues off vpon the same riuer, is also held for one of the best pla-
 ces in France. *Saumur* vpon the same riuer hath been well fortified and hath good walls,
 but the castle especially would giue much annoiance.

The castle of *Loches* is exceeding strong, standing vpon an high rocke, hauing but one
 entrie, defended by a great bulwark, strong walls, and double ditches which are verie
 F deepe and large, and there is litle meane to batter this place, but in breaking the rocke,
 which hath in circumference a thousand or twelue hundred paces, and it is impossible to
 sap it, for that the countermines are already made.

Angers is a strong towne, whose ditches are almost flat at the bottome, and the walls
 are strong and good. But the castle is one of the best places of France, hauing the ditches
 in

in the rocks, and being as well fortified as may be. This towne is of importance, standing A
vpon the riuer of Sarre, and neere to the riuer of Loire, and Pont de Cè which is a league
from Angers, and vpon the riuer of Loire, is also a good place.

Normandie hath many good places within the countie, as Rouen, which is able to
maintaine a long siege, and hath in old time staied great armies. Bayeux is also a towne
of good importance. Falaise is so feared, that although it be set in a vallie, and environed
round about with hills, yet all the approaches and suburbs are lower than it; and aboue
all, it hath a good castle seated vpon a rocke, which commands the towne, it hath very
deepe ditches, and good walls. Caen, which is held for the second towne of Normandie, B
to the which the sea flows, as it doth to Rouen, and passeth farther, is none of the least
important places in Normandie, being great and reasonably strong, and able to make a
long defence; it hath a castle built vpon a rocke, and fortified with a dungeon, in the
middest of which there is a square tower of an admirable heighth, the which is flanked at
the foure corners with foure other great towers, and it hath good and broad ditches at
the bottome; this castle hath so great a court as they may put fife or six thousand men
in battaile. Auranches is also strong, standing vpon a steepe rocke, whether the sea comes
when it is full, and this towne is fortified with good walls, and deepe ditches. You haue
also along the coast Honfleur a strong place, and so is Diepe, where there is much Ord-
nance. Saint Valery in Normandie, stronger than that in Picardie. Cherbourg, the last
place which king Charles the seventh tooke from the English, when hee expelled C
them the realme. Mont Saint Michell environed round by the sea, and the fort in the
Island of Zere made against the incursion of pirats. But among all the places vpon this
coast of Normandie, wee must preferre Newhauen, an impregnable fort built by king
Francis the first, to make head against the English for that the situation is exceeding
good, except it be of one side where there is a little hill which seemes to command it,
but yet it cannot annoy it much.

In Bretagne you shall find Rhemes the chiefe of the countie, a good and strong towne.
Nantes is nothing inferiour vnto it. Dol, Vannes, Quimpercorentin, and S. Malo. But
Blauet and Brest exceed all the other places which are vpon the coast, being many in
number and strong.

In Poitou you haue the towne of Poitiers, which hath (almost in our time) endured D
a furious siege of fourescore thousand men. Maillezais, Ganach, S. Michel in Her, which
during the troubles hath resisted long and furious assaults. Niort, Fonteney, Chastele-
saud and Lusignen, all places of good importance.

In Saintonge you haue Xaintes (where they haue made one of the best Cittadels of
France) Saint Jean d'Angely, Blais and Pons, strong places; and in Angoumois you
haue Angoulême which is reasonable well fortified, but the citadell or castle will al-
waies make more resistance than the towne. But in the countie of Aunis you haue Ro-
chell a sea Port and one of the keys of France, able to annoy great armies: going on fur-
ther you haue Perigueux a towne well fortified, the which is not commanded but of one E
side, where it may easily defend it selfe.

As for Limosin, her chiefe towne hath in former times troubled great princes, and
Vzerche is so situated as they hold it impregnable. In Auvergne you haue the towne of
Clermont which is of good strength, and the castles of Vlon and Nonnette which may
be said almost impregnable. But we must make most esteeme of Saint Flour seated vpon
a high rocke cut straight vp, so as there is not in a manner any meane to take it.

Then you see Moulins in Bourbonnois a place of good import vpon the riuer of Allier,
which did neuer yeeld to the attempts of any enemy during our last wars. Montaign
Combraille is also able to make a good defence.

As for Bourgogne for her chiefe and strongest places, she hath Dijon, Chalon, Seurre, F
Auffonne and Beaun with a very strong castle, besides a great number of smaller places
of good strength. The castle of Zalan neere to Dijon is also a good place. Autun is a
towne of importance, the which during our last wars hath been well fortified: and the
towne and castle of Semur are able to make good resistance.

Neere

A Neere to Lorraine and Germanie you haue Mets, which staid the Emperor Charles the
first long, hauing great store of ordnance, and an armie able to terrifie a whole world. It
hath also a citadell which is one of the strongest places of France.

If you goe on further towards the South, you shall find the citie of Lion, which
is exceeding strong on that side where the citadell was ruined, where is also the bul-
warke of Saint John a very strong place: on the other side of the riuer of Saone is the
castle of Pierre-Ancise seated vpon a rocke, which defends the entrie; on the other
side of Lion is Rhosne which serues for a defence, and to speake in a word, although
it be not very strong towards Fouruierres and Saint Iust, yet this towne is able to en-
dure a long siege, and to stay a great armie and frustrate their dissignes, by reason of
the situation.

In Dauphine along the riuer of Rhosne you haue Vienne, which is a good place,
where are the forts of Pipet and Bastie which command round about. Lower, is Va-
lencia, one of the best towns of warre in France. Going downward halfe a league from
the riuer of Rhosne is the towne and castle of Montlimar, able to make a great resistance.
Within the countie is Romans vpon the riuer of Here, which is reasonable strong: then
you haue the castles of Moras and Quirieu, whereof the last is much stronger
than the first. After all these you haue Grenoble, a towne lately fortified by Monsieur
de les Dignieres, gouernour of Dauphine, who hath made it one of the best places of
France. After which, you may see the fort of Barut neere vnto Savoie, which
serues to curbe the enemy on that side. There are other very strong places, as Die,
Gap, the castle of Serre, Nyons, Ambrun, Briançon, and the castle of Effiles vpon
the frontier. So as the enemy should be much troubled if hee should attempt to en-
ter into the countie of Dauphine, considering all these Barres.

As for Prouence, you haue within the countie for strong places, Aix, Arles,
Cisteron, Ourgon, Brignoles, and Pertuis. But the sea townes, as Marseille, Tolon,
Castell d'If, our Ladie of la Guard, the tower of Boue, Antibes, and some others, are bet-
ter than they seeme to be.

In Languedock, Tolous may vaunt it selfe to be strong, but Narbone which
D is neere vnto the frontier is much stronger; and Leucate more stronger than it. The
situation of the citie of Carcassone is strong, but the base towne is much better for-
tified. Bessiers and Pezenas are of reasonable strength. But at Montpellier and Nismes
they haue done what they can to make them townes of defence. Pont Saint Esprit
is strong, and hath a good Cittadell. Puy in Velay is a strong place, and a towne that ne-
uer was taken. You haue neere vnto it the castle of Polignac, which is held impregna-
ble by reason of his situation. Montauban in Quercy is famous for her fort, and the
situation is very strong.

In Gasconie the towne of Bourdeaux will not much feare a siege: Castelnau of
Barbarens is a verie strong place, and inaccessible: the towne of Auch is built vpon
E a rocke of hard access, but towards Vicfezenac, and hath endured great assaults. Le-
toure is a place which may be held one of the strongest of the Realme. Cominge
is also a good place, and the situation of Saint Frégois is verie strong. The towne
of Dax is verie strong and well seated. Bayonne is also a strong towne vpon the fron-
tier, of great importance, and able to make a long defence. In Bearn you haue Pau,
where there is a verie good castle, and Naurrins a strong place at the foot of the Pyrene-
ne Mountains.

This is all which can bee in a manner said touching the places. If wee come to
consider the men which are in France, and which serue for a support, wee shall
F find that there is not any countie in the world that can say it hath more valiant men;
and if any one bee as well peopled, or it may be better, as China may bee, I will
answer; That those base and effeminate people exceeds vs in number (for that they say
there are as many inhabitants vpon the water, as on the land) but wee surpass them in
valour. And if we consider Europe onely, we shall not find any countie where there are
more people.

I

As

As for their neighbours, France might well feare the English, if they had Guien A or Normandie, or were banded one against another, for otherwise they are invincible; and wee must thinke that *Cesar* would have preyed little in France, if the Gauls had not hated one another, whose diuisions drew him into the countrey, and was the totall ruine of this estate. France might feare the Spaniards, but whensoever they would assaile her towards Spaine, they shall doe it vpon vneasily, and haue so bad a passage, as vpon any little resistance made by the French in so bad a countrey, the Spaniards would haue no courage to proceed any further; and moreover the strong places vpon the frontier, towards Languedoc and Guien will stay them sodainely to their shame.

As for the Netherlands, France doth not feare them: first, for that they cannot make any great attempt against this realme: secondly, for that the Estates are well vnited vnto this crowne, and will be alwaies constant for her against their neighbours: thirdly, for that the Netherlands doe not reape sufficient to liue by, for that they are vnder a cold Climate, hauing neither come nor wine to suffice them; the which they are forced to fetch from Picardie, Bourgondie and other Prouinces of France: and besides, the inhabitants of the low Countries liue of their labours, and make many workes, which they sell chiefly at the faires of France: and for this cause, if they should breake with the French, they should not onely want victuals, but also meane to vent their wares. Wee may say the like of the Germans, and moreover that the frontier of Germanie, as that of the low countries, haue strong places, able to stay him that shall attempt any thing against France.

As for Lorraine, it is so weake, as France hath no cause to feare it, and moreover there are good forts which bridle it; as there are also to stop the incursions which might be made by the French countie, which is a little countie where they must bring an armie from far, so as the length of time would make them stand vpon their guard, and then all the frontier should be in armes. Wee might doubt the Swissses by reason of their neighbourhood, and the sodaine incursions which they may make, the which cannot be in time prevented. But first of all they are allied; and moreover, the frontier places on that side are well furnished with all things necessary; so as it would hinder them much in their proceeding: besides the nature of the Suisse is rather to fight in open field, than to lay sieges to any place; neither will they willingly goe far from their owne confines, to put themselves into an open countie, and leaue strong places behinde them; for they would feare (as vndoubtedly it would happen) that they should want victuals, and that they should not returne so freely being once in an open plaine, by reason of the French caualarie.

As for the Estates of the Duke of Sauoie, they haue no great apprehension, for that they are bridled of all sides, and also Italie, by a great number of strong places, and by the Alpes which make the passage very difficult; and besides, at the foot of E them there are many places of great defence, where they should be forced to stay, hauing so barren a countie behinde them; so as the Italians should be constrained either to vndergoe a great toile, or to passe by these places, which were a great follie; or els to attempt to take him, the which would hold them long in breath. Moreover Italy is not now to be feared by reason of the diuision of her princes.

The Government.

XXIII.

This law is but supported by the French, and no where extant.

THE estate of France, which was sometimes a Democratic, is now reduced to a Monarchie and the command of one alone. The king is not elected as in many other places, but the crowne comes by succession, and the males are onely admitted to raigne, and not the females; according to a verie auncient and fundamental law. The king hath power to resolue of warre against his enemies, and to make peace with them, and alliances with other princes and common-weales; as also to impose Taxes, create Magistrats, make Laws and Ordinances, giue Priuileges and

A and portions, and to doe many other things at his pleasure: so as what soeuer pleaseth him is receiued for an inuolable law: but to shew that his wills are iust and reasonable, he doth not suffer his edicts to passe, vntill they be verified by his courts of parliament. The kings eldest sonne, and next heire to the crowne must carrie the name of Dauphin, as the assured successour of the Empire is called king of Romans.

The queenes of France haue great authoritie, so as they haue soueraigne iurisdiction and sessions (if they please) in their lands, as well of their demaines, as of their dower, to iudge of appellations; and the appeale from their sessions comes to the courts of the Peeres of France, although the lands and parties be of another iurisdiction, according B to a declaration made by king *Lewis* the great, in the year 1317. The mother of the king raigning, if she bee not queene of France, giues place to the queene raigning. Gifts of kings to their wiues during marriage are of force, although that among other persons they be void. The household seruants of a queene or mother to a king, haue the like priuilege to them that are the kings. But they haue no communie in purchases made by the kings their husbands, during their raigne, but in such as they had made before their comming to the crowne after marriage. The widowd queene is commonly called *queen blanch*, and this custome hath continued since the mother of *S. Lewis* called *Blanch*, who liued long, and queene *Blanch* widow to king *Phillip* of Valois, who liued vntill the raigne of *Charles* the sixt.

C The manner of crowning, and declaring the kings of France (before that the French had receiued the faith of Christ) was to raise the king being crowned, vpon a great target, and to carrie him vpon their shoulders, thrice about the campe, when the assistants did crie out that hee was their king; and they hold, that this custome did continue after the faith receiued, during the race of the Merouingiens. For the holy oyle which I beleue, with many others, was sent from heauen, was onely to serue at the baptisme of king *Clouis*, and since at the inthronizing of the kings of the second and third race. They haue annointed most of our kings at Rheims, after this manner. Masse being begun, the priest turned himselfe, before the epistle, towards the king, and expounded vnto him the catholike faith, demanding of him if hee did beleue it, and would defend it. The king hauing answered yes, they brought him the oath which heered and signed, and this was the oath: I N. now to bee ordained king of France, promise the day of my anointing before God and his Saints, that I will maintaine the canonically priuilege, law, and iustice due to euery one of you Prelats, and will defend you as much as I may (with the helpe of God) as a king ought by right to defend euery Bishop and church committed vnto him in his realme; and will grant vnto the people (committed vnto vs) the defence of lawes in their right, consisting in our authoritie. This oath being read, the king deliuered it into the hands of the Archbishop of Rheims, in the presence of many Prelats that were present. This done, the Archbishop taking *S. Remies* crosse, did recite, how that Pope *Victor* had giuen by that crosse, as well to him as to his church, the E power of that consecration. Then was hee declared king by the said Archbishop and other Prelats and Churchmen. After which the Noblemen of the realme, and then the knights and people did confirme it all with one voice, crying out thrice, Wee do approue him, wee will haue him, let it be so. Then sodainly they did sing a *Te Deum*, and the Archbishop did anoint the king. After which, being returned to his seate, they brought the priuilege giuen by Pope *Victor*, the which was read before the Prelats. Thus I haue in few words set downe the ceremonie which was obserued, and should yet be followed. I haue omitted many formalities, for that I thought they would seeme tedious.

As for Regencies, they are ordained either for minoritie or absence, or for the indisposition of kings; and they that haue bin regents, haue disposed of all matters as if they had been absolute masters.

The sonnes of the house of France in old time diuided by equall portions, wherein the eldest had no prerogatiue; & base sonnes being adowued did inherit with the lawfull children: euery one holding his part with the title of a realme. The third race reiected bastards, not only from the crown, but from the aduow & surname of France, the which

is now allowed to kings base children: and since *Hugh Capet*, kings younger sonnes haue had nothing but priuar portions; and it was ordained in the yere one thousand two hundred eightie three, that the younger sonnes should not demaund any lawfull part or portion to bee due vnto them, in the succession of the king their father, but onely haue a provision for their entertainment and liuing at the will of their father; and if hee had made no declaration thereof during his life, at the pleasure of the king their brother then reigning, neither was it lawfull for them to complaine of too small a portion.

The daughters of France, if there bee sonnes, do not inherit but in mouables and purchases, according to the Salique law; and they are also perpetually excluded from the crowne by custome, and a particular law of the house of France, grounded vpon the magnanimitie of the French, who cannot endure the sole command of women, who by their marriage might transport the crown to strangers. There hath beene daughters of France married to lesse than kings, and yet they were called *Queenes* with their proper names. This honour was giuen them during their liues, to shew that they were daughters of France. The surname of France belongs to the daughters of the kings of France, whether they were borne before, or during their reigne. It is true, that they that are borne before do not challenge it, but after their comming to the crowne: and if they bee daughters to the kings eldest sonne, they haue the title of *Madame* from their birth, for an assurance that their father shall reigne, if hee die not. The rest haue no other title but *Mistris*, and after his comming to the crowne *Madame*, with the surname of France.

XXVI.

As for the Peeres of France, the fees being made hereditarie in this realme, according to the written custome of the fees of Lombardie, they did establish in euerie manor, held in the chiefe, a certaine number of vassalls, called *Peers*, or free men of the fee, bound to keepe the lords court, and to iudge of feodall matters, hauing many great prerogatiues, as it appears by the decree of the common of Ham, giuen the last of April 1351. this institution was not made in the time of *Charlemagne*, as the fabulous Romans would make vs beleue, for that their authoritie, ranke, and preheminance were established by *Hugh Capet*, and by the kings issued of his line, who by this means woon the hearts of them that were worst affected, such as were the Earle of Flaunders and the Archbishop of Rheims, who oppose themselves against *Capet* being a vsurper, and stopp their mouthes by the example of these men, who might haue bred some alteration; and hauing giuen them authoritie by this dignitie, he bound them by oath, to hold their lands of the crowne, and to be faithfull vnto him and to all his posteritie, so as *Hugh Capet*, the better to ratifie this thing, caused his sonne *Robert* to be crowned, calling therevnto such as he thought might oppose themselves. There were twelue of them, whereof the six temporal were the dukes of Burgondie, Normandie, and Aquitaine; and the earles of Flaunders, Tolouise & Champagne, and the clergie were, the Duke and Archbishop of Rheims, the Dukes and Bishops of Laon & Langres, with the Bishops and Earles of Noion, Beauuais, and Chalons, euerie one of which hath a distinct office at his coronation. The Archbishop of Rheims doth anoint the king, the Bishop of Laon beares the Ampulle or holie oyle: the Bishop of Beauuais the roiall mantle: the Bishop of Noion the girdle: the Bishop of Chalons the ring: the Duke of Bourgondy the crowne: the Duke of Guienne the first banner: the Duke of Normandie the second: the Earle of Tolouise the spures: the Earle of Champagne the standard roiall: and the Earle of Flaunders the sword. But the laie Peeres being vnited vnto the crowne, others doe now supplie their places. They are called *Peeres*, not for that they are equal in dignitie to the king, but for that they are Peeres in greatness among themselves. And these cannot bee disposed, nor called in question but before the court of parliament, in the which they haue a place like vnto the princes of the blood, for that they are of the bodie of the court: and before that the parliament was instituted, the Peeres did iudge of causes which came to the counsell and before the kings person, who did not any thing either in peace or warre, without the counsell of his Peeres who are bound to assist at the kings coronation, and the bishops of Langres and Beauuais make shew to raise the

At the king from his royall throne, and to enquire of the people, if they do accept of him for their king: and when as the assistants haue answered that they are well pleased, the Archbishop of Rheims makes him to take the accustomed oath. The five ancient laie Peeres are returned to the crowne, and the six doth not acknowledge it any more. The number of the said ancient laie Peeres was limited to six, like to them of the church; but the number of the laies haue beene often augmented from the beginning, and kings haue not their hands so bound but they may create as many as they please. In former times, these haue beene made *Peeres*, *Eureux*, *Alençon*, *Bourbon*, *Eftampes*, *Artois*, *Bretagne*, *Clermont* in *Beauuois*, *Beaumont* le *Roger*, *Anjou*, *Berrie*, *Orleans* and others: and in other times *Espernon*, *Biron* and *Sully*. Commonly the sonnes of France hold their portions, and all other laids as *Peeres*. Some *Peeres* are created onely for life, and are personall, others for them and their issue male, and some for their descendants in generall: For women are capable to bee *Peeres*, they haue place and voices in iudgement, and are to be called and adioyned like vnto the *Peeres*, for that they hold their dignitie hauing execution of iustice.

The lord Steward, whose charge is almost like vnto that of the ancient Maiors of the Pallace, hath the ouersight of all the Officers of the kings house, and it is his charge to take a yereley suruey thereof, and to place or displace euen vnto the meaneft Officer, and to command ouer them; so as not any one that hath wages of the king and is of his ordinarie traine, can free himselfe from obeying the lord Steward: and commonly this estate is in the hands of some prince, as wee see it at this day held by a prince of the blood. This Office of lord Steward is no hindrance, but that hee may enioy any other office at the same time; for that wee haue seen two lord Stewards, whereof the one, that is *Anne* of Montmorency who was Constable at the same time, and the other was *Francis* of Lorraine Duke of Guise, who was Lieutenant generall to king *Henry* the second.

The name of great Chamberlaine doth sufficiently shew his charge, for that hee is as it were the chiefe of all that concerns the kings chamber. It is hee that may giue or refuse access to them that would enter to speake with the king, and who hath commandement ouer all the gentlemen of the chamber, who are so many in number as it shall please the king, and haue charge to cloth and vncloth him. Among these gentlemen, there is one who hath the name of First or Chiefe, and hee is about the rest, and commands the pages of the chamber. At this day there are two chiefe gentlemen which are in charge, either of them as it shall please the king to appoint. The great Chamberlain, hath also power ouer all others (of what sort soeuer they bee) that serue the king in his chamber, as grooms of the chamber, masters and groom of the wardrope, and all others. Finally, the great Chamberlain is to draw on the kings buskins the day of his coronation.

As for the Master of the horse, hee hath charge ouer the kings stables, and hath commandement ouer the gentlemen who haue the care of them, and ouer the Quieries, Pages, Poltes, and Riders that are there; so as all horses, as well for seruice, hunting, or the race, are vnder his command. Hee is to carrie the royall sword powdered with flowers de Lucies in all solemne ceremonies, as at the entries, coronations, and interments of kings. At this day this office is in a manner diuided into two, and the first Quierrie seemes to haue the like authoritie, who also should haue command ouer Poasts, and giue commission to him that they call controulour ouer the Poasts; but at this day the controulour generall of the Poasts disposeth of all these matters.

There is nothing more seemelie for a prince than hunting, for that it makes his bodie more apt to endure labour, and to flee idleness, which is the plague of foules: hee hath therefore to this end a great Huntsman and a great Faulconer. These know at what time the king will hunt or hawke, or run a stag, and according to his will they haue a care to make him sport. They haue command ouer all gentlemen that are huntsmen, and ouer all those that haue charge of the kings dogs and hawkes.

The Stewards or Clarkes of the kitchen are as it were good husbands of the kings house,

house, of the expences whereof they must take knowledge and heare the accompts. A
they carry a staffe garnished with siluer at either end, and goe before the gentlemen
that carrie meat vnto the kings table. They say that in former times they had power
to set prizes vpon victuals, and to doe many other things, which haue been taken from
them, and doe at this day belong to the Prouost of the household, for that many things
are changed in the execution of offices, as it hath pleased kings to dispose of them, and to
giue authority to men that had them in charge.

There is also for the kings table the great Pantler, the Sewyers and the Caruers, whose
names they their charge. The great Pantler in former times had the gouernment
of some bread, to see if the weight were iust, and the measure lawfull, and they did
also set the price. At this day the Pantler takes faie of all the meat that is serued to the
king. The Cupbearer doth also take the like faie of the kings wine, to auoid the incon-
uenience which might grow, if the one or other were poisoned.

And for that the kings household consists of men of diuers humors, and by reason
of the great number of Princes and Noblemen which doe commonly follow the court,
there are many men, either for their affaires, or without warrant, who many times com-
mit offences as thefts, murders and quarrells; to preuent the which, they haue ordained
the prouost of the household, whose title shewes his qualitie to iudge of ciuile and cri-
minall matters betwixt those that follow the court. The prouost of the household doth
passe, and allow of pardons giuen by the king to them of the court, and his iurisdiction
doth not onely extend ouer the household, and the kings traine, but also fix leagues
round about. Hee hath two lieutenants vnder him, one that professeth armes, an other
a lawyer, with sergeants which are termed of the prouost of the household, and fiftie
Archers with luerie cassocks, like vnto the Archers of the kings guard, who follow and
serue him, and pursue offenders. Besides the said charge to punish offenders, hee is to set
the price vpon bread, wine, flesh, hay and oates; the which in former times did belong to
the Stewards of the kings house. It doth also belong to him to take knowledge of causes
concerning the officers of the kings house, in that which is merely personall: the which
was also in the iurisdiction of the Stewards of the kings house, who had the knowledge
of thefts and other crimes committed in the court, and as king of the ribalds or vaga-
bonds, was appointed to seaze vpon the offenders; whereas now the prouost of the hou-
shold hath both offices.

The hundred gentlemen, are the kings companie, and are appointed for his more
safe and honourable guard, and doe yet retain the name of a hundred, notwithstanding
that since the raigne of king Francis the first, they were made two hundred; either
companie hauing a captaine and a lieutenant, and they march vnder the kings cornet.

The kings guard is diuided into three, there being French, Scottish men, and Suisses.
There are both of Scottish men and French which weare Cassocks, and they are called
Archers of the guard; and there are others which weare not any, and they are called Ex-
emptes, they carrie a staffe, and are as it were heads of squadrons, going before the Ar-
chers, and leading them in the absence of their commaunders. Besides there is the regi-
ment of the guards vnder a colonell.

There being such a multitude which follows the court, there must of necessitie bee
some to lodge all this traine, and to this end they haue created Marshalls of the lodging,
and harbingers, whose office is to make the places and houses, as well for the king, as
for princes, noblemen, officers and other his maiesties seruants.

There are also certaine officers of state which follow the king, and they are the chiefe
of the realme, through whose hands affaires of importance must passe, so as no dispatch
can bee lawfully made without them: These haue the chanceller for their head, who
is also the chiefe Iustice of France. Hee doth correct euen the graunts which the king
makes, and may cancell patents signed by the king, or any one of his secretaries, so great
is the authoritie of this office. It is hee which dispatcheth pardons, immunities, estates,
gifts, offices, & such like things, which the subjects doe commonly demand, and all
dispatches made without his seale, are of no value. If the king grow discontented with
his

A his Chancellor, for that the name is sacred and inuolable, and the title and degree cannot
be taken from him but by death; they giue him a substitute, who carries the name of Kee-
per of the seale, for that the name of Chancellor may not be attributed vnto him during
his life that hath this office.

Kings haue alwaies Secretaries, and therefore there are to the number of six score of the
house and Crowne of France, among the which there are foure chiefe, which are called
Secretaries of estate and commaundements, who make all dispatches; and haue their
charges diuided according to the prouinces, as well within as without the realme. There
is also the Secretarie of the Cabinet, who makes the kings priuat dispatches the which
B he would not haue diuulged.

They haue also erected two Councils of the kings house for the State; whereof the
one carries the name of Priuie Councell, the other of Great Councell; which were
sometimes all one, when the Parliament was ambulatorie: but matters being changed,
according to the necessitie of the time, they were forced to diuide the offices:

The Priuie Council consists of diuers great personages, whereas the king appoints a
president, when he doth not assist himselfe, where, of right, the Princes of the blood haue
place, with the Chancellor, and many of the most honourable and iudicious persons of
the realme. In this Councell they determine all affaires, both of war and peace, and of
other matters which concerne the State; and sometimes they call matters of conse-
quence before them, the which are depending in the great Councell, or in the Court
C of Parliament. And as for the Great Councell, it hath alwaies consisted of the Chancel-
lor, and eight masters of request of the kings house; and besides, there are seenteene
Councillors, two Secretaries, the Kings Attourney, and the Solicitor. In this Councell
they iudge definitiue, and the officers charge euerie fix moneths, for that it is like vnto
a mouing Parliament. These Iudges determine of ciuile appeales which come before
them from the prouost of the household, and they do also iudge of controouersies which
grow betwixt soueraigne Courts, and of benefices which are in the kings gift. The Ma-
sters of request are assistants to the Chancellor, with whom they take knowledge of all
the offices of the realme, and of the sufficiency, and insufficiency of such as pursue them;
D they haue power to giue remissions, and Letters pattens of the little Chancerie, as they
call it, to such as haue need of them: They haue voyces in Court of Parliament, and
may preside in Bayliuicks and Seneschallies, so as the Lieutenants to Bayliffs and Se-
neshalls quit them the place. This is all that may be briefly spoken touching the officers
of the kings house. Let vs now see them that are out of it, and haue charge of the affaires
of war, for that thereby our kings haue growne great, and then we will come to speake
of the rest.

The Constable hath command ouer all both foot and horse, for that he is Generall o-
uer all the armies that are leuyed in France, and ouer garisons wheresoeuer they be.
For the exercise of this iurisdiction, Princes haue graunted vnto Constables a seat of
E justice in the Palace, and a Lieutenant at the Marble Table, who takes knowledge
of all excesses, and crimes committed by them that make profession of armes. And
as he doth iudge of crimes committed by souldiers, so doth he in like manner of them
that wrong souldiers: he takes knowledge of booties, ranfomes, and prisoners, of the
mutinies of souldiers against their captaines, and of them that go from the armie with-
out leaue. It belongs vnto the Constables to iudge of souldiers and men at armes
which haue been cassied and put out of their companies by commissaries of the war,
captaines, lieutenants, or others appointed to take musters of souldiers. He doth also
iudge of them that are surprised as spies; of debts, bonds and contracts which are made
by reason of the war, of them that yeeld vp strong places without leaue, or not being
F forced with extremities; of gentlemen subiect to the Ban and Attier-ban, which refuse
to do the seruice they owe vnto the king, of whom they hold fees, nobilitie, and free-
dome. Finally, the pay-masters of companies, treasurers, and their deputies, prouosts,
marshalls, their lieutenants and archers, are vnder the Constables iurisdiction.

Next vnto him we must consider of the Marshalls of France, who cannot (as in for-
mer

times) be dismissed from their charges, the which continue with them during their lives. In the beginning there was but one, then they made two, afterwards three, and so four; and in our time there have been fix or seven, and now there are five. The Ordinance saith, that it belongs to the Constable and the Marshals of France, or to their Lieutenants at the marble table, to judge of all infolencies and crimes committed by soldiers, either foot or horse, in campe or in their garrison, going thither or coming from thence, or keeping the field, and of attempts made against them. They also take notice of prisoners of war, of booties, and contentions which may grow, and of them that, taking the kings pay, disobey their Captaines, and go from the campe without leave.

The Admirall, who hath his office during his life, is the chiefe and Lieutenant general at sea, and in all places which are upon the sea coast, and hath charge of all that which is attempted at sea, as also he takes knowledge of all offences which are there committed. No man can put a ship to sea, though it be at his owne cost, without his permission, nor enter into any port of France. He decides all controuersies which happen, as wel by reason of contracts made for matter of war, merchandise, and fishing, as for other ciuile and criminal causes, proceeding from that which is done at sea; and he makes what Lieutenants he thinks good to determine of them. It belongs also to him to take the tenth of all prises, and of all gaine or profit which is made by sea, by any person whatsoever; and to give licence to go a fishing for herring out of seafon, for that without his licence no man can go a fishing to the New-found land. It belongs to the Admirall to give order for watches, and beacons which are upon the sea coast, when as necessarie requires, and to hold that he may make a truce for certaine dayes with the enemy, the which is a great priuiledge. There are foure Admiralties, France, Bretagne, Guicenne, and Prouence.

Lieutenants general of armies are appointed to supplie the kings place, whose person it is not fit to hazard, as many accidents haue taught vs by experience; and these are set in their places to command our armies; and to haue the same authoritie which the king should haue, if he were there in person.

Gouernours of prouinces (which should be many in France, by reason of her spacioufnesse) had sometimes power to giue pardons, to grant priuiledges of faires and markets, to make yemen, gentlemen, and baltards legitimate; and they had power to call vnto them causes depending before ordinarie Iudges: but *Leuis* the twelfth reuoked these priuiledges by an edit, and did abrogate this power. They haue yet great authoritie, but the ordinarie Iustice depends not of them; but onely those things which concerne the war. And although the Gouernor represents the king, yet if there be question of any Citizen, that makes no profession of armes, he may not punish him, but his ordinarie Iudge, and the appeale goes not before him, but before the Iustice established in Courts. The like may be said of them that are Lieutenants general for the king in Prouinces. I will not extend my selfe vpon the charges of Colonels of horse and foot, nor of the Great master of the ordinance, for that the name doth sufficiently shew the authoritie that is giue in them.

As the order of the Starre was instituted by king *John*, and that of *S. Michael* by king *Leuis* the eleuenth at Amboise, so king *Henrie* the third was author of that of the holie Ghost, the which continues yet, and whose knights enioy as goodly, yea greater priuiledges, than those of the other orders.

XXV II. Now it rests, that we see what is the circuit of the Court of Parliament of Paris, whereas the knights of the order haue place, but no voyces, vnlesse they be Peeres or Princes of the blood.

The first Balliwick which is vnder the parliament of Paris, is the towne of Laon, then that of Rheims, then Amiens, Abbeuille, Boullain, Senlis, Sens, Auxerre, Troies, Vergy, Parrois, Chasteau Tyerry, Chaumont in Bassigny, Meaux, and Prouins (whereof the two last, as Chasteau Tyerry) are comprehended in the countrie of Brie. There is afterwards Melun, Poitiers, Angers, Mans, Tours, Blois, Bourges, Orleans, Chantres, Ango-

A Angoulesme, Rochelle Montfort, l'Amaury, Lyon, Moulins, S. Peter le Montier, Riou and Orillac in Auvergne, then the towne and Prouost-court of Paris; after the discourse whereof, we will see the rest, but according vnto the prouinces, not following the order which I haue heretofore downe.

In Paris you haue the Presidial Court of the Chasteler, where there were foure and twentie Councillors, by an edit made by king *Henrie* the second, in the yere 1560. To this Presidial, repaire the court of the Prouostship and Viconie, the preferuation of the royall priuiledges of the Vniuersitie of Paris, the ancient iurisdiction of the said Prouostship, Brie Count Robert, & la Ferte Alesp. There is also in the Chasteler a Prouost, with his lieutenants, ciuile, criminall and particular, a protector of the priuiledges, the Kings Councill, Attourney, and Solicitor, two Registers ciuile and criminall, and the Commisaries of the towne. For the seruice of this Chasteler, there are Sergeants both on horsebacke, and of the Mace, who execute the adournments, and giue the assignation ordaind by the Iudges, as sent by the king, & carrying the title of officers, and the kings badge, which is the armes of France in a scutcheon. The Chasteler hath alwaies had charge of that which concerns the ciuile gouernment; so as if bakers, or any other that sell vituals, commit any error in their trades, the Commisaries haue an eye ouer them, and the prouost of Paris is to punish such offences.

As for the court of Parliament of Paris, whereas the Princes of the blood are borne Councillors, there should be, according to the auncient number, a hundred persons, that is to say, the twelue Peeres of France, whose lands hold of the iurisdiction of the sayd Court, then eight masters of request of the kings household, and foure score Councillors, comprehending the foure Presidents, that is to say, fortie Clarks, and fortie Lay men, among which are the Bishop of Paris, and the Abbot of S. Denis, then the kings two Attourneys, and the Solicitor general. But this number hath been since much augmented, the multitude of affaires being cause of the pluralitie of Iudges. The lesser offices of the court, are the foure Notaries and Secretaries, two registers, ciuile and criminal, the register of representations, and the Vthets. The whole bodie is diuided into fix Chambers, whereof the first is the Great Chamber, otherwife called the Golden Chamber, the D. Tournelle, which is that where they plead criminall causes, whereas the Iudges change euery three moneths; the great Chamber of Inquests, the little Chamber of Inquests, the new Chamber, and the Chamber of demeanes. You see also within the circuit of the Palace, the Requests of the kings household, the Chancery, the Requests of the Palace, the Bayliwicke of the Palace, the Chamber of the masters of waters and forrests; whereunto repaire three hundred officers of three hundred courts of the waters and forrests of this realme; the iurisdiction of the Constable and Marshals of France at the Marble Table, the Chamber of accounts, that of the Treasure, the Chamber of mony, the court of Ayds, of Esleuez or Seaffers of subsidies, the court of the Admiraltie at the Marble Table, and the great Pantler of France.

E The vnder Bayliwicks of the Chasteler of Paris, are Poissy, S. Germain in Lay, Torran in Brie, Corbeil, Montlehery and Gonneffe in France.

Vnder the Parliament of Paris, are these principall courts of iustice that follow.

First, in the towne of Laon a Presidial Court, where, by the edit of king *Henrie* the second, there should be ten Councillors, and one register of appeales. To this Presidial Court should repaire, in cases of the edit, the towne of Laon, the courts of Saint Quentin, Ribemont, Noyon, Couffy, Chauny, Soissons, Guise, Peronne, Montdidier, and Roy.

Moreouer, in the towne of Rheims, an other Presidial Court, there should be eight Councillors by the said edit, which we will alwayes follow. And to this Presidial Court, should resort the court of Rheims, the preferuation of the priuiledges of the vniuersitie of the said place, the iurisdiction of Chalons, Eprenay, Fismes, the countie of Vertus, and the Bayliwicke of Saudron.

In the towne of Amiens there is a Presidial Court, where are seven Councillors, and one register of appeales for the Bayliwicke of Amiens.

In the towne of Abbeville an other preſidiall court, in which are ſeven Councillors, A and one regiſter for the Senſhalſhip of Ponthieu.

At Bouleſin a preſidiall court, ſeven Councillors, and one regiſter for the Senſhalſhip of Bouleſin.

In the towne of Senlis a preſidiall court, eight Councillors, and one regiſter, whereunto to repaire the iuriſdictions of Senlis, Compiègne, Clermont in Beauvois, Creil, the Proueſſhip of Angy, Chaumont in Vexin, Pontoife, Beaumont vpon Oyle, Crefpy, la Ferte Millon, and Pierrefons.

In the towne of Sens a preſidiall court, ten Councillors, and one regiſter, whither reſort the iuriſdiction of Villeneuve le Roy.

At Auxerre a preſidiall court, ſeven Councillors, and one regiſter for the Bayliwicke of Auxerre.

At Troyes a preſidiall court, eight Councillors, and one regiſter, to which Court repaire the iuriſdiction of Troyes, the preſervation of the faïres of Brie and Champagne, for that it extends into the ſaid Bayliwicke, the courts of Bar vpon Seine, Muſſy l'Electique, la Ferte vpon Auble, Nogent, Pont vpon Seine, Enuy le Chafſel, & Saint Florentin.

In the towne of Vitry in Parthois, a Preſidiall Court, ſeven Councillors, and one Regiſter, to which Preſidiall Court, repaire the iuriſdiction of Vitry, S. Menchouſt, S. Diſſier, Roumray, and Paſſeuant.

In the towne of Chateau Tierry a Preſidiall, ſeven Councillors, and one Regiſter, whereunto reſort the courts of the ſaid Chateau-Tierry, Chafillon vpon Mame, Trefſons, Ouchil-Chafſel & Milly S. Front.

In the towne of Chamont in Baſſigny a Preſidiall Court, ſeven Councillors and one Regiſter, to which Court repaire the ſaid Chamont with the Bayliwicke of Bar vpon Aube.

In the towne of Meaux a Preſidiall Court, ſeven Councillors, and one Regiſter, whereunto repaire the iuriſdictions of Meaux, Crefpy, Coulommiers in Brie, & la Ferte Gaucher.

In the towne of Prouins a Preſidiall Court, ſeven Councillors, and one Regiſter. The ſaid Prouins and the courts of Sezanne, Montreau Faut Yonne, Bray vpon Seine, Joy le Chafſel, and the maintenance of the faïres of Brie and Champagne, for that it extends to the ſaid court of Prouins, repaire thither.

At Melun a Preſidiall Court, ſeven Councillors, and one Regiſter, whereunto reſort the ſaid Melun, with the iuriſdictions of Moret, Nemours, Chateau landon, Chapelle la Reyne & Milly in Gaſſinois.

At Poitiers a Preſidiall Court for the Senſhalſhip of Poitiers, twelue Councillors, and one Regiſter. To this Court repaire the iuriſdiction of Poitiers, and the maintenance of the priuiledges of the Vniuerſitie of the ſaid place, with the courts of Luſſignen, Chafſeleraut, Montmorillon, Baſe Marche & Dorat, Fontenay le Comte, Niort, Giuray and Saint Maixent.

At Angers, for the Senſhalſhip of Anjou, a Preſidiall Court, ten Councillors, and one Regiſter. Thither reſort the iuriſdiction of Angers, with the Courts of Saumur, Bauges and Beaufort in the valley.

At Tours a Preſidiall Court, eight Councillors, and one Regiſter, to the which repaire the Courts of Tours, Chinon, Lodun, Langeſt, Amboiſe, Loches, and Chafſillon vpon Yndre.

At Mans a Preſidiall Court for the Senſhalſhip of Maine, 8 Councillors, and one Regiſter: thither repaire the iuriſdictions of Mans, of Chateau de Loir, Laval, Beaumont, S. Suſanne, Chateau Gontier, la Fleche, and Maine la Juhaiz, Sable, & la Ferte Benard.

At Lyon a Preſidiall Court, eight Councillors, and one Regiſter: thither reſort the Courts of Lyon for the preſervation of the faïres of the ſaid place, with the Bayliwickes of Maſcon, Foreſt, and Beaujolois. At Lyon is alſo kept the Court of Parliament of Dambes. And at this day Foreſt depends of Montbrifon.

At

A At Moulins a Preſidiall Court for the Senſhalſhip of Bourbonnois, ſeven Councillors, and one Regiſter: thither reſort the Court of Moulins, with the iuriſdictions, according to the erection which hath beene made of the Duchie, and the Courts of high Marche.

At S. Pierre le Montier a Preſidiall Court, ſeven Councillors, and a Regiſter: thither reſort the Bayliwicke of S. Pierre le Montier, comprehending Donzoiſ, Saucrain, Cuſſet, and the Borough of S. Stephens de Neurs.

At Rion a Preſidiall Court for the Senſhalſhip of Baſe Auvergne, eight Councillors, and a Regiſter: To which there repaire the courts of juſtice of Rion, Montferand, Combraille, Montaigu, Aigue perſe, Clermont, and Montpenſier.

At Orillac a Preſidiall Court for the Senſhalſhip of high Auvergne, eight Councillors, and a Regiſter: thither reſort the Courts of Orillac, Saint Flour, Carlat, and Murat.

At Blois a Preſidiall Court for the Bayliwicke, ſeven Councillors, and a Regiſter: to which reſort the iuriſdictions of Blois, Romorentin, Millanſay, Chafſteaudun, and the countrie of Dunois.

At Bourges a Preſidiall Court for the Bayliwicke of Berry, eight Councillors, and one Regiſter: to which repaire the Court of the ſayd Bourges, with the preſervation of the Vniuerſitie of that place, with the Courts of Yſſoudun, Dun le Roy, Meun vpon Yeure, and Concreſſant.

C At Orleans a Preſidiall ſeat for the Bayliwicke of Orleans, twelue Councillors, and a Regiſter: to which repaire the iuriſdiction of Orleans, as well of the Bayliwicke, as of the Proueſſhip, with the maintenance of the priuiledges of the Vniuerſitie of the ſayd place, and the courts of Bois commun, Chateau Renard, Yeuille, Yeure le Chafſel, Neuſſelle aux Loges, Gien, Montargis, Loriz, Meun vpon Loire, and Baugency.

At Chartres a Preſidiall court for the Bayliwicke, ten Councillors, and one Regiſter: thither repaire, beſides the iuriſdiction of Chartres, the courts of Chafſteauueuf, Thimeſays, great Perche, and Percheſouet, Eſtampes, Dourdan, Nogent le Roy, Bonneual, and the temporall juſtice of the Cathedral Church of Chartres, and the Abbey of Bonneual.

D At Angoulême the Preſidiall court for the Senſhalſhip of Angoumois, ſeven Councillors, and a Regiſter: thither reſort the ſeat of juſtice of Angoulême, with the courts of Coignac and Chafſteauueuf.

At Rochel a Preſidiall court, ſeven Councillors, and a Regiſter: to which reſorts the iuriſdiction of Rochel, with the countrie of Aulnis, and the bounds and limits of the gouernment of the ſaid towne.

At Montfort l'Amaury a Preſidiall court, ſeven Councillors, and a Regiſter: to which repaire the iuriſdictions of Montfort, Houdan, Martes, and Meulan.

There are moreover, ſome Preſidials added ſince king Henrie the ſecond, as the number of Councillors is augmented by the meanes of many edicts, for the creation of new offices.

Normandie contains ſeven Bayliwickes, which are vnder the parliament of Roüen, that is to ſay, Roüen, Caux, Caen, Conſtantin, Euureux, Giſors, and Alençon. King Lewis the twelfth created the parliament of Normandie at Roüen, and there eſtabliſhed foure Preſidents, and eight and twentie Councillors, whereof thirteene were Clarke or Clergie men, and fiſteene of the Laytie, two Regiſters and one Examiner, with the kings two Attourneys, and the Solicitor generall; but ſince they haue much augmented the number of the officers of this Court, as they haue done all others of the realme.

F Beſides the Court of Parliament at Roüen, there is that of the Aydes, which comprehends the iuriſdiction of the Eſleux, or Seaffers for ſubſidies, inſtituted by king Charles the ſeuenth, conſiſting of two Preſidents, eleuen Councillors, a Regiſter, two Attourneys for the Kings, and one Solicitor, three Viſers, and a Receiuer and Paymaſter, and theſe iudge definitively of all matters concerning aydes, impoſts, taxes, increaſes, gifts, grants,

grants, loanes, prouisions and such like. Of these Iudges depend many seassors, officers of the kings storehouses of salt, and controulers, having their iurisdiction apart; and besides the elections of the Duchie of Normandie, there are also comprehended the elections of the Duchie of Perche, of the Prouostship of Chaumont, and the increase of Magry, comprehending also Pontoise. There is also at Rouen the court of the Bayliwick, and the Presidiall Court, with the Vicontie, and the ordinarie iurisdiction, which they of the countrie call Cohuë.

To set downe more particularly the Presidiall Courts and Bayliwicks, they put in the first place,

The Bayliwicke of Caudebec; and next,

The Presidiall Court of Eureux.

The Bayliwicke of Gisors.

The Bayliwicke of Alençon: this is comprehended vnder the generalitie of Roüen, where there are twentie Viconties, and twelue or fiftene good and royall iurisdiccions.

The Presidiall court of Caën.

The Bayliwicke of Constance: this is comprehended vnder the generalitie of Caën, which hath seuen Viconties, and some royall iurisdiccions.

The Court of Parliament of Toulouse hath vnder it these Presidiall Courts and Bayliwicks which follow.

The Seneshallship and Presidiall of Toulouse.

The Seneshallship of Carcassonne.

The Seneshallship of Villefranche in Rouergne.

The Seneshallship of Cahors in Quercy.

The Seneshallship of Tarbe in Bigorre.

These Courts are comprehended vnder the generalitie of Toulouse, where there are five good Courts depending of the Seneshall of Quercy and others.

The Presidiall of Montpellier, the court of Aides, and the chamber of Accounts.

The Presidiall of Beziers.

The Seneshallship and Presidiall Court of Beaucaire & Nîmes: this is vnder the Generalitie of Montpellier, where there are foure good iurisdiccions.

The Parliament of Bourdeaux contains these countie following:

The Presidiall of Bourdeaux.

The Presidiall of Perigueux.

The Presidiall of Agen.

The Presidiall of Bazas.

The Presidiall of Laumes.

The Presidiall of Xainx, and fiftene other iurisdiccions.

The Parliament of Bourgogne hath vnder it these Courts:

The Bayliwicke of Dijon.

The Bayliwicke of Nuyse.

The Bayliwicke of Beaune.

The Bayliwicke of Auxonne.

The Bayliwicke of Saloin de Lons.

The Bayliwicke of Chalon vpon Saone.

The Bayliwicke of Mâcon.

The Bayliwicke of Autun.

The Bayliwicke of Semur.

The Bayliwicke of Montcaen.

The Bayliwicke of Charolles.

The Bayliwicke of Auxois.

The Bayliwicke of Analon.

The Bayliwicke of Amay le Duc.

The Bayliwicke of Montargis.

The Bayliwicke of Bar vpon Seine.

The Bayliwicke of Bar vpon Seine.

The

A The Bayliwicke of Getz.

The Bayliwicke of Bellay.

The Presidiall Court of Bourg in Bresse.

The Parliament of Bretagne contains vnder it these Courts which follow:

The Presidiall of Rhemes.

The Presidiall and Chamber of accounts at Nantes.

The Presidiall of Vannes.

The Presidiall of Quimpercorenth.

The Seneshallship of Ploruicel.

B Six other royall iurisdiccions.

The Parliament of Dauphine, resident at Grenoble, hath vnder it these Courts:

The Bayliwicke of Grisuaudan at Grenoble.

The Bayliwicke of Vienne.

The Bayliwicke of Valence.

The Seneshallship of Montelimar.

The Bayliwicke of Ambrun.

The Bayliwicke of Gap.

The Bayliwicke of Nyons.

The Bayliwicke of Die.

C The Bayliwicke of Crest.

The Bayliwicke of Chabeul.

The Bayliwicke of S. Marcellin.

The Bayliwicke of Briançon.

In the Parliament of Prouence they reckon:

The Seneshallship of Aix, and at the least, twentie royall iurisdiccions: and note that all the townes of Parliament in France haue their Chamber of Accounts, except Toulouse and Rennes.

Religion of France.

D Saint Epiphanius doth teach vs that Saint Luke preacht the Christian faith in France; and Saint Clement, in his first Epistle against the Iewes, writes, That he was sent into Gaule by the commaundement of Saint Peter to James, brother to our Satiour. They hold that *Crescentinus*, *Martial*, *Denis*, *Arcepagite*, *Eleutherus*, *Aphrodisem*, *Rusticus*, and others, did much increase the faith which had beene planted; so as *Tertullian* saith, That In his time many Gaules made profession of the Christian faith. Finally, all the realme was conuerted to the faith about the yere 495, vnder King *Clovis*, the Historie whereof is well knowne. Moreover, France contaynes a hundred and seuentene Diocesses, whereof there are foureteene Archbishopricks, and a hundred and three Bishopricks, whose names were formerly set downe.

E The Bishopricke of Paris contains six hundred parishes or steeples, comprehending the Hamlets.

The Bishopricke of Meaux contains foure hundred and ten parishes or steeples with Hamlets.

That of Chartres 609 parishes or steeples.

That of Soissons 380 parishes or steeples.

That of Beauuais 592 parishes or steeples.

That of Noyon 404 parishes or steeples.

That of Boullain 460 parishes or steeples.

That of Amiens 498 parishes or steeples.

That of Rheims 1014 parishes or steeples.

That of Chalons 360 parishes or steeples.

That of Troyes 509 parishes or steeples.

That of Sens 930 parishes or steeples.

That of Orleans 700 parishes or steeples.

K

That

That of Angers 668 parishes or steeples.
 That of Tours 1035 parishes or steeples.
 That of Poitiers 709 parishes or steeples.
 That of Mans 451 parishes or steeples.
 That of Luffon 213 parishes or steeples.
 That of Bourges 1260 parishes or steeples.
 That of Nevers 211 parishes or steeples.
 That of Lymoges 411 parishes or steeples.
 That of Angoleme 411 parishes or steeples.
 That of Clermont 306 parishes or steeples.
 That of Lyon 411 parishes or steeples.
 That of Mafcon 307 parishes or steeples.
 That of Chalon 420 parishes or steeples.
 That of Autun 1300 parishes or steeples.
 That of Auxerre 460 parishes or steeples.
 That of Erez 960 parishes or steeples.
 That of Senlis 211 parishes or steeples.
 That of Roien 1338 parishes or steeples.
 That of Caen 509 parishes or steeples.
 That of Alençon 390 parishes or steeples.
 That of Eureux 335 parishes.
 That of Nantes 385 parishes or steeples.
 That of Rhenes 450 parishes or steeples.
 That of Vannes 405 parishes or steeples.
 That of Bayeux 211 parishes or steeples.
 That of Seez 213 parishes or steeples.
 That of Constance 319 parishes or steeples.
 That of Auranches 362 parishes or steeples.
 That of Trignee 307 parishes or steeples.
 That of S. Malo 314 parishes or steeples.
 That of Quimpercorentin 202 parishes.
 That of Xantes 291 parishes or steeples.
 That of Perigueux 302 parishes or steeples.
 That of Langres 960 parishes or steeples.
 That of Bourdeaux 918 parishes or steeples.
 That of Montauban 414 parishes or steeples.
 That of Tarbie 292 parishes or steeples.
 That of Ax 259 parishes.
 That of Bazas 504 parishes or steeples.
 That of Auch 768 parishes or steeples.
 That of Bayonne 349 parishes or steeples.
 That of Cahors 422 parishes or steeples.
 That of Toulouse 1152 parishes or steeples.
 That of Chastres 412 parishes or steeples.
 That of Carcaffonne 319 parishes or steeples.
 That of Narbone 972 parishes or steeples.
 That of Agen 629 parishes or steeples.
 That of B. ziers 306 parishes or steeples.
 That of Montpellier 491 parishes or steeples.
 That of Agde 77 parishes or steeples.
 That of Mirepoix 89 parishes or steeples.
 That of Nismes 509 parishes or steeples.
 That of S. Paul 62 parishes or steeples.
 That of la Vaur 114 parishes or steeples.

A

B

C

D

E

F

That

A That of Mande 209 parishes or steeples.
 That of Viuiers 135 parishes.
 That of Alby 309 parishes.
 That of Rhodney 219 parishes or steeples.
 That of Vabres 500 parishes or steeples.
 That of S. Pons 482 parishes or steeples.
 That of S. Flour 202 parishes or steeples.
 That of Lodeuc 203 parishes.
 That of Ricux 500 parishes or steeples.
 B That of Allet 168 parishes or steeples.
 That of S. Ligier 125 parishes or steeples.
 That of Puy 428 parishes or steeples.
 That of Vienne 800 parishes or steeples.
 That of Valence 325 parishes or steeples.
 That of Gap 204 parishes.
 That of Ambrun 211 parishes.
 That of Dye, which is now ioyned to Valence, 147 parishes or steeples.
 That of Briançon 170 parishes or steeples.
 That of Digne 185 parishes or steeples.
 C That of Aix 800 parishes or steeples.
 That of Sisteron 200 parishes or steeples.
 That of Arles 311 parishes or steeples.
 That of Marseille 820 parishes or steeples.

182 total 10 41199

Besides in France there are a great number of Abbies and Pories, whereof some haue been ruined during the wars, and others do still subsist.

France is diuided into two sorts of religions: the one follows the Romish Catholique Church, and the other doth adhere to the opinion of Calvin. In the beginning they did employ the sword and persecution to root out the followers of this new sect, as they them, but for one head which they cut off, there came vp ten, like vnto a Hydra: yea they grew so obstinate of either side, as there were battailes giuen, where, notwithstanding they of the new opinion were alwayes the weaker, yet they neuer fainted, but still continued resolute, notwithstanding all edicts, which banisht them the realme, or made them incapable to hold any offices. But in the end, the King considering that they were all his subiects, would intreat all them, like a father, that liued vnder his obedience, and hauing found by former experience, that the more they did assist and persecute them of the reformed religion, the more resolute and constant they grew in their opinion, he hath renewed the edict of pacification, made by his predecessors, by the which the exercise of the reformed religion is allowed in France in those places where as it hath bene formerly practised, and the Masse hath bene restored to those places, from whence the enemies being the stronger had banisht it. And the most iudicious hold this the true and perfect means to bring backe the strayed sheepe vnto the fold.

It were now fit to discourse something of the priuiledges and liberties of the French Church, but there are whole bookes written of that subiect, to the which I will send them that desire to know any thing.

The Kings of France.

P Hermond.
 Clodion the Hairie reigned 20 yeres, he died in the yere of Grace 447.
 Mrevice reigned 12 yeres, he died in the yere 459.
 Chilperic the first, reigned six and twentie yeres, and dyed in the yere foure hundred eightie foure.
 Clovis, the first Christian King, reigned thirtie yeres, and dyed in the yere five hundred and fourtience.

K ij

ch. l.

Childebert was king of Paris, and his other brethren reigned elsewhere: for *Clotaire A* was king of Orleans, *Clodomir* of Soissons, and *Theodoric* had the realme of Metz and Aufrasia. This *Childebert* reigned 45 yeres, and died without children in the yere 559. *Clotaire* king of Orleans succeeded *Childebert* in the realme of Paris, he reigned fiftie yeres.

Aribert, or *Cherebert*, king of Paris.
Chilperic, sonne to the said *Clotaire* the first, reigned 23 yeres, and died in the yere 587.

Clotaire the second reigned 44 yeres, and died in the yere 631.

Dagobert the first reigned 14 yeres, and died in the yere 645.

Clouis, called by some *Lewis*, reigned 16 yeres, and died in the yere 662.

Clotaire the third reigned 4 yeres.

Childeric reigned 12 yeres.

Theodoric reigned 14 yeres, and died in the yere 693.

Clouis the third reigned 4 yeres.

Childebert the second reigned 18 yeres, and died in the yere 715.

Dagobert the second reigned 4 yeres.

Clotaire the fourth reigned 2 yeres.

Chilperic the second reigned 5 yeres.

Theodoric the second reigned 15 yeres, and died in the yere 741.

Childeric the third, who was deposed by *Pepin*, and put into a Monasterie.

¶ The second race from *Pepin* to *Hugh Capet*.

Pepin reigned 18 yeres, and died in the yere 768.

Charles the Great, otherwise called *Charlemaigne*, died in the yere 814, hauing reigned 46 yeres.

Lewis, the first of that name, surnamed the Gentle, reigned 26 yeres, and died in the yere 840.

Charles the second reigned 38 yeres, and died in the yere 879.

Lewis the second, called the Lipping, reigned 2 yeres, and died in the yere 881.

Lewis and *Caroloman* bastards, Kings together, whereof *Lewis* died a hunting, being slaine by his owne seruants; and *Caroloman*, running after a maide, was bruised by his horse, and died in the yere 885.

Charles the third reigned 5 yeres, and died in the yere 891.

Eude reigned 9 yeres, he died in the yere 899.

Charles the Simple reigned 27 yeres, and died in the yere 926.

Raoul reigned onely two yeres, and died at Auxerre in the yere 928.

Lewis from beyond the Sea reigned feuen and twentie yeres, and dyed in the yere 956.

Lothaire reigned 31 yeres, and died in the yere 987.

Lewis the fifth reigned 1 yere, and in him ended the second race.

¶ The Kings from *Hugh Capet* to *Philip of Valois*.

Hugh Capet reigned 9 yeres, and dyed in the yere 996.

Robert reigned 34 yeres, and died in the yere 1031.

Henrie the first reigned 30 yeres, and died in the yere 1060.

Philip the first reigned 49 yeres, and died in the yere 1109.

Lewis the Groffe, the sixt of that name, reigned 28 yeres, and died in the yere 1137.

Lewis the seuenth reigned 43 yeres, and died in the yere 1179.

Philip Augustus reigned 43 yeres, and died in the yere 1223.

Lewis the eighth reigned 4 yeres, and died in the yere 1227.

S. Lewis, the ninth of that name, reigned 43 yeres, and died in the yere 1270.

Philip

- A *Philip* the third reigned 15 yeres, and died in the yere 1285.
Philip the fourth, called the Faire, reigned 28 yeres, and died in the yere 1313.
Lewis the tenth reigned 18 moneths, and died in the yere 1315.
Philip the Long reigned 5 yeres, and died in the yere 1320.
Charles the Faire reigned 7 yeres, and died in the yere 1328.

¶ The Kings from *Philip of Valois* vnto *Lewis* the thirteenth now reigning.

- B *Philip* of Valois reigned 22 yeres, and died in the yere 1350.
John reigned 14 yeres, and died in the yere 1363.
Charles the fifth reigned 16 yeres, and died in the yere 1380.
Charles the sixt reigned 42 yeres, and died in the yere 1422.
Charles the seuenth reigned 38 yeres, and died in the yere 1460.
Lewis the eleuenth reigned 23 yeres, and died in the yere 1485.
Charles the eighth reigned 14 yeres, and died in the yere 1497.
Lewis the twelfth reigned 17 yeres, and dyed in the yere 1514.
Francis the first reigned 32 yeres, and died in the yere 1547.
Henrie the second reigned 13 yeres, and died in the yere 1559.

- C *Francis* the second dyed in the yere 1560, hauing reigned 16 moneths.
Charles the ninth reigned 14 yeres, and died in the yere 1574.

Henrie the third reigned 14 yeres, and died without children in the yere 1589, in whom the race of the royall branch of Valois was extinct.

Henrie the Great, fourth of that name, was made king of France by the decease of *Henrie* the third, as the neereft allyed vnto the Crowne, being issued in the direct line from *Lewis* of France, Earle of Clermont in Beauuois, sonne to *S. Lewis*. He vanquished all them that opposed themselves to his iust pretensions, and hath afterwards vanquished himselfe in pardoning them that had banded against him. France had neuer the like, and they that shall come after, may iustly desire to see the raigne of so mightie and so good a Monarch, who hath made his people to liue in peace, his neighbours in assurance, and his enemies in continuall feare. He reigned 21 yeres, and died in the yere 1610, leauing for successor, his sonne.

Lewis the thirteenth, whom God hath giuen vs as a Sun rising ouer our darkenesse, and as a goodly and liuely image of that incomparable Monarch *Henrie* the Great. And we must beleue that his raigne, which hath begun by the innocencie of his age, will be a raigne of pietie, iustice, and peace; which God will continue with his blessings as he hath begun.

E

K iij

A De;

F



The Contents.

To

Spain which is the first part of firme land lying neere vnro Affrick, beyond the strait of Gibraltar, was in old time gouerned partly by kings, princes and lords of the country, and partly by the people themselves: who hauing deputed their Magistrates and Senators for the gouernment of publike affaires, liued for a while in an honorable and quiet peace, vntill that the warlike Carthaginians hauing made themselves masters of a great part of Affricke seeking to increase their estate and empire, past into this Prouince, where finding the people diuided, they iolned with some to ruine the rest, forcing a great part of the countrey, by the terror of their armes, to submit it selfe to the common weale

11.

wale of Carthage, against whom the Romans sent diuers armies, from whence after a long, variable, and bloudie wars, the Carthaginians were in the end expelled, and the Romans enioyed it quietly. But during the reign of *Honorius* the Emperour, the Vandales a people of Affricke chased away the Romans, and made themselves masters of a part of the country, but the Gothes dispossessed them, and did peaceably raigne ouer all Spaine for many yeares. In the end, the Moores and Sarazins of Affricke invaded Spaine with a mightie armie, and ruined the kingdom of the Gothes; yet some remainders of them being retired into the mountaines, made head against the Moores, and preuailed so by their arties, as in time they haue viterly expelled and driuen them out of the country. It is bounded towards the East by the Pyrenee mountaines, which extend from Fontarabie, in the prouince of Gaspuscoa vpon Cape de Cruz, which is at the entring into Catalogne betwixt Roses & Colibra. It hath for bounds on the South part, the Mediterranean sea, which they commonly call the Levant sea, which begins between Spaine and France, and comes afterwards with the Ocean from the Strait of Gibraltar to the Cape of Saint Vincent. On the West part, it hath the Ocean, from this Cape of S. Vincent vnto that of Finis Terre, and on the North side the same Ocean sea doth enuiron it from Cape Finis Terre vnto Fontarabie. The Pyrenee mountaines do not crosse Spaine with a direct line, but make a crooked forme, so as the way from one extremitie vnto an other towards Spaine, would be of many daies iourney; whereas towards France, it is neither so long nor halfe so troublesome. These mountaines go by the realm of Nauarre & Roncevaux, along the valleys of Salazar and Roncal vnto Hissau, which is the last confine of the realme of Nauarre; then they passe into Aragon by the mountaines of Iaca vnto the Strait of Catalogne, and vnto the point of Cape de Cruz, whereas they end in the Mediterranean sea there being from Fontarabie, vnto this Cape, about fourecore leagues. The greatest compasse of Spaine, is from Cape de Cruz vnto Cape S. Vincent, which is neere 275. leagues, so as all Spaine may containe in circuit about 620. Spanish leagues, euery one of which making about foure Italian miles; so as these leagues would amount to 2480. miles of Italie, if they went by land, for by sea it would be nothing so much.

The Romans haue in former times diuided Spaine into the Hither, or that which was on this side, that is to say, which lay neere vnto the lands of the Romane Empire; it was that which is betwixt the riuier of Ebro and the Pyrenee mountaines. But the further was that which lay most remote from the territories of the Empire, that is to say, which extends from the riuier of Ebro, vnto the Strait of Gibraltar. It was also diuided by the Romans themselves, into three Prouinces, that is to say, into Betica, Tarraconese and Lusitania, where they established foureteen iurisdiccions, whereof Tarraconese comprehends seuen, as the greatest of the three, Lusitania three, and Betica foure. And this diuision continued vnto their time of Attila. But since, the realme of Granada and Andalusia haue beene joined to Betica, Extremadura, Aragon, Castille, Nauarre and other petty realities to Tarraconese, and Portugal, with the realme of Algarbe vnto Lusitania.

At this day they diuide Spaine into three governments or realmes, that is to say, Aragon, Castille and Portugal. Aragon contains Catalogne, Valentia, Maiorca, Minorca, Sardinia, Sicile and Naples. Castille comprehends Biscaie, Leon, the Asturias, Galicia, Extremadura, Andalusia, Grenada, Murcia and the two Castilles with the Canaries, the whole of Nauarre, the dutchie of Milan, the Newfound world, the Philippines and other countries. Portugal hath vnder it the realme of Algarbe, Portugal it selfe, with that which the Spaniards hold in Guien, in Ethiopia, at Brazil, at the East Indies and in many other places.

But to begin the description, the first thing, that offers it selfe is Catalogne, which extends it selfe from Salas vnto the riuier of Ebro, and from the Mediterranean sea vnto the riuier of Cinga. It is for the most part barren, and abounds more in fruit than in corne, and with wilde trees more than with good plants; but the people helpe themselves (being good mariners) much by the sea, from whence they draw great profit. It doth frontier with the sea at Salas, the which is a sort of importance, both by reason of the situation, for

As for that it stands in a straight passage (where, in former the ayre is pestilent and infectious, by reason of certaine neere pooles and marishes) and also for that it hath been very much fortified, since it was recovered from the French.

Then follows Perpignan which is in the countie of Rossillon, and was engaged by John king of Aragon vnto the French, for a great masse of money, and afterwards restored vnto the king of Spaine by Charles the eighth, vpon a promise which hee drew from the Spaniard not to hinder him in his enterprise of Naples. This Earldome lies betwixt two armes of the Pyrenee mountaines, whereof the one goes to Salas, and the other to Colibra, which the ancients called Illiberis. Vpon the sea shoare or neere vnto it, we see diuers places, with their ports, the which are rather necessarie than safe, for that they are subiect to diuers windes, and not verry spacious, as at Elna, Colibra, Rosas, Empurias, Palamos and Blanos. But Barcellona is the chiefe towne of Catalogne, where there wants nothing to make it excellent but a good port. The inhabitants stand much vpon their priuiledges and liberties; neither doe they acknowledge the king but conditionally, wherein they are very scrupulous. Within the countie there is Giron, Vich, Cardona, Virgel, Monsterrat a hill of wonderful deuotion for a miraculous image of the virgin Mary. But returning towards the sea, beyond the riuier we see Lobregato, and Tarragone an Archbishopsricke from whence a great part of Spaine tooke her denomination; and although it bee without a port, yet is the situation verry commodious, after which we find the mouth of the riuier of Ebro famous, for that it had been the bound betwixt the Romans and Carthaginians. It riseth neere vnto the Biscaie sea, joyning to a place called Fuentibre, and running a little towards the Pyrenee mountaines, it turns first to the East, and then to the South, so as there is not any riuier which hath more turnings & windings. This riuier grows great by the means of other riuers which rise at the foot of the said mountaines and fall into it; for on the other side it receiueeth not any but Biblis, if we regard onely that which is worthe of consideration. This riuier at the mouth of it, makes the Island of Alsaques, a retreat for Pirates. But following her course, you may see Tortosa a faire towne, and in a good countie. Finally, in a manner all the riuers of Spaine haue high banks and shallow channells, so as they are not verry navigable, yet they make some vse of the riuier of Ebro in Aragon, and of some small riuers in the realmes of Valencia and Grenada.

Aragon hath for limits, on the East part the riuier of Cinga, on the West, the mountaines of Moncado, and Molina, on the North, the riuier of Ebro, and to the South, the mountaines of Brabance. We see in this realme, or to speake more properly, in this prouince of Spaine, the townes of Iaca, Huefca, Venafca and the towne of Moulon, famous for the courts & assemblies which haue bin kept there; whether the king must of necessity come euery third yeare, if hee will receiue six hundred thousand crownes, which the Estates of Aragon pay him for that time. The chiefe towne of the countie is Saragosse vpon the riuier of Ebro; the fairest towne in Spaine if we regard the beautie of the streets, and the sumptuousnesse of pallaces. Then follows Calatayut, which should hold the first ranke after Saragosse: there is Lerida also an vniuersitie, about the riuier of Sigro.

As for Valencia it takes the name of the chiefe town, and is bounded towards the East, with the Mediterranean sea, towards the North, with Aragon, on the East, with old and new Castille, and on the South, with the realme of Murcia. There are two good townes Hostiela and Valencia, they did number in this realme about two and twentie thousand families of Moores.

The chiefe riuier is Guadalauir, which is to say, a pure and cleere water, it passeth by Valentia and Xucar, which the ancients called Sucron, whereof the bosome or Gulfe of Sucron takes the name, the which extends from the little Island of Alsaques, vnto Cape Martin. The ports of this realme are Alicante called by the ancients Illice, from whence, the Gulfe, lying betwixt Cape Martin, and Cape de Polos takes his name, and Peníscola Candia and Denia.

Murcia hath for bounds the confines of Alicante, and Cape de Gates, there are few townes

townes well peopled, and those that bee, are of small importance; Murcia is the chiefe A
towne. In this realme is the port of Cartiagena, which is the best in Spaine vpon the
Mediterranean sea, for that right against it is a small Island, which assures it from all winds,
and defends it from the raging of the sea, and breaks the furie therof. *Andrew Doria* said,
that he held three ports very safe in the Mediterranean sea, that is to say, that of Cartha-
gena, Iulie, and August. The towne is a small thing and ill built. Lorea is another port,
that is some way within the land.

The realme of Granado, extends from Vera vnto Malaga: and here we may see of
what importance aillage is, for that in the time when as the Moores ruled, this countie
was wonderfully well inhabited, & full of all sorts of commodities; the hills were planted B
with vines and fruit trees, the valls and plaines did abound with come and gardens,
and the towne with people and victualles: whereas now there is not much people, and
the countie is a little less, for that they do not manure their grounds as they haue done.
The countie of Granado is like vnto a portegnet that is opened, for that it contains two
hills, which may in a manner be called two mountains, diuided by a valley, through the
which the riuer of Darro doth passe. And this towne is diuided into foure parts differ-
ing in situation, which are called Granado, Sierra del sol, or the mountaine of the sun,
San yuin, and Antequera. The merchants & gentlemen inhabite chiefly in Granado,
which is the best part, and where there is a church of admirable structure. There is the
place whither they call Alcazar, which represents a litle towne, hauing ten gates. There C
is the Alhamra (the palace of the Moores kings) the which by reason of the art and
the multitude of mountaines, may be put among the wonders of the world: But aboue
all, her situation is admirable, for that she hath vnder her vpon the East part the towne,
where the South the snowy mountaines, and on the North a great plaine. As for the o-
ther parts, it is to no purpose to speake of them, for that there is nothing remarkable. The
countie hath in circuit aboute seuen hundred miles. In this realme is also scene the towne of Guad-
alajara, famous for Granado. The other places of note are Ronde, Maluelle, Velez,
Yero, Mechuar, Gualtar, Baze, Comba, and Loche vpon the riuer of Genil: seuen
leagues from Granado stands the castle of Alhama. The maritime places most important D
of this realme is Almerie and Malaga, neere vnto the which there are a great number
of villages. *Ferdinand* king of Aragon and Castille ended the conquest of this realme
with the towne in the year 1490.

Andaluzia extends in felfe almost from the beginning of the Straight of Gibraltar,
vnto the riuer of Guadiana. It is almost neere the entrance of the Mediterranean sea, by
meanes of the Straight of Gibraltar, of which we will make some mention, although it
doth more properly belong to the Realme of Granado, than to this prouince. This
Straight is seuen miles broad, with the ordinarie flowing and ebbing of the Ocean,
which entering by this port, gets the name of Mediterranean sea, and extends it felfe vnto
the farthest bounds of the Great sea, by the space of three thousand and seuen hundred
miles: The Greekes called it *Hercules* Straights, by reason of two pillars of brasie that
were in *Hercules* temple, or (as some will haue it) by reason of two mountaines, where-
in the one called Calpe is in Spaine, and the other named Abile in Affricke, the which
pillars haue made famous, writing that they were pillars planted by *Hercules* for the
safetie of his voyage. The Latins do also call this Straight, Gaditane, by reason of the
towne of the Island of Gáliz, called by the Latins Gades: the Moores haue giuen it
the name of Gibraltar, by reason of a castle which is built vnder the mountaine of Calpe,
or Gaditane, but so high, as far off it seems an Island diuided from the maine land.
Having past the Straight you come vnto the Island of Caliz, which is about seuen hun-
dred foot from the land, whereunto was ioyned an other litle Island, which had not a-
bout two hundred paces in circuit, and both these were called by the Latins Gades. In
the greater (which remains to this day) there is a towne, which in the Romanes time
was one of the noblest and richest in Spaine; so as *Strabo* writes, that it did not yeeld to
any towne of the Empire, neither in greatnesse, magnificence, nor in number of inhabi-
tants

ants of account; for that sometime they number fise hundred Romane knights there,
the which were not to bee found in any other place but at Padoua: it is nothing so great
at this day, so as it may rather bee held famous for the concourse of merchants than a
ny towne of state. The Moores did ruine it, yet was it reedified and fortified: but of late
yeares it was forced by an armie of English, who held it diuers daies, and hauing sackt
it, abandoned it. There is nothing more preiudicial to this towne, than the neighbour-
hood of Seuille which drawes away all the trafficke of the Western sea. Betwixt Cales
and the Continent, there is a very good port called Porto Real, and more towards the
North, there is another called Saint Maria. Doubling the Cape a litle off stands S. Lu-
car of Barrameda, whereas the ships stay either for a wind to put to sea, or for a tide to
go to Seuille. This citie of Seuille stands vpon the left banke of Guadalquivir, it is fix
miles in compasse, and hath many stately churches and monasteries, with faire streets
and great market places. The countie is wonderfull pleasant and yeelds all kinds of
fruit, oyle, wine and come. Among other things there is a wood of oliue trees, of thir-
tie leagues long.

When as *Ferdinand* the great tooke Seuille, they did number in this territorie 20000
villages or hamlets, but at this day the number is nothing so great, yet they say there are
200 walled places. The riuer of Guadalquivir (which is to say in the Arabian tongue,
a great riuer, and it may iustly bee called for the capacite and bounty of the water
good to dye cloth, and to make the face faire) runs by the towne: the tyde flows two
leagues aboue the towne. From this port Spaine sends forth her wine, oyle, and all kind
of fruits, into America and all the Northren parts; and they say, that whenas there enters
not foure thousand pipes of wine dayly into Seuille, the famour of the custome house
will breake. Here they also discharge the gold and siluer which comes from noua Hispa-
nia and Peru, the pearle of Gubagna and Terarecchi, the emeralds of S. Maria, the
cuchanille of Mexico, and the corall of the Island Hispaniola, with infinite wealth from
the new world, the which is dispersed into all Europe; so as the reuenues of this citie on-
ly, are worth a good realme vnto the chatholicke king. On the other side of the riuer
stands Tryana, which is a very pleasant member of Seuille: and although the sun be ex-
ceeding hot in Seuille, so as the corne is ripe in Aprill, like vnto Egypt, yet there are so
many refreshings; as king *Ferdinand* said, it was best to liue at Seuille in sommer, and in
winter at Bourgos, which is a very cold citie, yet, it hath wonderfull defences against
the cold. Besides Seuille, there are also in Andaluzia many towne and places of importance;
but the chiefe is Cordoua, to the which they may passe vpon the riuer either in great or
smaller boates: it is a towne of great circuit, but with few houses by reason of the mul-
titude of gardens: it abounds with water which makes the countie both pleasant and
fruitfull. There are neere vnto it many castles and strong places, whereof Loreana is one.
Isen is also a remarkable towne, whereof the kings of Spaine terme themselves lords in
their other titles. There are also in this Diocesse Vbeda, Baesa, Andujar, great towne,
Pleigo, Martos, Bicalona, Estepa, Moraila, Mirabel, Almoduar, Safra, Beneuent, Agui-
lar, Zambra, Castellar, Arjona, Alcalade Rio, with diuers others. Neither may I let
passe Almaden and Marchena, the first is a place in the diocesse of Cordoua belonging
to the order of Alcantara, in the which there is a rich mine of quicksilver. And Marche-
na is a towne vpon the confines of Granado and Andaluzia, neere vnto which are bred
the best genicks of Spaine.

Extremadura extends from Villareale to Badajos, and from Sierra Morena to Tagus:
The riuer of Guadiana runs through it, vpon whole bankes stands the townes of Bada-
jos and Merida. And there is to be scene a very remarkable thing, which is, that this riuer
looseth it felfe, and runs vnder the ground for the space of ten leagues, and fifteth againe.
F. neere vnto Medellin, a place famous for the birth of *Ferdinand Cortez*, who conquered
Mexico in all that space where as the riuer runs vnder the ground, are excellent pastures;
so as among other miracles of Spaine, they were wont to say that there is a riuer on which
cattell do feed. In this countie is the image of our Lady of Guadalupe, whether infinite
number of people run for deuotion.

These two Castellles are almost alike in situation, but that Castille the new hath more A
 things than the old, being also more towards the South and hotter: The old abounds in
 countie, and the new in cattell: they have diuided one from the other by certaine moun-
 taines, which begin vpon the confines of Nauarre, and runs almost throughout all Spain
 vnto the sea: The chiefe towne of new Castille is Toledo, and of the old Bourgos. To-
 ledo is a great citie seated vpon a high place, but it seemes not so great by reason of the inequa-
 lity of the situation: it is compassed in of all sides with mountaines; but towards Vega
 her streets are throw, and the houses thicke, and fairer within than they seeme outwards. B
 There are twentie and three quarters, and seuentene marker places. The clergie of
 this citie is much honoured, and the richest in Christendome. The Archbishop hath
 temporal iurisdiction ouer seuentene walled townes, besides other places; and it is
 thought that this yearly reuenues amount to two hundred thousand crownes. It is en-
 circled by the river of Tagus, whose water is drawne vp into the citie, by
 the admirable invention of *Iacomo Crenesse*. Neere vnto Toledo they discouer a great
 place, which is very pleasant in such places, whereas they bring the water out of Tagus.
 Vpon the North side of Toledo, stands Madrid, in a reasonable good countie, the which
 (by the residence of former kings, and especially of *Philip* the second, being invited there-
 unto by the whole commonwealth of the ayre, and commoditie of woods for hunting) is now
 become one of the best peopled townes of Spaine. On this side the river of Guadiana, C
 this Royall land vpon the river stands Calatrava, from whence certain knights of Spain
 take their names; and betwix Tagus and Guadiana are situated the townes of Cuena,
 (whence they buy good wolles) and Ocagna, famous for the gloues which are made there.
 Vpon the river you may see Alcantara, from whence another order of knights hath ta-
 ken their name: and about Madrid stands Alcala de Henares, a towne that is famous for
 the stude of chemicke, instituted by the Archbishop and Cardinal *Ximenes*. But pass-
 ing into Castille the old way may be Burgos, the chiefe citie, as I have formerly said,
 this towne is chemicke and well built, but the streets are narrow, and it is compassed in
 round about with mountaines, which make the daies shorter than the latitude of the
 place doth beare for that they stoppe backe the sunne beames in the morning, and they
 shake them away in the evening before such time as the sunne should set, which makes
 the aine exceeding cold. Among other rare things, there is to be seene the Metropolitan
 church made with great care, for that as one instant they may sing masse in fise feuerall
 chapells, and not disturbe one another. There is a convent of a hundred and fiftie reli-
 gious women, which they call Huelgues, and they be all of noble houses. This citie con-
 tained the possession and primacie with that of Toledo; which contention not being
 able to be decided in an arbitrie of the estates of Spaine, king *Ferdinand* and beought
 himselfe to haue to giue them both content, so as he caused the citie of Burgos to speake
 first, saying that he would speake for Toledo. Then may you see vpon the river, Townes
 and Salamanca; where there is a very famous Vniuersitie: and beyond it towards
 the North, stands Medina del Campo, a rich towne and of great traffike, and neere vnto
 Zamora, and Valladolid, one of the most pleasant townes that can be seene,
 which stand vpon the river of Pisuergue, well built, with faire and large streets, and
 many palaces: there are many trades there, but among others there are many good
 gunsmiths. This towne is much increased and beautified by the abed of kings. Vpon
 the North of Salamanca, is to be seene Avila, Segouia, Sigüenza, with many other townes
 and castles, which were tedious to number. But I will not forget Soria, called by the an-
 cient *Arborea*: for that thence came many towne to the North, which hath more annoied
 and spoiled the Romane armies for a long time, and with so few men. Betwixt the
 rivers of Pisuergue and Ezla, stands Medina del Rio Seco, a towne of chiefe trade, and neere
 vnto that Palencia, and passing out of the confines of Castille, we may see under the moun-
 taines of the Asturias the citie of Leon, the head of a kingdome, the which was so cal-
 led in the time that the Moores conquered Spaine: Thence the kings of Spaine made
 their first residence, after this rauage and innoation of the Moores; and from thence
 they

A they forced them in the end (after a continual war of 800 yeeres) to returne into Affricke
 in which enterprize, the kings and nobilitie of Spaine employed themselves with exceed-
 ing great valor & resolution. There is vnder it the citie of Toro with diuers other places.
 Galicia is contained betwixt the river of Auia & the Ocean. The roughnesse of the sit-
 uation and the scantinesse of water is the cause that it is not much inhabited. The great-
 est and most famous places are vpon the sea, whereas those people for the most part get
 their liuing, by fishing and traffike. This countie is held to be rich in copper, lead, and
 vermilion or minium, the color wherof giues the name vnto a river that runs by it. Some
 write also, that there are many mynes of gold in diuers places: and *Plinius* reports, that
 B Galitia, Lusitania, and Asturia, did yeeld 20000 pound weight of gold yearly vnto the
 people of Rome, which is about two millions of crownes. It may be that at this day (for
 that they do not attend it) it is not knowne if there be any mines of importance. Their
 greatest wealth is the wine of Orens (which is much commended) and their hunting and
 fishing. Compostella is in this countie of great reputation, whereas the body of *S. James*
 the Apostle and Protector of Spaine is reuerenced with great deuotion. *Alphonso* the
 ninth (having miraculously vanquished the Miralumin of Morocco in a cruel battaile)
 instituted the order of the knights of *S. James*, the which is the most honored and no-
 blest in Spaine. This province hath a most excellent port at the Groine, whereas the Em-
 peror *Charles* the first ordained, that they should make their traffike for spices, but it took
 C no effect. They haue better iron than in any other province, and the water is so strong
 that it fortifies the metall. They are not accustomed to allow any *Arabs* to be good, but
 those which haue received their temper in the water of the rivers of Minio or Biblis, or
 in an other river called Caliz, from whence they borrow their name that liue neere vnto
 it being called Calibes. You may see also in this countie Bayona, Ponteuedre and Riba-
 dea, sea townes. Vpon the West is Cape Finis Terre.
 The Asturias is a countie full of mountaines, and is diuided into those of Ouiedo and
 Santillana. They extend from the river of Ribadeo to Saint Ander. The chiefe towne is
 Ouiedo whether some few Gothes retired themselves at the inundation of the Moores.
 From thence the Idalgos of Spaine take their beginning. The towne of Ciudad real
 D is in the Asturias of Ouiedo: and this countie hath Galitia vpon the West, and
 the countie of Leon vpon the South. The Asturias of Santillana ioyne vpon the East, in
 which stands Saint Ander, and in this countie is the towne of Santillana. Vpon the
 South this countie extends towards Victoria, and the river of Ebro, betwixt the
 which and the Pyrence mountaines there is a great distance: but as for the mountaines
 of Oca they run as far as Burgos, Birbiecia: Nagera with diuers other townes are seated
 vpon the high way which passeth from France to Burgos. This province aduanceth it
 selfe far towards the North.
 Biscay, Guipulcoa and Alaua are Prouinces of one nature and qualitie, rich in iron and
 wood, full of people who are very valiant: they are freed from all taxes, and they
 E maintaine their freedoms with so great libertie, as if the king (whom they only call
 Lord of Biscay) will come into the countie, hee must of necessitie goe without a shoe.
 There grows little wine, but in steed thereof they plant apple trees and make cyder. The
 countie abounds in woods from whence they draw great store of timber for shipping,
 and they that are borne in the countie proue excellent at sea, as well for fouldiers as mar-
 iners. Biscay lies betwixt Nauarre, Guipulcoa, the Ocean and the Asturias: her chiefe
 places are S. Ander, which hath a port able to receiue any fleet; some say this towne is
 in the Asturias. There is also Laredo, which is a good towne with a capable port) and Portu-
 galene. The chiefe towne of Biscay is Bilbao standing in a pleasant plaine, some 2 miles
 from the sea, where there is plentie of victuals, especially of excellent bread & flesh. It is a
 F towne of great traffike, namely of wooll, which they send into the Northern Regions.
 Within the land there are but few dwellings disperfed here and there, by reason of the
 roughnesse of the countie.
 Guipulcoa diuides France from Spaine. The chiefe townes are Deuia, Oria, S. Sebastia-
 an which is the Bishops seate, it hath a good haue at the mouth of a river, Fontarabie
 which

A strong fort vpon the frontier of France, and Passage; a good port betwixt the two townes, with Renteria, and Tolofette which stands vpon a river that abounds with salmon and trout. There they also make excellent blades as at Bsjona and Bilbao. The countrie confines with that of Alous, the which is reasonable good and plentiful of corne. It is some 18 miles broad, and 2 miles long, and in it stands the citie of Victoria.

Nauarre lies betwixt the river of Ebro and the Pyrene mountains. The Metropolis is Pampelona, the rest are Stella (which is some twentie miles off) Tudela, Telle, Logrono, Calahorra and others. This realme hath two passages towards Beam. The which passages to the French king may be esteemed about a fift part of the realme, the which hath been usually vntill the kings of Nauarre, and doth of right belong vnto the French king that now reignes, as to him that descends from Katherine of Navarre, countesse of Foix and Bigorre, and princeesse of Beam. The mischief grew, for that this Prince, having married with John sonne to Alain duke of Albret, who embraced the religion of Rome, the which she the French king, and assisted him against the Venetian, who was then at warre against Pope, who the second the Pope being incensed, that realmes were at his disposition) having excommunicated the king of Navarre, he interdicted his realme, and abandoned it to Ferdinand, who having made himself master of Pampelona, and almost of all Navarre, hath transported this with a violation to his descendants, the which cannot bee of any long continuance. They that are descended from John, haue still retained the title with a small part of the realme, whose descent I haue thought good to insert in this place.

John sonne to Alain duke of Albret. — His wife Katherine of Navarre. They had issue

Henry of Albret king of Navarre, sonne of Beame, earle of Foix &c. his wife was Margaret of Valois, sister to Francis the first.	Charles who dyed young vnto Naples without children.	Some daughters.
Gene of Albret queen of Navarre, daughter to Henry, married Henry of Bourbon.		
Henry of Bourbon king of France and Navarre sonne to		

Now, that we haue run over all that concerns the crowne of Castille and Aragon, let vs turne back and take a view of Portugal. This realme (being sometimes called Lusitania, or the South Spaine) hath for limits on the North side, the rivers of Minio and Auia; vnto the towne of Ribadania which stands vpon the banks of Auia; on this side it lookes to Galizia, and from thence drawing a line towards the East, to Miranda seated vpon Duero; from thence towards the South you must take her limits going in a manner directly to the mouth of the river of Anre, & on this side it confines with Castille, Estremadura and Andalusia, and towards the South or West it hath the Atlantike or Western Ocean. This realme hath in compass about eight hundred fiftie and nine miles, or scarce vnto some eight hundred and fiftie, and it hath towards the sea 470 miles: it is not so narrow, and lies most part vpon the Ocean, it is 320 miles long and 60 broad, and is divided into two realmes, whereof the one retains the name of the whole countie, and is called Algarbe, an Arabian word which significth the Western part. The other is called by the other by a line which must bee drawne by imagination from Alcoutim to Odebre, which are two castles, whereof the one stands vpon the Western sea, and the other vpon the river of Guadiana. Algarbe lies towards the South, and Portugal towards the North. The aire is wholesome, and the flowing of the sea (which is vpon that coast) doth much refresh it. The situation is for the most part hillie, especially

A especially in Algarbe. The fruits of the earth are as good, or better than in any part of Europe. It abounds with wine, oyle and hony, but they want wheat, which is brought from France and other Northern parts, they haue mines of silver, gold, alome, and marble of all colours. They make excellent silke, especially in the countrie of Braganza; and they make good salt both for themselves and other countries. They haue great fishing, especially of Tonny, and more vpon the coast of Algarbe, than in any other place. There are many goodly rivers which passe through this realme, Guadiana, Tagus, Mondego, Duero and Minio, which for the most part haue gold mingled with their sand. Guadiana runs 7 leagues through Portugal, Tagus 18, and Duero 28, the which diuides it from Castille.

B Algarbe contains foure townes vnder one Bishop, Taulla, Lagos, Silues, and Faro, whereof Taulla and Lagos haue reasonable good ports: besides the which (hauiing past Cape S. Vincent called by the ancients *Sacrum Promontorium*) there is Villa noua and some other smaller places. Portugal contains three Archbishopsricks, Braga, Lisbonne, and Euora; and they haue vnder them, besides Algarbe, nine Bishopsricks. It hath three excellent ports, that of Serubal (twentie miles from Lisbonne towards the South, in a gulfe 20 miles long and 3 broad) that of Porto which Duero makes, and that of Lisbonne which is the greatest, made by the river Tagus, by the which they enter 15 or 20 miles within the land with great shipping. Lisbonne in the opinion of all men is the best peopled citie in Christendome except Paris; it contains fife small hills, betwixt which there is a plaine

C that runs downe vnto the river: it hath about 20000 families diuided into 25 parishes. Vpon the highest hill there is an ancient Castell, which is not strong but by reason of the situation, and this serues onely for a prison for men of qualitie. Descending vpon the citie side is S. Julians fort, a late worke, built with a desseigne to keepe the entrie of the river. This citie is in manner worth all the rest of the whole kingdome; for that it is infinitely peopled, and all merchandize and trade comes thither from the East Indies, Ethiopia, Brasil, the Madera, and other Islands, and from all the Northern parts. Here fleets are vnto wanted, here armies are furnished, and here the whole realme is supplied of her necessaries. At the mouth of the river of Tagus stands Cafais, whereas the ships attend the tide to goe vp to Lisbonne, or a wind to purto sea. The other townes are Coimbra,

D (where there is a good Vniuersitie, the founder whereof was king John the third) there is an other built at Euora by cardinall Henry who was afterwards king of Lameira, Viseo, Miranda, Porto, Portalegra, Guarda, Liera, and Eluas. And although that Braganza hath no cathedrall church, yet doth it enjoy the priuiledges of a citie, and is vnder so powerfull and rich a Duke, as it seemes an incredible thing, that besides the king, there should bee so great a prince in so small a realme; for they hold that a third part of the people are his subjects and liue vpon his lands. Besides this duke, there are also two others, three Marquises, 18 Barles, one Vicont, & one Baron. Besides the cities, some write that Portugal hath about 470 Castles or other walled places, which for the most part lie betwixt the rivers of Tagus and Minio. For that part of the realme which is betwixt Tagus and the river of Guadiana is nothing well peopled & hath few dwellings, the countrie being for the most part hillie & barren, but that part which lies betwixt Duero & Minio hath infinit numbers of people, but they are poore, & like to them of Galizia, with whom they confine, than to Portugals. This realme hath been in former times much better peopled than it is at this present, and this growes by reason of their great and long voiaiges to Bresil, Ethiopia, the Indies, Mallaca, the Moluccos, and to many other Islands, where they haue lost and doe loose daily many men, in going and returning in fighting and trading, and somany way in those remote places, as Portugal remains much vnpeopled. The number of people which haue been in this realme may easily be discerned by the enterprife of king John, who passed into Affricke with about fortie thousand men, the which was seconded by Alphonso the fift with great forces, who for this reason was called the Affrican: But since the discouerie of the Indies king Emanuel had much a do to fend an armie of twentie thousand four and two thousand fiftie hundred horse to the enterprife of Azamor. This power of the Portugals hath decreased by little and little by reason of the forced voiaiges and enterprises, so as king John the third lost Cape d'Aguiro and abando-

ned Safny, Azamor, and Arzilla : and king *Sebastian* (in the yere 1578 meaning to goe in A
 perion to the conquest of the empire of Marocco) had great difficultie to draw together
 12000 Portugals. The like happens vnto Spain, the which for her long and many voiaiges
 and enterprises, is so weakened of men, as the cities and townes remaine only full of wo-
 men; for that many thousands of souldiers going forth euery yere in the flower of their
 age, and not ten of a hundred returning backe againe, and these few that return be either
 lame or old; the countrie is not only deprived of themselves, but of their children which
 should be borne. The Portugals and Castilians haue herein obserued a reason of state,
 contrarie to that from whence grew the greatnesse and power of the Romane Empire;
 for the Romans finding that nothing was more necessarie for great & important enter-
 prises than multitudes of men, they employed all their studies not only to encrease their B
 numbers by marriages, collonies, and such other helpes, but they did receiue euen their
 enemies into the citie and made them free denizens: so as by these and such like meanes
 they did (in the end) in a manner embrace all the Empire of the world, and the number of
 Romanes grew so great, as Rome could not be ruined but by her owne forces. But the
 Portugals and Castilians in their enterprises (the which for the vastnesse of the countries
 and far distance of their conquests, would require great numbers of men) do not employ
 any but of their owne nations, which are not the best peopled of Europe, and so decrease
 dayly: and yet the Castilians haue the Millanois, Neapolitans, Sicilians, and Sardinians,
 people that are faithfull vnto the crown of Spaine, and who may be trusted for the long C
 time they haue been vnder the Spaniards government, and for the obedience and fidelitie
 they haue shoven like naturall subiects, and not conquered. But the Portugals could
 not employ any subiects of conquest, for that they haue not had any, yet they might haue
 vfed mercenaries, so as they were catholikes and of no suspected countries.

This want of men hath been the cause, why both the one and the other haue giuen
 ouer many enterprises of importance, and that they proceed slowly with them they haue
 in hand: and hence it growes that the Castilians are scarce able to defend the Ilands and
 shoares of the new world; nor the Portugals them of Brasil, Cape Verd, and others: nei-
 ther haue the one or the other been able to resist the men of war and pirats which haue
 attempted them; no nor the Negros which rebell dayly in the Island of Hispaniola, S. D
 Thomas, and in other places: yea the Portugals haue of late yeres lost the Island of Tar-
 nate by reason of the few men they had in it.

¶ *The Qualitie of the countrie.*

III. Spaine in many places is not well manured, either for that the ground is stony, or the de-
 serts vnplesant; yet if we compare it with Affricke it is much more fertile, for that it is
 not so violently hot. Spaine in many places yeelds sufficient for the life of man, as wheat,
 wine, fruits, oile, cattell, flax, iron, mettalls, hony and wax, and it hath waters to nourish E
 fish, with such like things. It is not so molested with windes as France, nor the aire is not
 infected with mists, or pestilent fogs and marshes. There is greater abundance of gold,
 siluer and iron in Spaine than in any other place. They doe not onely digge for gold in
 mines, but also some write that whenas the riuers swell with raine, their sand is mixt with
 gold, especially that of Tagus. There are in diuers places of this realme fountaines
 both hot and cold, which haue admirable vertues to cure diuers diseases. There wants
 no cattell in Spaine, where there are not onely many tame beastes, but also great store
 of wild. It is much esteemed for the horses which are bred there, the which are so
 swift, as some say they are ingendred by the wind. It hath not many hurtfull beastes
 vlesse they bee conies, which worke vnder the ground, spoiling the roots of plants, F
 and doing much other harme. The riuers of Spaine (except that of Duero) runne
 gently, and doe not spoile the countrie with their violence. Some write there bee
 a hundred and fiftie riuers great and small, whereof there bee fise of principall note,
 that is Ebro, Tagus, Guadiana (in old time called Anas) Guadalquivir or Betis, Duero
 and Minio. They haue abundance of fish which the sea yeelds them. The ayre is ge-
 nerally

A nerally good, cold towards the North and the Pyrennee mountaines, and temperate to-
 wards the Ocean and Mediterranean seas. It yeelds fruits of all kinds, and in such abun-
 dance, as it doth in a manner furnish all the Northern regions, especially with olives,
 oranges, limons, figs and such like. The flesh is of an excellent tast, especially the mutton
 and porke. It is not to be spoken, what store of good fish they haue vpon their coast, espe-
 cially of Andaluzia, Portugal and Biscay. *Strabo* writes that towards the stright of Gi-
 braltar, the tonnies grow wonderfull fat, with akorns which fall into the sea from the oaks
 which grow vpon the shoare. And the reuerend father *Lewis* of Grenado hath written,
 that in the yere 1575, the sea did cast vp (neere to Penique in Portugal) a fish that was 40
 fadome long, and 15 foot broad, and so big, as two tall men being of either side, one
 could scarce see the other; and the taile of it at the end, was fise fadome wide. In the yere
 1578, there was taken, vpon the coast of Valencia a sea calfe, 100 foot long. And some-
 times they take such huge whales vpon the coast of Biscay, as one doth yeeld 200 iarrs
 of oile. But to returne to that which the land doth produce, it aboundeth with pitch, scar-
 let, rushes, flax, hempe, quicksiluer, Castille sope, turpentine and alome. *Plinie* doth
 much esteeme the copper of Mont Moriana, which is at this day called Sierra Morena.
 There is also great store of fine wools. But to come to euery countrie in particular.

Cattellognia is generally barren, and yeelds more fruit than come, neither hath it any
 store of good plants. Neere vnto Vich, the countrie is rough and stonie, and halfe desert :
 but about Tortosa the soile is reasonably good.

In Aragon neere to the Pyrennee mountaines, they may trauell whole dayes, and find
 not any inhabitants; yet there are some valles which yeeld reasonable store of fruit and
 come, and the waters worke great effects in all places where they passe. Neere to Calla-
 tab, the aire is good, and the countrie fruitful.

Valencia stands in the most temperate and pleasing aire of all Spaine: the countrie is
 full of gardens and places of wonderfull delight, where there grows abundance of rice,
 sugar, come and fruit; and this countrie is much like in qualitie, to that which is about
 Naples. As for the riuers which water this realme of Valencia, the chiefe are Guadalauir,
 which signifieth a pure and cleere water, it passeth neere vnto the citie of Valencia, and
 D Xucar, which was in old time called Sucron. This countrie hath mines of siluer at Buri-
 ol, of gold at Lodar, of iron at Finisfrat and at Iabee, of allabaster at Piacent, and of
 alome, lime and plaister in many places: from thence also we haue the best filkes in the
 world, cotton of Murcia, scarlet, crimson, and other pretious colours, with sweet and
 pleasant perfumes. Finally, all the fences of man are wonderfully pleased with that which
 comes from thence, and grows in that happier region.

The realme of Murcia is not well peopled, neither doth it yeeld any thing of impor-
 tance; for that the mountaines are rough and stonie, and the plaines not well watered
 with riuers, and so by consequence barren, for that it raines seldom in Spaine.

As for Grenado, it is one of the most fertile soiles of Spaine, especially, whereas Genil
 E and Daire do passe; for that these two riuers do water the countrie about Grenado, par-
 tly of themselves, and partly by the helpe and industrie of the inhabitants; by which
 meanes, plants, fruits, herbes, and come grow in abundance; but aboue all it causeth great
 store of cattell, figs, and as good filkes as may be seene. The Moores which were expel-
 led in the yere 1492, said, that Paradise was directly in that part of Heauen which hangs
 ouer Grenado. Towards the North, there is a great plaine, which is so fertile, as it is not
 credible without seeing of it. Neere to the riuier of Genil there is another plaine which is
 very delightfull, and yeelds great profit, and vpon the mountaines which are neere, they
 feed great troupes of cattell. Neere to Alhama, there are hot bathes which are wonderfull
 delightfull and comfortable both for whole and sicke; and neere vnto them there passeth
 F a little riuier (which is exceeding cold) called Riofrio. The soile about Malaca is partly
 plaine and partly valley, and full of very good fruit.

There is no part of Spaine that yeelds more fruit and come than Andaluzia, nor that
 hath more troupes of cattell, especially of horse; and this countrie is such, as it may bee
 iustly termed the storehouse, fruiterie, wineceller, and stable of Spaine, yea & a birdcage,
 L ij where

ned Safny, Azamor, and Arzila : and king *Sebastian* (in the yere 1578 meaning to goe in A
 person to the conquest of the empire of Marocco) had great difficultie to draw together
 12000 Portugals. The like happens vnto Spain, the which for her long and many voiajes
 and enterprises, is so weakened of men, as the cities and townes remaine only full of wo-
 men ; for that many thousands of souldiers going forth euery yere in the flower of their
 age, and not ten of a hundred returning backe againe, and these few that return be either
 lame or old, the countrie is not only deprived of themselves, but of their children which
 should be borne. The Portugals and Castillians haue herein obserued a reason of state,
 contrarie to that from whence grew the greatnesse and power of the Romane Empire,
 for the Romans finding that nothing was more necessarie for great & important enter-
 prises than multitudes of men, they employed all their studies not only to encrease their
 numbers by marriages, collonies, and such other helpes, but they did receiue euen their
 enemies into the citie and made them free denizens : so as by these and such like means
 they did (in the end) in a manner embrace all the Empire of the world, and the number of
 Romanes grew so great, as Rome could not be ruined but by her owne forces. But the
 Portugals and Castillians in their enterprises (the which for the vastnesse of the countrey
 and far distance of their conquests, would require great numbers of men) do not employ
 any but of their owne nations, which are not the best peopled of Europe, and so decrease
 dayly : and yet the Castillians haue the Millanois, Neapolitans, Sicilians, and Sardinians,
 people that are faithfull vnto the crown of Spaine, and who may be trusted for the long
 time they haue been vnder the Spaniards government, and for the obedience and fideliti-
 C they haue shewen like naturall subiects, and not conquered. But the Portugals could
 not employ any subiects of conquest, for that they haue not had any, yet they might haue
 vied mercenaries, so as they were catholikes and of no suspected countries.

This want of men hath been the cause, why both the one and the other haue giuen
 ouer many enterprises of importance, and that they proceed slowly with them they haue
 in hand : and hence it growes that the Castillians are scarce able to defend the Islands and
 shoares of the new world, nor the Portugals them of Brasil, Cape Verd, and others, nei-
 ther haue the one or the other been able to resist the men of war and pirates which haue
 attempted them ; no nor the Negros which rebell dayly in the Island of Hispaniola, S. D
 Thomas, and in other places : yea the Portugals haue of late yeres lost the Island of Tar-
 nate by reason of the few men they had in it.

¶ *The Qualitie of the countrie.*

III. Spaine in many places is not well manured, either for that the ground is stony, or the de-
 farts vnpleasant : yet if we compare it with Affricke it is much more fertile, for that it is
 not so violently hot. Spaine in many places yeelds sufficient for the life of man, as wheat,
 wine, fruits, oile, cattell, flax, iron, metall, hony and wax, and it hath waters to nourish
 E fish, with such like things. It is not so molested with windes as France, nor the aire is not
 infected with mists, or pestilent fogs and marshes. There is greater abundance of gold,
 siluer and iron in Spaine than in any other place. They doe not onely digge for gold in
 mines, but also some write that whenas the riuers swell with raine, their sand is mixt with
 gold, especially that of Tagus. There are in diuers places of this realme fountaines
 both hot and cold, which haue admirable vertues to cure diuers diseases. There wants
 no cattell in Spaine, where there are not onely many tame beastes, but also great store
 of wild. It is much esteemed for the horses which are bred there, the which are so
 swift, as some say they are ingendred by the wind. It hath not many hurtfull beastes
 vnlesse they bee conies, which worke vnder the ground, spoiling the roots of plants,
 and doing much other harme. The riuers of Spaine (except that of Duero) runne
 gently, and doe not spoile the countrie with there violence. Some write there bee
 a hundred and fiftie riuers great and small, whereof there bee fve of principall note,
 that is Ebro, Tagus, Guadiana (in old time called Anas) Guadalquivir or Betis, Duero
 and Minio. They haue abundance of fish which the sea yeelds them. The ayre is ge-
 nerally

A nerally good, cold towards the North and the Pyrennee mountaines, and temperate to-
 wards the Ocean and Mediterranean seas. It yeelds fruits of all kinds, and in such abun-
 dance, as it doth in a manner furnish all the Northern regions, especially with olives,
 oranges, limons, figs and such like. The flesh is of an excellent tast, especially the mutton
 and porke. It is not to be spoken, what store of good fish they haue vpon their coast, espe-
 cially of Andaluzia, Portugal and Biscay. *Strabo* writes that towards the strait of Gi-
 braltar, the tonnies grow wonderfull fat, with akorns which fall into the sea from the oaks
 which grow vpon the shoare. And the reuerend father *Lewis* of Grenado hath written,
 that in the yere 1575, the sea did cast vp (neere to Penique in Portugal) a fish that was 40
 B fadome long, and 15 foot broad, and so big, as two tall men being of either side, one
 could scarce see the other ; and the taile of it at the end, was fve fadome wide. In the yere
 1578, there was taken, vpon the coast of Valencia, a fea calfe, 100 foot long. And some-
 times they take such huge whales vpon the coast of Biscay, as one doth yeeld 200 iarrres
 of oile. But to returne to that which the land doth produce, it aboundeth with pitch, scar-
 let, rushes, flax, hempe, quicksiluer, Castille sope, turpentine and alome. *Plinie* doth
 much esteeme the copper of Mont Moriana, which is at this day called Sierra Morena.
 There is also great store of fine wools. But to come to euery countrie in particular.

Cattellogina is generally barren, and yeelds more fruit than come, neither hath it any
 store of good plants. Neere vnto Vich, the countrie is rough and stonie, and halfe desert :
 but about Tortosa the soile is reasonably good.

In Aragon neere to the Pyrennee mountaines, they may trauell whole dayes, and find
 not any inhabitants ; yet there are some valles which yeeld reasonable store of fruit and
 come, and the waters worke great effects in all places where they passe. Neere to Calla-
 tab, the aire is good, and the countrie fruitful.

Valencia stands in the most temperate and pleasing aire of all Spaine : the countrie is
 full of gardens and places of wonderfull delight, where there grows abundance of rice,
 sugar, come and fruit ; and this countrie is much like in qualitie, to that which is about
 Naples. As for the riuers which water this realme of Valencia, the chiefe are Guadalau-
 ar, which signifieth a pure and cleere water, it passeth neere vnto the citie of Valencia, and
 D Xucar, which was in old time called Sucron. This countrie hath mines of siluer at Buri-
 ol, of gold at Lodar, of iron at Finisfrat and at Iabce, of allabaster at Piacent, and of
 alome, lime and plaister in many places : from thence also we haue the best filkes in the
 world, cotton of Murcia, scarlet, crimlon, and other pretious colours, with sweet and
 pleasant perfumes. Finally, all the fences of man are wonderfully pleased with that which
 comes from thence, and grows in that happie region.

The realme of Murcia is not well peopled, neither doth it yeeld any thing of impor-
 tance ; for that the mountaines are rough and stonie, and the plaines not well watered
 with riuers, and so by consequence barren, for that it raines feldome in Spaine.

As for Grenado, it is one of the most fertile foiles of Spaine, especially, wheras Genil
 E and Darre do passe ; for that these two riuers do water the countrie about Grenado, partly
 of themselves, and partly by the helpe and industrie of the inhabitants ; by which
 means, plants, fruits, herbes, and come grow in abundance ; but about all it catcheth great
 store of cattell, sugars, and as good filkes as may be seene. The Moores which were expel-
 led out Grenado. Towards the North, there is a great plaine, which is so fertile, as it is not
 credible without seeing of it. Neere to the riuier of Genil there is another plaine which is
 very delightfull, and yeelds great profit, and vpon the mountaines which are neere, they
 feed great troupes of cattell. Neere to Alhama, there are hot bathes which are wonderfull
 delightfull and comfortable both for whole and sicke ; and neere vnto them there passeth
 F a little riuier (which is exceeding cold) called Riofrio. The soile about Malaca is partly
 plaine and partly valley, and full of very good fruit.

There is no part of Spaine that yeelds more fruit and come than Andaluzia, nor that
 hath more troupes of cattell, especially of horse ; and this countrie is such, as it may bee
 iustly termed the storehouse, fruiterie, winefeller, and stable of Spaine, yea & a bridgeway
 L ij where

where there are such store of birds, especially of those which we call thrushes, or feldsires (which are most excellent) as it is almost an incredible thing, for him that hath not seene it. About Siuille, there is great store of fruit, wine, oyle and corne. Neere vnto Cordoua, the soile is very fruitfull, and there are goodly gardens to be seene with many waters, which make it very delightfull. Neere vnto Almaden, there is a good mine of quicksiluer, which is a liqued metall, but it exceeds them that are firme in waight; it fastens it selfe to gold whensoever it comes neere it, and doth seperat it from all other metall; and when there is no gold it flies to siluer, and doth purge it from the mixture of earth, copper, and lead, wherewith it is engendered: it doth not care for any other metall, but doth eat, pierce through them, and flies away, and then dissolues immediately into smoake, and from smoake returns to his substance againe. In these mines of Almaden, there are two kinds of quicksiluer, the best is that which comes out of stones being broken, and is called pure, or virgin: that which is of lesse value is found vnder the earth, but they are both poison by nature. They that digge it out, grow in a short time pale and wan, resembling rather ghosts than liuing creatures; and they do most commonly shake, and lye little. Quicksiluer hath this propertie, that it gets incensibly into the bones; so as when in the towne of Almaden, they do breake the bones of dead mens legges which haue remained any time in the ground, there comes forth a good quantitie of quicksiluer; I speake of such as haue laboured in the mines. Gilders to preferue themselves from this danger which growes by the handling of quicksiluer, are accustomed to hold a peece of gold in their moutnes when they worke, the which being drawn forth is all couered with quicksiluer. The rocks from whence they draw it are red, by reason of the vermilion which is as it were an excrement of these mines, and doth alwaies accompanie it; and therefore *Plinie* did hold that there were vaines of vermilion neere vnto Almaden, the which in those daies were much esteemed. About Marchena are bred the best and goodliest genetts of all Spaine.

Estremadura is a countrie more exposed to the sun than any one in Spaine; and therefore as in Italie they driue their cattle from Abruzzo to the plaines of Apulia, when winter comes; so in Spaine they passe from the Northern parts of Estremadura, wherint sommer the heat is excessive, which is the cause they haue no great towns. In all that tract wheras the riuer of Guadiana runs vnder ground, there are very good pastures, whercon they feed many troupes of cattle. The territorie of Guadalcanal hath been in great estimation in our times, by reason of a good vaine of Siluer which hath been found there.

New Castille is watered by the riuer of Tagus, the which hath many other riuers falling into it. It hath more plaines than Castille the old, and therefore abounds more in corne; yet it lies more to the South. Castille the old hath her greatest reuenues by cattle: the riuer of Duero passeth through it, the which doth so swell by reason of the abundance of waters which fall into it, as it becomes the greatest riuer of Spaine. True it is, that by reason of her swift course and narrow channell (restrained for the most part with high and very steepe rocks): it is not so commodious for navigation, neither doth it help so well in the production of fruits, as Ebro, Guadalquivir and Tagus. Neere vnto Madrid, they haue a very good ayre, and a great commoditie for woods fit for hunting. About Valledolid, the soile is very fertile for corne, cattell, wine and fruits of all forties.

Galicia is a rough countrie, and hath no store of waters. There are good wines neere vnto Orens as hath been said, and they haue good fishing, and great store of game for hunting. Asturia is of the same nature and qualitie that Galicia, but it is more rockie and lesse inhabited.

There growes very little wine in Biscay, and therefore in some places, especially at S. Adrian, they plant apple trees in steed of vines, of which fruit the inhabitants make cidar, F which is hard of digestion, but of a pleasing tast to him that is accustomed therewith.

As for Portugal the aire is very good, and it is refreshed by the flowing of the water, which is very great vpon all that coast being full of creeks of the sea. The situation is hilly, and it yeeldes excellent fruits, with many other rich commodities, whereof I haue formerly made particular relation in my description of that countrie.

Manners

Manners of the ancient Spaniards.

Terminus tearms this nation to be full of arrogancie and vaunting: *Vopiscus* saith, That they are full of subtiltie, actiue of bodie, restlesse, and desirous of innovations: and *Iustine* writes, that they haue spirits more like beafts than men. The Spaniards in old time, saith *Diodorus*, did weare short and blacke robes. *Isidore* calls these garments Striges. *Ptoleme* and *Diodorus* say, That they tooke delight to be near; but one of them blames them for that they were to beafty, as they waite all their bodies and rubbed their teeth with wine. *Strabo* affirmes, that the women were accustomed to follow husbandrie, and other rusticke workes. *Diodorus* telleth vs, that they did eat great store of flesh, made a drinke with honie, and drunke no wine, but what they bought, hauing none growing. *Florus* affirmes, That they vsed a drinke made with wheat. *Athenus* puts the Spaniards among those people that were accustomed to be drunke. *Iustine* makes them sparing, abstinent and verie sober; so as notwithstanding that they were verie rich (as we may see in *Athenus*) yet they dranke water, and did eat alone. And *Trogus* saith also, that vpon festiuall dayes there was no preparation for a feast. *Plinie* writes, That in his time they did vse akorns at their second seruice: and *Strabo* saith, That they made bread of ground akorns. *Plinie* affirmes, That they sedlying vpon the ground. After the second Punike war, they did learne of the Romans to wash their bodies with warme water. *Iustine*, *S. Valerius* the Great, say, That their bodies were able to indure hunger and toyle, and that they were contagious and resolute to death. *Seruius* writes, That they were much giuen to theft. They loued wars more than idleness, according vnto *Trogus*. In the wars they did much esteeme them that were best able to indure labour, were they horsemen or on foot. The horsemen being victors in batraile (as *Diodorus* saith) they left their horses, hauing two swords, and did helpe their footmen. Their swords (according to *Linie* and *Polibius*) were short, and fit to come to handie blowes, and their maner was to thrust and not to strike. *Athenus* saith, that they vsed darts; and *Diodorus*, that they did carrie head peeces of copper, and had boot-legs made of haire. *Strabo* writes, That they were accustomed to go lightly armed, and to carrie targets, darts, and slings. *Polibius* saith, That they came to fight couered with a certaine linnen cloth bordered with purple, and that they did weare verie white cassocks. The mothers did relate vnto yong men which went vnto the wars, the goodly exploits of their fathers and predecessors, as *Salust* obserues in his Historie.

They did set vp as many small pillars about the Sepulcher of a dead man, as he had slain enemies, according to the testimony of *Aristotle*. *Cesar* saith, That they did willingly swim ouer riuers. *Iustine* affirmes, That they did more esteeme their horses of seruice, and their armes, than their owne blood. *Diodorus* writes, That they were cruell to their enemies and mild and courteous to strangers. *Seruius* and *Salust* affirme, That there were mabike war, mothers slew their children, to the end they should not fall into their enemies hands, as *Strabo* doth affirme: and a sonne, by his fathers commandment, slew all his kinsfolkes, being prisoners, hauing found a sword to that end: and a woman did cut off the heads of such as were captiues with her; and we also read, that some being laid vpon a Crosse to be executed, began to sing. And their resolutions are commended by *Iustine* in the person of a slaue, who, during the time of the Punike war, hauing taken reuenge for his maister, laughed hartily in the midst of his torments, so as by cherefulness he surmounted the crueltie of his tormentors. That which notes the fidelitie of the Spaniards, is, as we read in *Suetonius*, that *Cesar* had Spaniards for his guard who followed him with swords. *Strabo* affirmes, that the Spaniards did vse to carrie poylon, which made them die without paine, to the end, that if any vnexpected accident did happen, contrarie to their liking, they might haue it readie to kill themselves. *Silius* affirmes, that they were accustomed to haue their dead bodies eaten by vultures. But *Elanus* writes that, particularly of the Barceens, and of those onely that were slaine in the

war,

war, saying, That such as died of sicknesse were burnt.

¶ *The manners of the Spaniards at this day.*

V. **T**He Spaniards are hot and drie by nature, and are of a tawnie complexion, which makes the women in Spaine to vse much painting, both white and red. They haue their limbes hard, and nothing effeminate. They exceed all the world in superstition, and serue as it were for guides to other nations in matters of ceremonies, flatterie, proud and stately titles. They are borne and bred to be silent, and to dissemble, and to conceale their mindes. They keepe their grauitie with an affected seueritie, which makes them hatefull to all other nations. The women do seldome drinke wine, and are not much scene; and the gentlewomen neuer go out of their houses, without a great companie of grooms which go before them, and chamber-maides that follow them. The Spaniards in their houses are sober, and contented with little; but when they are in another mans, they are gluttons, daintie, and desirous to make good chere. They entertaine strangers with little courtesie. When they are out of Spaine, they will esteeme honour, and commend one another, yea they will make the poorest peasant as good a gentleman as their king, if they may. They loue iustice, and do it exactly to all sorts of people. The industrie and care of the magistrate, is the cause why there are few thefts or none at all: and within the countrie there are few murders committed. There is not any man that remains unpunished, if he haue offended against the laws, or wronged another man of what qualitie soeuer he be. When as two or three Spaniards are together, of what condition or qualitie soeuer they be, especially when they are in the war, they discourse of the common wealth, and of matters of state, they studie the meanes to weaken their enemies forces, they deuise stratagems, and propound them to their commanders, when as they find them worthe of consideration.

When they are in campe, there is not any nation in the world, that doth longer, and with more patience, endure hunger, thirst, watching, and all kind of toyles. They haue more art than furie, when they come to fight. Their agilitie and lightnesse of armes makes them apt to follow the enemie, and they do as easily flee when there is cause. Although they be subtile witted, yet are they not apt to learne, and when they haue gotten any little knowledge, they thinke themselves to excell. They take great delight in the subtilty of Sophisters. In the Vniuersities, they are more pleased to speake Spanish than Latine. We see few of their workes passe the Mountaines, for that they cannot write good Latin: yet the courtesie of the French hath of late dayes giuen grace vnto their workes; so as now we haue great numbers in France, especially at Paris and Lyon. They are more melancholike than other nations, which makes them slow in all their enterprises. They loue their ease, and ground much vpon shewes, which makes them to imploy their meanes to be braue in apparrell, and other things. They brag much of any thing that doth concerne them. They do soone find their advantage, and seeke it by all possible meanes. They couer their weaknesse with great industrie. They fight better on foot than on horsebacke, notwithstanding that they haue excellent horses; and they can handle the harquebuzze better than any other kind of armes. They make shew to carrie great reuerence to the Church, and to sacred things: which makes some to thinke that this profession of pietie and religion which they all make, hath made heauen fauourable vnto them, and that for this consideration God hath giuen them the conquest of a new world. They are subiect to be in loue, yea in their old age: and when they loue, it is with such heat and passion, as a man would hold their actions incredible, if he had not seene them: and their custome is, not to spare anything for their friends or mistresses. But to come vnto particularities, nere vnto Vich in Cataloigne the inhabitants are rude, and nothing ciuile, but savage and full of ignorance: but in Arragon, the inhabitants of Saragosse especially, make profession of ciuilitie and neatnesse; and giue themselves to such things as are befitting a gentleman. The inhabitants of Valencia are not much esteemed by them of the other Prouinces, for that, being in a manner drowned in delights, wherewith

A

A the citie and countrie abounds, they are not apt, neither do they giue themselves much to armes: so as the rest of the Spaniards call them Penites, by reason of their daintinesse. There is not any towne in Europe whereas women that make loue are more esteemed, and in this place voluptuousnesse is preferred before honestie. In the countrie of Andalusia, the inhabitants are neat and ciuile, and haue good wits, they are for the most part full of discretion and wisdom. The Biskaines are excellent in sea causes, and grow to be good fouldiers and mariners.

¶ *The Riches of Spaine.*

B **S**paine hath few riuers, and it raines seldome; so as their abundance is not generally, and their trafficke would be lesse than in any other place, were it not for the commerce they haue with the Indies. For seeing that trafficke is grounded vpon the easie conduct of merchandise, and that the commoditie thereof depends vpon plaine and easie countries, and nauigable riuers; Spaine being full of mountaines, and hauing few riuers, should by consequence haue little commerce and trafficke. It is true they want no good ports vpon the sea, where the trafficke is verie great. Their wealth consists in wine, oyle, wax, honie, sugar, saffron, and fruits of all sorts, which grow therein to great abundance, as they doe in a manner furnish all the Northern regions, especially with oliues, oranges, lemons, figs, and such like. The fishing of Tonnice is of so great importance, as the Duke of Medina Sidonia makes yerely fourecore thousand duckets, and the Duke of Arcos twentie thousand. At Murcia they make great store of excellent vessell of chalke, and verie fine silke, which yeelds them much money. In the towne of Carthagea they haue great trade for wools, the which is transported to Genoa, Florence, Milan, and other places, yea and into France, whereas now they vse much Spanish wooll to make felts, and to no other end. The silke-wormes being dead in the realme of Murcia, some yeres past, by reason of some vnseasonable weather, the inhabitants haue replenish the countrie more than euer, by the meanes of them of Granada. In the countrie of Granada, besides the abundance of silke, they haue also great store of wooll, whereof they make great profit. Malaca abounds with all sorts of victuals, so as whole fleets of shipping do commonly furnish themselves there. The port of Seuille brings great commoditie to Spaine, as well in regard of the wine, oyle, and fruit which is transported from thence to America, and to all the Northern parts; as for the great and rich commodities which are imported from the New-found world, and vnladen there, and then distributed into all Europe. The Spaniards make great profit of their quicksilver, which they find nere vnto Almaden, in the Diocesse of Cordoua. Moreover, they receiue much money for their gennets, whereof they of Marchena, are the best and fayrest. These gennets are so beautifull, and so well proportioned, as it seemes nature takes delight to make them pleasing, and doth polish them as curiously as she can; they are so swift, as it seemes, when they are in their full speed, that some wind doth carrie them; and their courage is so great, as a man can scarce beleue how hardie they be in combats, nor what courage they shew when they are wounded; for there hath bene many seene dragging their bowels after them, and yet haue carried their maisters out of danger. This is the reason why they are set at a higher price than all other horses: and if nature had giuen them strength equall to their courage, they should haue all the perfections and qualities that can be desired in a horse; I speake this, for that they haue more courage than strength, and are fitter for lights skirmishes, than long batailles. Without doubt these horses iump with the nature of Spaniards, who take great delight in outward shewes, and aboue all to be handsome and stately, for that a man cannot paint a more delicate horse for shew. The greatest wealth of Galicia grows from the wine of Orens, and from the fishing of them of the countrie. Biscay sends forth her wooll into the Northern parts, and sword blades which are made at Bilbao: and so doth Guispucoa make many of them that are forged at Tolosette. Portugal sends forth silke which is made in the countrie about Bragance, the which is in a manner the best. They send forth also salt, and tonnic

VI.

tonnie which they fish there, and which yields them much money: the greatest part of this tonnie comes out of the countrie of Algarbe. Lisbonne is the abode of all the merchandise, and the place whereas all the trafficke is made for the East Indies, Ethiopia, Brasil, the Madera, and other Islands, and for all the North: there the fleets and sea-armies furnish themselves, and finally, in this place the inhabitants of the whole realme supply their necessities. But to the end we may judge better of the trafficke which is made in the ports of Spaine, and especially at Lisbonne, let vs make a particular calcule specifying euerie thing distinctly.

From Candie they bring muscaddels and malmseys, the which are afterwards sent vnto the East-Indies, where, by means of their long voyage, they proue excellent, and are sold for foure score and ten, yea a hundred crownes a pipe. From Barbarie, by the way of Ceuta and Tãnger, there comes many Cordeuantskins, and much Barbarie leather, precious stones, tapistrie, and other things, but not in so great abundance as in former times. There comes many ships from England laden with merchandise, and especially with cloth. There comes much linnen cloth from the Low-countries, and small wares to send vnto the Indies. There comes wheat from France, armes from Biscay, and many times ships from the West Indies laden with great store of large hides: in like manner we see come from the Island of Hispaniola, Cassia, and Sugar, with some little gold and siluer, and other things which are found in that countrie. From Bresil comes much sugar, the quantitie whereof increaseth yerely. There is also brought much Ambergreece, and store of cotton, the which increaseth daily, and the soyle is so fit for it, as they may gather what they desire. From Madera they receive six hundred measures of sugar yerely, and this sugar, being the best that comes into that countrie, is sold for foure duckets or more the measure, which is called an Arobe. They bring also from this Island Sanguis Draconis, or Dragons bloud, and some other things, but of small importance. In like manner from S. Thomas they haue yerely about two thousand Arabes of sugar, and two hundred Negro slaues. It is not many yeres since they brought in cottons to Lisbonne, whereof there came the first yere three score thousand pounds weight, and is increased daily. From Paranes they haue great store of rice, nuts, apes, and blew parrots. From the Island of the Prince comes sugar, rice, and Negro slaues. From the Island of Cape Verd a reasonable quantitie of sugars, cotton, hides, goatskins, rice, wax, oyle, and especially slaues. From the Islands of the Açores, great store of woad, which is dispersed into England and Sicilie, much wheat and barley, the which for the most part is sent to the Island of Madera, and the places of Africke, for the which they pay ten in the hundred to the king. Moreover, they make roch Alum there, which is held to be the best. From Mine in Guinne they bring onely gold, which yerely doth not amount to about two hundred thousand crownes; besides that which priuat men doe secretly carrie away. From the East Indies there comes yerely the quantitie of two hundred thousand kintals of pepper, which was wont, with all other spices, to belong wholly to the king, who paid for it at Malaca after three duckets the kintall, being worth ten pounds sterling; and in other Islands about five duckets, the which at Lisbonne, in the Indian house, is sold for fortie duckets the kintall. Of ginger, sinamon, masticke, cloues, and nutmegs, there comes to the value of two hundred thousand duckets, selling it for a ducket the pound. Of Borax, Camphir, Sandall, Aloes, Ebene, and other drugs, there comes yerely for fortie thousand duckets. Many priuat men bring bags of cotton of diuers sorts, to the value of three score thousand duckets; wherein they gaue foure score in the hundred. In regard of Amber and Muske, they doe vsually receive for twentie thousand duckets. As for pearles and precious stones, there comes good store, but no man can iustly say what quantitie, for that priuat men conceale much to defraud the king of his custome, which is five in the hundred. From China, Malaca, Maluie, Bengala, Pegri, Lambay, and other places in those parts, there comes great store of white silke, excellent Porcelaine, and many other delicate things, which at Lisbonne they call Brincos. There comes also

An Arobe is
as pounds
weight.

A kintall is a
hundred
weight.

A from China small pearle, with verie delicate workes, which are sold at Lisbonne for a hundred Portugal-crownes a peece, the which the Portugals weare vpon their garments. And they bring from China certain litters, tables, chaires, and stooles of a certain wood that is blacke, and shines like Eben, wrought and garnished with gold, which giues it a great grace, with many other fine deuices; whereby we may iudge that the people of China haue verie good wits, and fit for the inuention of rare deuices. From Persia they bring goodly tapistries of gold and silke, and fine wools. The ships which come from the Indies bring certaine little white Cockle shells, the which they find vpon the sea shoare, and sell at Lisbonne.

All these merchandises come to Lisbonne from all the parts of the world, and are differt throughout all Europe, with great profit to the Portugals; and the kings gaine had been much greater, for that he had all the spices at his commandement, if he had not been deceived by his owne officers. But we may iustly say, that the king of Spaine hath bene rather impouertised of late yeres, although that the merchandise be of great profit. And for this cause he hath suffered some particular men to rent them, reseruing vnto himselfe some customes, for the which he hath receiued seuen hundred thousand ducats, besides the charge in regard of the merchandise. There are at this day three Vice-roys at the Indies, one at Malaca; another at Binus or Ommuz, and the third at Mozambique, to haue a care least the spices passe by the red sea vnto Alexandria, as they were accustomed to doe, by reason of the falshood and dishonestie of officers, who suffered themselves to be corrupted.

The commodities which passe commonly from Lisbonne vnto the Indies, are wines of Candie and Spaine, silkes and woollen cloth, with many other small wares. They send into China, and to the Negros countrie, certaine great rings made of latten, which come from the Low countrie, paying for euerie one six pence, the which they sell afterwards to the Negros for a third part of a ducat. To Brasil they send wines, woollen cloth, and much apparrell readie made, for that there are no workmen in that countrie, neither are they vented to them that are borne in the countrie (for that they are accustomed to go naked, to liue in woods, and to eat mans flesh) but to the Portugals themselves, and other merchants which dwell in that countrie.

Into England they send wines, oyle, sugar, spices of all sorts, as also into the Low-countries, besides the great quantitie of salt which is made in the mines of Portugal; and some that haue good iudgement, assure that these parts from thence euerie yere (for forraine Prouinces) at the least foure hundred hulks, whereof euerie one is commonly foure hundred tonne burthen.

The ships of Italie lade spices at Lisbonne with much sugar, and in the towne of Lagos, and in Algarbe much tonnie, whereof they send a great quantitie throughout all Spaine.

As for the reuenews of the king of Spaine, it is certaine that he drawes yerely about E foure millions of gold from his estates of Italie and Sicilie; about two millions from Portugal, about three millions of gold from the Indies, one yere with another; from Majorca and Minorca fiftie thousand crownes, and from Castille a million and some foure hundred thousand crownes. But all these tributes and impositions are little, in regard of that which he drawes extraordinarily, and for the most part vsually, as the Croisado which is worth vnto him the reuenews of a kingdom, the subsidies of the Church, with the which you may entertaine yerely a hundred good galleis, and the fall of offices, which import more in Italie and Spaine than is imagined; moreover, the ordinarie and extraordinary free gifts of his subjects. For the realme of Naples giues him euerie third yere about a million and two hundred thousand crownes: and in like manner Sicilie, Sardinia, the Duchie of Millan, Castille, and his other estates at the New world make him great presents: and besides all this, the contributions are verie great. For Castille did of late grant vnto the king of Spaine a contribution of foure millions, to be paid in foure yeres. I omit the great number of Comandaries of the orders of Montezza, Calatrava, Alcantara, and S. James, with the which (if he had no other means) he may (as great maister)

A million of
gold is here
valued ten
hundred thousand
crownes.

man's) recompence and intich his seruants and officers, or whomsoever he please, as Ambassadors doe. But he consumes all this in the entertainment of his Court, in pensions for Vice-roys, and wages of Presidents and Councillors, entertainments of lieutenants, governors, captains, and embassadours, pensions of Cardinals, presents, wages for galleies (sore and horse, which keepe his forts and frontiers; as also, in the entertainment of Bishops and Priests which he maintains at the Indies, and in ships that goe and come from thence, so as someyeres his whole renewen is not sufficient to defray his charges, the which doth plainly appeare, in that the king of Spaine is made debtor of many millions to the banke of Genoa, whereof the Genoies keepe an account (yet likely neuer to be paid) and he is also in many merchants bookes in all the good ports of Europe. All his recourse hath been vnto the Indian fleet, the which is no sooner arrived, but is carried away by the creditors, and is carried by meanes of any tempest, or be surpris'd by the enemye, (as the English and Hollanders haue had a good share) then are they all in dispute. And that which hath much exhausted the king of Spaines coffers, is the war of the Low countries, where he hath waisted an infinit treasure, and reapt little profit; and hath recouer'd himselfe any thing, and fill his coffers, it will be by meanes of the truce and cessation of armes which hath been concluded there. Yet the other expences which he must necessarily vndergoe in so many severall places, will be the cause that he shall neuer haue much remaining, but shall be still forced to borrow.

on 22nd June 1601

Forces of the king of Spaine.

VII. Some hold that this Monarchie cannot long subsist by reason that his countries lye so dispersed, and that he must be at an infinit charge to send both ships and men into all those places; and also that they which are borne in those remote countries, may in the end enter into consideration of the small number of Spaniards, take courage and expell them; besides some Spanish gouernour seeing himselfe far from the king, may win the peoples hearts of the countrey, aspire to a soveraigne command; and revolt from his prince, having no great feare to be punished for his presumption and rebellion. Others answer, that no Spaniard dare attempt this revolt, for that he must be assured, that if he once fall from his obedience to his Prince, they of the countrey (who hate nothing more than Spaniards) would soone berid of him, when he should want the assistance of Spaine: so as this rebellion cannot yet happen, vntill that the Spaniards be multiplied in greater numbers. As for the rebellion of the people borne in the countrey, it is not much to be feared, for that the Spaniard holds them in continuall subiection; and keepe good guard of their actions to prevent all surprisels. And as for the far distance and seperation of the colonies, this opposition is of no great consideration; for that among other reasons, the greatest seigniories and estates are fittest to maintaine themselves against the exterior causes of their ruine, and the meaner against the interior. In a Monarchie thus divided wee see greatness and mediocritye vnited together. Wee see greatness in the whole bodie, consisting of disunited members; and mediocritye in the greatest part of the members, for that some of them (as Spaine, Perou and Mexico) are very great of themselves. Whereby this Monarchie hath all the benefits which greatness and mediocritye may procure, that is to say, a great power against a foraine enemye, and a great assurance against domesticke corruption and treacherie. Wee must still hereunto that all the members of this Monarchie may be vnited by her forces at sea. For as Augustus with an armie which he entertained at Rouenna, and another which he held at Messina, did assure all the Romane Empire: so the king of Spaine entertaining two armies, one in the Mediterranean sea, and another in the Ocean, would hold all the members of his Monarchie, and all the estates which he enioyes in Europe, and at the Indies, well vnited together, for that a good number of gallions and ships of war which he should keepe in those seas, would not only assure the coasts of Spaine and America, and the fleets which went and came, but would also keepe the ships of England and of the Netherlanders from sowing the seas at their pleasures. But as for the armie of the Mediterranean sea, it shall still vnite all his estates in that manner; as all their forces shall be together

A together, as we may obserue in the Portugals who with their sea forces maintaine the estates which they hold in Persia, Cambaia, Decan, and the rest of the Indies, and haue gloriously maintained them about 90 yeres. Some men of great judgement and experience haue opposed against the reasons which haue bin made vpon this subiect (the concurrence of the Turke) saying, That if the king of Spaine giuing over his infinit charge in fortifications, will employ the money which he shall spare to entertaine the bodie of an armie of 130 or more gallies, as he may easily doe, he will cause the Turke (who is now content with an armie of 130 gallies, or thereabouts) to keepe 200 at sea, to the end he may therein haue alwaies an aduantage over the king of Spaine: so as this king shall run into a great charge and reape no profit. But there is great subtilty herein, and in matters which consist of practise, cunning doth neuer succeed well. For it is not sufficient to say that the Turke would seeke to be stronger at sea than the king of Spaine, but we must see by what meanes he shall be able to raise so great a power; for that he hath neither more men fit for sea actions, nor greater commoditie to haue shipping than the king of Spaine. For all the coast of Africke, except Algier and Tripoli, is not able to make and maintaine two gallies. I say the like of the Euxine sea, where there is not any place of importance but Caffa and Trebisond: and we may say the like in a manner of all the coast of Asia; for that it is not ynough to haue great countries lying vpon the sea, but also it is necessarie to haue men that take delight to goe to sea, that can indure the toyles and discomforts thereof, and haue store of wood and hempe for cordage, & men that are not amazed at the blustering of winds, nor the horror of tempests, but dare hazard their liues in the midst of dangers, and defie death in the most dangerous passages. Halfe the Turke empire hath no sea men, which may equal the Cathalans, Biscaynes, Portugals, and Genoies, whom I name particularly for the seruice which the king of Spaine receiues in his sea armies, or that are able to make head against them. Finally, this king hath two aduantages over the Turke; the one is, that although he commands ouer more men, yet he cannot much trust them, when they are to fight against men of the same religion: the other is, that the king of Spaines dominions towards the sea, are better vnited than the Turks, so as he may with more ease draw an armie together. Besides it hath been alwayes D seen that the armies of the West haue bin victors ouer them of the East, and they of the North of them of the South; the Romans of the Carthaginians, and the Grecians of them of Asia. So Augustus did put to rout the armie of Egypt, with that of Italie; and in our time the Christians haue defeated the Turks, who confesse that our gallies are better than theirs, & they feare to encounter them: and for prooffe, whensoever the emperor Charles the first meant to arme, he drew together such a power, as the Turke durst not make head against him; he carried to the enterprise of Algier 500 saile, & about 600 to that of Tunes. And Andrew Doria carried such forces into Greece, as he tooke Patras & Corone without any difficultie. I will speake nothing of the sea forces which this king hath alwaies entertained in the German seas, for the recouerie of the Low countries.

E If he had vnder his subiection the countries of Holland and Zeland, he might boldly say that he did exceed all other princes in power at sea. I forbear to speake of the great concurre of shipping to Seuille, where all the fleets of Perou & Noua-Hispania arrive, and whereas they do continually employ a great number of souldier and mariners. I will also passe ouer with silence the valour of the Biscains at sea, whereas they proue both excellent mariners and souldiers; so as they goe with as great resolution against an armed enemye, as against the furious waues of the sea. And for prooffe of the king of Spaines power by sea, you may obserue the great preparation which he made in the yere 1588 for the inuading of England and the estates of the vnited prouinces. He had in this sea armie a hundred and fiftie saile of all sorts, whereof there were fixtie six great gallions, foure gallies of Naples, and foure gallies, the rest were smaller ships. This fleet was manned with eight or nine thousand sailers, twentie thousand souldiers for land seruice, besides commanders and voluntaries, they had also eight hundred gunners, and foure hundred pioners, with two thousand six hundred and fiftie pieces of ordnance. I forbear to make any particular relation of their prouisions at sea, it being not my desigge to write a Historie but a description of Countries: only I will say that some of their chiefe commanders confest, that they were victualled for six moneths, that they

M

were

VIII.

were 32000 men strong, and that the charge cost the king 30000 duckats a day. A
 Now that we have spoken of his sea forces, let vs come to those at land, which consist
 of foot and horse. As for footmen the best of all the estates belonging to the king out of
 Spaine, are the Wallons, I say of those that are out of Spain, for that the Spaniards by means of their
 is well knowne to be as good as any prince can have. For the Spaniards by means of their
 footmen, did free their countie from the subjection of the Moores, and had no sooner fi-
 nished that enterprise, but they invaded Africke, and tooke diuers places of importance,
 and afterwards the Portugals annoyed Mauritania, & conquered the coast of Guinnee, &
 afterwards the Portugals invaded Ethiopia, Malacca, & the Islands of Moluques, and the Castilians pas-
 sing the Atlantike Ocean, made themselves masters of a new world, where there are ma-
 ny realms and provinces, and many people differing in language, apparel, and manner of
 living. Their valour consists in conduct and policie, and there is not any nation that can
 better judge of the aduantage and disadvantage in war, diligence hath also a great share
 in it, for that they neuer forget any thing that may serue them to purpose. We may also
 commend them for their vnion, for that the Spaniards were neuer seen to quarrel among
 themselves being out of their countie; and finally, they are wonderful patient, and doe
 easily endure hunger, thirst, heat, cold, and all kindes of toiles and discomforts, so as
 they are able in a manner to tire all other nations: they have obtained great victories with
 their parties, & if they have bin vanquished, they have also bin often victors; yet fortune
 was aduersie vnto them in the enterprise of Algiers, and in that of England, and the armee
 of 50000 men which the emperor *Charles* the first brought into Prouence, had such ill suc-
 cesse, as those troupes which remained were forced to retire miserably. As for the Italian
 footmen of the king of Spains dominions, they are able to do their prince good seruice. In
 regard of horsemen, the Spaniard hath the best races for horses in Europe, that is, the gen-
 erals of Spain, the coursers of Naples, and the horses of Bourgonie & Flanders. It seems
 that nature would arme these men with the mines of yron in Biscay, Guipuscoa, and Mo-
 lina, with the tempers of Bilbao, Tolosse, & Calatajuba, by the means of the workemen
 of Millan, Naples & Boissedue; & that she would also furnish them with victuals by the
 store houses of Apulia, Sicilie, Sardinia, Artois, Castille, and Andaluzia, & also with the
 wines of Calabria, S. Martin Ayamont, and many other places. Moreover, the king of
 Spain, not to vnpeople his country of Spain, where his subjects are employed in so many
 places, & in such diuers enterprises, making it by his meanes to be lesse inhabited, may le-
 vy great numbers of horse & foot, as wel Italians as Germans. But the money which he
 disperseth in so many places, hinders him from making such great leuiies, & enterprises as
 equal to his ambition, which were to command the whole world.

The king of Spaine doth commonly entertaine in his estates great numbers of horse,
 for that he hath in Spain 3000 horse: in the duchie of Millan 400 men at armes and 1000
 light horse: in the realme of Naples 1100 men at armes, which is the greatest strength
 that is in Italie; and in Sicilie they should furnish him with 1500 horse. It is not a matter
 of small import, that the Feudataries are bound to serue personally at their owne charge,
 in occasions of defence, considering the great number of Feudataries, and noblemen that
 carrie titles in Spaine, whereof you shall hereafter haue a particular relation; the Arch-
 bishops, and bishops, are subiect to the like charge as noblemen. In the realme of Naples
 there are 14 Princes, 25 Dukes, 57 Marquesses, 74 Earles, and 428 Barons. And this shall
 suffice without any farther search into other countries.

As for forts there are not many in Spaine, only vpon the frontiers and vpon the coasts
 towards the Sea, vpon Languedocke side he hath Salles which was made to be opposit to
 Laucaete, which belongs to France. Perpignan which is on this side in the country of Ros-
 fillon, is a good town, & hath one of the best castles in Spaine: Barcellona is also wel for-
 tified. King *Philip* the second knowing the importance of the port of Carthagea hath
 caused it to be fortified, lest the Turks should surpris it, & lodge themselves there. There
 are many strong places in the realm of Granado, by reason of the abound which the Moores
 made there. The citadel of Pampelona is one of the strongest places of Europe, and
 Fontarabie is able to make a great defence. The citie of Lisbonne in Portugal is one of
 the best of the countie. There are three Store-houses for armes, which are able to arme
 15000 footmen with corselets, and many horsemen with cuirasses. There are other Store-
 houses

A houses with 20 pieces of ordnance, among the which there is one verie long, which car-
 ries a bullet of a hundred weight, and is made with great art. It was taken by the Portu-
 gals from the Moores in the towne of Diu at the Indies. They haue also the armour of a
 man and horse made at the Indies, couered with pretious stones, the which is valued at
 160000 crownes; there are diuers Magasins vnder the Palace royall, which they call the
 Indian house, whereas they lay vp their spices at the retorne of ships. At Belem, a league
 from the citie downe the riuer, there is a religious Monasterie of the order of S. *Jerome*
 built by the king of Portugal, whereas all the kings and princes of the royall blood are in-
 terred. Before this Monasterie there is a tower inuironed with water, hauing 30 pieces of
 B ordnance, but yet of small seruice in time of war, being commanded by a little hill which
 would soone batter it downe: but they make vse of it in time of peace, against any ship-
 ping that should come in. In the mouth of the port or hauen they built a fort, the which
 can hardly be good being so little.

As for other princes or common-weale of any consideration for their forces, which
 confine vpon the king of Spain, there is but the French king, the Turke, & the Venetians.

The French king is now in league & at peace with the king of Spain, & there can be no
 subiect fit to trouble the peace of these two kingdomes, but a pretention of certaine lands
 which the French king might demand. But admit there were a breach, and that they were
 in bad terms, I thinke that if the French should enter by Languedocke or Gascoigne,
 they would at their first entrance giue a great check vnto Spain, which is but ill peopled.
 C And it doth not auale to say that at the same instant, they would inuade France by Pi-
 cardie and Sauioy; for that in regard of Picardie (besides the places of strength that might
 stay an armie) the Archduke is bridled by the estates of the vnited provinces, with whom
 he hath nothing but a suspension of armes, and his forces are not so great, but a light army
 may make head against him, for that his best men should be bound to go and serue wher-
 as necessity doth most require. As for Spaine (by which an armie leuiued in the Duchie of
 Millan and the realm of Naples might passe, in case the Duke of Sauioy would giue them
 passage) it cannot be of so great importance, but the gouernor of Dauphine alone might
 provide them worke and stay them sodainly, whereof Monsieur *de les Digueires*, hath
 D made proofe during the late wars, in the midst of their greatest furie.

As for the Venetians (since that the estate of Millan was made subiect to the Spaniards)
 matters haue passed quietly betwixt them, & this common-weale is more careful of her
 defence, & of the fortification of her places, than of any designs to make new conquests:
 for that this State hauing her foundations laid vpon peace, it were not fit for her to alter
 it by troubling her neighbors affaires. Moreover, the Spaniards haue employed themselves
 in fauor of the Venetians, in the most dangerous wars which *Bazaret*, *Soliman* and *Selim*
 the second made against them in Cephalonia, at Preuce & Lepanto, & yet they had and
 haue yet vpon their flanks, Algier, Tunes & Africk, which are much nearer vnto Spaine,
 Sicile, Sardinia, the Islands of Baleares, and the realme of Naples, than Cypres, or the
 E Islands of the Ionike Seas. The other princes and common-weales of Italie are either his
 friends, or tied vnto him, or else they are too weak to attempt any thing against Spaine.
 As for the Swisses, which lieneere vnto the French countie, they cannot come in any
 great numbers, and besides they should find good places, against which they are not ac-
 customed to be obstinate. In regard of the Turke and others that may annoy the Spaniard,
 we haue formerly made mention of it, and will speake more in their places.

¶ The Government of Spaine.

The king of Spaine vsesh many titles with the which he comprehends the realmes
 and estates belonging to his crowne, styling himselfe as followeth: *Philip* by the
 F grace of God king of Spaine, of Castille, Leon, Arragon, Nauarre, Hierusalem, Naples,
 Sicile, Maiorca, Minorca, Sardinia, and of the Islands of the Indies, and the firme Land,
 king of the Ocean Sea, Archduke of Austria, Duke of Bourgonie, Lothier, Brabant,
 Luxembourg, Guelthers and Millan, Earle of Habsbourg, of Flanders, Artois,
 Henault, Holland, Zeland, Namur, and Zutphen, Marquess of the sacred Empire,

M ij

Lord

Title of the
king of Spaine

Lord of Friseland, Salines, Machlin, Vtrecht, Ouerysfell, and Groninge, and great commander of Asia and Africke. Whereat king *Francis* the first iested verie wittily, who hauing receiued a letter from *Charles* the fifth, with all these titles, he onely stiled himselfe Lord of Gentilly, which is a little village neere vnto Paris. And in truth it is a meere vanitie to take vpon him these titles, for that most of these realmes which he names in Spaine are no better than prouinces in France; and moreover, many of these titles are built in the aire vpon no pretensions, and others are so full of vanitie, and so void of colour, as no man of iudgement but would laugh at it. But let vs come to that we haue vnderaken.

IX. The kings of Spaine, as mightie princes, and borne amongst a nation which is much affected vnto them, are wonderfully honoured of their subiects, who carrie them the greater reuerence, the lesse they come in sight. The king therefore hath all power in Spaine, and doth dispose of all things at his pleasure, yet he hath Councillors, by the which he gouerns himselfe. The realme of Spaine falls to the distaffe, so as the daughters of the king of Spaine may succede to the crowne, and it is after this manner that the house of Austria is come to raigne in Spaine, as we will shew hereafter. The king hath the nomination of all Archbishops, Bishops, Priories, Commandaries, and orders of knighthood, that is to say of *S. James*, *Alcantara*, and *Callatrava*. He is absolute master of peace and war. He doth elect and chuse all Presidents, Councillors, Vice-roys, Lieutenants, Gouernors and Captaines. But the king cannot conferre any benefices or spirituall liuings, but to natural borne Spaniards, or to such as haue been naturalized by him. And the greatest part of Spaine hath so maintained themselves in their priuiledges, as they will not easily suffer themselves to be oppressed with excessive charges. Wherefore the Emperor *Maximilian* said, that he was king of kings, and the king of Spaine, king of men; for that he could not haue from the Germans but what they pleased, and the Spaniards refused not to giue vnto their king more than they ought by their laws and statutes.

There are many Councils in Spaine by which the king gouerns his estate, that is to say, the Priuie Council, the Council of Castille, the Council of Arragon, the Council of Italie, the Council of the Iudges, the Council of Treasure, the Council of Orders, the Council of Inquisition, the Council of war, the Council of the chamber, the Council of discharges, the Council of Portugal, and the Council of Woods. The king refers to some one of these Councils, all matters concerning the preservation, and increase of his estates, and hauing heard their opinions, he commands that to be put in execution which shalbe held best. Every town is gouerned by a gentleman which is borne there, to whom the King giues the name & authority of gouernor, appointing him Councillors chosen by their fellow citizens; & when as the gouernor hath ended the time of his gouernment, they take information of his actions, which being seene by the kings Council of State, they make report vnto him, to the end he may punish the gouernor, if they find hee hath dealt lewdly and vnjustly, and that he may be no more employed, if he hath bin indifferet and negligent; and contrariwise if it appeares that he hath done justice, and bin careful in his gouernment, he doth aduance him to some greater office. The king of Spaine hath many Councillors, to whom he refers all busineses whereof they speake vnto him, or giue him any memoriall in writing, and they are accustomed to doe both: for any man may deliuer him his mind briefly, but he doth also giue him an instruction, which the king reads when he retires to his chamber, and according to the qualitie of the businesse heretofore it to some one of his Councils, whereof the chiefe is, The Council of State; whereas they treat of all that which belongs to the gouernment of his realmes, & which concerne the authoritie and dignitie of the crowne, the king presides himselfe in person: there are none admitted to be of this Council but men of great dignitie, and the number of them is few, they haue commonly 3000 ducats a yere pension, and there are two Secretaries, either of which hath yerely 262 ducats, and two shillings.

The Council of Castille, or the kings Council, where they consult of customes and prouisions of the realme, and all suits of other courts and iurisdicions of the Crowne of Castille come thither by appeale. The President is most commonly a Noblemen, & sometimes a Prelat, or at least a Clergie man, who hath 1604 ducats, and 2 s. for his yerely wages

The king of
Spaines
Councillors.

Councillor of
State.

Council of
Castille.

A wages. There are 15 Councillors, with many other inferior officers, all which haue fees according to their places. In matters of difficultie and importance they goe and consult with the king euery Friday; and there are three of these Councillors to whom the King giues the title of Councillors of his chamber, before whom all matters of grace are dispatched, but they make report vnto the king of those that are of most importance. There is a Secretary of the chamber, and two other Secretaries which assist the said 3 councillors. This Council is commonly kept on Saturday. In the yere 1560 the king of Spaine made a decree, by the which there were foure Auditors added to the kings Council, to take knowledge of all causes which came by appeale to the said Council, from the two

B Chanceries of Vailladolid and Granado, after two sentences confirmed, & confirmation of 1500 doubloons. To explaine the which you must vnderstand, that at Vailladolid and Granado there are two Chanceries which take no knowledge of any suit vpon the first instant, but in matters which concerne pupils, orphans, widowes, and miserable persons: but by appeale they iudge of all matters belonging to the crown of Castille, after sentence giuen by the ordinarie Iudge; where if it happen that the sentence giuen by the Chancerie be conformable to the first, he that is condemned may appeale to the same Chancerie, who commits the cause anew to some other Auditor (yet of the same Chancerie) who ends the suit if it agree with the other two sentences; neither is it lawfull to appeale any more, vnlesse the matter exceed 4000 ducats; and then he may appeale to the kings person, & he that appeales is bound to configne 1500 doubloons euery one being worth 14 royals. The king was wont to commit this to one of the Councillors of his royall Council, but for that they found themselves busied with other affaires, so as they neuer had any end, and suits were immortall, they appointed the foresaid number of 4 assistants to the kings Council, who applied themselves only to the hearing of these suits, and if chance that the former sentences be confirmed by them, the 1500 doubloons are diuided as followeth; 500 go to the chamber royall, 500 are adgiued to the aduersie partie, & the other 500 which remain, belong vnto the Iudges to whom he hath done wrong, appealing from their sentences.

A Denilion is
worth 4 royals

In the fourainge Council of Arragon they treat of the gouernment of the realme of **D** Arragon, Valencia and Catallogna, and of the Islands of Maiorca, Minorca & Sardinia, and they take knowledge of matters concerning grace and justice. It hath a President or Vice-chancellor, who hath 3000 ducats wages by the yere. Five Regents or Councillors, euery one hauing 1000 ducats. Two Reporters with 300 ducats a peece. The Advocate Fiscal 1000 ducats. The Treasurer generall 300 ducats yerely. His Lieutenant 600 ducats. Three Secretaries, to either of them 500 ducats a yere, and so of the rest of the officers of this Council which are verie many in number.

Council of
Arragon.

In the Council of Italie they treat of matters concerning the gouernment of the realms of Naples, Sicile, & the duchie of Millan, and of that which belongs to grace and justice. In this Council they appoint gouernors, and Iudges in cities, and giue reward to foule **E** that serue there; but they first acquaint the king therewith. There is a president of this Council who hath 2000 ducats wages: six regents or councillors, whereof three be Spaniards and three Italians, euery one hauing 1000 ducats. The secretary of the said Council 2000 ducats by the yere. The fiscal 1000 ducats: two reporters, to either 500 ducats. The great official and five deputies, to either 1000 ducats. To three porters 120 ducats a peece. In this Council the rights of the Seale belong vnto the king.

Council of
Italie.

In the Council of the Indies, they haue a care of all matters which belong to the gouernment of the Indies. They appoint Vice-roys for Perou and Noua Hispania, and they dispose of all other offices and spirituall iuings. They appoint visitors to goe into those Prouinces to examine the actions of officers, and to heare the peoples grievances; and they displace or punish as they see cause, but with the kings priuie and consent. In this Council there is a President who is of great esteeme, he hath 2673 ducats yerely wages; eight Councillors, euery one 1336 ducats and nine rials; two Proctors Fiscal with the same wages, two Reporters, to either 267 ducats and foure rials; two Secretaries, to either of them the like wages; two deputies of Secretaries, to either 133

Council of
the Indies.

M ij ducats

Four and
thirteen Mar-
ducks make
six pence.

ducks, 9 rials, and 32 Maravedis. Two Vthers of the Council, having 166 duckats, A
to rials and a halfe a peece. To the register is given a pension of 267 duckats and 4 rials.
To him of the Seale the like pension. To the Paymaster 534 duckats, 8 rials. To the re-
ceiver of fines and charges of justice, the like wages. To the Secretarie who dispatcheth
the fecdules and provisions, the same wages.

There is a Vice-roy in new Spaine, and a Vice-roy in Perou, who haue twelue thou-
sand duckats for their entertainment. There is a Chancery for new Spaine at Mexico.
A Chancery in Guatimala. A Chancery in the cite of King. A Chancery in S. Francis
at Quinto. A Chancery in the new kingdome of Granado. A Chancery in the Islands of
Philippina. And a Chancery in the city of S. Dominico, in the Island of Hispaniola. B

Council of
Hazienda.

The Council of Hazienda, or of the Treasure, deals with the kings reuenues, they
make leases for farmes and assignations, and they keepe an account of all that is to be paid
or received in the provinces of Spaine. This Council is not unlike to our Exchequer of
England It hath a president who hath 6000 duckats a yere; he that keeps the accounts
267 duckats, and 4 rials, four Councellors, one Treasurer, a Secretarie, a Fiscal, and four
Vthers, to euerie one the same wages.

Council of
Orders.

As for the Council of Orders, you must vnderstand that in Spaine there are three
kindes of knights brought in by precedent kings. The first is the order of S. James, which
is the chiefe, the others are that of Calatrava and Alcantara. These three orders haue ma-
ny townes and Castells vnder them; and for that their iurisdiction is verie great; they C
haue appointed this Council, where there is a President, four Councellors, who are
Lawyers, two Secretaries, a Fiscal, the kings Advocate, with diuers other inferior offi-
cers. They iudge of all controuersies which happen betwixt any knights of the said or-
ders, and of all suits which fall out in any places belonging to these orders. They punish
the commanders and knights which obseue not their orders: and they dispose of many
benefices, spirituall liuings, and offices which are in the Prouinces of these orders, but all
with the kings priuities. And finally, they provide for all things that are necessarie for
these orders, wherof the king is great master; and when any dispatch is made for the or-
der of S. James, the king after his ordinarie titles, puts in his letters, *And perpetual admi-
nistrador of S. James &c.* D

The Council
of the Inqui-
sition.

The Council of the Inquisition deals with matters of faith, and calls men in questi-
on for heresie, or for any thing that hath bene said against the Church of Rome. They
appoint all the Inquisitors, Prouosts and Secretaries within the realme, who condemne
not any offender before they haue sent him vnto this Council to determine of him. This
Council was first erected, for that in the conquest of the countrie which the Moores did
sometimes hold in Spaine, it was needfull to containe those people, who had bene newly
baptized in their duties, and to haue a care lest religion should be any waies infected: yet
this Inquisition hath brought in many abuses, & committed horrible cruelties. The chief
of this Council is the Inquisitor generally which is the Archbishop of Tolledo, who for E
that he should assist in person, hath 1504 duckats, and 4 rials for his yerely entertainments
he hath six Councellors or Inquisitors to assist him, euerie one hauing halfe as much wa-
ges as himselfe, with many other inferior officers. There are diuers places of Inquisition
within the realme, as at Tolledo, Suiulle, Cordoua, Leon, Granado, Murfia, Quenca, Lo-
gona, Llerena, Galicia, Valladolid and others, and there are in the realme of Spaine a-
bout 2000 ties or familiars, as they call them, who be they that accuse and apprehend
delinquents as they suggest, euerie of which hath 80 duckats, and two rials of yerely fee.

Council of
war.

The Council of war treats for that which belongs to the war, either for defence, or for
invasion by sea or land; and in like manner for fortification, and necessarie provisions for
all the frontiers of Spaine. It provides for Generalls and all Commanders, with the ad-
uice of his Mariette, who is President of this Council: and they punish all commanders
and officers that haue not caried themselves well in their charges. All Councellors of
State may enter into this Council, except the Secretarie, for that there is a speciall Se-
cretarie appointed for this Council. The Councellors haue no wages.

Council de
Camera.

The Council which they call de Camera hath a president & 3 auditors or counsellors
with

A with some other officers. They giue recompences of offices and pardon such as are con-
demned to die, banished men are repealed, and gallie slaves set at libertie, there they dis-
patch the provisions of such gifts as the king makes: and there they also dispose of Bisho-
pricks and spirituall liuings, wherof the king hath the nomination.

Council of
discharges.

The council of discharges deales only for the payment of the old kings debts, and
the execution of their last wills, and by this meanes, dayly the debts of the Emperour
Charles the first are diminished: it hath a President, three Auditors and a Secretarie.

The council of woods treats of all matters that belong vnto his maiesties woods,
and take knowledge of all spoiles done vnto them; they provide for guardes and other
necessarie officers: it hath a President, two Auditors, a Secretarie and two Poners.

Council of
woods.

B The council of the Croifado hath charge to diuide the Croifado which is granted
by the Pope to the king of Spaine, according to the Bishopricks, and to send forth Com-
missioners for the leuying of the money.

Council of
Croifado.

There is a council of accounts where they treat of matters of Iustice concerning
the treasure, and doe end suits, touching subsidies and taxes, and appoint Collectors for
the same.

Council of
Accounts.

There is a council for Portugal, Nauarre, Galicia, Suiulle, Aragon, Valencia, and
Catalogna, in euery of the which there is a Regent, six Councellors and four Alcades
or Prouosts, who haue the hearing and determining of all ciuill and criminall causes
within the realme, without any appeale, touching: in which, they consult weekly with
C the Vice-roy or Gouernor, who resolues what they shall doe.

Council of
Portugal, Na-
uarre and o-
thers.

There be alwaies in the kings court four Iudges, who take knowledge of all matters
both ciuill and criminall which passe within five leagues round about the court, and
throughout the whole realme also by commission. They haue very great authoritie, es-
pecially in criminall causes, wherein they proceed with much rigor, neither is it lawfull
to appeale from their sentences. There are one and thirtie Alguazils or Sargeants of the
court, and many criminall Registers, who haue their seate apart and also their prison.

The king of Spaine hath bene accustomed to reward old souldiers which haue done
him good seruice during his wars, or that haue bene maimed; yea and this recompence
D goes vnto their children if they die in his seruice: the which doth animate and incourage
them that are in his seruice to doe well; and contrariwise it makes men goe faintly to
the war when there is no hope of recompence or reward.

There are in Spaine many dignities, and charges which are hereditarie, and there bee
many noblemen of marke and title, as they call them in Spaine, as dukes, marquisses and
earles; all which I haue endeouored to set downe vnder the names of their houses and fa-
milies, with an estimate of most of their reuenues.

The House of Velasco.

E The Duke of Frias, Marquis of Berlanga, Lord of the house of the seven infants of
Lara, and Constable of Castille, Iustice, Maior, and High Chamberlaine, he is head
of the Velascos. His house is in Burgos, and his estate in Castille the old; in the moun-
taines of Biscay and the countrie of Soria. Hee is esteemed to haue fcutient thousand
duckats yerely reuenue.

The Earle of Nieua of the same house: he hath his pallace at Nieua, and his estate in
the prouince of Rioja, his rent is 10000 duckats.

The Earle of Ciruela is of the same house of Velasco, and hath 14000 duckats yere-
ly.

F The house of Velasco is one of the noblest of Spaine, from whence are issued the
Constables of Castille, and many other noblemen and valiant captaines; his extraction
is from the best parts of the mountaines of Biscay, where he makes his aboad. He is effec-
med about all the nobilitie.

Men-

Mendoza, their title, house and revenues.

THe Duke of Infantazgo, Marquis of Cenete and Santillana, Earle of Saldana, and lord of the royalty of Manfanares, he is head of the *Mendoces*, his house is at Guadalajara, and his estate in Castille the old, in the realme of Toledo, and in the province of Alava: his revenues are one hundred thousand ducats.

The Duke of Francaulla Prince of Melito is of this house, hee hath his house in Francaulla, and his estate in the realmes of Toledo and Naples: hee hath in rent fortie thousand ducats.

The Marquis of Mondejar Earle of Tendilla: he hath his house at Mondejar, and his estate in the province of Alcaria, he hath in rents fortie thousand ducats.

The Marquis of Montecclaros hath his house at Guadalajara, and his estate in the province of Alcaria: he hath ten thousand ducats a yeare.

The Marquis of Canete of the house of *Mendoces*, he hath his house at Cuenca, and his estate in the dependances thereof: his yearly rents are ten thousand ducats.

The Earle of Combrade of the same familie: he hath his house at Guadalajara, and his estate in Alcaria: his rents are ten thousand ducats.

The Earle of Castro of the same house: he hath 80000 ducats rent.

The Earle of Montagudo, he keeps his house at Almanzan, and his estate in the countie of Aragon, and hath sixtene thousand ducats rent.

The Earle of Orgas a great Nobleman, and as some hold the chiefe of this familie of *Mendoces*: hee holds his house at S. Olalla, and his estate in the realme of Toledo: hee hath ten thousand ducats rent.

This familie of the *Mendoces* is very noble and of the principall of Spaine: they draw their extraction from a great personage called *Don Curio* lord of Biscay.

Henriques, with the titles of the Noblemen.

THe Duke of Medina del Rio Secco, Marquis of Modica, Earle of Melgar and Vicount of Esterlin, Admirall of Castille, is head of the *Henriques*: he hath his house at Vailladolid, and his estate in the province of Campos in Catalognia, and in Sicile: he hath in rent one hundred thousand ducats.

The Duke of Alcala de los Gazules, Marquis of Tarifa, and Earle of Ornos and Villamartin, chiefe President in Andaluzia: he hath his house in Cuiville, and his estate in Andaluzia: he hath 80000 ducats rent.

The Marquis of Villanous del Rio is of the house of the *Henriques*: hee hath his house at Seuille, and his estate in Estramadura: and hath twentie two thousand ducats in yearly rents.

The Marquis of Alcanizes is also of this house of *Henriques*, and hath twelve thousand ducats rent.

The Earle of Alua de Liza, he hath his house at Zamora, and his estate in Castille the old and Estramadura: he is a Councillor of state, and chiefe Huntsman to the king, and one of his chamber: he hath thirtie thousand ducats rent.

The Earle of Cuba, his countie is in Portugal, and his estate in the realme of Castille. The Earle of Fuentes is of this house, he makes his aboad at Salamanca, and his estate is in Castille the old: he hath in rent ten thousand ducats.

It is one of the most renowned families of Castille, whose descendants are issued from *Don Henriques* master of S. James, base brother to the king *Don Pedro* the cruell, and from an Infant of France. This *Don Henriques* slew *Don Pedro* the cruell his brother, and made himselfe king.

A

B

C

D

E

Ls

La Cerda, a Royall familie, and their titles

THe Duke of Medina Celi, Marquis of Cogollado, Earle of Port S. Maria, chiefe of the familie of the *Cerdas*: his house is at Medina Celi, and his estate in the realme of Toledo and Andaluzia: he hath 40000 ducats in yearly rent.

The Earle of Geluas is of this familie: he hath 60000 ducats in rent.

This familie of *La Cerda* takes her extraction from the two royall houses of Castille and France, as you may see in the genealogie of the king of Spaine, and in the historie of *S. Lewis* king of France.

B

Manriques de Lara, and their titles.

THe duke of Najera, Earle of Valencia and Treminio, head of the familie of *Manriques*: he hath his house at Najera, and his estate in the province of Rioja: he hath in rents fortie thousand ducats.

The Marquis of Aquilar, Earle of Castaneda hath his house at Carion, and his estate in the realme of Leon, and in the province of Campos: his rents are fortie thousand ducats.

The Earle of Paredes, of the same familie: his house is at Paredes, and his estate in the province of Campos: he hath twelve thousand ducats yearly rent.

The Earle of Osomo, his house is in Vailladolid, and his estate in old Castille: his rents are twelve thousand ducats by yeare.

Some hold that the valiant and ancient Earle *Fernand Gonfalez* of Castille was of this line, and that from him all these are descended.

Cordoua, and their titles.

THe Duke of Sesa and Terranousa, Earle of Cabra and Baiena, is head of the *Cordouas*: he hath his house at Cordoua and Granado, and his estate in the realme of Naples and Cordoua: he hath in rent seuentie thousand ducats.

This familie is issued from the lords of Andaluzia, called *Fernand Nenez* and *Aluar Perez*: from them are dicended many gallant knights, and among others a great captaine called *Gonsalo Fernandes* of Cordoua.

The Earle of Alcaudette is also of the *Cordouas*: his house is in Alcaudette and his estate in the realme of Cordoua.

Toledo, and their titles.

THe Duke of Alua and Guesca, Marquis of Coria, Earle of Saluetierra, Vicont of Saldices, and Lord of Valde Corneja, is head of the house of *Toledo*: his pallace is in Alua, and his estate in Castille the old, in Portugal, and in the realme of Granado: he hath in rents eightie thousand ducats.

The Duke of Veraguas, Admirall of the Indies: his house is in the citie of Saragossa, and his estate in the realme of Aragon.

The Marquis of Ville Franch: he hath his house at Ville Franch, and his estate in the realme of Leon and Naples: and his yearly rents are rwentie five thousand ducats.

The Earle of Nauarre, of the familie of the *Toledos*: he hath his estate in the right of his wife being of the bloud of Nauarre, and of the *Beaumonts*: hee hath his house at Pampelona, and his estate in the realme of Nauarre: and his rents are twentie thousand ducats.

The Earle of Altamira is of this house of *Toledo*: his estate is in Galicia, and hath eight thousand ducats rent.

The Marquis of Cortes: hee hath his house in Cortes, and his estate in the realme of Nauarre.

The

The Earle of Oripeais of the house of *Toledo* and *Pachecos*: his house is at Tallauera, A and his estate in the realme of Toledo, and he hath in rent fiftene thousand duckats. They of this familie (as some thinke) are descended from a knight called *Don Stephen Illan* brother to an Emperour of Greece, who came into Castille to succour the king against the Moores, and staid there.

Saniga or Estuniga, and their titles.

The Duke of Bejar, Marquis of Gibrleon, Earle of Benalcazar is the chiefe of the *Sanigas*, and of the familie of *Soto Maior*: he hath his house at Siuille and at Bejar, B and his estate in the realme of Siuille and Castille the old, he hath eightie thousand duckats rent.

The Marquis of Ayamont of the familie of *Saniga*, and *Soto Maior*: his residence is at Siuille, and hath twentie five thousand duckats.

The Marquis of Ville Manrique: he hath fiftene thousand duckats of rent.

The Marquis of Aulafuentes, of the house of the *Sanigas*: hee holds his estate and house in Castille.

The Earle of Miranda, Marquis of Baneza, he is of this familie and head of the *Auilanadas*: his house is at Peneranda, and his estate in Castille the old, he hath thirtie five thousand duckats rent.

This familie is issued from a daughter of Nauarre. In Castille the Duke of Bajar is of great command.

Borias, and their titles.

The Duke of Gandia, Marquis of Loyba chiefe of the house of *Borias*: his house and estate are in the realme of Valencia, and hath twentie thousand duckats rent.

The Marquis of Tabara, Lord of Montefa of this house of *Borias*: his estate is in Castille the old, and his house in Valencia, and hath fiftene thousand duckats rent.

This familie comes out of Valencia, from whence are descended noble men of great account.

Guzmans, and their titles.

The Duke of Medina Sidonia, Marquis of S. Lucar of Barraneda, Earle of Niebla, chiefe of the *Guzmans*: he hath his house in Siuille and S. Lucars, and his estate in that countrie: his reuenues are one hundred thirtie and five thousand duckats yearly rent.

The Marquis of Ardeles, Earle of Tobar, of the familie of the *Guzmans*: he hath his house at Malaga, and his estate in Andaluzia, and hath fiftene thousand duckats rent.

The Marquis of Algaue de *Guzmans*: hee hath his house at Siuille, and his estate in Andaluzia: and hath fiftene thousand duckats rent.

This familie is very noble and ancient in Castille, for that it is issued from a famous king of the Gothes called *Gundamira* from whence are descended many generous knights.

The Earle of Olinares is also of this house.

Cardenas, and their titles.

The Duke of Maqueda, Marquis of Elch. is head of the *Cardenas*: he hath his house in Toledo, and his estate in the same realme: his reuenues yearly are fiftie thousand duckats.

The Marquis of Baretra hath his house at Llerena and his estate in Estremadura: hee hath fiftene thousand duckats rent.

The Earle of Puebla, hath his house in Llerena, and his estate in Estremadura.

This familie is of great esteeme in Catalognia, and they say it comes from the noble house of Anjou in France.

Figueras

Figueras, and their titles.

The Duke of Feria, Marquis of Cafra, is chiefe of the familie of the *Figueras*: hee hath his house at Cafra, and his estate in Estremadura, and hath fortie thousand duckats rent.

The Marquis of Pliego, lord of the house of Aguilar, of the familie of *Figueras*: hee hath his house at Cordoua, and his estate in the countrie of Cordoua: hee hath fiftie thousand duckats rent. This familie liues in the countrie of Galicia, and is the chiefe of that Prouince.

Cuenas, and their titles.

The Duke of Albuquerque, Marquis of Biedma and Cuellar, Earle of Ledesma, is chiefe of the *Cuenas*: he hath his house at Cuellar, and his estate in Estremadura and Castille: his reuenues are fortie six thousand duckats.

The Marquis of Ladrada is of this house he hath his estate in the realme of Toledo, and his house at Ladrada: hee hath eight thousand duckats rent. This familie is very noble and is descended from Arragon, and yet some will say that it comes from *Aguilar de Campos*.

Pachecos, and their titles.

The Duke of Escalona, Marquis of Moya, Earle of Esteuan, is head of the *Pachecos*: hee hath his house at Toledo, and his estate in the realme of Murcia and Mancha: his reuenues are one hundred thousand duckats. They of this house are descended from Portugal.

Girones, and their titles.

The Duke of Ossuna, Marquis of Pegnafiell, Earle of Vrena, is head of the *Girones*: he hath his house at Pegnafiell, and his estate in the countries of Siuille and Castille: hee hath one hundred thousand duckats in yearly reuenues: they of this familie are descended from a famous knight, who fighting in battaile against the Moores aduentured his owne life to saue his kings; in remembrance of which generous act, and to the end it might be knowne to all men, the king cut off the skirts of his armes.

Ponce de Leon, and their titles.

The Duke of Arcos, Marquis of Tara Earle of Marchena, is chiefe of the *Ponces de Leon*: hee hath his house at Siuille, and his estate in Andaluzia: he hath fortie thousand duckats rent.

The Earle of Baileu is of this familie: he hath his house at Baileu, and his estate in the realme of Iacn: his reuenues are thirtie six thousand duckats.

The house of *Ponce de Leon* is noble and very ancient in Spaine, from whence is descended a very famous knight called *Don Ponce de Minerva*.

The royall House of Arragon.

The Duke of Villa Hermosa, Earle of Ribagorça, is chiefe of the house of *Arragon*: hee hath his house at Saragosse, and his estate in Arragon: hee hath in rent twentie thousand duckats. It is one of the noblest families in Spaine, descended from the king of Arragon.

The Duke of Sogorie and Cordoua, Marquis of Comares, Lord of Lucena, of the blood royall of *Arragon* and of *La Cerda*: he hath his house in the cite of Valencia, the duchie of Sogorie in the realme of Valencia, and that of Cordoua in Catalognia: his greatest estate is in the realme of Cordoua.

The

The Earle of Sastago and Pina is also of this familie: he hath his house at Saragosse, A and his estate in the realme of Aragon.

Silvas, and their titles.

THe Duke of Paltrana, Prince of Eboli, is head of the *Silvas*: hee keeps his house at Madrid, and his estate in Alcaria, his revenues are fixtie thousand ducats. The Marquis of Montemajor is also of this house: hee hath fixtie thousand ducats yearly rent.

The Earle of Cifuentes, some say he is the head of this familie of *Silvas*, he hath his house at Toledo, and his estate in Alcaria: he hath twentie thousand ducats rent. This familie is issued out of Portugal, from whence some great and famous captains passed into Castille in the time of king *John* the first, from whom these noblemen are descended.

Roisas and Sardonall, their titles.

THe Duke of Lerma and Cea, Marquis of Denia and Villamizar, Earle of Ampudia, is head of the house of *Roisas*: he hath his house at Denia, and his estate in Castille the old, his revenues are fortie five thousand ducats. But his credit and power is so great with king *Phillip* the third that now raiges, as he doth in a manner dispose absolutely of all things.

The Marquis of Posa is of this house, hee hath his house at Posa, and his estate in the province of Bureua, and hath twentie thousand ducats rent.

The Marquis of Altamira of the same familie, he hath fiftene thousand ducats rent. They of this familie are very noble and famous in Castille, and their ordinarie aboad is at Bureua neere to Berbesica.

Cardonas.

THe Duke of Soma, Earle of Panamos, Admirall of Naples, is of the familie of the *D Cardonas*, he hath his house at Belpuche, and his estate in the realme of Naples.

The Marquis of Astorga, Earle of Transtamara and S. Martha, lord of the house of Villalobos, is head of the *Oforios*: his house is in Astorga, and his estate in the realme of Leon: he hath fiftie thousand ducats rent.

The Earle of Olorio is of this familie and of the *Mamriques*: he hath his house at Vailladolid, and his estate is in Castille the old: hee hath fourtene thousand ducats rent. This ancient and noble familie of the *Oforios* comes out of the realme of Leon.

The Marquis of Sarria, Earle of Lemos and Andrada, of Castro and, Villalua, lord of Villosa, he is head of the familie of the *Castros*: he keeps his house at Montfort de Lemos, and in Sarria, and his estate is in the realme of Galicia: hee hath in rent fixtie thousand ducats. This house is so noble and ancient, as they hold it to be descended from a famous capitaine called *Craftimus*, who was the first at the battaile of Pharalia that did charge *Pompey*.

Elavin Caluir was also of this familie, he was one of the ancient Judges of Castille before they were governed by Earles or Kings.

The Earle of Benneuent, head of the *Pimentels*, he hath his house at Vailladolid, and his estate in the province of Campos: he hath twelue thousand ducats rent.

The Marquis of Viana of the same familie, he hath his house in Vailladolid, and his estate in Galicia. This familie of the *Pimentels* (according to the opinion of many) is issued from the realmes of Portugal, Galicia and Castille, and it is of great esteeme in Spaine.

The Marquis of Carpio, Earle of Adamus, of the familie of the *Haros*: he hath in rents fourre and twentie thousand ducats. This house is descended from *Don Curio* Lord of Biscay.

The

A The Marquis of Las Nauas, head of the familie of the *Anilas*. He hath his house in A-^{Anila.} uila, and his estate in that territorie. He hath thirtie five thousand ducats revenues. This house is descended from the noble Earle *D. Blasse*, who in the time of king *Alphonso* 8. of Castille, made himself famous in the wars against the Moores, where he was general of an armie.

The Marquis of Valle sonne to that *Fernando Cortez*, who conquered new Spaine, he hath his house in Siuille and at Mexico, and his estate in new Spaine, where he hath a hundred and fiftie thousand ducats revenues. This house comes out of Arragon, from which many famous knights in Spaine are descended.

B The Marquis of Falses is chiefe of the *Peraltas*, he hath his house at Marcilla in Na-^{Peraltas.} uarre, and his estate in the Realme of Nauarre, he hath in rents six thousand ducats. This house is very noble and ancient, as being descended from the kings of Nauarre.

The Marquis of Veles and of Mula, Adelantado of Murcia, is the head of the *Fajardos*,^{Fajardos.} he hath his house in Murcia, and hath fiftie thousand ducats rent. The Gouvernors of the citie and Realme of Murcia haue bin alwaies of this house. The beginning of this familie comes from Galicia at S. Marta of Hortiguera. There was a valiant yong man of this house, who to get honor went into the Realme of Murcia, where he wonne many victorie against the Moores in seruice of the K. of Castille. For these exploits, among others, he had the title of Vice-roy of Murcia giuen him, which hath continued in this house.

C The Marquis of Villenoua of Barca rota, chiefe of the familie of *Puerto Carreros*, he hath his house at Alia, & his estate in the Realme of Cordoua, his revenues are eighteen thousand ducats.

The Earle of Palina is of this house, his estate is in the Realme of Cordoua.

The Marquis of Alcalá, of Iohannes de Horta is descended of the *Carreros*, he hath his house in Siuille, and his estate in the same Realme, & hath sixteen thousand ducats rent.

The Earle of Medellin is of the same familie, his house is in Medellin, and his estate in Estremadura. This noble house comes out of Portugal, from whence certain knights of that name passed in Castille, and ferued king *D. Alphonso* the great with such valour, as they received many recompences.

D The Marquis of S. Cruz is head of the familie of the *Nasans*, he hath his house at Vifo,^{Nasans.} and his estate in the Realme of Toledo, he hath twentie five thousand ducats rent. It is one of the noblest families in the Realme of Nauarre.

The Marquis of Aunon, chiefe of the familie of the *Herrerias*, he hath his house at Ma-^{Herrerias.} drid, and his estate in the province of Alcaria, he hath thirtie thousand ducats revenues. Their ordinarie residence is in Castille, and it is held to be very noble and ancient.

The Earle of Buendia, Lord of Duena is of the house of *Auena*, his dwelling is at Duena, and his estate in the province of Campos. This is a very honorable house in Spaine, and comes out of Portugal.

The Earle of Barajas, of the familie of the *Capatas*, he hath his house at Madrid, and his^{Capatas.} estate in the Realme of Toledo, he hath twelue thousand ducats in rent. This familie (if we may beleue the historie) is descended from *Abarca* king of Arragon, from whence are issued many valiant knights in Castille.

The Earle of Fuentes in of the house of the *Heredias*, he hath his estate in Arragon^{Heredias.} which yields him eight thousand ducats rent. This Earle was sent intolanders, where, after the death of the Duke of Parma, he gouerned the countrie, and did many memorable exploits. Afterwards he was made gouernor of Milan where he died: He had many other rents besides them of his Earledome.

The Earle of Belchite comes from this house, he hath his estate in Valencia and Arragon. This familie of the *Heredias* is descended from the Gothes.

E The Earle of Salinas and Ribadeo is of the familie of the *Sarmientos*, he hath his house at Bourges and his estate in Biscay. His yearly revenues are twentie thousand ducats: this house is very noble and of great reputation in Spaine.

The Earle of Onante is head of the *Gueuares*, he hath his house at Onante, & his estate^{Gueuares.} in Guypulcoa; with six thousand ducats rent. This familie is issued from Arragon and Biscay.

N

- Ayala.** Biscaye. It was one of the thirteene houses which made election of a king of Nauarre. A
The Earle of Fuenfajida is head of the *Ayales*, his house is in Tolledo, and his estate
in the same Realme.
The Earle of Gomera which is in the Island of the great Canarie, he hath fouretee
thousand ducats rent.
The Earle of Saluatierra is also of the *Ayales*, he holds his estate in Castille the old.
This noble familie is issued from the auncient kings of Arragon, from which many great
personages are descended.
- Quignones.** The Earle of Luna is head of the *Quignones* and *Villasanes*, his house and estate are
in the Realme of Leon; he hath twentie thousand ducats rent. It is an auncient and no-
ble familie in the Asturias which is called de los Vigiles.
- Azuado.** The Earle of Montierre is head of the *Azuados*, he hath his house at Salamanca,
and his estate in Galicia. His yearlyre revenues are fortie six thousand ducats.
- Luna.** The Earle of Morata is head of the familie of the *Lunas*, his house is at Saragoffe, and
his estate in the Realme of Arragon. He hath seven thousand ducats revenues. This fa-
mily is of the Realme of Arragon, from whence many famous personages are dis-
cended, namely *D. Aluaro de Luna*, who in the time of king *John* the second was great Mai-
ster of Saint James, and Constable of Castille, but fortune was as auerfe vnto him in the
end, as it had bin fauorable in the beginning.
- Mexia.** The Marquis of Guardia Earle of Saint Euphemia head of the *Mexias*. He hath his
house in Salamanca and his estate in the countrie of Iacn. He hath fortie thousand duc-
cats in rent. His familie comes out of Galicia.
- Vloa.** The Marquis of La Mota is of the familie of *Vloas* in Galicia, neere vnto a riuer called
Vloa. He hath sixteeen thousand ducats in revenues. There are many good knights
come out of this house.
- Arelliano.** The Earle of Aguilar, Lord of Los Cameros is head of the *Arellianos*, he holds his
estate in the Prouince of Rioja, & hath 15000 ducats in rent. His abode is in Nauarre.
- Benauides.** The Marquis of Fiomesta, of the familie of the *Benauides* and *Hemrigues*. He hath
his house at Fiomesta, & his estate in the Prouince of Campos. He comes out of Galicia.
- Auelienas.** The Marquis of Benefa is of the house of the *Auelienas*.
The Earle of Ribadavia is of the same familie. He hath his house at Vailladolid, and
his estate in Galicia. His revenues are six thousand ducats by the yeare. Their ordinarie
abode is in Castille the old.
- Carrillo.** The Marquis of Caracena is of the familie of the *Carrillos* and *Tolledos*.
The Earle of Pliego, of the house of the *Carrillos* and *Mendoza*. He hath this house at
Guadalajara, and his estate in the mountaines of Cuenca. He hath in rents eight thou-
sand ducats, they say that the extraction of this familie comes from Bourgois, & is much
esteemed in Spaine, for that many good knights and prelates of great esteeme are dis-
cended from it, and namely an Archbishop of Tolledo.
- Sayaucedras.** The Earle of Castellar is head of the familie of the *Sayaucedras*. He hath his house at
Siuille, and his estate in the same Realme, he hath twelue thousand ducats in rent. This
line comes out of Galicia, from which are issued many worthy knights. In old time they
did liue in certaine caues which they called of Viuanco, from whence they came forth to
kill dragons and other furious beasts.
- Portugall.** The Marquis of Frichilla and of Malagon, brother to the Duke of Bargañe: he hath
his estate in Castille, and is of the house of Portugall. He liues in the citie of Eborna in
the same Realme.
The Earle of Gelues is of the house of Portugall. He hath his house in Siuille, and
his estate in the same Realme.
- Cobas.** The Marquis of Cameraga and Sauioia, and Earle of Risca: he was Adelantado of
Caforla. He is of the house of *Cobas* and *Mendoza*.
- Centuriones.** The Marquis of Stepa of the familie of the *Centurions* at Genoua. He hath his estate
and house in the countrie of Siuille.
- Padilla.** The Earle of S. Gadea is head of the familie of the *Padillas*: he is a gentleman of the
kings

- A kings chamber, & Adelantado major of Castille: he hath his house and estate in Castille
The Earle of Citona of the house of *Moncada* and *Heredia*. Moncada,
The Earle of Ayllon of the house of *Leon* and *Cordoba*. Leon.
The Earle of Chinchon is head of the house of the *Bonadillas*: he hath his house in Bonadilla.
Madrill, and his estate in the realme of Toledo. Cario,
The Earle of Terra of the familie of the *Carios*. Genilla,
The Earle of Oliua of the house of the *Genillas*. Saria,
The Earle of Puno in Rostro, is head of the *Sarras*: he hath his house at Madrid, and
his estate in the realme of Toledo.
- B The Earle of Puebla of Monteluan, is of the familie of the *Telles*, *Girones* and *Pachecos*: Telles.
he holds his estate in Eitremadura.
The Earle of Colentania, of the house of *Corella*: his estate and house are in the Corella
realme of Valencia.
The Earle of Delda of the familie of the *Colomas*: his estate and house are in the Colomas,
realme of Valencia. Taxis,
The Earle of Villermedina, he is of the familie of the *Taxis*.
There are many Marquisses and Earls whose houses and families I do not find speci-
fied in any authors, and therefore I haue only set downe their names as followeth.
- C The Marquis of Molina. The Marquis of Laguna, chiefe
The Marquis of Fuentes. Steward to the queene.
The Marquis of Villada, chiefe The Marquis of Sarrauco.
Steward to the king. The Marquis of Cuellar.
The Earle of Gajan. The Earle of Calarubios.
The Earle of Costania in Valencia. The Earle of Los Arcos.
The Earle of Coruino. The Earle of Salafar.
The Earle of Mayalde. The Earle of Villalonso.
The Earle of Mirabel. The Earle of Risco.
The Earle of Galua. The Earle of Malpica.
The Earle of Villafior. The Earle of Torrejon.
- D These be the Dukes, Marquisses and Earles of Spaine, which be in number twentie
four Dukes, fortie siue Marquisses and fixtie eight Earles. There are moreover foure Vi-
counts, he of Peralta, of Eboli, of Bltamira, and of Celba.
There are fix Priors of S. Iohn in Spaine.
The Prior of S. Iohn of Castille, who hath fiftie thousand ducats in yearely rent.
The Prior of S. Iohn of Leon hath thirtie thousand ducats.
The Prior of S. Iohn of Arragon hath foure thousand ducats rent.
The Prior of S. Iohn of Cattalognia hath twelue thousand ducats rent.
The Prior of S. Iohn of Valencia six thousand ducats rent.
The Prior of S. Iohn of Nauarre foure thousand ducats rent.
- E There are (as I haue said) three orders of knights in Spaine; that of S. *Lames*, Cala-
traua and Alcantara, whereof the king is great maister and perpetual administrator, by the
Popes bull. These masterships are sometimes rented out vnto farmers, who pay yearly to
the king 13000 ducats: besides that they are bound to giue to euery knight of the said
order (who hath no Commandarie, and is profest) twelue thousand Marauides yearly for
his bread and water as they terme it. About nine
pound sterling
- There are many and great Commandaries vnder these orders: that of S. *Lames* hath in
Castille 42 Commandaries, whose revenues are some 12000 ducats rent, some 10, some
8, some 6, and some lesse, whereof many are affected and commanded by noblemen. The
great Commandarie of Castille hath 14000 ducats revenues. The order of S. *Lames*
hath in the prouince of Leon 47 Commandaries, most of which belong vnto noble hou-
ses. The Marquis of S. Croix is great commander of Leon, which is worth 2000 ducats.
The order of Calatraua hath 36 Commandaries belonging vnto it, whereof the duke of
Alua of the house of Toledo is great commander: it is worth 10500 ducats rent.
The order of Alcantara hath 32 Commandaries depending vpon it, whereof the great

Commandarie is worth ten thousand five hundred thirtie foure duckats yearly. And besides all these Commandaries, there are belonging vnto these orders many gouernments with their dependances, iurisdiccions, and priories of good value.

There are three orders of knights in Portugal: the first is called of Christ bearing a red crosse bordered with cords of gold, & in the midst one of Silver: the second is of S. James with a red crosse like vnto that of Castille: and the third of S. Bernard, as that of Calatraua.

The king disposeth of many Commandaries of this order.

There are two Dukes in Portugal: the first is the Duke of Bragance; (whose eldest sonne hath the title of Duke of Barcellos) he is held to be very rich, and to haue 10000 crownes of Portugal in rent: the second is the Duke of Auero, who hath 50000 crowns in rent. There are three Marquisses, and eightheen Earles. The other gentlemen haue more moueable goods than lands. And for that they had been accustomed to fight disorderly with the Moores, the king of Spaine hath caused them to be trained in martiall discipline, sending men thither out of Spaine, France, Germanie and Italie to that end.

I will speake a little touching the order which he hath settled for the nauigation.

There parts most commonly every March 4 or 6 great ships which returne no more the same yere, so as all the ships remaine abroad for the space of 18 moneths: but every yere there parts a companie in March, and another in September; these ships disperse themselves to take in their loading in diuers parts of Affricke, and likewise at the Indies and in Asia: and for that in their return they haue none but mariners, and some few merchants, they send 6 gallions well armed to meet them as far as Cape Verd, to assure the fleet from English pirats, who would set vpon them when they come from the Indies, as they haue done in times past, and spoiled the Island of Madera.

This nauigation of the Indies is become very easie, and their merchandize is assured for fix or seuen in the hundred. I haue heard reported by a mariner (being threecore yeres old) that he had made twentie three voyages to the Indies, hauing passed the Cape of good Hope fortie six times; that hauing passed the equinoctiall (whereas they discover not the North) they may saile with the same compasse which they vie in our seas: for that, hauing passed toward the West of the Canaries, the star of the compasse (as the mariners say) turnes towards the North East and from the East, hauing passed the Meridian of the Island of S. Laurence, it turnes towards the North West, the cause whereof is vnkowne.

¶ Religion and matters which concerne the Church of Spaine.

XI. **A**Ll Spaine follows the opinion of the Romish Church, and the protestants religion is so hated there, as they haue brought in rigorous and cruell inquisitions least it should get any beliefe or credit among them. The primacie of Spaine did in old time belong to the church of Siuille, afterwards it was transferred to that of Toledo, vntill that great inundation of the Moores, and ruine of the Gothes kingdom: for Toledo being fallen into the Barbarians hands, the Archbishop of Braca enioyed this dignitie, as the records of the church of Braca doe witness: but after that the christians had recovered Toledo, the Archbishop of that citie redemanded that dignitie, and he of Braca contended with him for it, seeking to retain the thing which hee had gotten; so as some hold this question is not yet determined.

If any one desire to knowe the Bishops which haue been in Spaine (since the times of the Romanes and Gothes) let him reade the cronicle of *Ysaie*, and the historie *Mayerne Turquet*, where hee may content his curiositie. After that the Spaniards had recovered their countries from the hands of the Barbarians, the Bishops which were restored with the towncs which had in old time beene subiect vnto them, yea and there were some new erected. And these are the Archbishopricks and Bishopricks which are at this present.

The Archbishop of Tarragone (who hath eight thousand duckats in yearly rent: some write sixteene thousand) hath vnder him these Bishopricks,

Barcellona

A Barcellona, which is worth five thousand duckats rent. Girona, which is worth foure thousand duckats.

Vicq d Ofluna, which is worth five thousand duckats.

Lerida, which is esteemed to be at five thousand duckats.

Vergill hath in yearly reuenues seuen thousand duckats.

Dertosa, which is worth eight thousand duckats a yere.

The Archbishopricke of Saragosse is worth twentie thousand duckats a yere, it hath vnder it these Bishopricks.

Pampilona, which is worth six thousand duckats, others write twentie two thousand.

B Calahorra hath twelue thousand duckats in reuenues, and some saie twentie thousand Segouia hath 3000 duckats, yet some write that he hath foure and twentie thousand.

Twy, whose reuenues are foure thousand ducats.

The Archbishop of Toledo is held the chiefe clergie man of Spaine, and hath most authoritie with the king: he is primate of Spaine, and chauncellor of Castile; his yearly reuenues are about 200000 duckats, he hath these Bishopricks vnder him.

Moruedra, which is worth twentie thousand duckats rent.

Vbeda, which hath six thousand duckats.

Burgos, which hath thirtie thousand duckats in reuenues.

Plailance, which is worth thirteene thousand duckats.

C Cuenca, which is worth sixteene thousand duckats.

Curia, which hath eight thousand nine hundred duckats.

Cordoua, which is worth two thousand duckats: others write that hee hath fortie fix thousand duckats in yearly reuenues. This Archbishop is temporall lord of seuentee places that are walled.

The Archbishop of S. James of Compostella hath twentie thousand duckats rent, and some say twentie foure thousand: he hath vnder him the Bishops of

Auilla, which is worth eight thousand duckats a yere, and some write 20 thousand.

Palencia, which is held to be fiftene thousand duckats a yere.

Salamanca, ten thousand duckats, and some write twentie foure thousand.

D Coria, which is valued at eight thousand duckats a yere.

Astorga, which is worth foure thousand duckats a yere, and others write 18 thousand.

Cite Rodrigo is worth ten thousand duckats a yere.

Mondonedo hath twelue thousand duckats rent in reuenues.

Zamora, which is worth twelue thousand duckats a yere.

Leon, which hath eight thousand duckats in yearly reuenues.

Badajos, which is worth six thousand duckats.

The Archbishopricke of Siuille is worth one hundred and ten thousand duckats of rent, and some say but eightie thousand. It hath these Bishopricks vnder it.

Iaen, which is worth fiftene thousand duckats in rent; some write twentie thousand.

E Carthagena, which hath five thousand duckats in rent.

Cadis or Calix, which is worth eight thousand five hundred duckats a yere, others write twelue thousand.

The Archbishop of Valencia hath thirteene thousand duckats yearly rent, he hath vnder him the Bishops of Granado, who hath a thousand duckats a yere: these two haue the priuiledge to weare cloakes.

The Bishop of Orihuela is worth eight thousand duckats.

The Bishopricke of Segouia is worth ten thousand duckats.

The Bishopricke of Vluestre is worth six thousand duckats.

The Archbishop of Lisbonne in Portugal is worth sixteene thousand duckats a yere

F rent: he hath vnder his iurisdiction these Bishopricks.

Ebora, which is worth twentie thousand duckats a yere rent.

Porto whose reuenues are not set downe.

Diuidat, which is worth foure thousand duckats a yere.

Leiria, whose reuenues are worth eight thousand five hundred duckats a yere.

N iij

The

The Archbishopricke of Braca in Portugal which is worth eight thousand ducats a yeare. It hath vnder it these Bishopricks following.
 Coimbra which is worth twelue thousand ducats in rent.
 Lamego six thousand ducats in yearly reuenues.
 Viseo which is valued at eight thousand ducats.
 Almarie which is worth eight thousand ducats.
 Lugo which hath fiftene thousand ducats in yearly reuenues.
 There are some Bishopricks which are exempt from their iurisdiccions, and goe direct-
 ly to the court of Rome, the which are:

Osma, which is worth one thousand ducats a yeare.
 Malaga hath one thousand ducats a yeare.
 Guadix is worth two thousand ducats a yeare.
 Orense which is valued at three thousand ducats,
 Pasa which is worth foure thousand ducats.
 Canaria which is valued at eight thousand ducats.

But if any one desire to knowe more exactly, what reuenues all the Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots and Priors haue, let them read what *Damian de Goez* a Portugall hath written vpon that subiect.

A Genealogie of the kings of Spaine.

XII.

IN the time of *Atila*, Spaine was diuided into twelue kingdomes, afterwards it was reduced into five, that is to say, Castille, Arragon, Nauarre, Portugall and Betica or Granado. The Moores held their seat at Granado vntill our time. As for the kings of Castille, it is many hundred yeres past since they receiued the Christian faith: for when as the Gothes were chased out of Italie, after they had much ruined it (vnder *Alaric* and *Athila*) they fled into Spaine with their king who was called *Sigeric*.

The succession of the kings of the Gothes throughout all Spaine.

Sigeric, or *Segeric*.

Valia, and according vnto some *Valia*.

Theodorie, whom others call *Roderic*, he was made king in the yeare 491, others write that it was in the yeare 440.

Thorsimond, who had to his brethren *Theodorie* and *Henry*, both which (some write) reigned after him.

Alaric sonne to *Henry*, he made his first residence at Tolouse, but hee was chased from thence into Spaine by *Clouis* king of France.

Genalaric, he was base sonne to *Henry* or *Enric*, and vsurped the crowne.

Amalaric sonne to *Alaric*.

Tyndie or *Thendie* sonne (as some hold) to *Alaric*, hee was slaine in his chamber by a Iester.

Thendosil, and according vnto others *Theodegofil* or *Thendisele*: he was slaine by the Gothes, for that he sought to abuse honest women and of noble families with his vnlaw-
 full lust.

Aglaor or *Agila*, he was slaine by the faction of *Athanasgilda* who succeeded him.

Athanasgilda, he was slaine nere vnto Toledo, others write that he died of his natu-
 rall death.

Lenogild or *Leuogild*, who had *Luike* or *Luide* for a companion, he was an Arrian like vnto all his predecessors: hee had *Siulle* subiect to the realme of Castille. He did perseute his sonne *Hermogild* and slew him in the yeare five hundred seuentie and two, for that he was a good Christian.

Richared sonne to *Lenogild* was a good Christian and was conuerted by *S. Leander*.

Luike

A Luike the second succeeded his father *Richared*; he was murdered by *Videric* who vsurped the crowne.

Videric, who had murdered an innocent prince, was also miserably slaine by his owne subiects.

Gundamir reigned two yeres, and died at Tolledo.

Sisebut, he was a worthie prince, and ruled ouer all Spaine.

Richared the second, his sonne, but some put him not in the Catalogue of the Kings of Spaine, for that he liued but three moneths after his father.

Swintila, who had been a great captain to *Sisebut*, was chosen King, he was a good prince in the beginning, but in the end he grew exceeding couetous and cruell; wherefore the Gothes deposed him from the crowne.

Sisinaud was chosen in his place, before whom, some put *Rachimir*; he died after six yeres reigne.

Swintilla the second.

Tulca a vertuous prince; he died in the second yeare of his reigne.

Vinde, whom others called *Vindeisind* or *Cuideisunthe*; Some hold that he was poysoned, hauing reigned ten yeres.

Recesuin or *Recesunthe*; he reigned nineteene yeres, and died at Tolledo.

Bamba, he defeated a great number of Moores which crossed through Spaine; he was poysoned by *Erning* or *Erving*.

Heri or *Erning* vsurped the kingdome of the Gothes; he tooke *Egias* his sonne in law to be his companion; he died at Tolledo, hauing reigned seuen yeres.

Egias succeeded him, and reigned about thitene yeres, and died at Tolledo.

Vitiza who put out the eyes of *Theudebert*, sonne to *Recesuin*, to whom the realme did belong, being but yet an infant; being blind, he married and begot *Roderic*, who defeated *Vitiza* in battaile, and reuenged vpon him and his children the wrong done vnto his father.

Roderic, in whom the kings of the Gothes ended after this manner: He had an Earle called *Julian*, whom King *Roderic* had made Prouost in Mauritania Tingitania. Others write that he was sent thither in embassage, the which is more likely. In the absence of this Earle, *Roderic* forced his daughter; the father hearing of this violence done vnto her, thought speedily of a reuenge, hauing good meanes by the commoditie of the place where he then was: for he solicited the Moores to come into Spaine, who entred by the straits of Gibraltar, in the yeare 714, vnder the conduct of *Musa*, sent by the king *Moramolin*, whom some call *Vist*, and made themselves in a manner maisters of all Spaine, within the space of two yeres. They say that during this time there died of both sides about seuen hundred thousand men. The Christians which remained of this defeated armie, retired themselves into the Asturias and Gallicia, with their prince *Pelagius*, (who was vnckle by the father side to *Roderic*) and tooke from the Moores the citie of Leon, where he reigned twentie yeres. From that time the kings were no more called Gothes or Ostrogoths, but carried the title of kings of Spaine or Ouiedo.

Fasilla his sonne succeeded him; some write that he was slaine by a Beare going a hunting.

Alphonso the first, surnamed the Catholike, who liued in the time of *Childeric*, and of *Pipin*, was sonne in law to *Fasilla*, and succeeded him; some write that he married *Ormiinda* sister to *Fasilla*.

Froilla his sonne succeeded him in the yeare 671; he slew his brother *Vimaran*, and was afterward slaine himselfe by his other brother *Aurelius*.

D. Sillo brother in law to *D. Froilla* succeeded in the realme, where hauing reigned nine yeres, he died in the yeare 783.

D. Maurigat, base sonne to *Alphonso* the first, expelled his nephew *D. Alphonso* the chaste, and vsurped the crown; he made an vnworthie accord with the Moores, promising to pay them a tribute yerely of fiftie virgins of noble families, and as many of baser condition: for the which he was hated of all men, and died without children.

D. Peter

D. Veremond, the sonne of *Sillo*, and grand-child to *Alphonso*; having beene of the A Clergie, he was made a king, and then left the world and became a Monke againe, resigning his crowne to his brother *D. Alphonso*, the second or third yere of his reigne.

D. Alphonso was sole king of *Quiedo* after the death of his brother, in the yere 795; he was surnamed the Chast, for that he forbore the companie of any woman, notwithstanding that he was married; he lived in the time of *Charlemaigne*.

D. Ramire was sonne to the king *D. Veremond*, called the Deacon, and adopted by *D. Alphonso* his vnckle; he was a generous and worthe prince.

D. Ordogno sonne to *Ramire*.

D. Alphonso the third, surnamed the Great, sonne to *D. Ordogno*, a prince indowed B with all royall vertues.

D. Garcia, the first, his sonne, he deposed his father *Alphonso*, who, of a king, became his sonnes lieutenant against the Moores; and died in the yere 887. *D. Garcia* having reigned three yeres, died without children.

D. Ordogno the second, brother to *D. Garcia*, succeeded him in the realme; he was a worthe prince.

D. Fruilla the second, surnamed the Cruel, brother to *D. Ordogno*, vsurped the realme from his nephews *D. Alphonso* and *D. Ramires*, sonnes to the deceased; his life was infamous, and he died a Leper, having reigned only foureteen moneths.

D. Alphonso, the fourth, sonne to *D. Ordogno*, resigned his crowne to his brother *D. Ramire*, who was in Portugal, and then became a Monke; but afterwards repenting him, and seeking to recover his realme, he was taken by his brother, who put out his eyes.

D. Ramire was king of *Quiedo* and *Leon* in the yere 904, and died in the yere 924.

D. Ordogno, his sonne, succeeded him in the realme of *Leon*.

To *D. Ordogno* there succeeded *D. Sancha*, the first, surnamed the Fair, in the realme of *Leon*.

D. Ramire, the third of that name, his sonne, succeeded him in the yere 923; and for that he was too young, and the Moores breaking the peace which they had made with the Spaniards, they made *Veremond* or *Bermond*, sonne to *D. Ordogno* their king, in whose time *Almansor* tooke the citie of *Leon*, and spoyled the Church of *S. James* in *Gallicia*: *D. Bermond* tooke courage and gathered his forces together, with *Garcia* Earle of *Castille* (for at that time the *Castillians* had no king) and tooke many places from them.

D. Bermond or *Veremond*, sonne to king *D. Ordogno* the third, vniited the two realmes of *Leon* and *Gallicia*; he was much given to his lust and pleasure, so as he became full of the gout, and therefore was called the Goutie.

D. Alphonso the fift, sonne to *D. Bermond*, did succeed in the realme of *Leon*.

D. Veremond or *Bermond*, his sonne, the third of that name, succeeded his father *D. Alphonso*; he was slaine in the war he had against his brother in law the king of *Castille*, and died without children, by which means the realme fell to his sister, who had married *Ferdinand* the first of that name, sonne to *Sancho* Earle of *Castille*; and so the *Castillians* (who in the beginning had their countrie reduced vnder gouernors called *Earles*) saw first of all these *Earles* hereditarie, and in the end their countrie was subiect vnto kings, and the realmes of *Leon* and *Castille* vniited together; the which happened in the yere 1045, or according vnto some 1037.

D. Ferdinand being king of *Castille* and *Leon*, did afterward vsurpe the realme of *Nauarre*, having slaine *D. Garcia* the king his brother in battaile; he recovered the towne of *Cotubra* in *Portugal* from the Moores, and in a manner the whole realme; and died in the fortieth yere of his reigne, and of *Grace* 1064.

D. Sancha and *D. Alphonso* the sixt, brethren, sonnes to *D. Ferdinand*, were both kings, one of *Castille*, the other of *Leon*; but *D. Sancha* would not suffer his brother to reigne whilst he lived, and seeking to dispossesse his sister of her lands (being at the siege of *Zamora*) he was slaine with a boares speare; after which the people called *D. Alphonso* to the crowne.

D. Alphonso the sixt was king of *Castille* and *Leon* after the death of *D. Sancha* Fernan- des

A des his brother; he left but one daughter called *Vrraca*, who was married to *Alphonso* king of *Nauarre* and *Arragon*; she had a sonne named *Alphonso* the seuenth by *Ramond* Earle of *Barcelonne*, her first husband: he succeeded his grandfather, and had these children, *Sancho* king of *Castille*, *Ferdinand* king of *Leon*, *Alphonso* the eighth, *Alphonso* the ninth, and *Beatrice*. This *Alphonso* the seuenth recovered *Cordoua*.

Sancho, the third of that name, king of *Castille*, had to his sonne *Alphonso* the eighth, who had many children, *Henrie* the first, king of *Castille*, *Blanche*, mother to *S. Lewis*, *Be-rengarie*, wife to *Alphonso* king of *Leon*, *Vrraca*, wife to the king of *Portugal*, and *Eleanor* the wife to the king of *Arragon*; he died in the 1160, or as some write 1214; the five and B fiftieth yere of his reigne.

D. Henrie the first, his sonne, succeeded him in the realme of *Castille* and *Tolledo*, he being but eleuen yeres old, and died vpon a hurt which he receiued with a tyle that fell from a house, having reigned but two yeres.

D. Ferdinand the third, sonne to *D. Alphonso* the ninth, was a king of *Leon* and *Castille*; he recovered all Spaine, except the realme of *Granado*.

Alphonso the tenth, sonne to *Ferdinand* the third, was king of *Castille* and *Leon*; he was much giuen to *Astronomie*.

D. Sancha, called the Braue, sonne to *Alphonso* the tenth, succeeded him.

D. Ferdinand the fourth, sonne to *D. Sancha*, was king of *Leon* and *Castille*.

Alphonso the eleuenth, his sonne, succeeded him.

C Peter the first, sonne to *Alphonso* the eleuenth, king of *Castille* and *Leon*; he was surnamed the Cruell, and was slaine by his base brother *Henrie* Earle of *Translamara*.

Henrie the second, base sonne to *Alphonso* the eleuenth, having slaine his brother *D. Pedro* the Cruell, he made himselfe king.

John the first, sonne to *Henrie* the second; this *John*, king of *Castille*, and his wife *Eleanor* daughter to the king of *Arragon*, had *Henrie* the third, king of *Castille* and *Leon*, and *Ferdinand* king of *Arragon*; *Henrie* had two children, *John* King of *Castille*, and *Marie* Queene of *Arragon*.

John the second, king of *Castille*, who succeeded his father, had *Elizabeth* and *Henrie* D the fourth, king of *Castille*.

Ferdinand king of *Arragon* had foure children, *Alphonso* king of *Arragon* and *Sicile*, *John* who was king after his brother, *Marie* Queene of *Castille*, and *Isabe* Queene of *Portugal*. *John* who succeeded his brother *Alphonso*, had *Ferdinand*, who marrying *Elizabeth* daughter to king *John* the second, and heire of *Castille*, was king of both the realmes.

Ferdinand, the sixt of that name, sonne to *John* king of *Arragon*, had three children, *John* who married *Margaret* daughter to *Maximilian*, *Katherine* who was Queene of *England*, first, wife to prince *Arthur*, and then to king *Henrie* the eighth, his brother, and *Isabe* who married *Philip* Archduke of *Austria*.

E *John* died without children during the life of his father *Ferdinand*, who presently took *Philip* of *Austria*, his sonne in law, for his adopted sonne; he was father to

Charles the fift, Emperour and king of *Spaine*.

Philip the second, his sonne.

Philip the third, who reignes at this present.

¶ The Kings of Portugal.

THE realme of *Portugal* is of the noble house of *Lorraine*, from whence came Duke *Henrie*, who employed himselfe with so great valour against the Moores, for *Alphonso* the sixt, as this king gaue him his base daughter *Tyresia* in marriage, with the countrie of *Portugal*, which had then but the title of an Earledome: it was in the yere 1110.

Alphonso the first tooke vpon him the title of king; he recovered *Lisbonne* from the Moores, and defeated five infidell kings in battaile: in remembrance whereof, he tooke five scutcheions for his armes.

XIII.

Sancho

being entred againe, *James* of Arragon (sonne to king *Peter* who was slain before Muret, & supporting the partie of the *Albigois*) went thither with in forces, who being succoured by the said *Ferdinand*, expelled the Moores, and tooke upon him the title of Majorca and Minorca about the year 1248. This is the right which the kings of Arragon have vnto these Islands, for as the Realme of Arragon being vntied to that of Castille, by the marriage of *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*, the kings of Spaine which are descended, hold them by a iult title.

by a salt title.

About the Islands of Fromentera and Euissia are also three little Islands; that is, Vedran, Conserella, and Dragomago. And about Euissia betwixt Majorca, and the mouth of the river of Ebro, is a little desert Island, which they call Moncolibra, and in the mouth of the same river the Island of Alfaques, which that river and the Sea doe make.

Finally, neere vnto the port of Carthage there is an Island commonly called Scombraria, the which is little and hath nothing in it that merits a discourse.

[illegible]

1. The first step in the process of the investigation is the identification of the problem. This is done by the investigator who is assigned to the case. The investigator must first determine the nature of the problem and the scope of the investigation. This is done by reviewing the available information and by conducting interviews with the relevant parties. The investigator must also determine the objectives of the investigation and the methods to be used to achieve these objectives.

2. The second step in the process is the collection of data. This is done by the investigator who is assigned to the case. The investigator must first determine the sources of data and the methods to be used to collect the data. This is done by reviewing the available information and by conducting interviews with the relevant parties. The investigator must also determine the objectives of the investigation and the methods to be used to achieve these objectives.

3. The third step in the process is the analysis of the data. This is done by the investigator who is assigned to the case. The investigator must first determine the methods to be used to analyze the data and the objectives of the analysis. This is done by reviewing the available information and by conducting interviews with the relevant parties. The investigator must also determine the objectives of the investigation and the methods to be used to achieve these objectives.

4. The fourth step in the process is the presentation of the results. This is done by the investigator who is assigned to the case. The investigator must first determine the methods to be used to present the results and the objectives of the presentation. This is done by reviewing the available information and by conducting interviews with the relevant parties. The investigator must also determine the objectives of the investigation and the methods to be used to achieve these objectives.

5. The fifth step in the process is the evaluation of the results. This is done by the investigator who is assigned to the case. The investigator must first determine the methods to be used to evaluate the results and the objectives of the evaluation. This is done by reviewing the available information and by conducting interviews with the relevant parties. The investigator must also determine the objectives of the investigation and the methods to be used to achieve these objectives.



OF THE REALME
OF NAPLES.

The Contents.

I Inuers appellations of the Realme of Naples in Histories: and the description of the
higens and bounds. **I I.** Diuided first into six Provinces, and as this day into twelue,
whereof the first is Terra de Laboro. **I II.** The Islands and most remarkable ports of
this Realme. **I IIII.** Singularities which are found in this Realme, which are the
goodlie herbes of fourc forces which the king of Spaine hath there: the springs of medicinall wa-
ters, & bathes of dimers vertues: a field of sulphure inuained with burning rocks from whence
they drawe olme: the mountaine of Astrune, the Tarrentela whose poison they expell with sing-
ing and the found of Instruments. **V.** Description of the nature & manners of the Neapolitanes
both transient & moderne, & their manner of living. **V I.** Riches of this Realme, growing from their
commerce with the Venetians and from the trafficke of Almonds, Saffron, Silkes, Oyle, wine,
Horses, Corral with strangers. **V I I.** Forces of the Realme of Naples, wherein they consist, what
souldiers and ships are commonly entertained. The chiefe Forts, Townes, and Castles. **V I I I.**
D Pollisie and governments consisting in seuen Viceroyes, whereof the generall remains at Naples.
V X. Archbishops and Bishops which are in the Realme of Naples. **X.** The number of the kings
which have reigned vnto this present.

This Realme which contains in a manner a moitie of Italie, takes his name from the chiefe towne that is in it, and Historians call it after this manner: sometimes the Realme of Pouille or Apulia; sometimes Sicile on this side the Far; to distinguish it from the Realme or Island of Sicile which is beyond the Far, the which happened when the Realme was erected about the year 1125, when as *Roger* the first King was iustified. This denomination might be, for that *Roger* being then Earle of Sicile, & desiring to honor his Estate with this royall title, he would that this other part which ioyned vnto it, should be called Sicile by him that did iustifie him; for the loue of him; and for that he had violently seised thereon; whilest that *William* (who held it with the title of Duke of Pouilla or Calabria) was gon to Constantinople to marry the Emperour *Alexis* daughter: and after this manner the whole Realme was called the two Siciles. And in truth the essentiall title is the Realme of the two Siciles; although in this daye it be commonly called the Realme of Naples, by reason of the ordinarie residence of Kings in this towne, which was made the Metropolitane and head of the Realme, then chiefly when as *Peter* king of Arragon seised vpon Sicile, whereas the King had bin accustomed to remaine, the which notwithstanding, the kings of Naples did not usually possesse, but after that the Realme of Naples fell vnto *Ferdinand* of Spaine, by whom it defendes vnto king *Philip* the third.

This Realme begins at the riuier of Tranto, whose mouth tends towards the North, A and from Tarracina neere vnto the riuier of Vsefe or Ofense which falls into the Tufcan Sea, and extends vnto the straight of Sicily: it is shut in by the Adriaticke and the Tufcan Seas, like a Peninsula: It hath for bounds the two riuers of Vsefe and Tronto towards the West: On the North side, the Adriaticke Sea, on the South, the Tufcan Sea and Sicile, and on the East the Ionian Sea. They collect the measure after this manner. From Tarracina vnto Naples, they reckon fourecore miles: from Naples vnto the Cape of Gulfe Palacastro 147 miles. From thence vnto Regium in Calabria 180 miles. From Regium vnto the Cape of Spartiunto 133 miles. From thence vnto the Cape of Colones 199 miles. From Cape Colones vnto Tarentum 200 miles. From Tarentum vnto B Cape S. Maria 30 miles. From thence to the Cape of Otranto 26 miles. From this Cape vnto that of S. Ange 22 miles. And from thence vnto the riuier of Tronto 200 miles. All which summes reduced into one, make 1318 Italian miles, and this is the circuit going by water: whereunto if you adde 150 miles, which they account in bredth vnto the extremitie of the West, as it is by land, it will make in all 1468 miles in the whole circuit of the Realme of Naples. It ioynes vnto the the state of the Church for the space of 150 miles. It hath in length 450 miles, from the riuier of Tronto which is towards the North vnto the Cape of Spartiunto, sometimes called Hercules, in the furthest part of Calabria towards the South. The greatest breadth is 112 miles, from the lands of Gaete vnto the mouth of the diuine riuier.

II. *Alphens* the first king of Arragon, Naples, and Sicile, diuided it into six provinces, that is into Terra di Lauoro, or Campania the happie, the principallitie, Basilicata, Calabria, Pouillia, and Abruzzo: but afterwards he made three parts of Pouillia, diuided it into the land of Otranto, Bari and the Capitenate: *Ferdinand* king of Spaine, and *Lewis* 12 the French king diuided it into equall parts: In as Pouillia and Calabria remained to Spaine, and Terra di Lauoro, with the cite of Naples and Abruzzo vnto France. At this day they diuide it commonly into 12 parts: that is, Terra di Lauoro, Abruzzo both on this side and beyond, Pouille the plaine, Capitenate the principallitie both on this side and beyond, Basilicata, Calabria high and low, the land of Bari and Otranto. It contains 2700 townes and villages that are peopled, whereof there are 20 Archbishopsricks 127 Bishopsricks & 1400 bouroughs & villages where there are about two millions of foules.

Coasting along the sea, you finde Terra di Lauoro or Campania the happie (whereof Capoua whereas *Haniball* with his whole armie grew effeminate with their delights) was in old time the chiefe cite. Touching the which, there is an Ancient which hath written, That there were three townes capable of the maiestie and greatnes of an Empire, that is to say, Carthage, Corinth, and Capoua: The two first lying farre from Rome, were ruined by the Romaines, who consuled long, whether they should doe the like vnto Capoua: but in the end for that they would not seeme cruell by the ruine so noble a towne in Italie, they assured themselves thereof by the confiscation of their lands, and depriving them of all former government. They suffered their buildings to stand, to the end they might serue as a retreat for such as did till their land, but they rooke from them the magistrature and publike counsell, to the end the Inhabitants should haue no meanes to rebell.

This prouince of Lauoro, or Campania Felice hath a most temperate and delicate ayre, and is so fertile, as it doth not onely produce all things necessarie for the life of man in abundance, but also for delight and pleasure. In this Noble region you may see large and fertile fields, pleasant and fruitful hills, thick and delightfull woods, sweet fountains, publicke and wholesome springs of water, as well for the restoring of mans health, as for his content and delight. At this day the chiefe towne, not onely of this prouince, but of the whole realme is Naples, in which a royall cite. It hath about seuen miles in compass, and is much increased in our time, and had been more, if the king of Spaine had not forbidden them to build: whereunto he was perswaded by the Barons of the Realme, whose subjects did abandon their dwellings, to goe and enjoy the exemptions and priuiledges granted to the inhabitants of Naples: and he did it also partly to auoid the danger

A ger of reuolt. and of the mutinies of people, who can be hardly staied in a great & strong cite which hath three Castelles, whereof the principall is called Castellnoua or the new Castle, the which was built by *Charles* of Anjou. There is not any cite where there is so great a concourse of Noblemen, or where they make so great profession of riding, and whereas knights doe make a better shew of what they are, and giue themselves more to all vertuous exercises; the gentlemen repaire to fine places to spend their time in honorable exercises, which they call feasts. This cite hath a port or hauen, the which is neither very great nor very safe, but they helpe it by means of a peere: There is an Arce-nall at Naples, whereas they doe continually make many galleis and ships for war. They doe number in this cite about two hundred thousand persons, there is a goodly gulfe with an open flat road, and Islands and Capes which are very pleasing. There is Pouzoli, where there are so many wonders to be seene, as it seemes nature tooke delight to make hir selfe to be admired in this place, whether she hath drawne all that she hath beautifull and excellent. In this prouince is the lake of Agnan, Baye, Tridoli, and the lake Auernegne, with the three metropolitane cities, Naples, Capoua, and Surrenta, and two and twentie cities, amongst the which those of greatest fame are Gayetta, Sessa, Ceano, Calvi, Venafre, Caserte, Nola, and Aueria: and there are a hundred sixty six Castles or walled places, with a hundred and seuentie villages.

The principallitie hath for her bounds on the West Terra di Labore, on the land of Labore; and towards the East, the countrie of Basilicata. This Prouince is sixtene miles broad, and three and thirtie long: her chiefe townes are Nocera, Sanfeuerin, Surrente, Maffa, Vic, Riuel, Amalfi, & Salerne, Nocera is nine miles from the Sea, and foure from Sarne, and round about it there are many villages. Riuel is a towne lately built, the which yeelds nothing to the chiefe townes of the realme of Naples, in regard of the stately buildings. Amalfi is a faire towne, but it hath bene more famous in former times. Some hold that the vfe of the Compasse was found out in this towne; the which *Paguer* hath sufficiently refuted in his Recherches, shewing by some passages of old French Poets, that this inuention is more auncient. Of this towne, the coast of Amalfi (which looks towards the South takes his name, and runs about twentie miles in length: it hath high D mountaines, especially on that side which leans towards the Sea. There is so great difficulty to ascend them, as the sight onely makes men sicke. Salerne is a verie auncient towne about a mile from the sea, hauing very goodly gardens within the walls. There is an Vniuersitie, and this towne carries the tytle of a principallitie. But I must aduertise you, that the principallitie on this side runs along the Sea, from Salerne vnto Policastro, and from S. Seuterin vnto the Fenn, the riuier of Silarie crossing in a manner through the middle of it: it contains the Archbishopsricks of Salerne and Amalfi, with fifteene other townes, and two hundred and thirteene castles or walled places, amongst the which is Euoli with her wood, and Fiano with her valley being twentie miles long, and foure broad, inuironed with little hills well inhabited. The principallitie on the other side extends from Nusco vnto Confe & to Cedogne, & contains these two townes with eight others, that is to say, Anellin, Arrian, Bisache, Montemarano, Mont-Verd, S. Agathe, Saint Ange, Vic, and three and fiftie castles or walled places.

Basilicata contains Lucania, and a part of Pouillia. It hath for bounds vpon the West the riuier of Silare, which is the limit of Campania: vpon the South the Tufcan sea, vpon the East the riuier of Iac and bafe Calabria, with a part of the higher, and towards the North the land of Bari. It contains the townes of Melfe, Venofa, Potence, Cerence, Tricaric, Lauell, Montpelosa, Marfico, Rapolla, with ninetie three castles or walled places.

Bafe Calabria hath for her bounds vpon the North, high Calabria called in old time great Greece, with the riuier of Crathide, and a part of the Apennin hills: vpon the West the riuier of Lau, with Basilicata, towards the South the Tufcan Sea and the straight of Sicile, and vpon the East a part of the Adriaticke Sea. Her metropolitane towne is Cosenza, an ancient towne which contains seuen hille hills, it hath a strong castle vpon the top of a hill which commands the towne and all places round about it. The towne is in
O ij uironed

inured by the riuers of Crathide, and Busente, and is at this day reasonable rich, but it hath bin in former times more wealthie. Besides this towne, there are also those of Frede, Belmont, Saint Euphemia which hath giuen name vnto the Sea that lies neere it, Tropic, a faire towne rich and populous: Rhegium, an ancient towne seated vpon the front or farthest point of Italie: in old time it was strong and mightie, but now it is in a manner desart, since the year 1594, that the Turkes fired it. There is also Chasteauuillare, which is vpon the top of a very high mountaine: Monfaut which carries the title of a Duchie: Turan, Rugian, and the townes of Saint Marke: Marturan, an ancient towne seated in the Apennin hills: Tauernic, a good towne and well peopled: Nicaastro, which is three miles from the sea: Montleon a towne seated vpon a little hill in the Apennin, and which carries the title of an Earldome: and Terra Noua a towne verie well peopled.

High Calabria, according vnto *Plinius*, hath for her bounds towards the East, the Adriaticke sea, vpon the South, the riuers of Alice, and bafe Calabria, towards the West, the riuers of Crathide, with the Apennin and Basilicate, and vpon the North, the gulf of Tarentum, and the land of Bary. There is vpon this side two Capes which are verie famous, the one is that of Colonnes, in old time called Lacinia; the other is that of Scyllace, which is exceeding dangerous. The chiefe towne of this countrie is Catanzara; then haue you Hierace, which carries the name of a Marquisat: Belcastro or Faire Castell, a towne eight miles from the sea: Croton a verie ancient and famous towne, which doth now carrie the title of a Marquisat, yet is it not so rich nor so well peopled as it hath bene: Carithe, which is an Earldome: Bisignar, a principallitie with a strong Castell, Tarife, Corlian, Rosan a strong town three miles from the sea: Cassan, Hauteuille, which is a principallitie: Matera an Archbisshopricke, a rich towne and well peopled: Grauna a Duchie: Tarentum a verie ancient towne, in the end of high Calabria, or great Greece where there is a famous port. This was the country of the Philosophers *Archites*, it is now a principallitie.

The land of Otranto begins at Tarentum, which doth bound it vpon the South side with the sea vnto Cape Santa Maria: Vpon the East it hath for confines the same Cape, with the Ionian sea, vpon the North from Otranto vnto Brindes or Brundisium, and vpon the West, the land of Bari and a great part of high Calabria. It is in forme like to a Peninsula, for that it is inuironed with the Adriaticke and the Ionian seas; It is thirtie miles broad from Brindes to Tarentum, as *Plinius* writes, and according vnto *Rassan* fortie miles: The navigation round about it, is of two hundred miles, so as the circuit of the whole countrie will be about two hundred and fortie miles. The chiefe townes are Locci, which is thirtie miles from Cape Santa Maria; it is a rich towne, well peopled, and well built: Otranto a verie ancient towne, which is at this day reasonably well peopled, hauing a strong Castell vpon a rocke which ouerlooks the sea, and a good capable Port, yet subject to Northerly winds. Brindes is an ancient towne, but in a manner abandoned at this day by reason of ciuile discordes. Her port was so good in former times, as it was numbred among the chiefe, but it is so choaked at this day, as Gallies can hardly enter: Castris, a sea towne considerable for the losses it hath receiued by the Turkes.

The land of Pouille is diuided in two by the Auncients, that is to say, into the land of Bari called Peucetia by the Auncients, and Pouille the plaine, which they also called Daunia; & these two countries were diuided by the riuers of Lofante. They comprehend in the second part Capitenate, which contains Mont S. Ange and the dependances: there are in all thirteene townes, and ninetie Castles or walled places. The townes are Saint Ange, Manfredonia, Siponte, Salpe, Lesina, Vieste, Acoli, Bouina, Firenzola, Volturara, Trempla, and Troye. It seemes that all the riches of Pouillo the plaine are gathered together vpon Mont Saint Ange, which hath almost one hundred and twenty miles in circuit. *Dionides* would haue reduced it to an Island, for that his Istinus is not about two miles broad. The Sarrazins, finding the commoditie of the place, fortified themselves there, and maintained it a long time, for that in truth there is not any place fitter to command and annoy the realme of Naples, and the Adriaticke Sea.

The

A The land of Bari contains thirtie six castles or walled places, and foureteeen townes, whereof they of most note are Bari and Trani, then Monopoli, Polignan, Grauna, and Bitonte.

Pouille the plaine, although the soyle be light and sandie, and the grasse thin and short, yet is it so fruitfull as it doth furnish Naples, Sclauonia, Venice, and Tuscaine, with fat cattell. It hath for bounds the land of Bari, and the riuers of Lofante, vpon the South, the Apennin hills, vpon the West, Abruzzo, and towards the North, a part of the Adriaticke sea.

The countrie of Abruzzo is the coldest part of all the kingdome, it was sometime the habitation of the Samnites, and hath for bounds vpon the East, Pouille the plaine, with the riuers of Saline, towards the West, the riuers of Tronto, vpon the North, the Adriaticke sea, and to the South, the Apennin hills. This countrie is bounded on the one side by Fortore, and on the other by Tronto, and it is diuided into Abruzzo on this side, and Abruzzo on the other side of the riuers of Pescara. The one contains one hundred and fiftie castles or walled places, and fife cities, which be Beneuent, Lanciano, Chieti, Burrella, & Sulmone: and the other hath two hundred eightie foure castles or walled places, and foure cities, which are Aquila, Atri, Pena, and Terraine; Beneuent was giuen to the Church of Rome by *Henrie* the fourth, in exchange of a certaine tribute remitted to the Church of Bambergue, where he was borne, by *Leo* the ninth, and this towne hauing bene diuersly vsurped and held, was in the end restored vnto the Church by the Normans; Aquila was built by the Emperour *Fredericke* the second, who led the people of Amierne and Forcoigne thither to assure the realme on that side. They do also comprehend the countrie of Molisi in Abruzzo, which hath a hundred and foure walled places or castles, and foure townes, that is Bojano, Guardialferia, Isernia, and Triuento.

There are in the Adriaticke sea, right against Pouille the plaine, the Islands of *Dionides*, whereof the greatest at this day, are called Santa Maria, Tremirana, and S. Dominick. Moreover, there is to be seene in the Ionian sea, right against the towne of Gallipolis, the Island of Acates of small fame, and in the gulf of Otranto some little Islands of small note, whereof the greatest is called S. Andrew. Right against the Cape of Colomnes are the two Islands of Diocores and Calipso. In the Tulcan sea, there are certaine Islands which belong vnto this realme, that is, Palmarele, Pontia, and some other smaller, which haue nothing remarkable.

There are also in the gulf of Pouzzoli and of Naples about eightene Islands, whereof the most noted is Ilicia, the which hath eighteen miles in compasse, & is so inuironed with high rocks, as there is no entrance but by one way. There is a place which they hold to be a Fort, the which is by reason of the situation. Neere vnto Ilicia is Proflida, whose circuit is about six miles. The last Island is that of Capri, whether *Augustus* went to often: the rest which are to be seene are of no regard.

E Without doubt there are few ports in all this circuit of the countrie, notwithstanding that some gulfes in diuers turnings of the shore may at certaine times serue for Ports. Yet are they not safe, as in particular that of Naples, which serues rather for pompe than for any safetie to shipping that lies there, notwithstanding that it be defended by apere; and they are accustomed when as the sea grows high and rough to carrie their galleis to Bay, which is somewhat far off: and those wonderfull remainders of Nero, called commonly Mermort, doe at this day serue for a port. The gulf of Gaitee is also held for a port, notwithstanding that it lies open to the East. In the countrie of Otranto there is that of Brindes, and they say that if the port of Trani in the countrie of Bari were made fit, it would be able to receiue 100 galleis, as also that of Tarentum in Basilicata would be made much more capable, if they would bestow any cost or paine. This port is at this day shut vp, least by the commodity thereof, it should inuite the Turkes to attempt something: for that *Cleomines* the Lacedimonian, and *Alexander* and *Pyrrhus*, both kings of Epirus, passing out of Greece into Italie, did alwaies make vse of this port, for that it was capable, safe, and neere.

O iij

¶ The Qua.

¶ *Qualitie of the countrie.*

IIII. **T**His realme brings forth all things needefull for the life of man, and also for Phisicke and delights in vnto great abundance, as it doth furnish other countries: and among other things they breed very goodly horses, whereof the king hath foure races, and many noble men doe also breed them. These horses may not be transported out of the countrie, but by permission from the king of Spaine, or his vice-roy, which is hardly granted. But about all, there is great abundance of Corne, Wine, Oyle, Silke and all kinds of fruits. The countrie of Rheggium, & many places of Calabria beare sugars. The land of Labour hath wine and wheat in abundance, and is wonderfull delightfull. There are about Poussolle many springs of phisicall waters, and bathes of diuers vertues. There is to be seen a field full of Sulphure, inuironed with a high rock which burns continually, from whence they drawe and burne Alum. There is to be seen the mountaine of Afrume, with a Grotte or Cauer which hath three miles compasse on the top, and doth by little & little grow straighter towards the bottome, like vnto the Amphitheatre, there you may see a little riuer runne through the midst: there are bathes to sweate in, and a hole which no man may approach vnto without danger of death. The aire in the countrie of Otranto is very good, and yet it is much subiect to leprosie, the which growes as some thinke, for that they cate too much hogges flesh and dried figges, which is the ordinarie meate of the poore people. The superficies of the soile seemes rough and stony, but being broken vp with the plough they find it good ground, and although there be but little water, yet there are goodly pastures, which yeeld wheat, barley, oats, oliues, excellent Melons, Apples, and Moiles which are much esteemed. There breeds in this countrie a beast which they call Tarantela, whose poison is expelled by singing and the sound of instruments: The which *Gellius* writes, according to the authoritie of *Theophrastus*, of some other beasts. The Cheridres or Adders do also breed in this countrie, and it receiues more hurt from Grasshoppers, than any part of Italie, for that they leaue nothing where they passe, but deuoure the come that is ripe in one night; yet it seemes that nature hath provided for this inconuenience, by the meanes of certaine birds they call Gaucies which doe persecute these beasts. The countrie is also much spoiled with haile which doth in a manner annoie it euery year. There they heare thunder in winter, as they doe in sommer in the land of Labour. The countrie about the towne of Otranto hath a verie temperate aire, as it doth appeare by the Baie trees, Mirtles, Oliue trees and Cedars which growe there. The rocks which doe inuiron it towards the Sea are so brittle, as the Sea hath wasted and eaten away almost foure score paces in lesse than a hundred year. But Brindes hath a bad aire, for that, as there is nothing that doth better an aire more than a multitude of inhabitants (for that they drie vp moorish places by tillage, they cut vp thicke woods, and purge the bad aire with fire, and find the good with their high buildings) so there is nothing worse than solitarines in great townes, for that they are not onely deprived of the foresaid things, but the houses themselves and the ruines are retreats of corruption, witness Aquila, Rome, Rauenna, Alexandria in Egypt and Bagader as some faile. As for Pouille though the soile seeme barren, yet is it good in effect, and feeds much cattell. Abruzzo is the coldest part in the realme. In the principallitie, S. Seuerin is famous for the good wine it beares. Neere to Amalphi, and on this side the rocks, there are goodly ualleis, with many fountaines, and springs of water, from whence flowe certaine small brookes with pleasant murmur. This countrie hath great abundance of Pomegranets, Leymons, Oranges, Oliues, Peares, Plums, Cherries and such like fruit: It abounds also in wine, and doth not onely please the tast, but also the smell and sight, by the Mirtle trees, Baies, Box, Iasmin, Iuie, Rosemarie, Roses, and other plants which growe there. The soile about Germa beares many Citrons, Leymons, Oranges, Pomegranets, and all kinde of fruit. Basilicate is in a manner all mountaine, and therefore much subiect to theft and robbing: Roses come twice a year neere vnto Pesta. Calabria beares wheat, barley, wine of many sorts,

A sorts, oliues, figges, sugar, honie, salt, gold, siluer, some woole, cotton and saffron. It abounds so with silke, as there is as much made as in all the rest of Italie. There is also great abundance of flax and hempe, and Manna doth also fall there from heauen. Neere vnto the Sea shore, and within the countrie there are many goodly Gardens to be seene full of Citron trees, Leymons, Oranges and other trees. As for the Islands; that of Sicilia, hath store of good wines and abundance of fruits, and also great quantitie of Sulphure and Alum, in which there are also bathes. That of Prosida, casts fier, and hath hot bathes. That of Capre wants wheat, but it abounds in flesh, fish, and fowle.

¶ *Manners of the auncient Neapolitans.*

B **T**Here is an Ancient which saith, That they of the land of Labour were proud, by reason of the abundance of fruits, the bountie of the ayre and beautie of the countrie. There were the Acherusen Marishes, which are at this day called Caluccia a Auerne, with places vnder ground, and Sybilles Cauer; into which places, as *Strabo* writes, they did enter by sacrifices, after that they had pacified the Gods, according to the foolish beliefe of the Ancient. The Priests of the false Gods were there to conduct them thar entred: there was a fountaine, which they held to be Phlegeton, by reason that the waters did stinke. The Priests receiued them that came to consult with the Oracle, and did liue of that which they could get by the digging of metall, or by their predictions: And therefore *Homer* said, that they neuer saw Sunne. These men were afterwards rooted out by a certaine king, who found their predictions false. There was at Naples euery fifth year a combate of Wrestlers and Singers, by the commendement of the Oracle. In this realme, and not farre from Rheggium, was the towne of Locres so well gouerned by *Zaleucus*, where they were wont to come with a halter about their necks when they would propound any new law, to the end they might die if it were not allowed. The Sabarites were also of this countrie, whom they did taxe to be so effeminate and delicate, as they had taught their horses to daunce by the sound of Instruments. Finally, all the Inhabitants of this countrie were so giuen to delights, as *Haniball* suffering himselfe to be corrupted with their manners, and changing his naturall disposition, lost that which he had gotten, and his reputation all altogether by their dissolute customes.

¶ *The manners of the Neapolitans at this day.*

All the Neapolitans in a manner are aduie, and of good spirits, imbracing pleasures more than any people in the world, and take great delight to entertaine Ladies. The nobilitie for the most part retire to Naples, as well to enioy the good ayre of that cite, as to spend their time, and to see the good companie that is commonly there. And in truth there cannot be seene a greater companie of gallant Caualliers than at Naples, in Sommer, without the cite; whither they goe to encounter the Ladies which come forth to take the aire in their Caroches, where they encounter them on horse backe, with so good a grace, and such excellent discourse, as it is impossible to see or heare any thing more pleasing: so as it seemes to belong more properly to this Nobilitie than to any other, to make loue and to attend vpon Ladies. This gracious behauiour is most commonly accompanied with courage; for that the gentlemen of the realme of Naples go vnto the warre wheresoeuer it be, and seeke to winne honour, as we haue seene in the warres of the Lowe-Countries, whither great numbers of the Nobilitie of this realme haue come: the people are no lesse giuen to armes, for it is well knowne, that a great part of the Archdukes and the king of Spaines footmen come out of the realme of Naples. For as for naturall Spaniards they are few in number. The people of this realme are also much giuen to traffique, but that which diuers them from following of this inclination and desire, is the charge of exactions which is heauie in this countrie, and greater than can be imagined.

I haue

I haue said that the Neapolitans had gentle spirits, yet the rule is not so generall, but A there are places found wheras courtesie and ciuillitie are vnknown For neere vnto Montefaut, they are as rude and sauage as in any countie of Italie, and in a manner all they of Calabria haue not such subtiltie wits as the rest, as the Ancients themselves haue written: and they of the countie of Quantò are simple and without art, and this simplicitie approacheth neerer vnto stupiditie, than freeness, or any good breeding. Both men and women haue their mindes wholly giuen to loue, and affect this pleasure as much as any people liuing. There is not any place where there are better encounters to be had in that respect than at Naples, where your payne cannot be vnprofitable if it be well managed, and accompanied with any merit. Finally, they giue vnto men and women names, B which discover their humors. For they call them of Basilicata rash, them of base Calabria dull, and the women of Confence wilfull, those of Beneuent rude and grosse, those of Capoua proud, those of Naples busie, and those of Bruides idle. The Neapolitans, like to all other Italians, keepe no great good cheere in their houses, but their whole delight is to make themselves faire, and to be well apparelled, employing all their expences in outward shew. The women are so sumptuous in their appattell, as the meanest seemes by that she weares a Queene, and they had rather passe whole dayes without eating, than not to be gorgeously apparelled when as they shew themselves vnto the world, and they that haue not the meanes to be so braue, worke day and night in silke or some other thing, to the end they may shew themselves on Sunday and entertaine this C vaine pompe.

¶ The Riches of the Realme of Naples.

VI.

The people of this countie might iustly hold themselves as happie as any in Europe, if they were not so molested and oppressed by officers; for they haue not only the infallible abundance of all things, but they haue also a great commoditie to vent them into the estate of the Church and other Prouinces: and that which may make them liue at their ease, is their navigation and ancient commerce with the Venetians, to whom the people of Pouille and Calabria shew themselves wonderfully affected for this consideration, for that the greatest part of their trafficke is with this Nation, without whom they should indure much, as hath bene scene of late yeares, when as all trafficke was defended by reason of the plague; besides, the Venetians haue held diuers townes in Pouille, and haue bene held for freinds vntill the time of the Norman kings: so as, as well in regard of this remembrance, as of the foresaid interest, the Neapolitans haue a speciall inclination to loue them that are vnder this Seigneurie: There is not any Prouince in Italie that sends forth more things of her owne increase: for she sells vnto strangers great store of nuts and almonds, which they send into Barbarie and Alexandria: she vents her saffron into diuers places: she furnisheth Genoua and Tuscaine with silkes: she sends oyle to Venice and to other places, wines to Rome, and hories, lambes, and sheepe to many countries. Pouille doth furnish Venice, Sclauonia, and Tuscaine with Besh. The wine of Saint Seuerin is wonderfully esteemed and of great price at Rome. Base Calabria sends corall to other prouinces, and Manna which is more esteemed than any other. Castra is famous for the oyles which are bought there, and the merchants of Genoua especially make it a good trade.

The king of Spaine drawes out of this realme two millions and 500000 duckars yearly, comprehending the free gift of a million, and two hundred thousand duckats, which is giuen euery two yeare to his Maiestie, the which is now reduced to an ordinarie rent, like to the one and thirtie graines which are paid for the lodging of souldiers, and entertainment of certaine gentlemen that do accompany the Vice-Roy, and are called Con- tinuells: seven graines for the gard of Towers vpon the coast, nine graines for the reparation of streets, & five graines for the prouoit of the field, from which reuenues, deducting a million, and 800000 duckats in pensions and other things which are paid to diuers, the remainder is not sufficient for the garrisons, foot, horse, galleis, and other expences.

¶ The

¶ The Forces of the Realme of Naples.

The Neapolitans haue bene alwaies inconstant and wauering, and wonderfully sub- VII. iect to reuolts, so as in foure hundred fiftie foure yeares, during the which, this realme hath bene diuicely held by Normans, French, Germans, Catalans, and Spaniards, they number seuen and twentie famous rebellions of the Neapolitans, which haue helpe the pretensions and designs of one and other, who, it may be, would not so easily haue yeelded to the wills of Popes, who inuited them, nor to their owne ambition, nor to the spur of reuenge, if this instabilitie of their resolutions had not promised them much more, than the commoditie which any other occasion propounded vnto them.

As for these frequent rebellions, although the subjects haue bene diuers, yet we may set downe two principall causes, that is to say, the greatnesse and power of the princes of the realme, and the election of the king, which did belong vnto forreine princes, subiect to change their wills, as well by reason of the short life of Popes, as for the diuicitie of them. For a part of the realme hauing alwaies been diuided among the princes that were borne in the countie, who were great by reason of their dependances and their great reuenues, haue alwaies had the hearts of their vassals obedient to their wills, so as they haue often dared to threaten, yea to take armes against their owne kings, and for their priuati interest, haue disordered the whole realme: so as, hauing discouraged the inclination of a Pope to depose a king, and hauing meanes by this emulation to effect some one of their designs, without any other respect than to their priuati passions, they haue so often (by offering to be fauors to the new king, and to the Popes designs, and increasing the disobedience and errors of them that were suspected vnto him) solicited the holy See to change; and making sometimes false interpretations vnto kings of the iust actions of Popes, they haue giuen cause to be iustly excommunicated and deposed, to the end they might afterwards breed that alteration of things, which they had formerly proiected and desired to content their owne passions. Wherein we may see how cunningly the Spaniards haue sought to preserve themselves, and to confirme this estate, not only to remaine vnited with the holy See, but also to bind Popes vnto them, and to weaken by all means, such as might, for any respect whatsoever, grow powerful within the realme, hauing principally woon, by credit and by bond, the greatest part of the princes of Italie, and being assured by this meanes of all outward annoyance.

And hauing truly considered to this purpose him that gouernes, and him that is gouerned, the one imperious and haucie, the other proud and vntamed; the one hated for his sodaine greatnesse, and by the inclination of many, and the other inclined to rebellions, and for this cause easie to be moued and fauoured by pretendants: the one being so seled in the realme, as the other cannot easily shake of the yoke: they may iustly either for the time, or for the wise care of him that gouernes, wonder at this successe, concerning the which, in my opinion, as he hath bene furthered by occasions, so he hath bin assisted and seconded by the good conduct of his gouernors. For this realme being come vnto the king of Spaine, all lets which might breed a confusion in the countie haue bin taken away, with this resolution to maintaine it; and the prince hath sufficiently assured the possession of this estate, yea in all motiues of warre: for that the pretensions of the French being mortified by a peace made in the yeare 1559. and especially by reason of the ciuile wars which they haue lately had; and the king of Spaine hauing in Italie the Pope who respects him, and being allied to the duke of Sauoy (notwithstanding that there hath bene of late yeres some bad intelligence betwixt them, being in like manner at vnitie with the great Duke of Austria by meanes of the new alliance hauing more- over at his deuotion them of Genoua, and the Luquois being without force, and the Venetians not desirous to attempt any thing against him, there remains nothing but to be assured of the chiefe men of the realme of Naples. The which hath bene partly effected, in giuing some entertainment, and especially to them that are fauoured in Court; leaving publike administrations seldome to great men, and that with great restrictions and

and limitations: punishing enemies and suspected persons severely, and nor admitting easily nor sodainly any complaints against gouernours: for that by the first, the subiect growes louing and well affected, and feedes himselfe with hope of greater matters: and by the second they suffer him not to winne credit with the people: and by the two last they prevent all troubles by the severity of the punishment: but much more, whereas no man shal be able to assure himselfe, that he hath meanes to iustifie his action, Moreover by the first, the subiect being allured by such a demonstration, seekes daily by all meanes to shew himselfe more thankfull, and to merit more with his Prince, & spends all that he hath to raise in view of the world that prettie title of Lord, Knight, Coronell, or such like, which hee hath giuen him: so as by his aduancement he becomes faithfull, and doth soimpowerish himselfe by his expence, as afterwards hee hath no more courage, neither for himselfe, nor for others, and that as well by reason of hope, as of necessity, he cannot retire himselfe from his affection and seruice. With the second, they take away all meanes to make a great traine, and with the other two, for that they doe equally suspect open and suspected enemies, it is a cause why euery man proceeds plainly, and gouernes himselfe so wisely, as the Prince may assure himselfe of the thoughts and actions of his subiects and vassals: who are all gentlemen or husbandmen, and the noble man or gentleman having no meanes to execute any enterprize without the helpe of the people, whom the Spaniards support openly against them, especially in matters of Iustice, it happens that hee is forced to endure with patience many things that are distastfull, and the people shall in vaine attempt any sedition without the conduct of gentlemen. Finally there is such a discord betwixt these two orders, as liuing deuided with a manifest dislike, the men remaine, touching this point, much weakened: moreover they doe entertaine among the Nobles some discention, for that they fauour one more than another, and sometimes the enemies of the one and the other rise, so as by this diuision, the forces of the realme, remaine dismembred, and the king of Spaine in outward appearance, hath no cause to feare any important reuolt of his subiects, and the rather, for that there is not any one that fauours their designs, by reason of the estate of the affaires of Italie, which desires rest, but especially for the good amitie of the Apostolike Sea, with whom the king of Spaine hath purchased so great authoritie, as at this day he hath a great share of the Popes election, hauing bound many Cardinals vnto him, either in their promotions, or by the pensions which he giues them, and he hath also a particular care, as I haue said, to haue the Pope alwaies his friend, for that he remembers well, what alterations *Clement 7.* and *Paul 4.* hate bred. He hath also very good intelligence with the Seigneurie of Venice, both for the good of his subiects of this realme, as to assure himselfe on that side, as well in this realme, as in Lombardie, wherefore he liues at quiet on that side, and hath no cause to feare others in this realme: for that he is prepared against the French and Turke, by the peace and friendship which he entertaines in Italie, seeking to make himselfe as strong as possible he can by Sea, the which hath been alwaies held to be the chief force of this realme, wherein all former inuasions haue bin alwaies assisted, and made more sure vnto the enemy by meanes of the Sea. Wherefore, as well to hinder the enemy, as to succour his owne at all occurrents, he is reposed to fortifie himselfe by Sea, hauing the commoditie of all things necessarie to that effect.

As for the men of warre, there are foure thousand Spanish footmen, which hee doth commonly entertaine in this realme, vnder diuers capitaines, with a Coronell and an Auditor, and this bodie of souldiours is called the Regiment or Terzo of Naples. In the Castles of the realme, and Towers made for the gard of the coast, they doe commonly maintaine a thousand six hundred foot, comprehending the officers which are accustomed to be in these Castles. There are a thousand men at armes diuided into fixteene companies, that is to say, five of Spaniards, and eleuen of Italie, being fixtie horse in a companie, except the Vice-roys which hath a hundred, and that of *Marc Antoine Crispo*, of an hundred and ten.

There are also foure hundred and fiftie light horse diuided into five companies. Moreover

ouer in all the Prouinces of the realme, there are five footmen inrolled for euery hundred fiers, and there are 4011454. fiers, which after the rate of five for a hundred, make 240701. footmen in ordinarie.

These are named by the magistrates of euerie cuntry: yet if they doe not please the Capitaines, they must provide them others to their liking. They are reasonably well armed, and fitter to defend than to make a warre, and these footmen are called the Battallion: and although that they be not paid but when they serue their Capitaines, yet the other officers haue their ordinarie entertainment.

There are thirtie and seven Galleis in this realme, that is to say, thirtie and three of Naples, and foure which are paid to the Geneuois. The Galleis of Naples do commonly lie at Mole or Peere, without souldiers, and many times without half the galley-flaues, the which are hired by capitaines, merchants, gentlemen and others, to vnlade their ships, and for other domestick seruises: so as on a time, eight Gallions hauing taken two Galleis of Sicile, neere vnto the Island of Capri, they spent a whole day before they could send out five Galleis after the Turkes, for that they could neither finde rowers nor souldiers. And doubtes they hold, that the king of Spaine will draw small seruice from the expence that he makes in these Galleis, the which are furnished with small store of artilerie, and haue commanders of little experience, and their slaues be Turkes or condemned persons, whereof the one serue with disdain and danger, and the other haue little experience, and are not fit to suffer the discomforts of the Sea.

In like manner the Garrisons of Castles, as well of the three of Naples, as of others which are throughout the realme, are two third parts lesse than the king of Spaine payes: and the greatest force of their artilerie is in the new Castle, and in that of S. Erme at Naples, and in the Fort of Galette and the Castle of Capoua, for all the rest is of no great moment. All their munition is not great, which doth plainly shew the sparing and fraud of the kings Officers, as in other things which abound in the realme.

This realme is verie well peopled: the lands are for the most part diuided among particular men of the realme, vnder diuers titles, who haue increased in number and decreased in reputation, both for that they are fallen to base persons, either by purchase or otherwise, for that the owners had walled themselves in superfluous expences: as also, for that these men had neuer any charge which might adde any thing vnto their honour. There are of them thirteene Princes, foure and twentie Dukes, five and twentie Marquises, foure score and ten Earles, and about eight hundred Barons, all which are bound to serue the king of Spaine in person for the defence of the realme. The Duke of Alba, in the warre which Pope *Pavll* the fourth raised against them, did leaue in this realme twentie thousand foote, seuen hundred men at armes, and one thousand five hundred light horse. The chief Forts are Naples with her three Castles, that is, the new Castle, Castle Ouo, and that of S. Erme, Manica, Crotona, Tarentum, Gallipoli, Ouranto, Brindes with the Fort of Saint Andrew, Monopoli, Bari, Trani, Barlette, Manfredonia, Mount Saint Ange, and Gayette, and within the cuntry, Catanzara, Conffence, and Aquila.

¶ The Gouernement of the Realme.

The king of Spaine hath commonly a vice-roy in this realme, who remains at Naples, as well as his other officers, both for that it is the ancient abode of kings, as also for the beauty of the situation, and the concourse of the nobilitie of the realme, and of merchants both of the cuntry, and strangers, and the habitation of many artificers, a man may draw from this cite as from an Abbridgement, a particular and distinct discourse of matters concerning this realme, for that they send gouernors from thence into the twelve Prouinces, and these gouernors are fix in number, termed also Vice-roys, but Substitutes vnto him of Naples. There is also a Caprain in euery place of the realme which is not a Barons land. And for that they cannot appeale from these Capitaines and Iudges, butto the Vice-roy of the Prouince, to the President and to the Councell of Naples,

Naples, as it shall seeme best vnto the parties; the iurisdiction of the chiefe towne haue a perpetuall flowing of suites, the which are prolonged by the Aduocates and Notaries, called by them Maisters of Acts, and by Proctors, and the Prisons of the Vicarage are filled with an infinite number of persons, wee may easily thereby guesse, that the Iudges want no worke.

There are also seuen principall officers in this realme, besides the Vice-roy, that is, the Constable, the Chancellor, the chiefe Iustice, the high Admirall, the high Treasurer, the great Protonotarie, and the great Seneschall. There are foure courts which they call seats, That is Capoua, Nide, Montane, and Saint Gregorie, whereas the Princes, Dukes, Marquises, and all the principall of the realme, and the other orders assemble to confer of publique affaires.

The Religion, and that which concernes the Church.

All the inhabitants of the Realme of Naples are held to be affectionat to the Romish Religion. As for the estate of the Church of this Realme, it is composed of twentie Archbishopsricks, the which haue many Bishops vnder them, and they are set downe in this order.

The Archbishop of Naples hath vnder him the Bishops of

Nola. Certe.
Pouzzole. Ithia.

The Bishop of Auerse is not subiect to any one.

The Archbishop of Capoua hath vnder him the Bishops of

Sernie. Calui.
Thiario. Caserte.

Caiazzo. Venafra.

Catinola. Aquino.

Cessa.

The Bishop of Mont Cassin, and the Abbot of the Monasterie of the same place, foorthained by Pope John the two and twentieth, is not subiect to any one.

The Archbishop of Salerno hath vnder him the Bishops of

Champagne. Samo.

Capaccio. Marisco.

Pulicastro. Nocera della Pagani.

Musco. Acierno.

The Bishops of Ravello and Caste are not subiect to any one.

The Archbishop of Amalfi hath vnder him these Bishops

Lettere. Capri.

Scala. Minori.

The Archbishop of Sorrento hath vnder him the Bishops of

Vica.

Massa.

Castella Mare.

The Archbishop of Conze hath vnder him the Bishops of

Muro. Alcedonia.

Cagiano. Saint Angelo de Lombardie.

Monteuerde. Bischope is vnto that of Saint Ange.

The Archbishop of Crotone hath vnder him these Bishops

Aquilone. Gratina.

Potenza. Fricaria.

Materè, which is now an Archbishopricke, it was in former times vnder the Diocesse

of Crotone, and is now vnto it.

The Archbishop of Tarentum hath vnder him the Bishops of

Motula. Castellaneta.

A The Archbishop of Brindes, to whom that of Otri is ioyned, hath vnder him the Bishop of

Hostuni.

The Archbishop of Otranto hath vnder him these Bishops

Castro. Leccia.

Galipoli. Capo di Leuco.

Vgento.

The Bishop of Nardo is not subiect to any one.

The Archbishop of Bari hath vnder him the Bishops of

Bitonto. Monruino.

Malfetta. Lauello.

Giouenazzo. Conuersano.

Ruuo. Bitetti.

Salpe. Andri.

Pulignano. Bisegli.

The Archbishop of Trani hath vnder him the Bishops of

Montepeloso.

Rapallo.

Alessano.

C The Bishops of Monopoli, Melphi, and Troy are not subiect to any one.

The Archbishop of Maafredonea, called Siponto, to whom that of Mont S. Ange is

ioyned, hath vnder it the Bishop of

Vieste.

The Archbishop of Beneuent hath vnder him the Bishops of

Luceria. Bojano.

Ascoli. Bouino.

Firenzola. Turibulense.

Telese. Dragonaria.

Saint Agata di Gotti. Vulturaria.

Alisa. Larino.

D The Archbishop of Monteuerte.

Marisco Vecchio. Canne.

Monte Marano. Termuli.

Auelin is ioyned with Frequentin. Lefina.

Vico della Baronia. Treuento.

Guardia Alfana.

Ariano.

The Archbishop of Citta di Chietri hath vnder him the Bishops of

Aquila.

Sulmona.

E Citta di Penna, and this Bishopricke is ioyned with that of Atri.

The Archbishop of Laucian hath vnder him the Bishops of

Sora.

Theramo.

The Archbishop of Reggio hath vnder him these Bishopricks

Cassano.

Nicastro.

Caranzaro.

Crotone.

Tropica.

F Opiro.

Castella Mare della Bruca.

Geraci.

Squillaci.

Nicotera.

Boue.

The Archbishop of Cosence hath vnder him the Bishop of Martoran.

The Archbishop of Rossan hath no Bishop vnder him.

The Bishop of Biffignan is not subiect to any.

The Archbishop of S. Seuerin hath vnder him the Bishops of

Vmbriato.

Ficorentino.

Saint Marco.

Strongoli.

Belcastro.

Mileto.

Isola.

Cariati.

The Bishopricke of the Island of Lipari is vnitied vnto that of Parenze, and both are subiect to the Archbishop of Messina.

The Archbishops and Bishops haue good reuenues, and I will speake one word in the conclusion of this discourse, that among all the places of deuotion which are at Naples, there is one which is called the mount of Pirie, which spends sixtie thousand crownes a yeare, either in the feeding of them that are in it, or in alms, or in the nursing of 2000. Infants throughout the realme.

¶ Kings of Naples.

There was neuer realme like vnto that of Naples, which hath been so often taken and not ruined, and which being an enemie vnto it selfe, hath made a shew of libertie in a perpetuall seruitude, and of command, with the greatnesse of her enemies. For it hath but slip from one hand to another, and the succession hath bene so full of inconstancie, as they haue sooner seene a race extinct, than fully received, and quietly settled in the realme. I will abridge my discourse, and the number of her kings as much as I may, to the end I be not tedious.

Roger Earle of Sicile, and by the testament of *William* Duke of Pouillia and Calabria, was descended from *Tankred*, sonne to *Richard* of Normandie: he took the cite of Naples from the Emperor of Constantinople, about the end of September in the yeare 1130. and fodenly was declared king of Naples and Sicilie at Beneuent, by Pope *Anselmus* 2. who retained the homage.

This realme continued to the descendants of *Roger*, vntill that king *William*, surnamed the good, being dead without lawful children, and the Barons of the realme hauing chosen king *Tankred*, base nephew to this *William*, *Clement* 3. pretended that this realme was diuolued vnto the church, made warre in Pouillia, and after him *Celestin* 3. crowning and confirming the Emperor *Henry* 6. vpon condition that he should recouer this realme, as a fee of the church, inuested him publicly, and so the Segneurie passed from the Normans to the Germans, who held it with little good fortune, for that the Emperor *Fredericke* 2. sonne to the said *Henry*, being a persecutor of the church, was deprived of the Empire by *Innocent* 4. and withal, of the realm of Naples, the which was giuen to a sonne of the king of England, but he did not indeauour to expell *Fredericks* children, who had made themselues Masters of the greatest part.

Vrbain 4. transported it to *Charles* of Anjou, Earle of Prouence, and brother to *S. Lewis*, who was inuested by *Clement* 4. vpon condition, that he should pay 40000. duckats yerely vnto the holie See, with a white Hackney.

The succession of this realme continued by direct line in the house of Anjou, vnto *Joane* 1. neece to king *Robert*, at what time *Vrbain* 6. transferred it to *Charles* of Duras, who descended from a brother of the said king *Robert*, and quite deprived this Queene, as excommunicate, for that shee had bene a Pastian in the creation of *Clement* 7. the Antipope, made at Fundy.

After *Charles*, the children of *Ladislau* reigned successiuelly, who was also king of Hungarie, and *Joane* also, but not without difficultie. *Lewis* of Anjou, second sonne to the French king, was adopted by *Joane* with the consent of *Clement* the Antipope: but he was slaine before Bar, by the troopes of *Charles* of Duras.

Lewis his sonne was crowned and inuested in the realme by the same *Clement*: but hee laboured

A laboured in vaine to become Maister thereof.

His sonne of the same name, being called to the conquest of this realme by *Martin* 5. who inuested him, gaue occasion to queen *Joane*, to make offer thereof to *Alphonso* king of Arragon, who was then in Sardinia; but for that *Alphonso*, being come to Naples, could not endure that the whole gouernment of the realme should passe vnder the queene *Joane*, he sought to put her in prison, but she fled away secretly and declared the said *Lewis* her heire, disanulling the first adoption of *Alphonso*, who notwithstanding, after the death of *Lewis*, the queene declared *René* brother to *Lewis* her successor, and that after the queenes death *Eugenius* 4. pretended the realme to be fallen vnto the Church: yet notwithstanding all this, *Alphonso* took Naples by force, and remained Maister thereof, after which hee did easily obtaine the inuestiture of *Eugenius*, and in this manner the realme pass from the French to the Catalans. *René* left *Lewis* 11. the French king for his successor in the realme of Naples.

Charles 8. succeeded him, and made himselfe absolute Maister of the realme of Naples. In the end, *Lewis* the 12. the French king, and *Ferdinand* king of Spaine diuided it betwixt them, after the flight of king *Fredericke*: but the French lost it by their bad gouernment, soas the Spaniards enioyed it all: and the misfortune which fell vpon king *Francis* at Pannia, and the troubles which haue since hapened in France, haue taken from our kings all meanes to recouer it, but the interest they haue vnto this realme remains good.

Sicilie

P ij

F



SICILE.

The Contents.

The situation of Sicile, her triangular forme, and the Capes which bound it, in ancient time, were named Italye, but since separated by an Earthquake, on by the fire of Mount Etna, it is divided into three Regions, containing one hundred and threescore and three townes. I. I. It abounds in bitumen, corne, muscadell, honey, pitch, saffron, wool, sugar, canes, yewer all sorts, precious stones, porphyre, marbell, alabaster, and mines of gold, silver, and iron. II. I. Mount Etna vomiting out flames of fire incessantly, yet covered with snow at all times. A lake and fountains of hot water. V. Sicile inhabited sometimes by the Cyclopes and Esfrigus Giants, and divers other people in divers ages, with the humor and disposition of the Sicilians at this day. VI. What the riches, and forces of this Island be. VII. Of the Parliament of Sicile. Of the free gift they offer every year unto the Vice-Roy. Of the three severaile Courts which administer justice in this Island. Of the Capitaines of armes. Of the kings Councell. Of the manner of Syndication. VIII. Inquisitors established for matters of Religion. Three Archbishops which have many Bishopsricks under them. IX. Kings which have enjoyed or pretended the Realme.



This Island which yeelds not to any in the Mediterranean sea, lyes between Italye and Africke: it hath for bounds vpon the North side, the Tuscan sea, vpon the East, the Adriatick and Ionian seas, towards the South, the sea of Africke, and vpon the West, that of Sardinia. The extremities of this Island make a triangular forme, whereof the three Angles produce so many Promontories or Capes, whereof the one is Cape de Faro, in old time Pellorus, which is vpon the North, and looks towards Italye, or the Cape of Calabria, called commonly Cauda Vulpij, the other is, Capo Passero, in old time Pachiaum, towards the South and East, and looks towards Peloponessus, the last is, Capo Boco, sometimes Lilybeum, vpon the South and West, which looks towards Africke, from the which it lies one hundred miles, but Strabo and Ptolomie make it one hundred and eightie.

This Capo Boco is from Cape de Calaris in Sardinia, one hundred and ninetie miles, or according vnto others, two hundred; but in those places which are neereft vnto Italye, it is not distant about one thousand five hundred paces, and those which are most remote are three hundred miles distant, which is betwixt Drepane in Sicile, and Naples. And therefore all Authors in a manner are of opinion, that Sicile was in old time ioyned to Italye, as a Peninsula, and that since it was disioyned from the firme Land by an Earthquake, or else by reason of the burning of Mount Etna, or else by the continuall flowing and ebbing of the Ionian and Tuscan seas. There are great presumptions hereof, for that the sea in this strait, is not about 80 paces deepe, and Rhegium, a towne seated vpon the Italian shore signifies breaking, and also, for that the earth is so bricke, and so full of holes, that it is in a manner wholly subiect to windes: and the sea which lies betwixt Italye and Sicile is so troublefome, as the Ancients haue giuen vnto those places, the names Scylla

A

B

C

D

E

F

Scylla

A Scylla, and Charibdis; Scylla is a rocke, and Charybdis is a gulf of the sea which turns round about, and both are verie dangerous for ships.

Finally, although that this Island be of a triangular forme, yet her sides are crooked: for that part which is towards the East, is concave, and that which bends to the North, is somewhat crooked. That part which lies vpon the North of Capo Boco, vnto Cape de Faro, contains two hundred eightie one miles, or according vnto others, two hundred eightie five, the South part, from Cape de Boco, vnto Cape de Passero, one hundred ninetie three miles, or as others write, two hundred and fortie, vpon the East, from Cape de Passero, vnto Cape de Faro, it contains one hundred and fiftie miles, or according vnto others, one hundred seuentie and five. Wherefore the one makes this Island to haue seven hundred miles in compasse, and the other but six hundred twentie foure. But Possidinius, by the report of Strabo, sets downe but five hundred and fiftie.

This Island is set like vnto Sardinia, in the fourth Climax, betwixt the eleuenth and twelfth Parallel, whereas the longest day in Summer is of foureteeen houres, and two third parts, and in these two Islands the Starre Canope is seene, which is the cleereft Starre of all those that are in the thip of Argos, which Starre is scarce seene in any part of Italye.

The whole Island is diuided into three Regions, which are called valles; of those, the one is Valdemona, the second is, the valley of Neeti or Noto, and the third is, the valley of Mazara. Vademona (compassed in by Teria and Imeria) contains the Angle of Cape de Faro, and it is in that place, whereas the Messeniens and Cataneans dwell in the time of Ptolomie, it imbraceth the townes and countries of Messina, Catania, Melazzo, Tauromina, Cicalu, and Montgibel. The valley of Neeti, or Noto, is compassed in by the ruiners of Teria and Gele, containing all the Angle of Cape de Passero, and it was the place whereas the Siracusans had their abode, and in it are contained the townes and countries of Noto, Siracusa, Lentini, Augusta, and Castrogouanni. The valley of Mazara contains the rest of the Island, in which is the Angle of Capo Boco, there did the Orbites and the Segestains dwell: it comprehends the townes and countries of Terimene, Palermo, Monreale, Mont Saint Iulian, Erice, Trapani, Mazara, Marsala, and Girgenti.

The noblest part of the Island, is that which lies towards the East: for that it contains in it the famous cities of Messina, Catania, and Siracusa, with the ports of Messina, Siracusa, and Augusta; among which ports, that of Messina, hath the praise for beautille and pleasantnesse, and that of Augusta, for greatnesse, the which was so spacious, as it could not be fully fortified. There is also that of the Island of Magnisi, the which was, as some hold, the great port of Siracusa. The Island of Magnisi, is called a Peninsula, and may containe about thirtie miles in compasse, with an Isthmus, not about twentie or five and twentie paces broad. An excellent situation for a citie. Siracusa was in old time a great citie, whose walls had in compasse, according vnto Strabo, one hundred and eightie stades: comprehending the Island of Artigia, to the which they did passe by a bridge, but now it is ioyned to the rest, whereas at this day the citie stands; there doth rise with an admirable spring of water, that famous fountain of Areusa. Towards the North, there is not any famous citie, but that of Palermo, where the Vice-Royes make their residence, in which there is an Vniuersitie: this citie, for the greatnesse of the situation, for the multitude of inhabitants, for the concourse of nobilitie, for the stateliness of the building, and for the pleasantnesse and riches of the Territorie is such, as it might do honour to two Sicilies. It had no port, but they haue made a verie spacious one, with an admirable Peere, not vnworthie the greatnesse of Rome. Then folloves Trapani, a strong towne with a large port: in this countie grows delicate wines, called Bocafie: the inhabitants of Trapani, are held the best sea-men in all Sicile. Vpon the Southerne part, is the citie of Marzala, which the Ancients did call (of the Promontorie where it stands) Leibeum: Then folloves Girgenti, with a salt Lake, the which in summer doth congeale and become perfect salt. Within the Land, the places of greatest note are, Catania, sometimes a great and goodly towne, it is yet famous, by reason of the Vniuersitie,

P iij

and

II.

An Italian
Stade con-
taineth 124
paces.

and neere vnto it, there is a forest which hath eight miles in compasse, Next is, Lentini, A which hath a Lake, whose fishing is farmed for eigheteen thousand crownes a yeare. Castrogiovanni, a towne containing foure thousand families, with a wholesome ayre, and a fertile countrie, in an eminent feat, the which they hold to be the nauell of the Island. There are also mynes of excellent salt. Noto and Tauronina are places verie strong by nature: and Noto contends for greatesse with Siracusa. It stands vpon an high rocke inaccessible of all sides, but by one narrow passage. It is the Key of the Realme of Sicile on that side; for that, vnder the Cape of Paleruo there is a good port, but without any Fort, and there are in all Sicile one hundred seuentie three townes.

The Qualitie of the Countrey.

III. **T**his Island is full of fire, which it casts out abundantly, and yet it yeelds great store of all sorts of fruits, it is exposed to the windes, and generally hollowe and full of Sulphure and Bitumen, matters fit to engender and nourish fire: which is the cause that it doth often vomit forth flames and sometimes vapours; and this is the reason why there are many springs of hot waters. This Island carries come in such abundance, as in some places, the inhabitants gather a hundred measures for one; and therefore they call those places the fields of a hundred charges. It doth also beare excellent wines, which are nothing inferiour to the best of Italie, especially, those which they call sweet muskadeles. It abounds in hony, pitch, saffron, wooll, and such like, and doth also produce the cane, which they call Canna Melle, from whence the drawe by decoction great store of sugar, especially in the towne of Sehhiza. It yeelds all kinds of fruits which are very pleasing, with Cardus and store of the roots of wild Palmes. There they also find minnerall salt in many mountaines, besides that which is made of the Sea water. There is much filke, especially neere vnto Messina and much game for hunting, with store of filche.

This Island doth also yeeld some pretious stones, for they finde the Agate, vpon the shore of the riuer of Agatha, and they digge the stone called Berill neere to the towne of Graxeria. There is also Porphire of two kinds, that is to say, red, mingled with white and Greene, and of diaper red more pretious than the Porphire.

There are quarries of blacke marble, and others of diuers other colours.

There is also marble in the valley of Mazara, and mines of gold, silver and iron, and also of diamonds: and these growes corral between Drepane, and the Island of Elie.

III. They make mention of these wonders in Sicilie, that although Montgibel burnes continually, yet vpon the top where the fire is greatest, it is alwaies couered with snow: They say that this mountaine hath three score and ten miles in compasse, on the East and South side, it is couered with vines, and vpon the West and North are woods full of wilde beasts. In the Territorie of Menci, is to be seene that famous lake of Palicori, called at this day Naptia, which castes forth water extremely hot, by three mouthes, and whilst it boiles it flinckes wonderfully, and makes a great noise. Neere to Montgibel there is a fountaine of cold water, which is sharpe, and yet it boiles, whereas cold being dipped before in water mixt with gaules, becomes suddenly blacke. Neere vpon Drepane, there is a fountaine, whose water doth growe lookenisse as soone as euer it is taken. In the territorie which is neere to Cape de Bocco, there are cockes and hennes which exceede in greatnesse all of that kind that are in Europe and Affricke.

The Manners of the ancient Sicilians:

V. **T**his Island was sometime inhabited by the Cyclopes and Lestrigons, that is to say, Giant barbarous and inhumane people, as some fables and histories, yea and bones found at diuers places, doe witness. Afterward the Sicilians, Spaniards by nation dwelt there, and the Grecians transported colonies thither: yea the Trojans landed there after the ruine of Troy, and the Candians arrived shere with their king Minos. There were also colonies sent by the Romans into Sicilie, in the time of the first punicke warre; and by Augustus.

A **Augustus**. It hath bene held by the Emperours of Constantinople, then it was possessed by the Gothes, who after seuteene yeares, where expelled by *Bellissarius*. The Sarrazins became Masters thereof, and were afterwards chased away by the Normans. Then came there a great multitude of Lombards into this Island, and after them Germanes, but they were expelled by *Clement 7.* and the French succeeded them, then the Arraganois became Masters. So as the manners and humors of the Inhabitants of this Island, haue bene diuers, according to the people that haue held it; and this change hath bred a strange medley of their dispositions. They say, among other things of them of Agrigentum, that they did build as if they should liue euer, and did banquet as if they were dying hourly.

B **They** had a sacred place, where they did sweare and take their othes; writing that which they did sweare vpon a table of wood, the which they did cast into the water which came from a fountaine, called by them Crateres: if they sware truly, the table floated vpon the water, if otherwise, it sunke vnto the botome. The humors of the Sicilians haue alwaies bene found inconstant and subiect to all windes, neither had they euer any certaine resolution: they were eloquent in their speech, and *Diodorus* and *Arifstotele* affirme that they inuented the art of Rethoricke & the Eglogues; and *Plinie* and *Plutarche* say that they haue inuented Clockes, and some Engines for warre. This was the countrey of that great Mathematician, *Archimedes*.

The Manners of them at this day.

C **T**he Sicilians are for the most part subtile witted, and eloquent by nature; by reason whereof, *Apuleius* termes them men with three tongues. Moreouer they are pleasant, full of sentences, and witty in their answers, but very great talkers: Moreouer they are full of suspicion, enuious, and sometimes troublesome in their conuersation: they offend others easily, and are soone drawne to take reuenge of any iniurie that is done them: They are great flatterers; yet they haue this good in them, that they entertaine strangers courteously, they are fit to inuent, and apt for the studie of speculative Sciences and for prazize: they are noted to be naturally more craftie than wise, more subtile than sincere, and great louers of nouelties and contentions. They looke curiously into the actions of those that haue any office or charge amongst them, and hold alwaies that for done, which they would doe, if they were in the same. They are obedient to Iustice, faithfull to their Prince, ready to serue him, and officious in the first beate of friendship: their nature consists of two extremities, for that they are very fearful, and extreme hardie: they are fearfull in treating of their owne priuate affaires, for that they haue a great care of their particular interest, and for that they would not trouble it, they transforme themselves into any shape, like vnto *Prothens*, submitting themselves to any one, whom they thinke able to giue an end to their desires, and they serue them in such sort, as they seeme to be onely borne to that end. On the other side, they are wonderfully bold and hardie, when there is any question of the publike interest, and then they proceed after a farre different course. They hold, that they haue deserued much of the Crown of Spain, for that they gaue themselves voluntarily, and they thinke, that they owe them the full obseruation of the Articles, with the which they were receiued. They are wonderfully ielous of their priuiledges, and they hold, that all things are lawfull for the maintenance and defence thereof; assuring themselves that they cannot be held rebels, for any popular sedition that shall happen.

It is an old humour of the Noble men of Sicile, to seeke some intelligence in the King of Spaines Court, sometimes with him that is in greatest credit, sometimes with the secretaries; and he that is knowne vnto the king, will insinuate with the king himselfe. But all are accustomed to contract with the Regents. They doe this for two reasons, the first, in regard of the affaires which may happen daily in court, and the other to satisfie their natural inclination, which is to be perpetuall censors of the actions of the Vice-Roy, his favourites and officers: & in truth, innocencie is not able to hinder this censure, for that

in writing they lay hold of euery bruit and flying tale : the which they doe the more boldly, when as they vnderstand that the Vice-roy is come to this charge with any difficulty, and that he is enuied, and hath weake supporters in court, or that he hath not a witty Agent, who is able to pierce into the wicked practises which shall be made against his Maister.

¶ *The Riches of the Island.*

VI. This Island was in old time held for the Garner or Corne loit of Italie, and especially of Rome, as it is many times at this day : so as the Sicilians make much money of the sale of their corne, as also, of their oyles and silke, whereof they make a great quantity, especially at Messina, where the best is. The king of Spaine drawes yearly out of this Island three hundred thousand crownes, that is to say, a hundred thousand crowns, one within another, of the custome of wheat : a hundred thousand crownes of weights and merchandize, and a hundred thousand crownes of buildings, bridges, tents, and gifts, which in Sicile they call secrets. There is also the extraordinarie reuenues, as the confiscations of the great court, the sale of places that are void, the benefit of the Croisado, and of extraordinarie gifts, which amount to great sums. The expence, which is most commonly greater than the receipt, consists in the payment of officers, horsemen, footmen, galleys, garisons, debts, and recompences.

¶ *The Forces of the Island.*

The king of Spaine doth commonly entertaine good garisons, especially vpon the sea coast, which the Vice-roy doth furnish, when there is need, with men & captains. Palermo and Messina are good and strong townes. There are many strong castles, which would trouble him much, that would attempt the conquest of this Island.

¶ *The Government.*

VII. The parliament of Sicile hath great powre and authoritie to crosse a vice-roy that is not very iudicious : who cannot obtaine the free gift which they offer euery third yeare, nor any other extraordinarie thing, nor yet make any new decree, touching the publique, without a generall consent of the realme, which is given in Parliament, by three sorts of persons, called by the Sicilians, the three armes of the realme : Which be all the Prelates, as well those that haue great reuenues, as others ; and this assemblie is called the ecclesiasticall arme : all the Barons called the militarie arme : and all the kings townes, whereof euery one sends a deputie, and they call this the Seigneuriall, or lordly arme.

The Vice-roy calls these men by his letters, commanding them to come at a certaine day, to the place where he is : being assembled, and the Vice-roy being set in a royall seat, he propounds briefly vnto them the cause that had moued him to call them together, and what he desired of them. Then the first Prelate doth rise, and tells him, that they haue vnderstood his proposition, and that after some consultation, they will make him a speedie answer. After this, they make choise of a place, whereas the three armes should assemble apart, and in euery place they treat most commonly of feuen points, and the armes giue aduice one vnto another, of that which either of them had concluded, to the end they may know wherein they haue agreed or dissented.

The first point which they most commonly treat of, and for the which they are called, is touching the free gift, and whether they shall giue it or no : so as if they conclude, that in regard of the hard estate of the time they cannot giue any thing, the parliament is ended, & there is no more to be done. But if they resolve to giue, then the second point of their treatie is of the quantitie : the third, of the meanes how to raise it : the fourth, in how many yeares they shall pay it : the fifth, with the conditions with the which they shall

A shall giue it : the sixth, of the graces and retributions which they shall demand : and in the seventh, they treat of deputies, to whom they shall giue the charge to see the execution of all that which is resolved in parliament. The townes of Messina, for the qualitie of the situation, the commoditie of the port, and the condition of the inhabitants, hath alwaies bene the key of the realme, and bene much esteemed of the Maisters of this Island, to whom the Messinoises haue most commonly done great seruices, beginning from the first time of the Romans, from whom they obtained great immunities and freedoms, and so continued the same course with other princes, so as there is not any subiect towne in the world, which hath so great, and such important priuiledges as this. We must adde hereunto, a natural inclination of the Messinoises to the preservation thereof : the troubles of the Vice-roys haue most commonly growne by the breach of their priuiledges, wherein they are so resolute, as they will indure all extremities, rather than see them infringed.

There are three Soueraigne Seates, or Iurisdiccions in Sicile, which mannage all matters of Iustice, the great Court, the sacred Conscience, and the Demeanes or Patrimonic.

In the first, there is a President, six Iudges, the kings Aduocate, and the Protector of the Demeanes which hee pleaseth. The President and the kings Aduocate are most commonly for life, the Iudges are changed euery two yeares. There are three ciuile, and three criminall, which they change at the end of the first yeare, and the ciuile become criminall, and the criminall, ciuill.

The second Seate, called the sacred Conscience, which signifies as much as the court of Appellations, is composed of a regent for life, and of three Iudges, whose offices continue but two yeares, and it is at the disposition of the Vice-roy to appoint the Iudges of other causes.

The third Court or Iurisdiction called the Demeanes or Patrimonic, which is like vnto the Chamber at Rome, or the Summarie at Naples, hath a President, a Conseruator, a Protector, a Iudge, and foure Maisters of Accomps ; and for that of necessitie all the Officers of the said three Courts (except the Conseruator, and Protector of the Demeanes, who may be strangers) must be borne within the realme, or haue married Sicilian wives, and dwell there, there followes of necessitie a suspicion of a thousand designs and interests, which they may haue in causes which they manage : so as to preuent all inconueniences which might happen, and for the indemnitie of Iustice, and the reuenues, the Vice-roy must of necessitie assist thrice a weeke, in all causes that are handled before these Magistrates, giuing one day for ciuile causes, another for criminall, and the third for the demeanes, or reuenues.

Matters of Iustice are thus handled by persons, to whom the Vice-roy giues great authoritie, according to occasions, and especially in criminall causes, and they that exercise this Iurisdiction, are called Captaines at armes. These Captaines are of three sorts : the first is of them that are deputed to pursue banished men, which are accustomed to bee foure, with some souldiers on horse backe, who are also paid : the second, is of them that the Vice-roy appoints for a time to examine and punish a crime : the third is, when as the Vice-roy sends one of the demeanes, and to the end he may see matters executed he giues him the powre of a capitaine at armes. There is also a fourth kinde, when as by reason of any occurrences of warre, the Vice-roy giues the three valles of the realme in gouernment : Into euery one of these valles he sends a nobelman, when there is any suspicion of warre, with a certaine number of foot and horse, and great authoritie, as well ciuile, as criminall. These noblemen are also called captains at armes : but if they be great men, as Dukes, or Princes, the Vice-roy doth honor them with the title of Lieutenant.

Many times the Vice-roy giues so great authoritie to captaines at armes sent against banished men, as they commit great insolences, and are the cause of a Sindication which followes, by the which they are deposed, and rigorously punished, and he much blamed that hath employed them : wherefore, it shalbe fit for him to retrain their rashnes, who

are

are more prejudiciall to a realme, than banished men themselves, if the Vice-roy keeps A them not in awe.

Besides the said officers, there are two other priuat iurisdictiones at Messina and Palermo; at Messina there is a Court established by the king, with Iudges, and foueraigne authorities, as well in ciuile as criminall causes; and Palermo hath a Pretor for ciuile causes, and a Capraine for criminall. No Citizen may be drawne out of his iurisdiction, and if a cause of the Territorie of Palermo be in the great Court, it shalbe sent back to the court of Palermo, and the like is done with them of Messina.

There is also another member of Iustice, which consists in the Audience, as well publique as priuate, which the Vice roy giues; wherein hee dispatches many causes summarily, and fully, as they say. This Audience is the dailey bread of this realme, and the first and personall touch of the Vice-roys wisdom and iudgement, especially, at his entring into his gouernment, for that a generall impression is of very great importance.

There is the kings sacred Councell, whereas all the Officers of the great Court of the Demeanes sit, and sometimes the Master of the Portulane. This Councell is assembled for matters of great importance, whenas the Court alone, or that of the Demeanes may be suspected, and whenas the Vice-roy will proceede, with greater assurance of Iudication, in some dangerous particularities, or whenas they are to make any good prouision for occasions of waite.

In the Court of the Demeanes, they are to keepe an account of the kings revenues, C as well of that which comes in, as of that which goes out of his cofers. In the businesse of the imposition for wheat, which is treated of in the Court of the Demeanes, there are foure things to be observed, that is, the quantitie of wheate, the price which is giuen, the requests which are made from abroad, and the quantitie of the ordinarie newly imposed.

The quantitie of wheate comes to the Vice-roys knowledge, either by reuelation, or by the estimate, and computation of their harvest. Reuelation is, whenas the Vice-roy sends forth commissioners, forcing every man to discouer his wheate, wherein there is alwaies some fraude committed. The Estimate of the harvest is made after this manner; they make account, that they sowe in Sicile a thousand charges of wheate, and then they D may not transport any thing, for that they shall haue neede of it in the Island to feede the inhabitants, and for their feede: but if they finde they haue a million of charges in the ende of their harvest, then may they vent out two hundred thousand, vnlesse the king will retaine some part for good respects. And if the harvest be of the third kinde, the realme shall haue a million and two hundred thousand charges of wheate, whereof they may draw forth foure hundred thousand charges.

The price riseth from the quantitie, which is set by persons deputed by the Vice-roy, who are iudicious and of a good conscience, and this is the second consideration.

The third consideration is of requests which comes from abroad, whereof the king must be well aduertised, before that he doth publish the new impost.

The fourth consideration, is the quantitie of the ordinarie, that is to say, the charge which doth alwaies followe the transportations without other imposition, and this must be knowne, to be able to make the desigine of a new impost.

Touching this businesse for wheate, there is a principall Commissarie called the Master Portulane, who hath a particular charge, and there are other Portulanes vnder his iurisdiction, yet they are not created by him, but by the Vice-roy: To him all the Vice-roys letters touching the transportation of wheate and such like matters, are directed. There are eight Chargers within the realme, five principall, and three that haue but small dealings. First men bring their wheate vnto these Chargers, to be deliuered into the ships: Euery Charger hath a Keeper of his Magazine or Storehouse, which is an office that the King giues, and he payes well for it that will haue it, for the profit is great that the increase of graine brings vnto him; and for this, hee giues good caution and assurance. This Maffie being deliuered vnto the Chargers is called the heape, and there is nothing that

A that doth sooner mutine them of the Island, than when the Vice roy doth touche this heape.

Affaires, by reason of the reuenues, are troublesome to the Vice-roy, and bring danger to his reputation; they are troublesome, for that the kings necessities force him to be sharpe, and a bad payer of his debts: from whence growes, the common discontent of those which haue credit in Court, and the continuall complaints which come vnto the kings eares, the which are such, many times, as it were fit they were satisfied. The danger growes only from the businesse of wheate, whereof they treat in the Court of the Demeanes, for interests of rates: for that the officers haue alwaies some desigine, and the Vice-roys resolution is of verie great importance: wherefore, he must be verie well informed of this particularitie, least they draw him to some inconuenience by his conclusions.

Sometimes vpon complaint made by them of the Island vnto the king, there are commissioners sent, to examine and censure the actions of the Vice roy, his fauorites, and officers, and this is called a Syndication. This Syndication, may iustly be termed the gard of iustice and lawes, the remedie of grieuances, the bridle of officers, the generall content of the whole people, and the greatest signe of the princes holie intention. For this cause they are all inclined to send often, and to graunt it willingly when the Estates demand it. But for that so good a medicine is giuen with contrarie conditions to that it ought to worke any good effect; it happens that commonly it is more hurtfull, than the disease it selfe. This Syndication comes into Sicile, either sent by the king vpon his owne motion, or demanded by the Realme. The first is bad, but the second is much worse; for that of necessity, when the king is moued of himselfe to send a Syndicke or Censor into any Estate, he must hold the gouernour to be a weak man, or subiect to his owne profit, or both; and the Syndicks which know the Princes thought, by the force of their instructions, doe afterwards hold that course in their proceeding, as they force the Vice-roy to depart with losse, or to remaine with disgrace and shame.

As for the Syndication which is required by the realme, the king doth presently conceiue one of the aforesaid opinions, if he haue it not before: and moreover, he finds that D they beare him little respect in that estate, and that either through the sufferance of his bad officers, or by his owne want of iudgement, he hath so offended euery man, as he hath little hope remaining for defence.

¶ The Religion, and that which concerns the Church.

THE inhabitants of this Island follow the Romish Religion: They haue the fathers, Inquisitors, who are appointed there, to haue a care of matters of Religion, and the faith. They call their iurisdictiones the holie office. The prelates haue great authoritie in this Island, and shew what credit they haue among the people in their parliaments, where as they contradict the Vice-Roy openly, and debate with him of his demands, as they thinke the peoples estate doth require. There are three Archbishopsricks, that is to say, Palermo, Messina, and Montroyall, who haue Bishopsricks vnder them. For the Archbishop of Palermo hath vnder him the Bishops of Agrigentum, Mazara, and Malta. The Archbishop of Messina hath vnder him the Bishops of Lipfalea, Pace, Lipari, Parre, and S. Marc. The Archbishop of Montroyall hath vnder him the Bishops of Siracusa, and Catania.

¶ The Kings.

THE same that haue inioyed or contended for the Realme of Naples, haue also held and contended for the Realme of Sicile.

The



THE ISLAND OF SARDINIA.

The Contents.

Description of this Island, her length, breadth, and vnder what Climat. Little inhabited for the pestilent ayre. Among other singularities there are Muscrons whose skins serue to make Targets: and the beaue Sardonica, which makes men aye-lauing. 11. Manners of the ancient and moderne inhabitants of Sardinia; their riches and meane forces. The government, religion, and number of Archbishops, like vnto that of Sicile. And how after possession of diuers Nations it was united to the Crowne of Spaine.

Sardinia is a great Island, and almost like vnto Sicile; it extends from North to South in length, and is onlie eight miles distant from the Island of Corsica. Vpon the East, it hath the Tuscane sea, and of that side lyes Sicile, distant from it some two hundred miles. Vpon the South, it is bounded in by the sea of Africk, from the which, it is about one hundred and sixtie miles: and on the West, it hath the Sea of Sardinia. The Moderns giue it two hundred and fortie miles in length, and ninetie in bredth, and in circuit fise hundred. It is vnder the fourth Climat, and comprehends the eleuenth and twelfth Paralell, where the longest day in the yeare is of fouretee houres and almost three quarters.

¶ Qualitie of the Countrie.

This Island is diuided into two Regions or parts, that is to say, into the Cape of Calaris, which lyes towards Corsica, where it is somewhat rough and hillie: and into the Cape of Lugudor, which lookes towards Africke. This Island beares fruit of all sorts, and it abounds in Corne, yea it would equall Sicile, if it were well manured: It hath also siluer; but the ayre is so bad, as it is well inhabited, for that the plague doth breed ordinarily there; the which happens in summer, and in the most fertile places, that is to say, at cape Lugudor, where there are many Moores & Marishes: for as for the cape of Calaris, which is hillie, as we haue said, and subiect to the Northerly wind, the ayre is better. They haue store of cattle, and they send forth corne, hides, cheefe, and they make excellent white wines: They haue no oyle of olives, by the negligence of the inhabitants, who dresse their meat with sewer, and make oyle of Linseed, or of Lintills. Amongst other beasts, they haue the Muscrons, which are not found in any other part of Europe: their skins and haire is like vnto the flegge, or as Strabo saith, a goat, and their homes like to a sheepe, but bending backward: they liue in the mountaines, and run verie swiftly, their

Askins being drest, are those which are called Cordouants. There are great store of wild Boares, Stages, and wild Goats for hunting; they haue no hurtfull beasts, except the Fox, and another litle creature like vnto the Spider. It breeds good store of horses, which be not great, but yet they are strong and courageous. In this Island, there growes an herbe called Rianuncula, in old time Sardonica, which doth shrinke vp the finewes of them that eat it, and makes them die in such sort, as they seeme to laughe euen at the last gaspe. They keepe their raine water in Winter, for their vse in Sommer, for then they want it. There are pooles and lakes full of fish, and in like manner fountaines of hore water, which are very good and wholesome. There are also Mines of Sulphure, Alum, and Salte.

¶ The Manners of the Ancient.

The Carthaginians (who made themselves maisters of Sardinia) would not suffer them that were borne in the countrie to till and manure the ground: The Sarrazins haue held it, and then the Pisans, and lastly it fell into the hands of the kings of Arragon, so as now the king of Spaine carries it among his other titles; and they haue liued sometimes after one sorte, sometimes after another, according to the Conquerors nature and disposition.

The Manners of them at this day.

The Inhabitants of Sardinia are strong of bodie, and of a browne and swart complexion, by reason of the heat of the sunne. They are not very ciuile, and are much giuen to labour and to hunting: they eat grosse meats willingly; but they intrcat strangers courteously and liue quietly among them, yet some say that they are full of cruelty. They are much giuen to theeuing and piracie at Sea.

¶ The Riches.

They make good store of monie of their wine which they carrie to Rome, and of their horses, which they sell at a good rate to strangers, they are also courageous and of great toile. They make also some monie of their Muscrons skins, which they carrie into Italie.

¶ The Forces.

The king of Spaine doth alwaies entertain some garriisons in this Island, but the small number of the Inhabitants will alwaies make it to bee of lesse force. Calaris is the chiefe of the whole Island, it is a good towne and well fortified, seated vpon a hill, and hath vnder it a goodly and spacious Port. There is also Oristagne, the which is not well peopled, by reason of the bad qualitie of the aire which growes by the neerenesse of the fennes: it hath a port, and a riuer neere vnto it, which is the greatest of the whole Island. Then haue you Saffari, a towne of importance, where there is an Aqueduct to be seene that is twelue miles long. VVe may not omit Alghes-Bofa, a good towne, a wholesome aire, and a fertile countrie, with a spacious haven where the ships of Genoa and of Catalonia doe commonly lie. Besides this Port which is six miles long, the Island hath two others able to receiue any armie, the one is that of Cape Gallea, and the other Carbonara, both desart. There are other townes in the Island, as Chia, Orroxia, and other strong places.

¶ The Government.

The king of Spaine hath a Vice-roy in this Island, who remains at Calaris, and disposeth of all things. The Iustice is in a manner like vnto that which is practised in Sicile.

¶ The Religion, and that which concerns the Church.

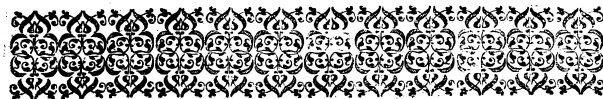
The Sardinians are Romish Catholics, and there are Inquisitors in this Island, as in that of Sicile. There are three Archbishops, that is to say, he of Calaris, who hath vnder him the Bishops of Sulo, Dolia, and Puella: He of Sassari, who hath vnder him the Bishops of Sora, Pionata, Ampuria, Giface, or Gerarda, Castre, Othae, and Bosane: He of Albore hath vnder him the Bishops of Viffella, Saint Iuste, and Terra Alba: They of Suitta and Galtella are priuiledged.

¶ The Princes.

The Carthaginians posselt this Island, but they were expelled by the Romans: The Sarazens invaded it afterwards, vpon the declining of the Romane Empire; after which, it was taken by the Genuois and the Pisans, and the Pope hauing wrecked it out of their hands, gaue it in fief to the king of Arragon, and by this meanes it came into the power of the king of Spaine.

The

A



THE ESTATE OF MILAN.

The Contents.

Circuit of the Duchie of Milan: The chiefe townes: among others Milan peopled with two hundred thousand inhabitants: in former times posselt by the Gaules, Romans, Gothes, Huns, Lombards, and others, and how in the end it came into the hands of the kings of Spaine. 11. Rice growing in abundance neere vnto Milan. Fertilitye of the soyle of Pavia, and therefore called the Garcen of Milan. 111. Milanois fit for armes, learning, and merchandize. 1111. What number of duckats the king of Spaine drawes yearly out of the Duchie of Milan, besides the free gifts. V. What souldiers both horse and foot he hath continually in pay there. VI. Milanois ruled by a governor, and by the Senat of Milan, consisting of twelue Doctors, some Prelats, and certaine gentlemen Milanois. VII. Genealogie of the Dukes of Milan.

The Duchie of Milan hath in circuit about three hundred miles. The chiefe townie is Milan, from whence the whole Duchie hath taken the name. This citie is verie well peopled, mighty, and strong seated in a pleasant and good situation, and it is at this day held, one of the chiefe cities of Europe. They number in it two hundred thousand inhabitants. The suburbs are verie long and large; and make it much greater, and these suburbs are enuironed with water as well as the citie, by two great channels, the one drawne from the riuier of Tefin, and the other from Adda, the which doe water their meadowes and fields, and make them verie fruitful. By these channels, boats bring all things to Milan in so great abundance, as they are at a reasonable rate. The buildings are faire and stately, and there are in it a number of great and rich families. There haue come out of this citie foure Popes, Alexander the second, Urban the third, Celestin the fifth, and in our time Gregorie. They admire three things in this citie for their magnificence and stateliness, the Castle, the Domo or Cathedral Church, and the Hospitall. Cremona stands in this Duchie, where there are goodly buildings, as well publike as priuat: and the towne of Lodi, which is rich. But these townes yeeld in greatnesse to Pavia, a good and an ancient towne, sometimes the abode of the Lombard kings, in which there is an Vniuersitie.

There is also Nouara seated vpon a little hill, wherein there are noble families: and Coma a rich townie, which giues her name vnto a great Lake, which in old time was called Larius Lacus. In winter it hath two armes, whereof the one runs from the South vnto the West, towards Como; and the other to the East, towards Leuca, whereas the riuier of Adda hath her passage. Strabo writes, that it hath eight and thirtie miles in length, and foure in bredth. The riuier of Adda passeth through the middest of this Lake, and yet their waters doe not mingle, but the riuier doth float ouer the other. There

Q ij

arg

are many castles and villages about this lake, which doe beautifie the place and make it exceeding pleasant. There is also an Island called Comacina, in the which there was in former times a fort, whereas the kings of the Lombards did keepe their treasure and jewels, as in a safe custodie. The towne of Como is famous, rich, and abounding in all things necessarīe for the life of man: The inhabitants are carefull and industrious to be rich.

The citie of Milan was for a long time vnder the dominion of the Gaules, vntill that *M. Marcellus* the Consull, hauing defeated *Virdumarus* king of the Insulbrians, made it subiect to the Romans. The power of the Emperours growing weak, this citie was spoiled by many barbarous Nations, that is to say, by the Gothes, Huns, and Lombards. These last being expelled Italie by *Charles* the Great, this citie obeyed the kings of France, and afterwards the Emperours of Germanie. In the end it rebelled in the times of *Frederick* the first, and *Frederick* the second, Emperours, and had new lords, that is to say, the *Galeses*, *Viscontes*, who had the title of Dukes given them afterward by the Emperour *Wenceslaus*, in the year 1395. These comming to faile, the *Sforces* succeeded in their place, who ended in the person of *Francis*. The French kings haue long held this citie, but in the end it fell into the hands of the King of Spaine, with the whole Duchie, whereunto notwithstanding, the French kings doe rightly pretend, as doth appear by the Genealogie of the Dukes of Milan.

¶ The Qualitie of the Countrie.

II. There are many Lakes in this Countrie, and a great number of Rivers; the fields yeeld abundance of Corne. There grows also verie good wine, and all sorts of fruits, and the Rivers and Lakes feed great store of fish. Neere vnto Milan, there grows such plentie of Rice, as it is not possible there should be more in the like quantitie of ground. Neere vnto Cremona, there is store of Corne and Wine, and all sorts of fruit, of millet, and flax in great abundance. Neere vnto Lodi, there is so much Rye, Millet, Wine, Flax, and fruits, as it is not possible to be more; and besides, there are many meadows, whereas they feede great numbers of cattell. The Countrie about Pauc is so fertile, and so full of all fruits, and pasture, as they call it the Garden of Milan: there is also great store of Wildfoule, and abundance of fish. There can be nothing seene more pleasing, nor of greater profit, than the Countrie which is neere vnto Como.

¶ The Manners of the inhabitants.

III. This Countrie breeds men fit for learning, armes, and merchandise, yet in some places they are grosse and rude. They of Cremona haue the reputation to be faithfull. The people of Milan are wonderfully industrious. They of Lodi are fit for merchandise and armes, and to gather wealth. And they which liue neere vnto Como, loue labour, and are full of industrie. They teame the women of Pauc to be couetous, and desirous of gaine; them of Milan, ciuile and courteous; them of Lodi, superstitious; and the women of Cremona sumptuous.

¶ The Riches.

IIII. Milan is so full of all sorts of Artizans and Handicraftsmen, as they say commonly, That who so will accommodat Italie, must ruine Milan. And these workmen are so industrious, and make euerie thing so well, as whatsoever goes from this citie is held in great esteeme. For we know well what price is giuen for harquebuzes of Milan, and for all sorts of Armes that come from thence, for hilts of swords which are much regarded, for girdles and hangers, for lace, and for imbroderies. So as we must confesse, that this citie doth draw a great masse of money from all the rest of Europe: adding hereto their silke stockings, which are much esteemed, and their Rice, which they impart

A impart vnto many other Prouinces: after this, Lode makes such store of Cheefe, as it is sent vnto many other parts of Italie; and to be short, Milan doth furnishe the Grifons and Suiffes with much of her fruit, and is supplied of all that is necessarīe with excesse.

The king of Spaine receiues from this Estate yearly eight hundred thousand ducats of ordinarie, besides the free gifts and other extraordinarie matters: And to shew, that this king can tell how to draw as much as is possible from this Estate, or that his officers make it for him, the prouerbe of Italie saith, That the officer of Sicile doth gnaw, He of Naples doth eate, but He of Milan doth deuour.

¶ The Forces.

V. The king of Spaine doth entertaine continually in this Estate three thousand foote (Spaniards) one thousand light horse, and six hundred men at armes, for the guard thereof. The great numbers of people would much fortifie this Estate, if they did loue the Spaniard: but some hold, that their actions are so vnpleasing vnto these people, as there is not any one whom they hate more, so as if they were not kept in awe, they might well attempt some inuouation against them that rule ouer them. There are good Forts in this Estate, whereof the castle of Milan is the first. The gouernor draws great summes of money from the king of Spaine yearly, to augment the fortification of this place, which is able to make great resistance. Cremona hath as strong a towne as may be seene, which they doe number among the maruels of Europe. Pauc and Nouara, in like manner, are good places. There are also many other strong places in this Estate, but the Spaniards relie chiefly vpon the Castle of Milan, holding themselves inuincible by reason of this Fort.

The king of Spaine hath no cause to feare any in regard of Milan, but the Venetians, who haue remained a long time quiet, and as it seemes demand nothing but rest; or the duke of Sauoy, who may much annoy him, either by entering suddenly into this Estate, being assisted by some greater prince, or else in giuing passage to those that would undertake to inuade it: but the Alliance which is betwixt them two may free him from all D feare. Or else hee may feare the Suiffes, who haue many times safely vsurped many good members of this Estate; but the Fort of Fuentes, and the good order which the Gouernour of this Estate doth set, will alwaies diuert them, as well as the Grifons, from any attempt.

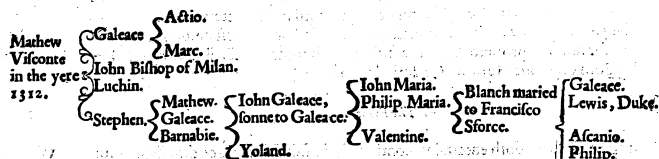
¶ The Government.

VI. The king of Spaine hath a Gouernor in this Duchie, who is also Capitaine Generall of the horse and horse which are entertained there, and carries the title. The knowledge of causes both ciuile and criminall, depends of the Senat of Milan, where there are twelve Doctors, and certaine Prelats, and gentlemen Milanois.

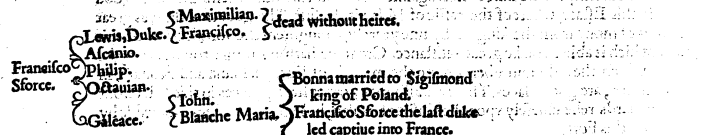
¶ The

Genealogie

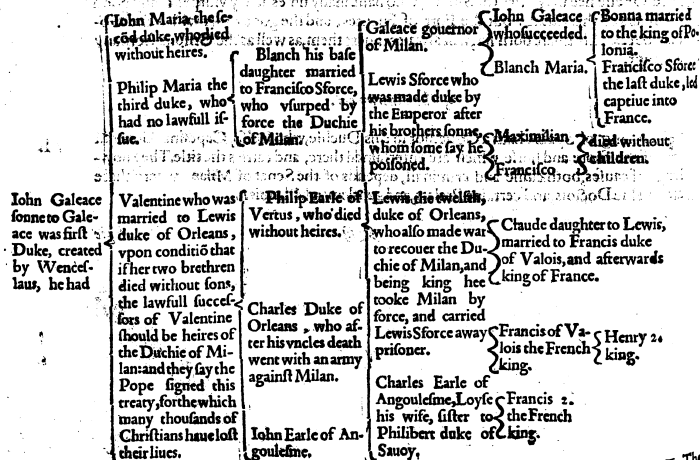
Genealogie of the Dukes of Milan.



Genealogie of Sforce.



By what right the King of France pretends the Duchie of Milan.



A

The Islands of the Canaries.

The Ancients place these Islands in the Atlantick sea, & call them the Fortunat Islands, but they do not agree in their names. And moderne writers are verie different from the ancient, touching their disposition & situation. They were unknown since the ruin of the Roman Empire, vntill that a French gentleman called *Iohn* of Betancorte made conquest of some of them, in the yere 1405, which conquest was afterwards continued by *D. Fernando de Castro*, by the order of the infant, *D. Henrique* of Portugal, who sent a good armie thither in the yere 1444. Some reckon they are seuen in number, that is to say, the great Canarie, Lanfarte, Forteuente, Teneriffe, Gomera, Fierral, and Palma: Others add vnto these, Gratiola, S. Clara, Roca, Lobos, Alegrança, and Inferno. The great Canarie hath ninetie thousand Stades in circuit, & hath about nine thousand inhabitants. Teneriffe is somewhat lesse, it hath a mountaine in it called the Pike, so high as it may be seene about fortie leagues off. Palma is a small Island, but verie pleasing.

The Qualitie of the Countrey.

The Islands abound in barley, hony, wax, sugar, cheefe, sheepe, goats, and camells, and they haue great store of hides. Among other things there growes a hearbe called *Oricela*, which is verie good to dye red, whereof they vent a great quantitie into all the parts of Europe. The Island of Palma, which is verie small, hath notwithstanding great commodities, and doth abound in wine, cheefe, cattell and sugar. By reason whereof they that come from Spaine vnto Brasil furnish themselves here with such victuals as they want. The Island of Fierral hath neither fountaine nor well, but God hath provided them miraculously of water, from a cloud which doth couer a tree, from whence doth distill so much liquor, as may suffice for men and beasts, yea and to water their lands. This cloud beginneth to rise an houre or two before the Sun rising, and continues as long as the Sunne setteth, and the humor falls continually vpon the leaues, which distills this liquor continually into a channe which they haue vnder it to receiue the water.

The Manners.

The inhabitants, whom they call Ganches, were in former times so grosse and rude, as they knew not the vse of fire. They did beleue in one Creator of the world who rewarded the good, and did punish the wicked, and herein they all agreed, but in other things they disagreed much. They had no yron, but did esteeme it much (if any came to their hands) for vnder. They made no account of gold or siluer, saying, that it was a madnesse to esteeme that which could not serue for any mechanicke instrument. They did shape their houses of such certain flint stones, and their armes were stones and stauies: but at this day, they are growne more ciuile and witty, and are of an active disposition, since that the Spaniards haue frequented those Islands; whereof Lanzarotta, Fierral, or Hierro, and Gomera, belong to priuats men: the rest are subiect to the Crowne of Spaine.

The Riches.

The Islands of the Canaries vent their excellent wines into all Europe, as also, their sugar, for which the Spaniards and Italian Merchant come thither to buy it, and transport it to other places. And to this effect there is a place called by them the *Asola*.

The

The

¶ The Government.

There is in the Island of great Canaria, a seat of justice, whereas they heare all causes, and doe justice to the other Islands. The lawes of Spaine are practised there.

¶ The Religion, and masters which concerne the Church.

The people of this countrey in former times did worship the Sun, Moone, and Stars: but the Spaniards having made themselves Maisters thereof, in the year 1404, led the faith there with their dominion, so as at this day they are all Christians. The Bishop of these Islands hath his residence in the great Canaria, with the Inquisitors of the faith.

¶ The Islands of Cape Verd.

Some thinke that these be the ancient Islands of Hesperides: They have taken the name of Cape Verd, from Cape d'Africa, which stretcheth it selfe into the sea, right against the said towne. They beaine in number, and were discovered, in the year 1455, by Lewis Cadamuste, others write, that they were found out by Antonio de Noli a Genoensis, and began to be peopled in the year 1440. Their names are, Saint James, and C. Fucogo; or the Island of Fire, S. Anthony, S. Luce, S. Vincent, S. Nicholas, Sel, Bonauilla, and May. The chiefest Island is that of S. James, the which is seuentie miles long: The Portugals have in this Island a good towne, which is called Ribera Grande, and hath in it about fife hundred families: There is and a spacious Port, it is situated between two mountaines, there is a River which waters it, the which doth rise some two leagues from the citie, whose banks are full of Cedars, Oranges, and divers other plants, among which, the Indian Palme tree, which beares Dates, growes verie well. The Island of S. James is generally rough and hillie, but it hath good and pleasaunt vales, the which are verie well peopled. They have good store of Rice there and Millet, which grows ripe in fortie dayes, whereas doth not prosper well: they have cotton, the cloth whereof, they vent vpon the coast of Africa. They heave generally throughout this Island store of goats, which euery four months haue three Kys or more. There are also great store of Tortoises, whose shels are as big as a Target.

When as the Sunne passeth into Cancer, it raines in a manner continually there. Vpon the West of Saint James, is the Island of Fire, and that of Brava, of small importance, yet the Island of Fire hath some dwellings in it, and vpon the North, is the Island of May, where there is a broad Lake, two leagues long, full of salt, a common thing in those Islands, and there is one hath more of those salt pans, than all the rest, and therefore it was called the Island of salt, which is otherwise barren, but onely of wild goats. Bonauilla hath a name coherent to her qualitie, for that it is without any great abundance. There is nothing worthe observation in the other Islands. Vpon the West of Cape Verd is the Island of Palma.

¶ The Islands of the Prince.

This Island del Principe stands three degrees from the Equinoctiall Northward; it is so called, for that the reuenues thereof were assigned to the Prince of Portugal for his maintenance. It lies from the Island of S. Thomas Northward one hundred and five miles, it is little, but good, and therefore reasonably well manured, their greatest wealth groweth by sugar, whereof they send great store into other countreies: There grows also a kind of Palme tree, from whence the inhabitants draw a certaine liquor, which serues them for drinke, and doth quench their thirst.

¶ Mozambique.

Mozambique is distant from the firme land about halfe a mile: It is a towne situated in the Island of Prase, which Island contains in bignesse about halfe a mile, and is plaine. There is a very good Port, whereas the Portugals ships lie without danger, having a Fort which couers them.

¶ The qualitie of the countrey.

This Island carries Palme trees, and Indyan nuts, Limons and Figges. As for other fruits they haue not many: and they bring vnto them wheat, rice, and other necessarie things from the Indies. They haue great store of Beecues, and sheepe, which haue broad tailes and very waightie, goats, hogges, hens and such like. The flesh of their foules exceeding blacke, but of a very good tast. This Island stands in the mouth of a riuer which they call Mogincates, in the fifteenth degree to the South: it hath no fresh water, but what they bring from the maine Land, from a place which the Portugals call Cabafera, and for this cause they haue great cisterns and pots wherein they keepe their water. The ayre of Mozambique is hot and vnwholesome, so as many times passengers which stay there fall sicke.

¶ Their Manners.

There are in this Island some fortie or fiftie Portugals which are married there, and dwell commonly in this Island; these men liue after the manner of their owne countrey. Besides these fortie or fiftie Portugals, and the Mestiz which are ingendered of Indian women by Portugals, there are some foure hundred families of Negros which dwell there, and their houses are couered with straw: these liue partly after the manner of the Portugals, and partly like the other Negros. But they that liue betwixt Mozambique and the Cape of Good Hope, are altogether barbarous and sauage, without either God or law. They all go generally naked, and the men haue only a little peece of cloth which couers their priue parts, and the women from the middest of their breest vnto the middest of their thighes couer themselves with a certaine peece of course cotton, but they that liue within the firme land hide not any part of their bodies. At Mozambique, they make their greatest quantities of swines flesh, and doe not forbid it to any sicke person, as they doe all other kinde of flesh. It is not lawfull for any one to liue in this Island vnlesse hee marrie. The tyrant or King of Quiloe, was sometimes master thereof, and the Mahometans dwell there vnder a gouernour, whom the Arabians call Zequen.

¶ The Riches.

There is a mine of gold neere to Sofale, which is three score French leagues from Mozambique, towards the Cape of Good Hope; there is much gold drawne out of this mine, and an other kind of gold which they call Boongo, and Ouro Po, that is to say, poulder of gold, for that this gold is thinne, like vnto sand, and yet as good as any that comes from the East. The gouernour of Mozambique hath a Lieutenant which remains in the Port of Sofale, and sends vessells called Pangajos to Mozambique, which goe along the coast and carrie gold to the gouernour. These vessells are made of alight wood, and the boards are ioined together with thred, having but one nail onely to hold them. The mines which are neere vnto Angola are on the other side of Africa, distant from those of Sofale about one hundred and fiftie leagues, and the Negros doe often goe thither by land, to bring gold to Sofale. The profit which the gouernour of Mozambique drawes in three yeares, is about three hundred thousand ducats and more, which is counted to be nine times of gold: and this profit growes chiefly from the mines of Sofale.

Sofale and Angola. They carrie from Mozambique to the Indies, gold, ambergreece, A hebene, and iuorie, and in like manner a great number of flaues, who are very strong and fit to endure labour.

¶ The Forces.

THe Portugals haue a Fort in this Island, which was made perfect in ten or twelue yeares, it is as well fortified as any one that is in all those parts. But there is very small store of Arillerie, and munition for warre; neither are there many souldiers. Notwithstanding, at any time of neede, all the Portugals which dwell in this Island are bound to defend this Fort, for that there is not any other place of strength in this Island. By meanes of this Fort, the Portugals haue made themselves masters of the trafficke of all the neighbour countries, which abound with gold and iuorie: and by meanes thereof, they make their voiajes to the Indies more easie, for their ships doe winter at this Island, and refresh themselves there. Within the Fort of this Island there are many cellars to preserve water, where they haue alwaies prouision for a whole yeare.

¶ The Government.

THe gouernours charge which is sent to Mozambique continues three yeares, at the end whereof an other succeeds him. It is the custome of the Portugals, not to continue their officers longer in any charge, but to substitute others in their places. They are chosen among them, whom the king of Spaine hath imployed in his Indian fleets, for that they are recompenced for the seruice they haue done by the meanes of these offices, for the which they haue good entertainments, beside the profit which they may make by the meanes of that wherein they are imployed, and the place where they remain; and this profit cannot be small, for that the officers doe all things at their pleasures. The ships passe once a yeare from Mozambique vnto the Indies, that is to say, in August, and they retorne againe in Aprill, neither may any one be admitted to this trade but those that are married at Mozambique.

¶ The Religion.

Some of the Negros which remaine in the Island of Prae, whereas Mozambique stands, are Christians, but the rest hold the Mahometane law, and the opinion received by the Turkes, who had bin in those countries before the Portugals. But they whom they call *Mestiz* are all very affectionate to the Romish religion.

¶ The towne of Ormus.

IPlace Ormus in the Monarchie of Spaine, for that it is tributarie to the Spaniards, who haue the best place in all the Island: and to auoid many repetitions, Ormus hath of the one side, the realme of Persia towards the North, and on the other side, Arabia. This Island is twentie miles broad, it lies at the mouth of the Persian Gulfe, and is in the seven and twentieth degree of height.

¶ The Qualitie.

This Island is full of rocks, stonie, and in a manner barren, where there is not any grasse to be seene. The rocks are all covered with salt, and their houses built of salt stones. It beares not any fruit, but receiues all kind of victuals from Arabia, Persia, and the towne of Bassora. Their Winter is like vnto that in Portugal, but in Sommer, at the same time it is so extremely hot, as the people are forced to rest themselves in certaine channells covered with wood, which are full of water, wherein they plunge their whole bodies

Abodies, hauing nothing out but their heads. The coverings of their houses are flat, and pierced with holes, to receiue the coolnesse of the wind and ayre, as at Cayre. The water which they drinke, is brought from the maine land. There is a certaine disease which raines at Ormus, which is such, as there breeds wormes in their thighs which are touched therewith, and these wormes proceed only from the water which they drinke; they are like vnto Lute strings, and are two or three ells long: they are drawne forth by little and little, causing them to urne with a straw, which they doe willingly follow; but when as they resist they must deale no more with them, but only tie that which they haue drawne forth, and rubbe the swelling beneath the hole with sweet butter, and in this manner their thighs are freed from these wormes in tenne or twelue dayes. If any one breaks one of these wormes, he feels most violent torments.

¶ The Manners.

The inhabitants of the Realme of Ormus, participat of the humours of the Persians and Arabians, but I will not make any long discourse of their manners and humors, but will speake more particularly thereof when I shall come to the realme of Persia, and shall treat of Arabia.

¶ The Riches.

By reason of the situation, and commoditie of this Island, it abounds in all things, and is frequented by the merchants of Persia, Arabia, Turkie, and the Indies, and with all the neighbour countries; but the greatest numbers are of Armenians, Persians, they of Asia, and the Venetians, who are verie curious to recouer the precious stones which come to Ormus from the Indies, and they retorne from Ormus to Venice by Iap. They bring to this Island, from Persia, Coracon, and Dias, goodly tapistries which they call *Alcaunes*, and Grogerians of diuers sorts from Turkie; in like manner from Arabia, many herbes and phisicall drugges, Dragons blood, Manna, Mirre, Incense, and excellent horses from Baren, with many goodly pearles from Mascatte, which is a Port betwixt the Capes of Rosalgate & Moncadon vpon the Arabian shore. Moreouer, they bring dried raylons, and dates of diuers kinds, with marmalade, the which is afterward sent from Ormus to the Indies, by which meanes they are all furnished. They doe also make great profit at Ormus vpon the Larins, which is a kind of coyne of Persia, long, and ending as it were in two branches. The cause of the great concourse of people to Ormus is this: There are two troupees which assemble euerie yeare to go thither by land; they are called *Camites*, or *Carauanes*, and they part from Aleppo a towne in Syria to go to Tripoli, which is within three daies journey. The *Carauane* obserues this order: euerie yeare in Aprill and September they chuse a capitaine with a hundred Ianifaries, E who conduct the *Carauane* vnto the towne of Bassora, from whence they go by sea vnto Ormus without any difficultie. The merchants know well the time of the *Carauanes* departure, at what times there will be a great multitude of horses, cammels, dromedaries, and so many men ready for this voyage, as sometimes they number fise or six thousand, who march in order like vnto an armie. Euerie camell carries two with their baggage, which passe of either side, and the Ianifaries haue a continuall care least the Arabians should amoy this troupee, as they attempt commonly to doe. They passe a desert, which continues fortie daies journey, and at the end of euerie three or foure dayes they dig pits to water their cartell, and to quench the thirst of men. There are also many Pourcuers which follow the troupee, and sell victuals to them that need. Euerie night they sleepe vnder Pavillions with good Sentinells on euerie side. They come after this manner to Bassora, having passed Babylon, which they now call Bagdadet. They rest some dayes at Bassora, and meet againe in this towne at the time of their retorne, and so go backe to Aleppo after the same manner. And this is the reason of the great trade of merchants and merchandise at Ormus.

The gouernor of Ormus reapes more commoditie than any other at the Indies, except him of Mozambique; for he sends his vessels to Goa, Chaul, Bengala, and Melcata, and there sells his commodities, hauing made an Edict, that no man shall sell any merchandise before the gouernors haue been bought. And this comes not from the king of Spaine, but from the libertie which gouernors take, who vse their authoritie as they please. Moreover, by a priuiledge which the king hath giuen to gouernors, there is no man that may send any horses to the Indians but they, or such as they haue appointed. This brings great profit to the gouernor, for that horses are wonderfull deere at the Indies, so as a horse of a meane bountie shall be sold for foure or five hundred Pardauues, euery one of which, is about a Riches Doller. The most conuenient time to go from Goa to Ormus is in the moneths of Ianuarie, Februarie, March, September, and October.

A Riches is
five shillings
Barling.

¶ The Forces.

The chiefe strength of the realme consists in the Fort which the Portugals haue built there, the which is well fortified, and there are Cesternes in this Fort as in that of Mozambique, by reason that the Island hath great want of water. This Fort is reasonably well furnished with souldiers and Artillerie, to keepe the Mahometans in awe. All other places are of verie small importance.

¶ The Government.

The Portugals gouerne themselves after the maner of their countrie, and the captain or gouernor of the fort carries himselfe, as they doe in other places of those quarters where they obey the king of Spaine. The king of Ormus remains in this Island, but not in the place where as the Portugals are. They that are made kings hold it for a maxime of State in the beginning of their reigne to put out the eyes of their brethren, and of all those of the blood royall, which done, he giues them all the contentment that they can desire, except that which may satisfie the sight: For there is a seled law, that no blind man may gouerne the realme, so as by this means they are freed from all feare of citile warre.

¶ The Religion.

The king of Ormus and all his subjects are Mahometans, and follow the Persian Religion; but they that are Portugals, or issued from Portugals, are verie zealous Catholics: and moreover, there are some of the Countrie which haue bene conuerted by the preachings of father Gaspar Meliur of Zeland.

¶ The Island of Diu.

This Island of Diu, sometimes called Alimbater, is distant from the river Indus five and thirte French leagues. It is one of the most famous Islands in all the sea of Cambaia, diuided from the maine land by a verie narrow channell, so as they passe ouer vnto it by a bridge of stone. The citie lies in the five and twentieth degree. It hath a good and commodious Port, the which is shut vp with a chain: ouer the port there is a strong Fort built by the Portugals.

¶ The Quality of the Islands.

There is small store of fruit in this Island, but it is full of things necessarie for the life of man. There is plentie of oxen, kine, sheepe, foule, butter, milke, garlike, pease, and such like: yet the milke is not so cleane as in other countries. There is also cheefe, but it is verie beastly. The inhabitants haue great store of salt fish, and they smoke their fish, as we doe our neats-tongues.

¶ The

¶ The Manners.

The towne of Diu is inhabited by Portugals, with whom they that are borne in the Province are mingled, as at Ormus and other townes at the Indies which the Portugals hold. Some follow the manners of the Portugals, others hold those of their neighbours, whereof wee shall hereafter make mention: yet the ordinarie conuersation doth daily giue more credit to the fashions of our Europe.

¶ The Riches.

This towne hath a very commodious Port, whither many merchant strangers come, so as it cannot faile to be rich: it lies betwixt two rich countries, Sinde, and Cambaia. There are alwaies great numbers of Turkes, Persians, Armenians, Arabians and others. They pay great customes here vnto the king of Spaine, for that the Banjanes, Gufarates, Rumes, and Persians, which traffique into Cambaia and go towards the red Sea, doe most commonly land and vnlade their ships here, by reason of the commoditie of the Island.

¶ The Forces.

The Portugals haue so well fortified the towne of Diu, as they haue made it in a manner impregnable, whereof they haue made good proofe by two terrible sieges, the one by the Souldan of Cambaia, in the year 1539, and the other by the Gufarates, in the year 1546: but they defended it so well, and interated their enemies in such fort, as they raised the siege with much losse and shame. This towne is Maistris of all the nauigation and traffique of those seas. Some eight leagues from thence is a little Island called Betel, as neere vnto the continent as Diu, and a league in compass, the which a king called *Badurins* thought to compass in with a wall, and to make it a Fort, but *Magno de Aengna* interrupted him, and cut his garrison in peeces.

¶ The Government.

This Island did sometimes obey the kings of Cambaia, being seated in his realme: and this king had suffered the Portugals to build a Fort there, the which he afterwards repented, and fought by treacherie to dispossesse them: but in time the whole Island is come into the Portugals power, who gouerne themselves as in other countries which they hold in those parts.

¶ The Towne of Daman and other places.

This coast of the Indies is properly called the Island of Vaquas vnto the gulf of Cambaia, other places haue their proper names, as Mozambique, Melinda, Ormus, Cambaia, Choromandel, Bengala, Pegu, Malaca and others. This countrie hath many Ports and Islands, which are vnder the Portugals dominion, with diuers strong forts which they haue built there. Daman is the first of all, and fifteene miles from thence and nineteene degrees and a halfe of eleuation, is the towne of Balsajn: ten miles from thence, and in the nineteene degree, is the towne of Chaul, with a good fort: five leagues from thence, is Dabul, which is in the eighteenth degree; and from Dabul vnto the Island of Goa they reckon fifteene leagues, and Goa is in the fifteenth degree. The inhabitants of Goa terme all that countrie which is from Goa vnto Daman, the Northern Region: and that which lies from Goa vnto the Cape of Comorin the Southern; but it is properly called the land of Malaber.

R

¶ The

¶ *The Qualitie of the countrie which is neere Daman, Chaul, and Bafajin.*

All this countrie doth yeeld abundance of rice, peafe, and other pulſes, of oyle, Indian nuts, and plenty of butter: But there is no oyle-oliue to be found in all the East Indies, but what is carried out of Portugal: it hath abundance of all other things necessarie for the life of man: it doth also beare great quantitie of ginger, but they doe not much esteeme it. This countrie called the Northern part doth enioy a temperat airc, yea the best of all the Indies.

¶ *The Riches.*

The Townes of Daman, Chaul, and Bafajin haue very good and commodious Ports, where there is a great concourse of merchants: but Chaul is the most famous for the great commerce it hath with the Inhabitants of Ormus, Cambaia, Sinde, Mastate and Bengola, neere vnto the red Sea. There are in this citie merchants which are exceeding rich, and a great number of ships: in all the countrie they make certaine workes of cotton, but no great store. There is a place neere vnto Chaul, whereas they make many stufes and garments of silke: and this silke is brought from China, and then wrought by the Inhabitants about Chaul, whereof they make great store of money. They doe also make in the same towne Litters and Chaires with wonderfull art.

¶ *The places which the Portugals held vpon the Coast of Malabar.*

The Coast of Malabar, begins at Cape de Ramos, which is ten miles from Goa towards the South, and ends at the Cape of Comorin, in all which space there may be about foure and fiftie French leagues. The Portugals haue in this part the Fort of Onor, ten miles from Cape de Ramos.

¶ *The Qualitie and Riches.*

There is great store of pepper in this place, so as they transport from thence yearly seuen or eight thousand pound weight: and this pepper is held the best of all the Indies. It is not many yeares since they did trafficke thither for pepper; but it is now much in request. The Queene of Baricole (to whom this countrie belongs) sels this pepper, and deliueres it vnto their Factor that transports it, who remains at Onor: but hee must pay his money six months before he can receiue his merchandise. There grows also much rice in this countrie.

¶ *The Force.*

The Fort of Onor, which the Portugals haue here, is not much frequented, but at such times as the ships come to lade pepper; the rest of the time it hath little company: the Fort is reasonable good and well furnished. They haue also along this Coast the Fort of Barzelor, sixe and twentie miles from Onor, where there is much rice and good store of pepper, as at Mangabor, whereas the Portugals haue also a good Fort, nine miles from Barzelor.

¶ *The Fort of Cananor.*

There is also a Fort in Cananor ten miles from Mangalor, and this place is much esteemed, for that they find greater abundance of pepper there than in any of the other places. The Malabares haue neere vnto this Fort a place built after their manner, whereas there is a market kept every day, and abundance of victuals brought thither, especially

A especially great store of foule, egges, butter, honic, oyle, Indian figs, which are particularly called of Cananor, and exceed all others that are at the Indies in greatnesse. There they also sell matts for ships, which are exceeding great and strait, and yeeld nothing to them of Norway, whereof they haue so many as they furnish their neighbour countries. This countrie is full of goodly long trees, which are verie pleasing to the sight. There are many white Moores, Mahometans, among the Malabares, who trafficke towards the red sea. But neither these Moores nor the Indians may trafficke without permission from the Portugals, who doe euerie yeare scoure the sea with a good armie, to free it from pirates: and if they find any vessels without their priuiledge, they carrie them away, and hold them and their merchandise for good price. Finally, the Moores are friends and confederats to the Portugals for feare of their fort, but they conspire secretly against them, and giue money to the Malabares, enemies to the Portugals, to annoy them.

¶ *The Fort of Cochim.*

The Portugals haue also a place verie well fortified in the towne of Cochim, whereas the Vice-roy, and the Bishop of Cochim remaine.

¶ *The Fort of Coulon.*

There is also a fort in Coulon, which is twelue miles from Cochim, whereas they doe euerie yeare lade a ship with pepper.

¶ *The Fort of Colombo in the Island of Zeylan.*

They haue also a strong place in this Island, the which hath bene besieged by a king of Zeylan, and did so resist him, as he returned with great losse. But the Portugals haue no kind of commerce with them of the Island. The gouernor hath not in a manner any profit, but that which growes from the synamon, which the Portugals doe gather forcible in the Island where they may get it, for that it is held the best at the Indies. It is the bark of a tree, which growes like vnto a Bay tree, thin & low, and it is gathered after this manner: They cut the bark off the tree round about, from one knot vnto another, then giuing a slit downe, they pull off the bark with their hand, and set it to drie in the Sun, which makes it to turne as we see it. This tree doth not wither away, but gathers a new bark for the next yere: and that synamon is best which is taken euerie yere, for that which is two or three yeares old, is grosse and not so good. Betwixt the Northem point of Zeylan, and the firme land, ariseth a little Island called Manar, where there is a Fort, built by the Portugals, to secure the fishing of pearle, which is made along that coast by the Parauians.

¶ *A Towne in the realme of Bijnagar.*

The Portugals haue also a Towne in this Realme, called the Citie of Saint Thomas, or Malepur: it is the place (as they say) whereas Saint Thomas was buried, it was in a manner defart, but now the Portugals doe inhabit it, and there are some leuites. They haue built a faire Church of stone, whereas before it was but a Chappell of wood, and the doore of this Church is made of the wood of that Chappell. The Portugals doe vainely and superstitiously attribute many miracles to this place. This Church here, is set full of nayles, and couered with Iron, to the end it should not be carried away by too much deuotion.

¶ The Towne and Port of Malacca.

Malacca is seated vpon the River of Gaza, and is a good faire Towne, having in circuit neere twentie miles. The originarie first inhabitants of this place report, that the beginning came of six or seven Indians, which came to dwell there; but their number increased, by the arrivall of other fishermen of Siam, Pegu, and Bengola, who built a Towne, and framed a particular language, raising all the best kind of speech from other nations. They named their Towne Malacca, which is growne so rich and mightie in a short time by reason of her situation, as the contents for preceedence with the greatest Townes, yea with some realmes thereabouts.

¶ The Qualitie of the Countrey.

The ayre is so troublesome, as not only strangers, but even they that are borne there are many times troubled with diuers infirmities, which often chiefly to the skinn and haire: so as it is almost a miracle if any one escape with life, which makes many forbear to goe thither; yet the desire of gaine doth incite many to hazard their healths by this voyage. The countrey yeelds not any fruit, but some little come in certaine places. Finally, all the realme of Malacca, which runs two hundred and seuentie miles in length, is in a manner nothing but a desert, if you except that which is neere vnto the Towne. The Countrey people sleepe vpon trees for feare of Tygers, whereof there are so many as they will come into the Towne for a prey. The Portugals who tooke this Towne from a king of the Moores, found the situation so commodious, as they haue made it in a manner the Center of all the merchandise and trafficke of the East, and the head of a kingdom, which extends from Singapura to Pullo, and Cambilan; yet, as I haue said, the aires is whole some, by reason of his to nere the equinoctiall, and is hot and moist.

¶ The Manners of the people.

There are in this place about a hundred families of Portugals, which live after the manner of their countrey, with a Bishop, and a Colledge of Priests; besides the Castell. They that are borne in this place weare long haire; they haue malicious spirits, and take delight to commit murders in the night, to the end the authors may not be knowne. Both men and women make loue alike, and thinke that there is not any Nation can manage it so well: they make amorous songs and rimes; and doe wonderfully commend the power of loue in their verses, which are witty, well composed, and of a good grace: They haue the neatest, and most elegant language of all the East; and therefore many at the Indies doe vse it, as in England, Germanie, and the Low countries they vse the French tongue.

¶ The Riches.

Here is a Staple in this Towne or a Market place, with the trafficke of all the Indies, of China, and of the Islands, which are called Molucces, and other neighbour Islands: and there may you see many vessels from China, the Monettes, Banda, Illan, Sumatra, Siam, Pegu, Bengola, Chormandel, and other places, which returne laden with merchandise. This place yeelds great profit vnto the gouernour, and more than any other, except Mozambique and Ormus. Every year there passeth a ship from Portugal for Malacca, a month before all the rest, and goes not to any other part of the Indies without constraint. They receiue their lading onely at Malacca, and haue the best of all them, that come thither. There are six hundred Portugals continually in the fort of Malacca.

The

¶ The Government.

There was sometimes a Mahometan king at Malacca, but hee was dispossessed by *Alphonso* of Albuquerque, for that he sought to annoy *Lopes* of Segueira a Portugal all he could; so as both the Towne and realme are now vnder the dominion of the king of Spaine, and this realme is now gouerned like vnto therest which obeys this prince. They coyne money both of gold and siluer there, whereof the Inhabitants before had not any vife, for that they did vse certaine money of Tinne, which did weigh much, and was worth little.

¶ The Religion.

The Portugals which remaine at Malacca doe all hold the Romish religion, and they that are borne in the countrey, whom they call Mallayes, are for the most part Christians: but there are many merchants whose abode is sometimes long, which are of diuers religions, and liue at libertie. There is (as I haue said) in the Towne of Malacca a Bishop, as at Cochin, but he is vnder the Archbishop of Goa.

¶ Banda and Amboyna.

From Malacca they goe by Seato Banda and Amboyna, whereas the Portugals haue Forts and Captaines to make the trafficke easie. Banda is an Island six degrees in altitude beyond the equinoctiall. The Portugals frequent there, for that there are very good nuts, which they call Maciz, the which they preferre, and they also make oyle thereof which is much esteemed, and carried to Malacca, and from thence to other places. All the trafficke in a manner here, is made by exchange, as at Sunde, and at Iaua. They must not easily trust the Inhabitants of this Island, who are commonly great deceivers of merchants; so as the Islanders must bring their merchandize vnto the ships, before they can treat safely with them.

Twentie miles from the Island of Banda, towards the West North-West are diuers Islands which are called Amboyna, of the principall among them, whereas the Portugals haue also a little Fort; they were discovered in the year 1512. The soile is very rough and barren, and the manners of the people bad and wicked: they are men eaters, and demand one on others parents when they are old to deuour them. By reason that their soile is barren, they are giuen to the Sea, and do much annoy the neighbour Islands with their Piracies. There is not any great store of spices in this Island; but the ships which go from Malacca to the Molucces, refresh themselves, and water in this Island.

¶ The Philippines.

Bending toward the East, a hundred miles or thereabouts from the countrey of Cambaia, wee see the Islands called Luffones, the which are otherwise called the Islands of Manilla, or the Philippines, either by reason of the principall Towne or famous Port, which is called Manilla, or in honour of *Philip* the second king of Spaine, at whose charge they were discovered first by *Magellanes*, who died in Cebu, which is one of the chief Islands of the Philippines: but afterwards more fully by *Anticall Lopes* of Lagaspy, who was sent by *Don Lewis* of Valasco Vice-roy of Mexico, by commandement from king *Philip* the second in the year 1564. The Towne of Luffon or Manilla, lies in foureteen degrees of height from the Pole Arctike. The Island hath about one thousand miles in compasse. About this Island there are many others, whereof the principall are Tendaiar, which is properly called the Philippina, and is the fairest and most pleasing of all the rest; it hath one hundred and sixtie leagues in compasse; and Mindanao, in which Island there are many good Townes, as Cailon, Pauados, Subut, Dapito,

Q iij

and

and Suriaco. The Spaniards haue bene so haucie and ambitious, as to call all them the Islands of Philippina which lie betwixt Noua Hispania and the gulfes of Bengola, and they affirme for certaine vpon their owne knowledge, that they are in number eleuen thousand.

¶ The Qualitie of the countrie.

The whole countrie is very fertile in wheat, and there is store of staggies, horses, oxen, kine, goates, and hogges: There are also many ciuet cats, and all kind of fruits, with great abundance of honic and fish. The Spaniards say that they beare spices, but there is little seene or none at all. There is also great store of rice, sugars, pulses, and figges which are halfe a cubite long. They doe also find gold and iron there: the aire is good and temperate, and approaching more to heate towards the Sea, but within the countrie it is more cold.

¶ The Riches.

The Inhabitants make much siluer of their gold, and yron which is transported to neere places, and also into Spaine, their ciuet cats yeeld them as small profit: but that which makes them more rich, is the great commerce they haue with the Chinois, who brings great store of merchandize thither, as silkes, cottons, Porcellaine dishes, sulphure, quicksiluer, brasse, copper, meale, nuts, chestnuts, dates, all sorts of linnen cloth, iukehorns, and many other prettie toys. There comes euery yeare twentie ships from China with such merchandizes, the which is transported to Mexico, with infinite profit to the Inhabitants.

¶ The Fortes.

There are good places in these Islands, whereas the Spaniards entertaine great garri- sons, being resolved not to leaue them in any fort. The losse which they made of late yeares, of that which they held in the Molucques, hath made them resolute to defend these better; and to this end they haue great store of munition for warre, and much ordnance, and are provided of men necessarie for this defence.

¶ The Government.

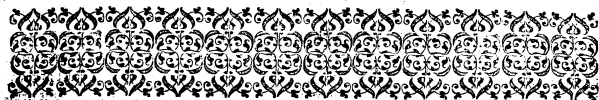
The king of Spaine entertaines a gouernor in the towne of Manilla, or of Luffon, who hath charge of all these Islands: he is sent thither from Newe Spaine. These Islands were sometime vnder the Monarchie of the kings of China, but being abandoned by the Chinois vpon certaine occasions, and the Inhabitants not supported by any, it was easie for the Spaniards to make themselves masters thereof.

¶ The Religion.

The Bishop of all these Islands remaines at Manilla: there are many persons cate- chized daily, and which receiue the Christian religion.

The

A



B

THE ISLAND OF GOA.

The Contents.

Description of the Island of Goa, the climas and circuit. II. Barrenesse of the Island, which abounds in nothing but in wine made of Palmes. III. Beginning of winter in Aprill, and of sommer in September, contrarie to other countries. IIII. Ordinarie diseases in Goa. V. Nature and disposition of the Inhabitants of Goa, and of the Portugals in all the Indies. VI. What titles they beare, and what distinction there is among men. VII. Ceremonies obserued in the celebration of marriages and christnings. VIII. Apparell, and the manner of lining of the women of the Countrie, and their loose life. IX. Of the Canarins and Corumbins of the Indies, their manner of living and religion. X. Riches of Goa, consisting in the traffique of stanes, horses of Arabia, spices, gummes, iapistris, and the exchange of siluer coynes. XI. The fortification of this Island, and how they are governed by the Vice-Roy. XII. Of the pepper which is drawne from the Indies, and their manner of proceeding. XIII. Diuersitie of religion at Goa, where they live with libertie of conscience. XIIIII. Christianitie brought first into the Indies by S. Thomas. XV. Christianitie newly planted at the Indies by the Franciscans.

D



He towne of Goa is the chiefe of all the Indies, whereas the Spaniards and Portugals doe frequent. The Island with the towne are in fiftene degrees of altitude towards the North: it is inuironed with a gulfes or riuer of three miles in breadth, which diuides it from the firme land, and compassing about the towne, joynes with the Sea on the South side, making in a manner the forme of a halfe Moone. The mouth of the riuer vnto the towne is of an equall bredth; and there are, betwixt the firme land and the Island of Goa, certaine little Islands inhabited by that countrie men: but on the other side of the towne, the riuer growes so low in

sonner in some places, as they may easily wade ouer, and go not about the knees. The Island where Goa stands is called Tizzuarin, nine miles long, and three broad. The Barden lye on the North side, whose situation is higher, and therefore the ships of Portugal be more safely when they carrie away their lading. This land is also subiect to the Portugals, and hath many boroughs and villages well peopled. There is a little riuer which doth separate the Barden from the maine land for a small space. On the South side of the Island of Goa, whereas the riuer entres into the sea, stands Sallsetre, which doth also belong to the Portugals, and is in like maner diuided from the maine land by a little riuer. The towne of Goa hath goodly houles after the Portugal fashion, but low by reason of the heat, and euery house in a manner hath his garden and orchard full of all sorts of Indian fruits: In old time it was a little towne, closed in with a weak wall, and ditched without water, but when the raine filled them: the walls are yet standing, but the gates are gone; and about the old walls you may see the new towne twice as big as the ancient, but it lies open.

The

¶ The Qualitie of the Island.

II.

The Island of Goa is verie barren, and bears not any thing that may serue for the nourishment of man; it hath onely some few sheepe, goats, pigeons, and some foule. The countrie is rough and hillie, and therefore not fit for labour, but lies desart and vnmanned. Other things fit for the life of man, come from Salferte and Bardes; but principally from the firme land. They haue onely wine of Palmes, which they make in abundance. There is a little water at Goa that is good to drinke, the which they find in a fountaine called Baganij, a quarter of a league from the towne, which slaues fetch and sell. As for the water which must serue in bathes, to wash them with all, and to seeth their meat, they draw it out of wells which are giuen in their houses. The ground is stonie, drie, and of a red colour; and this hath giuen occasion to some Italian Alchimists to seeke for gold there and brasse, but the Vice-roy did forbid them, least the reputation of this treasure should draw the neighbour nations to assault the towne.

III.

Winter begins there about the end of April, from Cambaya vnto the Cape of Comorin, by means of the Westerne wind which comes from the sea in this countrie. It begins by thunder and lightning, after which follows a continuall raine vntill September, and then winter ends with like thunder and lightning. This continuall raine makes them to call this season winter at the Indies, and at this time they can make no voyages by Sea. As for sommer they take it for the clearest season of the year, and then is there a fresh wind which comes from the East, and makes the nights more pleasing; but there are no other fruits in sommer, but such as hang on the trees all the year. Euerie man flouts vp his goods for feare of winter, as if he were to make some long voyage by sea. At that time they lay all their ships before the towne, vnrigging them, and taking out all that is in them, they couer them with reedes, least the abundance of raine should rot them. There are some houses which the continuall raine doth quite mine to the ground. There are certaine heapes of land which stop vp the river in the beginning of winter, suffering no passage for the ships, and the sea is so troublesome and lowd, as it makes all the world deaf. The river which inuiros the Island of Goa, becomes fresh, by means of certaine red waters which do fall from the mountaines, although that the water be commonly salt, and like vnto the sea. In September these heapes of land go away, and the river is open in such sort, as it not onely giues passage to small vessels, but to the greatest ships of Portugal of eight hundred tunne, and these ships enter freely into the river without sound or danger. Finally, winter is wonderfull troublesome in this countrie, for that they cannot achise anything by reason of the continuall raine, so as men are forced to retire in their houses, or to entertaine themselves with their neighbours as well as they can. Yet the women and the Meliz (who are well pleased when they haue raine) go into the countrie with their grooms and seruants, taking convenient viuals with them. These people haue cesterne and referuers for water in their houses, which are made to swim in, which is one of their delights. At this time in a manner all the fruits at the Indies doe flourish. Sommer begins in September and continues vnto the end of April, with a bright and cleare season, and little raine; and then they put their ships to sea, and the armie parts to defend the coast and the merchants. The Easterly windes which come from the firme land, and are therefore called Terrenhos, blow then at Sea, and although they be pleasing, yet they breed many diseases by reason of the great changes whereunto the Indian coast is subiect. Moreover, they blow alwayes in sommer from midnight vntill noone, but they go not about ten miles from the land. Presently after diuine the Westerne windes rise, the which are called Virafons. These windes do sometimes bring a great temperature against the insupportable heat of the country. And doublelesse we must admire the qualite of the aire in these quarters; for that from Diu vnto the Cape of Comorin, winter is boistrous and hurtfull; and from the other part of the Cape of Comorin, vnto the coast of Comorandel, the sommer is pleasing, although that both be in one height, and but fewe miles distant, yea in some places twentie, and

At one time. They that go from Cochín towards the towne of saint Thomas, being seated vpon the same coast of Choromandel, and towards the mountaines of Ballagatte which they must passe to go into the other countrie, lie on the one side the fields wonderfull plaine and well measured in Sommer, and on the other side, a countrie spoiled with raine, darkned with clouds, and full of the horror of thunder and lightning. And this is not seenne alone in this countrie of the Indies, but also negre vnto Ormus towards the Cape of Rosalagatte, whereas the ships haue a cleere and calme season; but hauing once past the Cape, and being on the other side, there is nothing but winde, raine, and stormes, with the same alteration of Winter and Sommer as is seene in other

places of the East. They that remaine at Goa fall into many diseases by reason of this change, for they haue one fadaine infirmite called *Mordexin*, which comes vnto them with so great a vomiting, as they are readie to giue vp the ghost: this disease is common and mortall. The flux is also contagious there, as the plague is with vs, continual feuers kill men of ten in three or foure daies. The Portugals finde no better remedie, than to draw blood, the Heathen draw it with certaine herbes, sandall, and ysaions. These diseases kill many Portugals yearly, for that they eate nothing, which is of good nourishment, and abandon themselves to glut their lusts with lasciuious women. We may see the experience in the kings Hospital, which is a retreat for Portugals onely, out of which there are carried euery yeare foure or five hundred dead persons. The pox are very general amongst them, neither is it any blemish to him that hath them: they haue the remedie from China roots, and although they bee much infected, yet no man flies them, although they haue had them three or foure times; but contrariwise they glorie in them, and hold this for a sweet paine, in regard of others.

The Indians are ignorant of the plague. Many are troubled with the stone, and a loosenesse of the bowels, especially they that are married, for that they drinke water continually, and commit incontinencie and disorders. They stand alwayes with their bellies naked, in their low galleries, which are in the entring of their lodgings, receiuing the wind there, hauing negre vnto them their seruants, whose one rubs his soe, another his thigh, and the third drues away flies, they continue in this manner two houres after this heat, and then they rest; and being thus they bring them many kinds of preferres, to the end the water should not trouble them, which seems vnto them of a better tast. Hence it comes that most of the men haue great bellies, and are called *Barriges* for this cause. The daies in Winter and Sommer differ about an houre, the summer is at six, and less at the same houre according to the equale thereof. At noone day in that countrie they haue the sunne perpendicular ouer their heads, and haue little or no shadowe at all. At Goa, they say the same Poles of the world: the South Starre is not much about the Horizon, more than that of the North.

The Manners of the Inhabitants of Goa and of the Portugals, are generally throughout the Indies. The countrie of the Bardes, is inhabited by people which are rude and grosse, who are called Canarins, and go all naked, except their private parts. They spend their time chiefly in manuring their Indian Palme trees, which haue sandie places, and the house staue. Many Portugals dwelling at the Indies are married to women of that countrie, and their children are called Meliz or Melices, of a yellow complexion, for the most part and reasonably well proportioned, as the women of that countrie be; but after the birth, they differ nothing from naturall Indians. As for the children whose father and mother are Portugals, they call them Castilles, that is to say of Race, for that Castile signifies Race, and thus be resembling Portugals, but that their colour is between yellow and white, like the Portugals or Meliz line for the most part, as yet there are some which are black, and others, and yet not so black, as the Portugals, for they cause their fathers and doe so. Finally the makers keep their state in such sort as is not possible

Wint at 1
lower at one
time without
70 miles.

IIII.

V.

VI.

fible to see any thing more arrogant; for they haue so graue a gate as a mari would hold them for princes if he knew not their natures and disposition: the which doth not onely raise among gentlemen and nobles, but also among men of the basest condition, which other nations find insupportable; by reason of this slow measuring of the streets: and all doe equally thinke that other men doe owe them much honour, the which they affect and looke for. The Indians borne, and strangers, as well Infidels as Christians, labour in other arts and trades. All the Inhabitants are distinguished into two sorts of persons; that is to say, in those that are married, and those that are not. They that are not married are commonly called souldiers, which is a very honest name among them; not that they are inrolled vnder any captain, or haue taken an oath to any one, for that this manner of inrolling of souldiers is not in vse at the Indies. So as the Portugals which are sent out of Spaine vnto the Indies, are not tied to any certaine place where to make their aboad, but may goe where they please. They are all distinguished by titles and prerogatives of dignity. Some are termed *Hidalgos de casa del Rey nroo Señor*, that is to say, Gentlemen of the kings house: others *Moscos Hidalgos*, which are gentlemens children, or such as the king hath bred vp in this ranke. Others are termed *Caualleros Hidalgos*, that is to say, Knights, which carrie this title for some deed of armes whereby they haue made themselves famous, or for the seruice they haue done their Prince: or to speake more truly they obtaine it of the Generall when he is ready to go vnto the warres, or else for money: so as at this day men which are come from base places in Portugal carrie this quality, although they haue no merit, and they do not refuse it to any one that seeks it, so he be rich. There are also some which they call *Moscos de Camera, &c. de seruicio*, these be gentlemen or groomes of the kings Chamber, and this name is of such esteeme among them, as they desire it more than great riches. There are also *Eiquires* or *Escuderos Hidalgos*, who haue a ranke among men: all the rest are termed *Hombres Honrados*, that is to say, honourable persons: and they that are of baser condition among them carrie the name of souldiers, without any other title: and so he is aduanced in qualitie as he doth seruice to the king, and according to their titles they haue recompences. The gentlemen doe willingly entertaine and feast the common souldiers when they are retired into towns, and call witnesses of this bounty. The Portugals, Meltiz, and Christians, are stately in their houses, and the Portugals among others haue commonly ten or twentie slaues, according to their meanes. They that are married haue their houses well furnished, and in regard of their persons they are curious to change their apparrell and linnen euery day, as their wives doe; and euen their seruants change often by reason of the heat. The officers doe honour all Portugals equally, as well Nobles as others. When any one goes in the street he hath one seruant which carries an Vmbrello to defend him from the sunne, another his cloake for feare of rainge, and for the sunne; and the other third carries his sword, least it should hinder his affected grauitie. Before dinner the seruant brings his master a cushion of silke to kneele on, if he haue any deuotion to goe to the church to pray. They vse great and long salutations with kissing of hands, which they spare not one to another. When they enter into the church, their seruants are there before, who haue prepared their seates, whereas all they that are set, rise vp and salute them with great reuerence. If any one doth not render them the honor which they haue done them, they are much offended, and seeke all meanes to haue reuenge, calling their friends together to kill him; who by negligence hath not saluted them: but when as they will not kill him, but onely reuenge themselves in some sort; they beat him cruelly with a great reede which they call *Bambus*, gathering great troupes together to this end; and this is practised in a manner euery day at the Indies; and yet the Magistrate doth not punish it: they doe also beat their enemies with long fackes full of sand, and brule their whole bodies. When as any one of the common people goes to visite another, the Master of the lodging meets him at the doore with his hat in his hand, and leads him into his hall, where hee presents vnto him a seat, such a one as he himselfe sits in, and then he demands of him the cause of his coming. When he hath a will to depart, the master of the lodging conducts him to the doore, with kissing of hands, and much reuerence and

VII.

A. and offers of seruice: if he were not intreated after this manner, he would be so much offended, as he would seeke a reuenge vnto the death: and they doe so much affect this honour, as if they giue him a seat that is too low, or not so honourable as the other, he is much incensed.

Whenas there is a marriage celebrated at any ones house, that is esteemed wealthy, all their friends and acquaintance come thither, either vpon their owne horses, or vpon horses that are borrowed or hired, and there are sometimes a hundred richly appointed. They goe vnto the Church after this manner; with their seruants and Vmbrells in good order: the friends goe before, and the bridegroom comes betwixt two of them, which they call gossips, then the bride follows betwixt two the gossips, who are carried in their litters richly appointed: the seruants follow after without ranke or order. When as the ceremonie of marriage is ended in the Church, the married couple are conducted backe with the same order, and their freinds, neighbours, and kinsfolkes goe, and place themselves in windowes hanged with tapestrie, which are in those streets whereas they must passe, and besprinkle them with a water made of roses and sugar. Those which are of account haue seruants which can play vpon flutes and other instruments, and reioyce the companie with their musick. The married couple coming neere vnto their dwelling house, thanke such as haue accompanied them, who are on horsebacke with much honour, and then they enter presently with the the gossips with great grauitie, and then place themselves at windowes. They that haue accompanied them, giue some carriages vnto their horses to doe them honour, and the gossips begin first: others doe them honour with a consort of flutes, which are much vsed at the Indies. After their courses, all passe before the window, and leaue the house with much honour, except the gossips, who goe vp and make many good wishes vnto the married couple, whilst there is something preparing to make them drinke water, which is a signe of friendship among them. Having once tasted of that which is presented vnto them, they depart, and there remains but three or foure of their neere kinsfolkes, who, after they haue made good cheere, stay not long with the married couple, for that they will not keepe them from their content. The married couple go most commonly to bed before Sun-set without any ceremonie or modestie as they vse here. When as they christen a child, they carrie it after the same manner, and the godfather goes last of all alone, being followed by two seruants on foot, whereof the one carries a siluer dish, the which is white or gilt, full of roses, in the middle whereof there is a wax candle gilt and artificially made, and pierced through with certaine pieces of gold and siluer, which is the present of him that baptiseth the infant: an other carries a siluer salt gilt in the one hand, and in the other a balon of the same metall, with goodly napkins that hang vpon his shoulders: this is followed by two litters, in the one is the godmother, and in the other is the midwife with the infant, covered with rich cloth made for that purpose.

The ceremonies of baptisme being ended, they returne in the same order with the sounding of flutes, and the running of horses, the godmother beholding all, as at a marriage. These are the ceremonies obserued in regard of them that are married; but the souldiers which are not, go to sea in Sommer and defend the coast. They are stately in their houses, and obserue a great grauitie, hauing a seruant who carries an Vmbrello, and sometimes they giue vnto a man, whom they hire to that end, sixe and twentie Basraues a yeare. Many times ten or twelue souldiers lye together, and haue but one or two seruants to make cleane their clothes. They lye vpon Rice ladden in water, salt fish, and other meates of small substance, and without bread, vsing for their drinke, fountain water. They haue most commonly two or three suits of apparrell in common, which they put on that go abroad, for that such as remaine at home haue not any need of clothes, by reason of the great heat which makes them glad to be covered with linnen. There are gentlemen and captains that be rich, who giue money bountifullly to these souldiers, to the end they may buy them clothes and all other necessaries. By this meane they do purchase the loue of these souldiers to employ them afterwards more freely in their voyages at sea, or in the courses they take to get their enemies. There are many which lye after

after this manner at their ease. But the greatest profit of some of them grows from the love of the Portugals wives, from the Mestiz, and Christians at the Indies. These women are so loose and incontinent, as they give all the money they can get unto their adulterers, whom they enrich by this means. Some of these fouldiers, by the fauour of their she-friends, trafficke here and there, and these are called Chatins, for that they haue left the profession of armes, and will serueno more as fouldiers in their sea armies: For there is not any one of these that is forced to goe to the wars, although he be inrolled in the booke of Portugal, & notwithstanding that they are exempt from going to the war, yet for that they liue vnmarried, they are called fouldiers. There are a great number of these Chatins at this day at the Indies, for that hauing little or no wars, many giue themselves to merchandise, to the end they may get something: There are many reasons hereof.

First of all, Capitaines who made account of fouldiers, doe not now much regard honour, and they giue little to them they hire. The fouldiers also remaine alwaies miserable with this pay, and although they haue many attestations and certificats, which should make them expect some recompence, yet they cannot beare that great charge which they must vndergoe from thence to Portugal, nor make presents vnto them who can doe any thing in Spaine, and yet doe nothing without gaine. And moreover there is this inconuenience, that although they obtaine some dignitie, yet must they many times attend the death of some one that goes before them, and spend their whole liues in this expectation. We must add hereunto the discommodities and dangers of the Navigation, which is the cause that many returne no more into Portugal, but marrie at the Indies, and giue themselves to some trafficke. Moreover, the warre is not hot against the Barbarians, and they discouer no more lands, for that the Vice-roy is more curious of his owne profit than of honour. For charges at the Indies (being but for three yeeres) they that exercise them, seeke nothing but to enrich themselves during the time. This is the cause why the seas are not so safe as they haue bene, and that Pirats doe in a manner what they list, for that the Vice-roy doth not ordinarily entertaine a good armie at sea to scoure the coasts. And this doth also diminish the king of Spains power and renewes. For no man can trauell by land, for that there are many realmes which are no friends to the Portugals, who onely haue certaine forts vpon the coast.

VIII.

At the Indies they doe seldom see the wives of Portugals, of Mestiz, nor of Christians, but whenas they go to some Visite or to the Church, and when as they go forth, they are carefully garded, for they are in their litters so couered as it is impossible to see them. Whenas they goe to the Church or to Visite, they are proudly attired with store of pearle or pretious stones, their garments are of damaske, velvet, or satin stript with gold, for silke is verie common in that countrie. In a manner all goe bare headed in their houses, hauing a fine smocke called Baju, which couers them vnto the nauell, and from the nauell downe wards they haue a linnen cloth painted, twice or thrice double; theret is vncouered. This is the habit which women of all ages and all conditions doe weare in their houses, and whilst they remaine within doores their maidens doe their businesse abroad: they eat no bread, no more than the seruants; not for any dearth there is of corne (for they may haue abundance) but vpon a certaine custome and inclination which they haue, to eat Rice, the which they leech with water, hauing for their meat salt fish, and fruits which are also salt, called by them Mangas, whereon they poure the broth of fish or fith. Finally, they eat their portage with their hands, mocking at the vse of spoones, as if they were vnciuile. They vse for their drinking certaine thin vessels made of blacke earth, the which are pierced in the necke; they call them Gargolletes, for that he which drinketh lieth vpon the vessel, and not touching it with his lips receiues the water by those little holes, the which doth gozle, and make a pleasing noyse. They hold this manner of drinking more ciuile, to the end they desile not the cup with their mouthes, which are sometimes vncleane. They that come newly out of Portugal and will drinke after this manner, spill much water vpon their clothes, for that they know not how to vse the cup. They call such men Reynolz in mockage, and this name is applied

A to all those that are ignorant of the Indians manners, who being not accustomed to their affected grauitie, walke freely vp and downe the streets nor caring for this retirednesse, whereunto notwithstanding they do soone accustom themselves.

The men of those Eastren countries are wonderful jealous, and doe not suffer any one to see their wives or daughters, be he neuer so deere a friend, except their Gossips. If any one knocke at the doore to speake with the husband, presently the women flee away and hide themselves, leauing the husband alone to entertaine him that comes, yea their nearest kinsmen, and which is more, their sonnes, hauing past the age of fifteen yeares, are banished the places where the women remaine, and haue their lodgings apart. For B it hath bene often heard that the Nephew hath bene beloued of his vncles wife, the brother of his brothers wife, yea and the brother sometimes hath had to do with his own sister. Without doubt the incontinencie of the women of those parts is verie great, and there are few married women chaste. Many haue a fouldier to be their friend, who goes to visit them secretly by means of their maidens which iere as bauds. They vse certaine herbes to this end; and among others they haue a herbe called Dutroe, from whose seed they draw a iuice the which they mingle with their husbands drinke, who hauing drunke it, laugh continually like men that haue lost their vnderstanding and remaine without all apprehension, or else they sleepe as soundly as if they were without life, then the women being assured of them, enioy their loues in the presence of their husbands, who lie C without all knowledge: sometimes the force of this drinke continues foure and twenty houres.

And to make these poore cuckolds recouer their fences, they wash their feet with cold water, but they haue no remembrance of what is past. The wines doe often kill their husbands with poison, the which they doe applye as they thinke good, to the end it may worke his effect in the time which they haue prefixed; so as some haue liued six yeares after they haue taken it. Husbands do also kill their adulterat wives, or that are suspected to haue done them wrong, with the testimonie of three or foure persons, who witnesseth that they haue broken their faith in wedlocke. For by the customes of Portugal, a man that kills his wife vpon this occasion is not punished, but he may lawfully take another. D There are many which die after this manner, and there is nothing more common at the Indies than the death of adulterous wives, yet cannot it induce others to a better life, for they hold it for a great content and glorie to die in making loue. Moreover they are verie curious to haue their houses and all other things exceeding neat and handsome, and they wash their bodies often to keepe them cleane. They sic labour and take delight in perfumes. They rub their heads and foreheads with Sandall that they may smell well, and they do continually eat the leaues of Bethel with garlice, and an herbe called Areque which is sometimes of such force, as it makes them in manner drunke; and this herb is drie, and hath a tast like wood or roots. The women do continually chaw of these three things like vnto beasts, and do swallow downe the iuice and spit out the rest:

E which is the cause that their teeth grow blacke and red, which amaze them that haue not bene accustomed to see them. These fashions come from the Indians, and these women are persuaded that they are thereby preferred from a sinking breath, and from the roothach and the paine in the stomacke, so as they would rather loose their liues than their herbes. Whenas the husband is absent, the wife eating of Bethel, will stand behind a mat, to see who passeth by, and not be seene; if any one whom she leueth passeth by, she will lift vp the mat gently, as a testimonie of her affection: these are the beginnings which the women giue vnto their loues, the which they do afterwards practise by their seruants, and many other stratagems. They do also eat much spice, to maintaine themselves in heat, or to augment it, and they do eat certaine cakes called Cachondes composed of diuers sorts of spices to the same effect. And the women do not onely prepare this for themselves, but they doe also giue them to their husbands to eat, to make them more valiant in bed, and to giue themselves more content. They bath themselves often, and swim ouer riuers whereunto they are accustomed. They goe forth in the night to performe certaine voyes which they haue made, and then they walke freely on foot, for that

that the magnificence of Litters and Chaires is defended in such occasions: the women A do often long for these nights, and then their most confident slaves doe accompany them, and whilst their mistres praises, they entertaine their friends in some other place, where they enjoy their loves, whilst they mocke at their mistres who is at her deuotion. The women of those countries, hold it a great felicitie to be beloued of a white man or a Portugall, and among themselves they commend the beautie of their louers with great vehemencie. The children which are borne of women slaves belong vnto their maisters, who reioice whenas they haue augmented their familie with a seruant. This is alwaies obserued whenas the children are not begotten by a Portugall, or a man of a free condition: for then the father may redeeme his child eight daies after his birth for B little money, and make him free. But if he forbear to redeeme him within eight or ten daies, he is then a slave, and shall be his maisters, who may sell him afterwards for what price he pleaseth or breed him vp as his slave if he thinke good: you shall seldome see the mother although a slave and a miserable creature to kill her child vpon her deliuerie: for it is a glorie for those women to be with child by a white man: this makes the mother to keepe her child carefully, and not to giue it vnto the father, so as if he will haue it, he must steale it away. The children of Portugals, Mestiz, and other Christians are bred vp naked, they haue a shirt onely, which we haue called Baju, the which they carry vntill they be able to weare breeches: they are in a manner all nursed by Indian slaves.

The Pagans which live at Goa, hold the incounter of a rauen to be ominous, not withstanding that there are many of these birds at the Indies: he that hath seene any one, coming out of his lodging, returns presently, and shuts himselfe vp with a resolution not to come forth for any cause whatsoever, so much they feare some disaster. There are many Magicians generally, who charme serpents, and drawing them out of a basket, force them to dance by the sound of some instrument; they kisse and embrace them, yea and speake vnto them as to men, to the end they may get money by these trickes. They know too well how to prepare and compound poisons, and they giue it freely to them they hate. The lodgings of these Pagans are commonly low, and little, couered with straw, without windowes, and with such low doores as they are forced to stoope when they go in or out: their beds are of mats of reeds, whereon they lie either to sleepe or to rest themselves. The tables, the clothes, and the napkins are made of figge leaues, which do also serue as dishes or pots both for oyle and butter. They dresse their meat in earthen pots, and seeth their rice in them, wherewith they fill holes which they make to that end, and they do also beat their rice, for that being poore and miserable, they buy rice in the husks: some sow rice neere vnto their dwellings, for the vse of their families. Whenas they will drinke they vse a little vessell of copper, with the which they poore wine into their mouths, for that they will not touch the vessell. They do in a manner rub all their houses over with cow dung for feare of flies. Finally, they keepe their bodies as cleane as they can, so as after the necessities of nature, they wash themselves all ouer: they do vse to wash themselves with the left hand, for that they eat with the right hand, and doe neuer vse any spoones. They do strictly obserue their superstitions and ceremonies, neuer going forth before they haue made their prayers. When they go vpon the way they do worship the horrible images of their Gods which are in rocks, mountaines, and caues, and they adore the shapes of diuells. Whenas they haue a voiage to make either by water or land, they do nothing but sound their trumpets for the space of foureteene daies before their departure, and if they go by sea, they set vp many Banderolles and Flags in euery part of the ship, in honour as they say, of their Pagodes or Idols: and when they are returned they make the likenesse for a weeke or two. They obserue these ceremonies in other solemnities, as in marriages, christnings, the seasons of the yeare of harvest, and seed time. There are a great number of barbers amongst them, who go vp and downe and are employed for a small matter: they haue no shops, but go from house to house and are employed in the basest seruices, and to be short, they are rewarded as men of small account. The Pagans which are skillfull in phisicke, hold their C make in the town of Goa, for that next to Embassadors and some Merchants, there is not any

A any other infidels that may couer themselves with an vmbrello going through the towne.

The Portugals when they are sicke, disdain to confere with those Pagan Phisicians, & the Archbishop with all the Church men trust more in them than in the Portugals themselves: this is the reason why these phisicians are wonderfully honoured, and gather great wealth. The labourers or husbandmen about Goa, are in a manner all Christians, yet they differ little from Pagans, from whom they haue taken many ceremonies, whereas the Inquisitors doe winke, by reason of their long custome. There are in the same towne, at the end of euerie place, Changers, Indian Christians, who are called Xaraffos: these men haue great knowledge in metallals, and tell if a peece be good or false D as soone as they see it. The Pagans haue this custome, to continue in their fathers trade or profession; and they marrie wiues of their owne art: they are all distinguished by their vocations, and they doe not deale in marriage with women that are of another trade. The fathers giue nothing in marriage with their daughters, except some Collers, and Carkenets, and all his other expence consists in the marriage banker. The male children carrie away all the inheritance.

There are many Gufarates and Banjans of the countrie of Cambaia, which dwell at Goa, Diu, Chaul, Cochim, and other places of the Indies, for the trafficke of wheat, cotton, rice, and such like things, but especially for pretious stones, wherein they haue more skill than any man. They are learned in Arithmetike, and not onely exceed other Indians in that point, but euen the Portugals themselves. They will by no means eat with other nations, no though they should die for hunger. Whenas they goe by sea to Cochim, they carrie as much victuals as they think shalbe necessarie for their voyage, but if they remaine longer than they had set downe, they had rather die than eat with a Christian, or any other, or to receiue meat.

Many Canarins and Decanins, which are of the countrie of Decan, make their abode in the towne of Goa, and haue shops there. They buy from the Portugals silke, damaske, velvet, cotton, Pourceelain dishes, and other merchandise of China, Cambaia, and Bengola, after the great measure, to the end they may sell it againe by a lesser ell. They haue brokers to this end, their countriemen, who prouide for their trade. These men bring D victuals from the maine land to Goa. They haue Indian ships with the which they traffick along the coast of Cambaia, Sunde, and the red sea. There are many excellent goldsmiths among them, many grauers and other Artizans, a great number of barbers and phisicians, who remaine all at Goa, and doe in a manner equall the Portugals, Mestiz, and Christians, in number. They farme the kings rights about Salsette, Bardes, and the Island of Goa, and for this cause they are often constrained to assist at all iudgements, whereas they plead their owne causes, alledging the laws and statutes of Portugal, with amalement to the Portugals themselves.

The Canarins, and Corumbins of the Indies, imploy themselves onely to labour and fishing, and haue a care of the Indian Palme trees which carrie Cocos. There are some E of them which doe nothing but wash linnen; these are called *Meynattes*, and the other *Patameres*, that is to say, messengers by land. These (which are the basest among the Indians) liue of little; they forbear to eat the flesh of cow, ox, or bugle, and hog, and they lue liue vnto the Canarins and Decanins. They goe all naked, hauing nothing but their priue parts couered with a little cloth. The women couer themselves with a linnen cloth, which hangs to their thighs; whereof they tuffe a part vpon their shoulders, so as halfe the brest is seene. Many of these Canarins make profession of Christian religion, for that they do all in a manner liue neere vnto Goa: for there are many palme trees neere vnto the banks, as also Rice, which is the Canarins food, and grows in a low land. These men bring soules, milke, fruit and eggs from the firme land vnto the towne: their houses are couered with straw, with a little low doore whereas a man cannot enter but stooping: they beget verie many children, which remaine naked vntill they be 8 years old, and from that time they hide their priue parts. The women are deliuered without any Midwife, & then they presently wash their children, & lay them vpon Indian fig leaues, and so they goe presently about their household businesse, as if they had not been newly deliuered. The children, as I haue said, are nursed naked, and when they are filthie, they

veno other mysterie but to wash them with water, so as they grow strong and active, A and fit for any thing, for they are not daintily bred. The men of this sort live many times a hundred yeares in perfect health, and neuer loose tooth, mocking at our delights, with the which we wrong our liues and nature. They onely keepe a tuft of haire on the top of their heads, and haue the rest. They are good swimmers, and go by water in boats called Almadies, which are so little as they will scarce containe one man, so as they are often ouerturned; but they are so nimble as they will reconect them againe, cast out the water and go on their voyage. But they are verie miserable, for that they liue poorly & ill, and are most commonly by this occasion leane, weak, and of small courage, which makes the Portugals to disgrace and contemne them. They obserue the Decanins ceremonies in their marriages. When as the husbands are dead, they make a pile to burne their bodies, and their wiues cut their haire, and teare their garments (which are but little worth) in signe of mourning.

There are many Moores and Lewes remaining at Goa, Cochín, & other places, wherof many are come from other countries, & many Indians also by birth, who haue suckt Mahomatisme and Iudaisme with their milke: as for their families, they follow the custome of the country where they remain. They haue among the Indians, Temples, Sinagogues, and Mesquites, where as they exercise their religion at their pleasure. In the Portugals townes euerie man liues in libertie of conscience: yet no man may make sacrifices after his owne manner for feare of scandal, and it is forbidden vpon paine of death. The Lewes C haue most commonly faire wiues. There are many come from Palestina, & yet they speake verie good Spanishe. As for the Moores, they liue according vnto *Mahomet's* law (the which we will describe in the Turkes Empire) and trafficke towards the red sea, whither they carrie spices: and although that many of them liue among the Portugals, yet they hate them deadly, and hinder the aduancement of the Christian faith, the which they make as odious as they can to the Indians.

¶ The Riches.

- X. **T**He Portugals and Melitz which remain at Goa trafficke daily to Bengala, Pegu, Malacca, Cambaia, China, and other places. The citizens of Goa, the Indians and neighbour nations assemble daily in a place which is like vnto the Bourfe at Antuerpe, but after a different maner: for at Goa the gentlemen and others assemble with the merchants, and all things are exposed to sale, as in a market or faire: this assembly is made every day throughout the yere, except the Festiual daies it begins at seuen of the clocke in the morning, and continues till nine, by reason of the excessive heat in the afternoon. There are publicke criers in the chiefe place of the towne which is called *Leylan*, and they go vp and down this place with chaines of gold, jewels, pretious stones, and other ornaments, being accompanied by a great number of slaves of either sex, to sell, and when as any one offers to buy any of these miserable people, they bring them forth to view as we doe beasts. They haue also at Goa, Arabian horses, all kinds of offices and drugs, gummies which smell wel, goodly tapestries, & many other curiosities of Cambaia, Sinda, Bengola, China, and other places, so as it is almost a wonder to see so great a multitude of people. Some Portugals liue and gather wealth by means of their slaves, which are sometimes to the number of twentie or thirtie, and liue of little: these slaves are hired in the towne to do all workes, and carrie water to sell. The women slaves dresse their Indian fruits, and make diuers workes, which they carrie to the market to sell; for the which they chuse the fairest and yongest, to the end that merchants (being allured by their beautie) may buy their commodities more willingly for the womens sake that carrie them, whom they hope to enioy, to whom these women doe easily yeeld, to get a peece of siluer. The Portugals enrich themselves easily by this means, and entertaine their families. Others make great profit of siluer after this manner: When as the Portugals ships arriue, they buy many great Royalls of Spaine, and giue twelue in the hundred profit, the which they keepe vntill Aprill, when as the Merchants goe for China, for that these Royalls are in great request there, and they gaine twentie or thirtie in the hundred. At the same time they buy Larins of Persia, giuing eight or ten profit for euerie hundred, and when

A: when as the Portugal ships come, they exchange them for Royalls, and gaine twentie or five and twentie in the hundred. The vse of these Larins is necessarie at the Indies, to buy pepper at Cochín, whereas this kind of coyne is much esteemed. There are also other sorts of money as Pagodes, Venetians, and Santonais, which are of gold. Many doe also make great profit of all these coynes, especially if fortune fauour them. Many liue of the reuenues of Cocos which their Palme trees beare them, for that they make great trafficke of this fruit at the Indies: so a you shall haue one, who besides all charges, will gaine in one day by one Palme tree, halfe a Pardaue, whereof one is worth three Testons of Portugall money, and there are some that haue foure or five hundred of these trees in one B house, the which they let out to Canarins.

Many of the Pagans dwelling at Goa are rich merchants. There is a street in which there is nothing but shops of these people, full of silkes, vellerts, and other stufes, and of Porcellains. They buy all these things first in grosse by the means of their Brokers, then they sell them by retails, being wonderfull wittie in these busineses. In the same street there are other merchants right against them, who sell linnen cloth of all sorts, and shirts readie made as wel for the Portugals, as for their slaves, with much other final ware. There is another street, whereas they dwell that sell all kind of workes for women, and hempe, to make failes and cordage. In another street are the Banjanes of Cambaia, C who sell pearles and pretious stones, corall, and such like. There is also a street whereas they make litters, chaires and stooles, which they paint of diuers colours, with Laccas, an Armenian Gumme. The goldsmiths haue all their dwelling apart, as also the carpenters, joiners, and other tradesmen: and there are others which sell rice by great with other Indian commodities. There are a great number of Apothecaries who sell drugs and spices by retails; these are for the most part Brangins, or Idoli Priests, who haue at the end of every street shops furnished with all sorts of merchandise, the which is very commodious for the people.

The chiefe and most ordinarie kind of coine is the Pardaue Xerafin which is of siluer, and made at Goa: it hath on the one side the image of saint *Sebastian*, and on the D other three or foure arrowes bound together; it is worth three Testons or three hundred Reyles of Portugal, and the price is sometime higher, sometime lower, according to the course of the change. They vse another kind of counting, by certain Tangas, five of which make a Pardaue or Xerafin of the lesser mark. For there are two kinds of money, that is to say, the good and the bad: for that foure Tangas of good money make five of bad: by reason wherof, in buying & selling, before they conclude, they desire to know if the payment shall be in good or bad money. They haue also another account by twenties, not that they are in Specie, but in his imagination that accounts: these are worth foure Tangas of good, and five of bad money: their small money carries the name of Bafarucs: they doe account for fifteene Bafarucs of good money, eightene of bad: a twentie and three Bafarucs make two Reyles of Portugal money, and they are made of bad tin: three hundred feuentie five Bafarucs make a Pardaue: a Larin of Persia is worth a hundred and five, and a hundred and eight Bafarucs, according to the course of the change. There are crownes of golde called Pagodes, which are alwaies worth about eight Tangas: the Pagans which make them, graue the figure of their Idols: the crownes of Venice or of Turkeie are almost worth two Pardaues Xerafins. They haue also crownes of gold of saint Thomas with the image of this Saint, which are esteemed at seuen or eight Tangas. As for the money of Portugal, they receiue not any but great Royalls, which are worth eight small ones; whereas the ships of Portugal arriue, a Royall is esteemed at one hundred thirtie and six Reyles, but the price doth rise whenas the time drawes neere to carry them into China. There is a certaine kind of counting at Goa, in regard of buying and selling. There are Pardaues Xerafins of siluer which are in Specie, but there are some of gold, which are in imagination, and serue but for accounts: for whereas they buy pearles, stones, gold, siluer, and horses, the Pardaues are valued at six Tangas; but in regard of other merchandise, whenas they do not specify any thing, they meane simply Pardaues Xerafins, euerie one of which is worth five Tangas. They also name

name Pardaues of Larins, and then the Pardaue is worth five Larins. These are the coines which they vse at Goa, and the manner of exchange, by means whereof many grow rich. Finally, the great falshood of these Pardaues, which are sometimes wonderfully well counterfeited, is the cause that they have great need of changers to discover this false coine. The Indians of the firme land make this false money to deceive the Portugals; so as no man dares take the least peece of siluer before he hath shewed it to a changer.

These changers are carefull to provide all kinds of siluer for them that demand it, hauing tables prepared where there are heapes of siluer distinguished by Tangas. A Tangas is worth seuentie and five Bazarus, and in the exchange of a Pardaue for three hundred seuentie and five Bazarus, they doe sometimes adde eight or ten.

The waigtes of Goa, are like vnto them of Portugal, and are distinguished into Quintalls, Arrobes, and others: yet they haue another waight called *Ma*, which signifies the hand, and wayeth twelve pound, the which they vse in selling of butter, honie, sugar and such like. They measure pepper with the *Bhara*, which makes three Quintalls and a halfe of Portugal weight, and every Quintall is a hundred pound. They haue a measure which they call *Medida*, which is about nine ounces: Foure and twentie of these measures make the hand, and twentie hands the *Candil*. They measure rice, wheat, and other drie things after this manner, and lade their ships, making the account of their lading by *Candils* or *Bharos*. They sell rice also in the straw well bound vp in bundels: the bundell containes commonly three hands and a halfe. The best rice is call'd *Girafall*, and is better than that which they call *Chembafall*. There are also other sorts of rice of lesse value: when it is in the huske, they call it *Bathe* and it is very like vnto barley.

As for the Viceroyes they are accustomed to visit the places and forts which are vnder the king of Spaine, fiftie, sixtie, and eightie miles from Goa, as well towards the North as South. This suruey brings him as great profit as any other thing. It is most certaine that the Viceroy haue great reuenues, and dispose of the king of Spaines at their pleasure, growing exceeding rich by this meanes, for that the king giues them absolute power. Besides the reuenues and ordinate profits they receiue presents from all parts, which enrich them: for all they that haue any alliance with the king of Spaine send (according to the custome of Embassadors) to the Viceroy newly arriued, with presents which are great and stately: and whilst he remains at Goa, he is entertained at the kings charge, like to the other officers, out of that which is receiued for the king in the countries of Salfette and Bardes.

¶ The Forces.

XI.

The Island hath onely a wall towards the East, right against the land of Salfette, vnto the other side of the land of Bardes. This defence is not good, but against the soldaine inuasions of the people of the firme land, which are not vnder the dominion of the Portugals: there is no other fortification in this Island. There is in the land of Bardes a Castell standing high at the mouth of the riuer, but it is almost ruined, and hath only three iron peeces, and a man to keepe it.

The Island of Goa toward the sea, for the most part discouers it selfe with high rocks: but the land of Bardes towards the sea, hath a goodly shore of sand five hundred paces long. This is the guard of the Island: towards the East there are three or foure ports neere the riuer vpon the extremitie of the Island, right against the firme land of Salfette and Bardes: euerie port hath a capitaine and a secretarie, without whose permission no man may go to the firme land; by reason whereof, when the Indian Decanins and other Ethiopian Idolaters which remaine at Goa, go to the firme land for any traffike, or to seeke for victuals, they must in these passages haue a market vpon their naked arme, which market they must heu at their returne, and they giue for the libertie of the passage two Bazarus being paid to the Capitaine and Secretarie, who doe set a young man in Sennell all night, whose charge is to ring a Bell which hangs in the Tower.

There

A There are five of these passages, one is towards the South, which leads to the firme land and to Salfette; this passage was called *Benfesterim*, and now the passage of S. Iames, by reason that the Church of Saint Iames is neere it. The second passage called *See* is vpon the East part of the Island, and it is the common passage to go to the firme land, for that the riuer is easier to be waded through there, than in any other place. The third, which is called the passage of *Daugyn*, or of the mother of God, is vpon the South side, and neere vnto the town; the wall reacheth vnto it, beginning at the passage of S. Iames: and as for the rest of the Island it hath no other defence. From this passage they ferrie ouer vnto the other Island, which answers vnto the firme land, and this fourth is called *Norima*. The fifth and last passage is from the towne vnto halfe the riuer, vpon a low land bending towards Bardes: this is the strongest of all, and is called the passage of *Pangyn*; and here they stay all vessels which go in, or come out of the riuer. There are all the fortifications of this Island, which notwithstanding doth not much feare the attempt of her neighbours, being carefully guarded and full of people. Yet that which might hurt the Portugals is the great multitude of Idolaters & Mahometans which are in this Island. But if there be any feare of that side, the Portugals doe set so good an order and keepe so careful a guard, as they may well liue in assurance. Moreover, their armies at sea which scoure the coasts, keepe them from surpris, and their entertained souldiers which are many in number secure them.

C.

¶ The Government.

The Viceroy of the Indies which remains at Goa is sent thither for three yeares with full power, and sometimes he continues longer, according to the kings pleasure, but it happens not often, and is verie extraordinary. This Viceroy hath within this towne his Councell, his seat of justice, his Chancerie, and his Iudges after the maner of Portugal, and for this cause he decides all suits and controuersies in the name of the king of Spain, to whom notwithstanding they may appeale in ciuile causes which are of great importance, and this is the onely point that is referred. As for criminal causes, no man may appeale from the sentence that is giuen at Goa, vnlesse he be a gentleman; and the Viceroy is therein restrained, that he cannot put a gentleman to death, but must send him prisoner vnder good guard into Spain, vnlesse the king doe otherwise provide. The Viceroyes Palace is guarded by souldiers who are entertained to that end. This dignitie continues vntill the arriual of another Viceroy who must succeed him, and being come to Bardes, or into some other port of the Indies, he presently sends his deputies to take possession. The Viceroy vpon this Summons quits the Palace to him that comes, and doth vnsumish it of all the mouables, leauing nothing but bare walls, the which are presently hung with tapistrie, and the rest in few daies richly furnished. The precedent Viceroy returns in the same ship wherein his successor comes. This great authoritie is neuer giuen but for some famous recompence. The Indians say commonly, that they cannot hope for a better fortune at the Indies, whilst that this custome of sending Viceroyes forth three yeares shall be maintained. For the first yeare, the Viceroy doth looke into and discouer the manners of the country: the second, he seekes to gather wealth: and the third, he sets euerie thing in good order, least the successor surpris him. This may make them coniecture that this command will be lasting, seeing that no man can promise vnto himselfe a longer time to settle his affaires, and by this meanes it prevents the negligence of such as deferre them from day to day.

The booke wherein they write the names of such as goe from Portugal to the Indies, is sent to one that hath the particular charge at the Indies, & this office is for three yerres like vnto the rest. When as Sommer comes at the Indies, and that necessitie doth force them to send an armie to sea, to assure the nauigation (which they of Malabar (some enemies to the Portugals, doe hinder and trouble by all meanes) euerie yere about the month of September, they make a proclamation by the found of the drum, That all such as will serue the king, should come and receiue their pay. Then the Viceroy makes

a Gen.

a Generall who hath many Captaines vnder him, whereof euery one commands a ship. A and of these ships some hold one hundred men, and others thirtie. These men haue pay according to their titles, the which they receiue euery three moneths. A simple souldier hath seven Pardauues Xerafins, euery Pardauue being worth three Testons of Portugal. An honourable person hath nine Pardauues, and so of the rest. The Captaines seeke to draw good souldiers vnto them by presents, beside their pay. The Shippes are well furnished with victuals, and the Captaines eat with the souldiers; and see that they bee well vied; for that otherwise they would not be obedient. This trafficke doth abound and continue the seas vntill April, to hinder the courses of the Malabares. About the mid of Apriill they returne to Goa, and then they draw their ships a ground: the souldiers being returned, goe where they please, and are no more entertained. Then the Viceroy proceedeth before the Generall of the sea armie, that by his commandment, and in the king of Spaines name he hath held an armie at sea all that time, and hath kept as from doing any spoyle. If there hath been any worthe exploit performed, he makes along discourse, where amongst other points he lets downe, that the Generall hath in regard thereof been at great charge for the kings seruice. The Generall hearing this testimonie and certifiat, doth witnesse the like for the Captaines that haue been vnder his charge. They must also haue certificats from the Secretaries, and from such as haue charge of the Arrenall at the Indies, to be a testimonie that they haue not done any thing which might hinder or diminish their recompence. The Portugals returne with these testimonies, hauing already conceived in their imaginations the offices which they affect. All officers returne also at the end of three yeares, and it is a great fauour, when as they doe grant to any one a continuation of his place for his sonne in law, who takes the office for the marriage of his wife. Then the letters are inrolled in the great Chancerie, and sent to the Indies, to the end the Viceroy may confirme them. They obserue the same laws in Portugal.

XII.

As for the pepper which they draw out of the Indies, they proceed after this manner. They doe not lade any ship but the shute which they that haue the king of Spains ships must haue ready: If there be so great abundance of merchandise, as these shute ships will not containe all, then the farmers of pepper, and the kings officers require that they add some ships to the ordinarie number: the which the farmers are forced to doe, so as there may be sufficient to carrie away the whole charge: the which if they refuse, then the Viceroy and the kings officers may lade at their pleasures as well the farmers pepper, as any other merchandise that remaines; to the kings benefit, neither can the farmers of ships pretend any thing; but this may onely be done when as the shute ships haue their full lading. The farmers of pepper haue a factor in euery ship, to whom the king giues a place, and entertainment during the voyage. The farmer of pepper continues his yeeres, and if there happen any misfortune at sea, the losse is theirs that fraught the ships; and so is all the charge of lading; and if the money chance to be lost, this losse falls to the farmers share. They are bound to deliuer the pepper vnto the king after the rate of twelve ducats for the Quintall; if it wants in quantitie, the losse is the farmers, and not the kings, who receiues the pepper into the Indian house, being drie and clean, with an assured gaine, and without any feare of losse. Finally, these farmers haue their rights and priuiledges so well confirmed, as they cannot be infringed.

There is not any other that may sell pepper vpon paine of death, and this law is rigorously obserued. They may not diminish the summe of money which is prepared for the buying of pepper, nor take any part of it, for what cause soeuer, be it neuer so necessary. There is no man may giue any hinderance when as they lade the ships with pepper, yea they lay aside the kings affaires at that time, and the Viceroy with the other captains at the Indies haue no other care, but giue them assistance when they demand it. The Bhare of pepper is sold most commonly at the Indies for 28 Pagozes; and the Bhare contains three Quintalls and a halfe of Portugal; so as a Quintall is worth twelve Xerafins Pardauues and foure Tangas, and the Quintall weighs one hundred twentie eight pounds. They giue a certaine quantitie of siluer to the king of Spaine, if the ships arrive safely

A safely: besides, they are bound to transport, and feed the souldiers for nothing. In the end if any ship chance to be lost, the king losseth not any thing, but some money which they giue him for his right, and for that he hath not the pepper which he should haue at a certaine price. Hence it growes that they that haue the charge of matters concerning the sea, care not how few men of defence they put into these ships, whereas the kings of Portugal had a speciall care, for that all the pepper did belong to them.

The Religion.

A T Goa they haue libertie of conscience, where there is to be seene among the Portugals, Moores, Iewes, Armenians, Gularates, Barjanes, Bramins, and other Indians, which liue there after their owne manner, and according to their owne religion, but that they are not suffered to burne men dead or aliue, nor to celebrat their marriages, or to make shew of their deuillish superstitions: whereof the Bishop hath a speciall care, for feare of scandalizing the new Christians. But if any one after he hath bene baptised returnes to Paganisme, he is put into the Inquisition, to be punished according to the Inquisitors sentence. There are many Arabians, Persians, and Abyssins, which do partly follow the Christian religion, and partly that of the Moores, who obserue the pernicious law of Mahomet. The Moores eat all things indifferently, except hog's flesh, and they are buried after the manner of the Iewes. Some among the Decanins, Gularates, and Canarins abstaine from eating of beefe, or the flesh of Bugles. Many worship the Sunne and Moone, yet they acknowledge one onely God, creator of all things. Finally, there are many churches and monasteries at Goa, but there is not any one of religious women, for that there is no meane to persuaade the Indian women to chastitie. There is an Archbishop, who hath vnder him all the Bishops of the East Indies, and there is also an Inquisition as in Spaine.

XIII.

The ancient profession of Christianitie at the Indies.

D Some write that saint Thomas the Apostle (after that this part was fallen to him in the distribution of the world) transported himselfe first into the Island of Socotera, where hauing made many Christians, he past to Cranganor, from thence to Colan, and so to Choromandel. Hauing then planted the word of God in all these places, being moued with a fame of the greatnesse of China, he went thither to preach Iesus Christ. After that he had laboured there a while, he returned into the realm of Choromandel to reuise the Neophytes, and to confirme them in the faith. Malipur was then the chiefe towne in this country, which the Portugals at this day call Saint Thomas: who going about to build a Church (wherein king Sagum and the Idoll Priests did crosse him what they could) there fell out an accident which did much auale to manifest the power of Christ and the truth of the gospel, to these Barbarians: The sea had cast a peece of timber of extraordinary greatnesse vpon the shoare, which was then ten leagues from the towne; the king was very desirous to employ this timber for his building, but he could neuer moue it, neither by the meanes of men and instruments, nor by the force of Elephants: they say that the Apostle made offer vnto the king, that if he would giue him that timber to build a church vnto the true God, he would draw it presently to the towne, without the helpe of man or engine: to the which the king granted, and laughed at him. Saint Thomas hauing then tied his girdle to a little sprig which grew out of the bodie thereof, after that he had made the signe of the crosse, he drew it without any difficultie within the walls, to the great amefement of all the people. Then hauing set vp a crosse of stone, hee foretold, That when the sea should come thither, they should see white men come from a far countie, to plant the doctrine which he had preached. This prophesie was verified at the coming of the Portugals to the Indies; for that a little before, the sea had approached neere vnto this make. The reputation of saint Thomas increased continually, within his miracles: whereat the Bramins being discontented, for that they saw their cred-

XIIII.

...gaine, so faire, one of them seeking to ruine him, slew his owne sonne, and accus-
 ed the Apostle of this murder. But the Apostle being brought before the king to purge
 himselfe of this imposture, said, that there needed no other iustification, than the res-
 titution of the dead, requiring, that in might be lawfull for him to question him: his ad-
 versarie could not deny it, and they all being amazed at this proposition, and attending
 the successe, the dead bodie was brought into the kings presence. *Saint Thomas* then tur-
 ning himselfe vnto the bodie, said vnto him, That in the name of Christ, whom he pre-
 ched for the God and Saviour of the world, he should declare who was the author of
 his death: at the name of Christ, this bodie spake, and did witness, That *saint Thomas*
 was the slayer of the same God, and that his father had slaine him for rage and envy,
 which he bore vnto the Sonne of God, who had some inclination to the belaw of Christ,
 and to follow him in following the people. But the Romans (although convicted of their
 error) were not content with the Apostles proceedings, with the ruine of their Idols, re-
 ceiving satisfaction. These men sought to know how the towne, whether *saint Thomas* after
 the manner of his death, did not receive his body to be interred, and pray in this place he first
 appeared, then with a stone, and a sword, and a dart, and in the end he was slaine with
 a lance: the bodie was taken up by his disciples, and buried in a church, where they did
 display a picture of the lance which had pierced him, and a staffe with an iron which he
 used in his journeyes to support him, and a vessell full of the earth where his blood had
 fallen. Some hold that the miracle of the timber was not done at Malpur, but at Cranganor,
 and that king *Sagamo* succeeded for punishment to death at Calamine, and that his bodie
 was transported by the Christians to Edessa a towne in Mesopotamia. Notwithstanding,
John the third, king of Portugal, according to the common opinion, received *Edward de*
Meneses his lieutenant at the Indies to search what he could possibly finde out the bodie of
saint Thomas, upon the coast of *Changanor*, and indeed he had a picture of his holie relics
 (which some hold are all in Mesopotamia) might be laid up in some place to be kept, with
 reverence: *Meneses* gave this charge to *Emanuel Frie*, who went to Malpur with some
 Priests, and an Archdeacon. There among the ruins of the towne, they found the markes
 of a stately church, where there was not any thing standing but a little chappel with ma-
 ny crosses painted in it, and with which they of the towne said that the Apostle bodie
 was in that place, and that they found a stone whereon was written in an old lin-
 guage, (as they learned of some that were good) in that this church was build by *saint*
Thomas, and that king *Sagamo* had given the temple of archbishop, which came into his
 towne, for to encrease it. They found under this stone (as they of the countie
 assured) the kings bodie: but digging deeper, they came vnto a place which was com-
 passed in with a wall of earth, and when they were nine foot high, with diuers couer-
 ings, they said that the Apostles bodie was interred: where upon two Portugals (who
 considered themselves as commoners) before opening this place, found certaine
 bones, yea, white mingled with lime and sand, a truncheon of a lance, a travellers staffe,
 and a vessel of earth, so as they knew by the markes that it was the bodie of the Ap-
 ple: and the same fire that the bodie of king *Sagamo*, and of another disciple of *saint*
Thomas was made vnto, but these two were destroyed and scarce all as the colour only
 did distinguish the Apostles bones from the rest. The Saints bodie was afterwards put
 into one bier, and those of his two disciples into another, and the keyes of the place
 were brought, and the keyes and delivered into his hands. Two years after, the said
 bones were hidden by two Portugals under the Altar of the Chappell, and in the end
 they were transported vnto Goa by a religious man of the order of *saint Francis*, whereas
Don *Aluarez* of Braganza, now Viceroy, in the Indies, there as this day Christians
 as they are called of *saint Thomas*: it is true that they haue diuers errors, be-
 ing brought in by the heresie of *Arrian*, and partly in that of *Nestorius*. This mischiefe
 kept in among them, for that these poore people haue great want of Priests and
 doctrs to instruct them, and so minister the sacraments, after a long deliberation, they
 resolved to send forth some among them to seek for some, and to bring them to the Indies,
 where after they found them, these deputies after a long and painful iourney, came into
 Assyria,

A Assyria, where they intreated the Patriarke of Babylon to furnish them with what they
 desired. This Patriarke gaue them certain Priests and Prelats, who went vnto the In-
 dies, and in stead of the pure and true doctrine, did sow the cockle of diuers heresies,
 and these heresies haue continued vntill our time. Notwithstanding they retain many
 of the Apostles traditions, they haue the Sacrament of the Altar in great veneration, and
 receive it vnder both kinds. They keepe Aduent and Lent, sing Psalmes ordinarily, and
 celebrate the Feast of Iesus Christ, and of his Saints, but especially the eight day after
 Easter. These people dwell at Cranganor and thereabouts, and they hold them to be
 about three score and ten thousand. There are also a great number at Negapatan, and at
 Malpur: And moreover, in the countie of Angamala, fiftene miles aboue Cochín to-
 wards the North. There remains the Archbishop, who depends of the Patriarke of Ba-
 bylon. They doe by little and little acknowledge the Catholike religion by the means
 of Iesuits, who haue a Colledge at Vaypicota: for they confesse themselves vnto them,
 and they bring their children to be baptised, and their Priests learne to say Masse after
 the Roman manner. In the year 1583 the Archbishop held a Synod, whereas two Iesu-
 its did assist, and made many decrees conformable to the Romish religion: In the year
 1587 the king of Portugal built a Colledge at Malpur, with the helpe of the Chri-
 stians of Saint Thomas, and a Seminarie for the instruction of youth. I haue set downe
 the miracles of *Saint Thomas* according to my Author, not as an autentick authority,
 C leaving euerie man at libertie to beleue it if he please.

The new profession of Christianitie at the Indies.

THE first which past vnto the Indies to preach the Gospell, were the religious of the
 order of *S. Francis*, whereof the first was Frier *Henrie*, since Bishop of Senta, who
 went with the armie that was led by *Peter Aluarez Capral*, in the year 1500, with some
 Priests, but neither he, nor his companions could make any great profit of their talents,
 by reason of the continuall wars. Afterwards there went Frier *Anthony Petrine*, and
 soon after Frier *Anthony Laure*, who stayed at Socotera, and there did some good.
 D Finally, *Lopes Segueyra* Viceroy at the Indies built a Church at Goa vnder the name of
S. Francis, and a Conuent for the religious men of that order: the which he did to the
 end they might haue meanes to employ themselves in those parts, for the seruice of God,
 and the conversion of the Indians. So as from that time they made few enterprises ei-
 ther of peace or war, where they did not assist. For *Anthony Petrine* was the first that
 said Masse, and preached at Damán in Cambaia, and Frier *Anthony Casal* was at the suc-
 cour of *Dian* *John de Castro*, and there did his duetie. The first Bishop at the In-
 dies was one Frier *Fernandes* of the order of *S. Francis*, who went in the time of *Nugnez*
de Albuquerque, he was ministering the Sacraments, preaching to the Portugals, and drawing
 the Gentiles to the faith, did execute the office of Bishop commendably, and it is cre-
 dit that the faith was much advanced at that time. But there was nothing which wri-
 ting did hereafter for in those daies: for as they were few, so they busied themselves to
 win the hearts of princes, and the voyages of fleets. *Fernandes* had for his successor *John*
de Albuquerque of Castille, of the same order of *S. Francis*, who came vnto the Indies
 with *Francisco* of Norogno, and brought with him one Frier *Vincent* fit to teach the do-
 ctrine of Christ, and *Juanes* of Borba a Portugall, & a famous preacher. But vnto that time,
 there was neither secte in the Portugals an ardent desire to aduance the Christian religi-
 on, nor any effect of impotence: for that the gouernours and capitaines
 were busied in the building of forts and making of ships, to gather together soldiers for
 the conquest of the sea, and to invade the enemies countie: and the religious of *S. Fran-*
 ciscus, considering that they had a good Conuent at Goa, were so busied day and
 night in their ordinarie exercises, and to burye the dead, as they had little leasure to ca-
 re for the Gentiles to conuert them. At that time when as *Stephen de Gama*
 was Bishop of the Indies, which was in the year 1540, some good men, where
 of was *Francisco de S. Francisco*, Vice-generall of the Indies, and *Juanes* of Borba
 Cofmo

Anna, instituted a Seminarie of yong men of diuers Nations, to the end they might by their meanes plant the faith of Christ in diuers parts; and they assigned vnto them the reuenues of their Idoll Temples, ruined by *Michael Vaz*: and they called this Seminarie, The Colledge of the holie faith, and afterwards of *Saint Paule*, by reason of a Church so named. They intended to bring vp in this Colledge a good number of yong men of all Nations, and to instruct them in the doctrine of Christ, to the end they might be afterwards able to preach, and to reduce their countreymen to the truth of the Gospell. At that time there was a goodly purchase made vnto the Church by chance. They call those people *Paraues*, which dwell nere vnto the Cape of Comorin, who are simple and of a good disposition, lining for the most part of the fishing of pearle; so as the coast where they dwell (which is in length from the said Cape vnto the Island of Manar, about fiftie leagues, in which was they doe number about fuet and twentie townes and villages) is called The fishing. This people hauing bene ruined by the Mahometans, and persecuted as well by this manner as others, for extreame miserie, after a long continuance, being rescued by one *John de la Croix*, (who had beene conquered some yeres before and had sticke in those parts) they resolved to fend their chiefe men to Cochim, to demand succours, promising to imbrace the Christian faith if they were releued. When the Portugals being come to Cochim, the better to assure the Portugals, they caused them selves to be presently baptised. The Portugals thought it not fit to contemne their demand, nor their offer, so as hauing armed a good number of ships, they not onely chased the Mahometans out of that countrie, but also reduced the *Paraues* to a better condition, and made the fishing more profitable. There went certaine Priests in the same ships, who did catechise and in few daies baptise all the people. But those few Clergie men were not sufficient for the instruction of them that were catechised, and the confirmation of the converted. That which did also hinder them, was the commerce and communication they had with the Infidels, full of libertie and dissoluition: so as it was easie to corrupt the old Christians, and to helpe the new. King *John* being aduertised hereof, feared neither cost nor paine to remedie it; and that which did incite him much thereto, was, that he knew well he could not lose the rents of the countrie, nor the taxes, nor yet make war against the Gentiles, to maintaine and augment the glorie of God, and the preaching of the Gospell, if the Gentiles opposed them selves in the beginning. But the Kinges power was not so auerall in his good desires, for to effect this desire he had need of a great number of men of good life, full of wisdom, learning, charitie, of great courage, and strong of bodie; and Portugall had not many such at that time; for their Preachers were for the most part flungers, and the Portugals which gave themselves to learning, transported themselves to *Alcala*, or *Salamanca*. The Vniuersitie of *Copim*, which he had created, was yet new, and brought forth nothing but bitterness, and the necesse of the Indies was urgent. The company of the Iesuits being then in flourish, the King being aduertised thereof, he writ to *De Pedro Mascaregne*, his Embassador at Rome, with *Paul*, the third, to obtaine of father *Ignatius* founder of that Societie, some of his Fathers. The Embassador demanded them, he obtained but two, which were father *Francis*, and father *Francis*, a Portugall, and *Francis Xavier* a Nauarrois, to whom there afterwards ioyned *Paul* of Camerin in Italic, and *Francis Manilla* in Portugall. Of these, *Rodericus* remained afterwards in Portugall, and *Xavier* went to the Indies. They parted from Rome in the year 1542, being in Portugall, and the King informed of the vertue of father *Xavier*, he did him much honour, and hauing recommended him vnto great riches, he sent him straightway to the Indies, he was first sent to the Island of *Saint Paul*, where he was made Bishop to the holie See, where he had power at the Indies, he did not tarry there more than the month of May, in the year 1542, he was received with great honour by the Bishop, and began presently to reuerberate the faith, instituting the Catechising, he went everywhere throughout the dioceses, and made a little bell gathered many people to come to Church. There both he and his companions taught the Christian religion, he spent the winter of this manner, and the Bishop of *Copim* had the charge of the Colledge of *Saint Paul* where

where there were many yong men. But the Father hauing heard speake of the late conversion of the *Paraues*, went thither in the spring, leading with him *Manilla* to instruct and confirme them, and to this end he learned their language with much paine. He was forced often to encounter the Bramins, who could not indure that he should take from them their followers and their reputation, and discouer their vanities and deceits. He staid no longer in any one place than was needfull: but he made choise of the Neophytes who had more vertue and better wits, and left them in his place to haue care of the rest. Being come to the end of one prouince, he returned to the other, and demanded an account of those things which he had taught, especially of those whom he had made maisters of others, who are there called *Canacapolos*. He obtained for them a certaine summe of money which the Indians were wont to giue for the quene Portugals buskins, to whom he did write that he could not afend vp to Heaven with better buskins than the priars of the Neophytes. He spent about a yere to instruct and confirme the *Paraues*, at the same of whose conversion the *Macoes* a neighbour people which belong vnto the realme of *Trauancor*, and dwell vpon the East of the Cape of Comorin, sent messengers to the Father intreating him to go and baptise them, the which he did, and in one moneth conuerted about ten thousand to the faith: Whilest he was thus attentive in the conversion of the *Macoes*, they of *Manar* (which is an Island betwixt *Garomandell* and the last Cape of *Zeilan*) sent messengers vnto him to demand baptism. The Father sent some vnto them, who did catechise them of *Manar*, whilest that he labored in the worke that he had begun: the which the king of *Iasanapatan* (whose subiects they were) vnderstanding, being full of wrath, he flew some, and tormented others cruelly: some which had escaped his hands came by land to *Goa* (which was two hundred leagues) to demand baptism. Whilest that Father *Xavier* was busied in these good exercises, they sent vnto him to assist him *John Beyra* of *Ponteuedro*, *Nicholas Lancelot* of *Vibin*, and *Anthony Crimell* of *Parma*, and in the year 1543, he had *Gaspard Berze*, and *Anthony Gome*, with eight other companions, and at the same time there arrived at *Goa* twelue religious men of the order of *Saint Dominike*, whereof *James Bermude* was the chief, and there they built them a faire church in a short time, with a commodious cloister. Father *Xavier* hauing left the charge of the church of the *Paraues* to father *Anthony Crimell*, he gaue him meanes to die gloriously; for the Bramins and the Bishops did him.

After these accidents the king of *Tanor* caused himselfe to be baptised. *Tanor* is a towne some foure score leagues distant from *Goa* towards the South. This king being informed of the faith, by father *Vincent* of the order of *Saint Francis* and by *John Soares*, who went vnto him, in the end he caused himselfe to be baptised. The Queene and two great personages of the realme did the like soone after, but secretly, and the king himselfe, after his baptising, carried about his necke (for feare of sedition) the three strings, according to the custome of the Bramins of whose sect he had bene. Afterwards he had a desire, (of the confirming of a stricter league with the Portugals) to come to *Goa*, where he was received very magnificently: the Archbishop, the Viceroy, and many others perswaded him to leaue those marks of the Bramins, and to make open profession of Christianitie: but he alledged the danger of a reuolt of his subiects and brotling among them that they would not aduise him to precipitate himselfe, adding that he was much affected religion and the glorie of Christ, as he would not let passe any occasion to increase it, but he must proceed therein wisely: he remained ten daies at *Goa*, during which he was confirmed by the Archbish. The Portugals hauing not onely confirmed, but also fettered their Empire at the Indies with a peace which followed: the King of *Christ* was also much extended: they did ruine many temples of the Idols, and they built stately churches. To allure the Gentils the more, they made them that were baptised, and did procure them charges and offices, where they might honour and profit, exempting them from all impositions, and suffering no taxes and such like. It cannot be imagined how glad the new Christians of the king of Spaine did of late yeres make two of their commanders of the

Portugall, and other places of the East or North, by means of the flags A which he sets vp; the which are setten about all the towne by reason of the height of these pillars. The chiefe towne of this Island is Angra, which is also the chiefe of the Island of Acores: she comes from thence is the towne of Praye, which is to say, the towne vpon the shore; it hath good dwells; but is not well peopled. The Tercere hath also the Boroughs of saint Sebastian, saint Barba, Alcares, Gualue, Villanoua, and others. The Island of saint Michael is almost twentie miles long, and hath many boroughs and hamlets: the chiefe towne of this Island is called Punta del Gada: there is not any port in this Island, for the reason that the Tercere is not allowed at the Tercere; but the ships have to be sent to the Tercere to be sent to the Tercere; for which consideration the ships for commonly go to saint Michael. The Island of saint Mary hath ten or twelve miles in circuit, it is inhabited by Spaniards. Gratiola contains about five or six miles: the chiefe towne of which is saint George. The Island of saint George is twelve miles in circuit, and is the broadest. The Island of Fayal contains seuenteen or eighteen miles in circuit, and is the greatest next to the Tercere and saint Michael. The Island of Flores contains euen miles: about a mile from thence lies the little Island of Corou, which is two or three miles in circuit. The Tercere is in the nine and thirtieth degree of height, and lies from Lisbon Westward two hundred and fiftie Spanish leagues.

¶ The Qualitye of the Islands.

A l the Island of Tercere beares store of wheat and wine; but their wines cannot be transported far, by reason of their weaknesse, for which cause, rich men vse Madeira and Canarie wines: the Island hath fish, and other things necessarie to suffice. The chiefe oyle that comes from Tercere, is also wants salt, pots, dishes, and other vessels, and such like, it beares abundance of peaches, of diuers sorts, but there be some cherries, plums, and such like. There is reasonable good store of apples, peaches, oranges, lemons, and such like fruit, and the ground doth beare cabbages, turneps, and all kinds of heabens in their season. The chiefe fruit of this Island grows vnder ground, like vnto a turnep: the substance of this plant is in forme like a vine, but their leaues are of another sort: they be full of fruits Baranes; which are of a pound weight, and as much more it is hard to find the people haue: they are much more esteemed in Portugal, but abundance doth hinder the estimation there. There is another kind of turnep, which is vnto wheat, which grows vnder ground in forme, almost like vnto a pease: they be much esteemed in other countries, but in the Island they call it to their hoags: they be much esteemed in the same Island a plant of the height of a man, which beares many small round roots, but it yeldeth them any profit; but that the root being tender and yellow, it is much esteemed by the inhabitants, wherewith they fill their mattresses and cushions, and use of feathers and wool. The Island hath not many foules in it that be their prey: there are many of those which they call Canarie birds, so many bules that it is hard to take them to sell. There are many quails, with flocks of cookes and hens of Asinie. In Sommer they take much fish, but in winter the Sea will not suffer them: for in Ianuarie, Februarie, March, and Aprill, yea and in September they are met in a manner without flocks. The countie is hilly, and there are rocks of many fides, the which rise vp like pointed Diamonds, able to cut the soles of any shoo that shall passe ouer them: but yet these rocks are full of vines, with whole leaues, and all covered in Sommer; it is a wonder to see this plant take root there, for there are no vines in the Chianian countie; but the plaine countie abounds with wheat, and wood, especially neere vnto the towne of Praye. But it is an ordinarie thing, and not so wonderful, that wheat, and other fruits of this Island, should not continue good many yeare. This Island is vnto earthquakes, and to the breaking out of fire: and in this Island, and also in that of S. Michael, there are places from which

A which there ascend fuming vapors continually, and the ground is all burnt there. There are fontaines to be seen in which they may boyle an egge, as if it were on the fire. Three miles from the towne of Angra there is a fontaine, which in time doth turne the wood which is cast into it, into stone. The Island of Tercere hath such store of Cedars, as they vse them to make ships, and also for their dwelling. There is another kind of wood, which they call aguin, which is of the colour of bloud, and verie beautiful: there is also another kind of wood, which is white and yellow, whose colours are verie lively. In the Island of Pico there grows a tree called Teixo, which is of such great height, as the people are forbidden by the king of Spaine to touch it: the which is only allowed to the king of Spaine officers: it is exceeding hard, red within, and of an admirable beautie, the which doth increase with time.

The ayre is generally good, and there are verie few diseases peculiar to the countie, amongst the which is that which the Portugals call Anxuria, which makes a man weak and benumbed of all his bodie, or of some one of his members: there is also another disease which the Portugals call the bloud, the which doth cause certain apoplexies of bloud to brake forth about the eyes, or else in some other part of the bodie. Therefore the two chiefe inconueniences, which proceed from the stormes, humidity of places, and the great windes, the which are such, as at time they beate downe the stones of houses, and consume yron: for there hath bene some barres of yron as big as a mans arme, in the chiefe where the kings treasurelies, the which in six yeares grow as little as a straw; and the verie walls were eaten and consumed to nothing in the same time. Wherefore they are all in a manner accustomed, to put in the forefront of their houses certain stones which they gather vpon the shore from vnder the water: these last longer against the violence of the winds. The Island of Gratiola hath store of diuers fruits, wherof they find much in Tercere. The Island of S. George hath many forrests and mountaines, and some lowe broads: there are also many Cedars. The Island of Fayal yelds all things necessary for the life of man, it abounds in fish and cattell, which it sends to the Tercere. The Island of Pico hath store of all sorts of fruit, and many Cedar trees, and Teixo which is much esteemed: there is store of cattell, wine sufficient, and excellent fruits, amongst which there are Oranges whose tast is exceeding pleasant. The Island of Flores hath much tallow, and verie good places to feed them.

¶ The Manners.

The countie of Tercere are either Portugals, which live after the manner of their countie at home: in the Island, which follow the manners of the Portugals and Spaniards, and rule ouer them. They are not giuen to hunting, forthat the countie hath not any beasts, but some few conies. The first inhabitants of the Island of Fayal were Flemings, so as they retain some thing of the humor of the Flemish Nation, whom they doe affect about all others. The inhabitants of the Tercere are laborious, and giue much labour to the ground; so as they make vines to grow vpon the rocks, which seeme nothing fit for the vse. They are accustomed, for the preferring of their corn, (which comes within the yeare) to hide it vnder the ground for the space of foure or five moneths. All the inhabitants, of the towne of Praye especially, haue a great round hole in a certain place, into which a man may enter, and vpon the top of it there is a covering with the matter of the Maister: Euerie man puts his wheat into this hole after haruest, which is in Iulie, and closes it so couered vntill Christmas: then the inhabitants take it forth found and well kept, yet some draw it forth but as they spend it, and leave the rest: having been kept in these holes or wells during the said time, the rest of the yere they prefer it in coffers, hauing no need of stirring. They are accustomed to giue a name to their children, which is taught to know when his maister calls him. There are many artizans in the Island, who make many prettie toyes of wood; but they work not so neatly as the workmen of Nuremberg in Germanie. The labourers of Tercere employ themselves chiefly in the making of wood: They of Santa Maria are giuen much to make earthen vessels.

A pointed in the towne of Angra, for merchant strangers where they should sell their merchandise, and out of which they might not go; but when they were ready to depart: but as this day they have more libertie, so as they may walke vp and downe the towne, and into the field, but they may not go about the Island.

¶ The Religion.

The Inhabitants of these Islands are Romanists, and nothing given to the reformed religion, nor infected with Mahometisme. There is a Cathedrall Church in the towne of Angra, whereas the Archbishop makes his aboad.

VI The Island of Terceira is strong of itselfe, by reason of the rocks which do inuiron it with tall fildes, like a wall, and at the end of these rocks is a good Fort. The towne of Angra is compassed with a reasonable good wall. At the foot of the mountain of Brasil, there is a reasonable good wall, and were continually vnto another, for the defence of the harbor, so that ships can come in or goe out without the permission of the Garrison. The king of Spaine doth commonly entertaine fourteene companies in the Island of Terceira. In former times there were none but Portugals for the guard of these Islands: but since the last troubles of Portugal, they haue put a Garrison of Spaniards into the Terceira, with a gouernor of the same Nation. This Garrison remains continually in the Castles or Forts, and doo displeasure vnto the Portugals, for that they haue forbidden them to goe abroad, and therefore a man may go throughout the Island with great libertie. There is a company of Spaniards in garrison at Punta del Gada. In the Island of Saint Marie, there is no any Garrison, for that being enuironed with rocks, it may be easily kept by the Inhabitants. The Island of Gratiola is also without soldiers, for that it is not able to beare the charge of a Garrison. In the towne of Dorrain the Island of Fayal, there is a Garrison, but not very good, and for that the Inhabitants did once complaine of the great charge of the Garrison, and of the trouble they had by it, promising to guard themselves the king of Spaine retired his soldiers. But the Earle of Cumberland an English Nobleman, coming thither with a fleet, after some little resistance, and a debate which fell among the Islanders,ooke the Island, ruined the Castle, and carried away the Artillerie, with some Carauells; so as the king of Spaine was forced to send soldiers againe thither in Garrison, after that he had punished the authors of all this mischief.

A generall consideration of the Islands described, and places which the Spaniards hold in Africke, Asia, and at the Indies. Of the people, riches, and forces of these Estates. Of the Islands of Philippina; Of Princes which are friends and Tributaries to the king of Spaine; and neighbours to this country, and of his great enemies which pretend.

One of the Islands of Açores is so important for the crowne of Spaine, in regard of their situation, as without them the navigation of Ethiopia, the Indies, Brasil, and the new world people not be continued: for that the fleets which come from the said countries to Seuille or Lisbonne, must in a manner of force touch there, that is to say, those of the West to follow their course, and those of the East to recover those winds which be favourable vnto them. After this (besides Seuta and Tanger, which the king of Spaine hath upon the Straight of Gibraltar, and Mazagan without the Straighthe hath upon the coast of Africke, from Cape d'Agueiro vnto Gardafou two forts of Estates: furtherme are immediately vnder him, and others are in the power of his Allies. Hee hath vnder him the Islands of Madera, Porto Sancho, Cape Verd, the Canaries, Aguin, Saint Thomas, and others neere adiacent: these Islands maintaine themselves with their own victuals and provisions, whereof they send some into Europe, especially figs and grapes, whereof the Island of Madera doth chiefly abound; and also of wine: and the Island of saint Thomas doth also impart great store of sugars vnto other countries. These Estates haue beene much troubled by men of war, both English and Dutch, which the last part haue not passed the Island of Cape Verd. The Portugals haue two Colonies in the Islands of Arquin, and of Saint George de la Mine, and two places like these, where they traffick with the neighbour nations of Guinee and Libia, drawing from them Mandingue and other neere places. Among the princes his Allies, the richest and most powerfull is the king of Congo, who doth possesse the most temperate, and best climate in Ethiopia. The Portugals haue two colonies there, the one in the towne of saint Sauiour, and the other in the Island of Loande. They draw great riches from this country, but the chieftest is that of fise thousand slaues which they haue yearly sent thence to the Islands and the New World: they are bound to pay a certaine summe of money to the king of Spaine, for euery slaue that goes forth. They may passe easily into this realme, to that of *Prester Ian*, for that they hold it not to be far off: and it is not without great charge, and of all sorts of victuals and other necessaries, as it were verie commodious for this enterprife. Congo confines with Angola, with whose king, *Pail* the Portugals contend touching certaine mines of silver.

The Portugals had as much esteemed things that were neere them, as they did those that were far off, and had imploied their forces, with the which, hauing passed the Cape of Good Hope, they arrived at the Indies at Malacca and at the Moluccos; if I say they had not feared the enterprife of Africke they might with more ease, and lesse charge haue conquered the realme of Ethiopia, for that there is no country in the world richer of gold and precious stones, than Ethiopia, Congo, Angola, Burne, of Toros, Maritima, Monomotapa, Capiani, and Monomugi: but the couetousness of

of men esteemes another mans more than his owne, and things afar off seeme better. And therefore, which are neere. The Portugals haue, betwixt the Cape of Good Hope, and Madagafcar, the Ilands of Ceylon and Mozambique; with the one they maintaine themselves masters of the trafficke of the countries thereabouts, which abound with gold and Iuorie; and with the other they make their navigation to the Indies easie, for that their armies in passing doe some times winter there, and sometimes but refresh themselves. They haue on this side the king of Melinda for their great friend, and them of Quiloa and their neighbour Ilands for their tributaries. To conclude, the Portugals want going but merely for besides the other Ilands, which remain almost abandoned, they leaue that of Saint Laurence, which is one of the greatest in the world, for it may be the greatest (for that it is one thousand and two hundred miles long and four hundred and eighty broad) in a manner unmanured, the which is fit to beare any thing, for the goodnesse of the soyle, and nature hath giuen it good waters, good pores, and very commodious enclaves. These estates of the crowne of Portugal haue no cause to dread any thing but armaments, which cannot come but from the Turke; but the continuall going and coming of the Indies assure them; for in the year 1589, they took neere vnto Monbazze foure galleis and a galion of Turkes which had come into those parts.

As for the Estates of Asia, they are diuided into them of Persia, Cambaia and the Indies. The Portugals haue in Persia the realme of Ormuz, and in Cambaia the Ilands of Diu, of Damara and Bazain. At the Indies they hold Chaul, the Iland of Goa, with other Ilands that lie about the Ilands of Cochlin and Colan, the Iland of Manna, and the Port of Colombar in the Iland of Zeilan, but the principall is Goa, whereas the Viceroy remains, with the forces of the Indies; Ormuz and Diu are much esteemed for the command of the sea, and the trafficke of the gulphes of Persia and Cambaia. Cochlin and Colan are commended for the abundance of pepper, which they laide there; Manar for the fishing of pearles, which they vnde that sea; Damara and Bazain for the bountie of the neighbour countries; by reason whereof, John the third, king of Portugal assigned this abundance to old soldiers. Goa is of very great importance for the commoditie of the situation, together with the fertility of the soyle. The king of Spaine hath here also some Princes his friends, and some others that are his tributaries. The first and the richest is the king of Cochlin, at the first he was vassall to the king of Callicut, and was of great power; but now by the friendship and trafficke of the Portugals, he hath gotten so great riches, and is of such force, as the neighbour kings doe enuie him. The king of Colan is also a friend to the king of Spaine, who hath Ilands of importance in both these realmes. There is also the realme of Malacca, which extends two hundred and seuentie miles, but is not well peopled; notwithstanding the towne which is so called vnites all their trafficke, yea in a manner all the voyages, which are made in that great sea, from the mouthes of the redde sea vnto the Cape of Liampo; and thither comes all the riches of the firme land, and of many Ilands, all which together do not yeeld to great miserie to Europe. Malacca hath two mightie enemies, the kings of Yor and Adien, wherof the first is mightie by land, and the second by sea; it hath beene twice besieged, and brought to great extremitie; but with the succours that came vnto it from the Indies it was alwaies relieved, with great losse vnto the enemies. Last of all, Paul de Lima defeated the king of Yor, and took from him a fort which he had made neere vnto Malacca, where among other things he found nine hundred peeces of brasse ordnance; yet this Estate is in great danger for that the king of Archen is so powerful, whose only desire is to ruine it.

As for the Philippines they belong vnto new Spaine, not that they are comprehended within the confines of the New world; but for that they were discovered in the year 1565, by Michael Lopez de Legaspe, who was sent to discover them by Don Lewis of Velasco, Viceroy of New Spaine. Some thinke that in this sea (which extends it selfe betwixt New Spaine and Sumatra) there are one thousand and one hundred Ilands as well great as small; and although the Spaniards comprehend them all vnder the name of Philippines, yet this name agrees more properly to them that lie most Northerly; of the which they haue already conquered about fortie with a million of Inhabitants. These Ilands

A Ilands abound generally with gold, victuals, and fynamon, wherof they carrie a great quantitie into new Spaine, and so into Spaine it selfe. The king of Spaine hath caused bulls, kine, horses and mares, to be carried thither for to multiplye. The number of Spaniards which haue conquered, and which defend these countries amount at this day to one thousand six hundred, and of these there are not about nine hundred souldiers. These estates are of greater importance than is thought; for that besides the abundance of victuals and gold which they find there, the situation is verie fit to subdue the neighbour Ilands, and to bring in a trafficke betwixt them of this sea and of new Spaine, and to make easie the commerce betwixt China and Mexico, all which are of great importance. But that which imports more is, that they haue begun on this side to curbe the Mahometans, who sought by little and little to make themselves masters of the Ilands and of the coast of Asia. This enterprize is more easie for the Spaniards by new Spaine, and by Perou, than for the Arabians by their countries; for that (besides that the first are the stronger) there haue been ships which in two monthes haue come from Peru to the Philippines, (the distance from Acapulco and Salisco is lesse) whereas a ship cannot come from Arabia in halfe a yere: not only for that the first is neerer than the later, but also, for that the generall winds doe much more fauor the nauigation of the Spaniards than of the Moores; for that the one goe by a direct line, and the other by an oblique. Moreover, the first goe the voyage at one time, and the others make many voyages; for that at the Cape of Comorin they find the former changed into winter, & the like doth in a manner happen vnto them at Malacca, where they are forced to stay. Moreover, the Spaniards saile alwaies with a forewind, and in a calme sea, but the Arabians enter into a sea where for the great number of Ilands they find a thousand dangerous currents, and diuers winds which surpriseth them, and moreover, many pirats which incounter them. We must add hereunto, that the Portugals and Spaniards being vnited at this day, will make great resistance in those countries; and therefore the Chinois Iland vpon their guard, and feare the neighbourhood and forces of Christians.

The force of the Spaniard in these estates consists in two things, the one is, the strong situation of places, the other, the number and bountie of armies. For as for situations, the Portugals knowing that they could not for their small number embrace any enterprizes of importance within a country, nor resist the power of the Persians, Guzarates, of the princes of Decan, Narfingue and others, were carefull to possesse themselves of such places as they thought fittest, to make themselves masters of the sea and trafficke, for that few men might make defence there against great armies. And for that they are masters of the ports and seas, they haue means to draw together so great forces by sea, as there is not any one able to oppose himselfe: and their ships are such, and so well furnished, as one of theirs will not dread three or foure enemies; and all that they may feare is the furie of the Hollanders, if they breake againe with them. And to make it in some sort appare what they may doe at the Indies, Francis of Almeyda with one and twentie ships or few more did put to rout the Mamelus, neighbours to Diu. Alphonso of Albuquerque assailed Callicut with an armie of thirtie great ships, he tooke Goa with one and twentie, recovered it with foure and twentie, and tooke Malacca with three and twentie ships; he entered into the red sea with twentie, and recovered Ormuz with two and twentie. Nugno of Acugna went to the enterprize of Diu with three hundred saile, where there were three thousand Portugals, and five thousand Indians, besides seruants that were armed, of which they were accustomed to haue great numbers. D. Constantine of Braganca had at the enterprize of Onor one hundred and sixtie saile, and as many at that of Ionesapatan.

Besides the Princes which are freinds and tributaries to the king of Spaine, he hath verie mightie enemies neere vnto these estates. The Sophi of Persia pretends vpon Ormuz, which was sometimes one of his vassalls; the king of Cambaia vpon Diu, which did belong vnto him, and to other lands which (as we haue said) were his: the Niczamale and the Idalan (the Portugals doe thus terme two mightie Princes of the realme of Decan) and the kings of Callicut and Narfingue. But the king of Persia and he of Narfingue

singue haue neuer attempted any thing against the Portugals, for that they haue had al-
waies to doe with greater enemies. The others had made great attempts to recouer Diu,
Chaul, Goa, and other places, but they could not preuaile in any other enterprife of
importance; for that the situations of places are wonderfull commodious to receive
succours by sea: and although that these enemies haue made their enterprises in winter
to hinder their succours, yet their pollicie hath preuailed nothing, for that the Portugals
were so couragious, and their ships so good as they feared no daunger: so as the belie-
ged and their countriemen struiuing, the one to vanquish with patience, and the other to
endure all the daungers of wind and sea to succour them, they haue made their enemies
attempts frustrat. But the Spaniards haue none so great an enemy as the Turke, who
hath often attempted by the red sea, with the commoditie which the towne of Aden
giues him, to chafe them out of the Indies, being invited thereunto, sometimes by the
king of Cambaia, and sometimes by his owne ambition. The greatest armie which he
hath made was of sixtie foure vessels, which he sent to Diu, but it was shamefully put to
flight, and another of seuen and twentie great ships which he sent to the enterprife of
Ormuz: They haue no other thing in the Island of Zeiland, but a fort called Colombo,
for that the king, who was their tributarie, was dispossest of his realme by a Moore cal-
led *Singa Pander*, and now he maintaines himselfe with the aid which the Portugals giue
him.

The

A



THE NEW WORLD.

B

The Contents.

I Two notable difficulties which haue hindered the Ancients to discover the New
world, and which of the two were greatest: and the reasons which made the An-
cients beleue that there were but three partes of the world, Asia, Africke, and Eu-
rope. II. The sea compass invented by a Neapolitan for the use of Navigation,
in the year 1300. III. Qualities and description of the burning Zone. IIII. A com-
parison of the New World (taken as it was discovered) with ours; and the difference of our He-
misphere to that of the New World: and the advantages it hath ouer ours. V. Whence the In-
habitants of this New World came, and their foolish opinion touching their beginning. VI. Di-
uision of these New Lands into two parts, America, and Magellanica, and their description.
VII. Description of the places and countries which the king of Spaine holds at the New world,
and first of the Fortes of Saint Hellene and three others in Florida. VIII. Of the Gulph of
Mexico. IX. Nona Hispania. X. New Gallicia. XI. The Provinces of Meconacan and
Mexico. XII. Gasconia. XIII. Incatan. XIII. Guatemala. XV. The firme Land.
XVI. Nicaragua. XVII. Golden Castille. XVIII. The New kingdom of Grenado.
XIX. Bresil. XX. Chile. XXI. Peru, with the chiefe townes and prouinces. XXII. The
towne of Saint Croix du Mont. XXIII. Tucuma, a realme whereas the Spaniard hath five
Colonies. XXIIII. Paraguay. XXV. Hispaniola. XXVI. Cuba or Ferdinand.
XXVII. Iamaica. XXVIII. The Islands of Camibals or Caribes. XXIX. Discourse in
generall of the New World: of the forces and government as well ciuile as ecclesiasticall.
XXX. Of the knowledge which these people had of God. XXXI. Of their idolatrie to the
dead. XXXII. Of their idolatrie towards images. XXXIII. Of their Guagos or Tem-
ples. XXXIIII. Of their Priests and religious persons. XXXV. Of sacrifices both of
men and beasts. XXXVI. Of sacraments resembling in some sort ours, brought in among
the people by the Diuels pollicie. XXXVII. Dispositions at the New World to receive the
gospel of Iesu Christ. XXXVIII. Of certaine predictions of future preaching of the Chris-
tian faith in these Newfound Lands. XXXIX. Prodiges which went before. XL. What
E made the conversion of the Indians easie, and what did hinder it. XLI. Of the diuersitie
of the Barbarians: and of the manner of preaching the Gospel. XLII. Of the difficultie
they had in the conversion of the Americans. XLIII. Of the remedies of the said
errors.



He other part of the king of Spaines Estates consists in the New
world, where he hath all that he list, for that there is not any one
that will contradi& him. These Estates are diuided into Islands and
firmeland. The Islands of the North Sea, are so many, as they can-
not be yet numbered (for that the Lucayes onely exceed the num-
ber of foure hundred) and some of them are so great and rich,
as one of them would make a good realme. Borichin is three hun-
dred miles long, and sixty broad: Iamaica is almost as great: Cuba hath three hundred
leagues in length, and twentie in breadth: and Hispaniola hath one thousand and six hun-
dred miles in circuit. As for the firme land, the king of Spaine is actually Maister of all
that

that goes coasting along Florida, Noua Hispania, Iucatan, and also that great Southern A Peninsula vnto the Cape of California, yea vnto Quiuire, for that the Spaniards haue discovered so far, and farther. The coast of Noua Hispania (which beginning at S. Helena, and passing by Panama, goes vnto Quiuire) hath in length about fise thousand miles, whereunto adding the confines which are within the countie towards the North, they shall find in all nine thousand miles. After this Peru beginning from Panama, hath vpon the coast twelue thousand and six hundred miles, whereof there are three thousand miles of riuer, berwixt Maragon, and the riuer of Plata or Siluer, the which belongs (vnder the name of Brasil) to the crowne of Portugal. But before I proceed any further, I must say something touching the discouerie of this New World.

I. Two reasons moued Aristotle and some others, to perswade themselves that there were no other people in the world but the inhabitants of Europe, Asia, and Africke: the first was the vastnesse of the Atlantick Sea, which made them thinke that men could not passe such great waters, by any force or industrie, and this moued Saint Augustine to denie the Antipodes: the other reason which deuicied the ancients was, that they beleued that the burning Zone was inhabitable by reason of the excessive heat, as the Poles were for their insupportable cold. But the first of these two reasons had much more force than the second, for that they held this great passage at Sea to be impossible: but on the other side, we must vnderstand that the ancients had some knowledge of the burning Zone, for that Hanno of Carthage, according vnto Plinie, did coast alongst Africke, from Gibraltar vnto the Red Sea, and one Eudoxus on the other side, from the Red Sea, to Gibraltar: so as they were forced to passe twice vnder the Equinoctiall, and to crosse all the burning Zone. Moreover the ancients had knowledge of Ethiopia, the Indies, and the golden Chersonese, all which Provinces lie within the bounds of the burning Zone. Plinie makes mention of Taprobana which is vnder the Equinoctiall: and the experience of our Zone might teach the Ancients that the burning was habitable: for although that the sunne doth generally heat and drie with the neereenesse of his beames, and the more when they are perpendicular, in like manner as by his distance, and the obliquenes of his beames, he giues way to cold & moisture, as the day and night, with Winter and Sommer doth shew; yet this generall rule doth many times faile by reason of the diuersitie of situations: for the vertue of general causes in the production of effects is limited, and in a maner restrained by the qualitie of the substance; and this is the reason why the predictions of Astrologers doe many times proue vaine: so we see that winds grow strong and vehement in valles, and decrease vpon plaines: the heat of the sunne doth increase vpon concaue looking glasses, and disperseth it selfe vpon those that are plaines. And to come to our purpose, the heat and coolenesse of the Ayre and countries receiues a thousand diuersities from places that are high or low, vpon a plaine, or elevated, turned towards the North or South, the East or West, neere or far from the fies, lakes, woods, and riuers, or such places as are subiect to winds or not. We see that England is farther from the Equinoctiall than France, and yet by the report of all men, it is of more temper: and by the same proportion, Zealand is lesse cold than Mont Atlas. There is no greater effect of the neereenesse of the sunne than in Sommer, nor of his far distance than in Winter. But what shall we say, if in the same distance of the Equinoctiall and course of the sunne, we find that the seasons change at the same time? Gata is a mountaine which comming out of great Caucasus runs along the Indies vnto the Cape of Comorin: at the same instant on this side the mountaine, Winter begins at the entering of April, and Sommer on the other side of the mountaine at the same time: on this side there is abundance of raing with cold and stormie windes, and on the other side, they haue cleere and pleasing weather: on this side the sea growes so high and trouble some, as seamen are scarce secure in their harbor, and on the other side they passe through the gulfes of Bengola in assurance, and trafficke in all parts: Finally, the mount of Gata workes greater effects than the Equator, seeing that in so small a distance it doth change the seasons of the yere. If then we find the difference of Winter & Sommer in the same height, it shews that the degrees of heat and cold, of drougth and moisture, do not who-

A lie depend of the neereenesse, or remotenesse of the Sun. Wherefore, it may be coole and fresh when the Sun is neere, & moist when his beames are most straight: by which means the burning Zone cannot be without pastures, as Aristotle and some others did beleue. But the other difficultie seemed to the Ancients without helpe, for that in their navigations they had no other guides but the Sun and Moone, the two beares, and others stars. When the heavens were covered with clouds, which tooke from them the light of the Sun and Stars, then they gouerned themselves by the qualitie of the winds, and by the coniectures of the way which they had gone; wherein they were verie skilfull by reason of their short navigations, and their continual voyages. The Tapobates, for that they saw the North Star, carried many birds with them, and according to occasion first let flie one and then another, and for that birds doe willingly seeke land, they did houer before the prows of their ships: But if the skie were darkened, and the seas troubled with diuers winds, the Ancients could not comprehend where they were, for that the heaven and the sea being in this case in the like estate, there was no reason which should perswade them to go sooner on the one side than on the other. But God meaning to make easie the preaching of the Gospell, to them that had liued so long in idolatrie, discouered about the yere 1300. to one Flauio of Amalph, in the Realme of Naples, the secrets which are in the Adamant or Loadstone, and the proprietie it hath to cause yron which toucht therewith to bend towards the North, and to point at it; yet there is some difference, for that in some places the needle which the mariners vse, being toucht with the Adamant looks directly towards the North, and in other places it bends a little towards the East, and sometimes towards the West; so as they must carefully obserue the variation, if they will not faile in their voyages. The North Starre is distant from our Pole about 3 degrees and a half. By means of the Adamant from which yron receiues the vertue to shew the pole, seamen may with assurance crosse great seas, and seeke new Islands and remot countries: for that when as they know where the North stands, they are also assured that turning their faces to that part, they haue the East on the right hand, the West on the left, and the South behind them. And herein we may see how much God is pleased to doe wonderful works by small & base meanes, for that a needle of yron toucht with an Adamant stone, hath nothing pretious in it, & yet the greatest enterprife, and the most admirable art that man doth practise (which is nauigation) depends thereon.

Now that we haue shewed the difficulties in the discouerie of the New world, & haue sene which of the two was greatest, I must now speake something of the qualitie of the burning Zone. We must first of all presuppose, that the Equinoctiall is an imaginarie circle in the firmament, which doth inuiron all from the East to the West, and is equally distant from the two Poles: It is called Equinoctiall, for that when as the Sun passeth through that line (the which it doth twice a yere, that is, in March and September) the day and night are equal, either being of twelue houres: the which is called Equinox. After which they call Tropikes two imaginarie circles in the firmament, by the which the course of the Sun is limited; and they are called Tropikes, for that when as the Sun is come vnto one of them, he retunes backe againe. That which is beyond the Equinoctiall towards the South, is called the Tropike of Capricorne, and that which is of our side, the Tropike of Cancer. The other is three and twentie degrees and a halfe Southerly from the Equator: and this is three and twentie degrees and a halfe Northward. They call the space which is betwixt the two Tropikes, the burning Zone: and this interuall, or space, contains seuen and fortie degrees, the which doth answer to a thousand foure hundred and ten French leagues at land, after thirtie leagues for a degree. This foundation being laid, we must confesse that the burning Zone abounds with water of all sorts, for it raines and snows when the Sun is nearest: and then it raines most abundantly, and the riuer begins at noone day. Moreover, there is not any place vpon the earth where there are greater riuers, for that in the Southerne Peninsula of the New world, leauing many other great riuers of Brasil and Peru, they find that of Magdalene, which is seuen leagues broad at the mouth: Moreover, there is that of Orillane, which is seuentie leagues broad; that of Plata, fortie; and Maragon, which is one of the greatest riuers in

II.

III.

the world, with infinit others. Moreover, there are the lakes of Tiquicaca (this is eight leagues in circuit) Paria, and Bombom, and there are few mountains without lakes, from whence most of the rivers of these countries doe flow. In the Peninsula vpon the North part, there is the lake of Guatimala which is 150 miles long, and that of Nicaragua of three hundred, that of Mexico contains one hundred, that which is called the Capahique sea, hath one hundred and fiftie in circuit: And after all this, the Realme of Mechoacan is full of lakes, rivers, and fountaines. And to leaue the New world, where are there greater rivers and lakes, than in Æthiopia vnder the burning Zone? There are two, the one whereas the river of Nil hath her spring, the other by which it passeth, either of which hath 200 miles in diameter. There is another equall to these, betwixt the realm of Angola, and Mocomorapa: There is also the lake of Aquelonde, and that of Colue, which are very great, and moreover, there are great rivers in Æthiopia, as that of Coante and Niger, which hath for her branches, the rivers of Senaga and Gambia. There is then the river of Zaïre, which is 200 miles broad at the mouth; and most of the said rivers, not content with their own bounds, doe every yere ouerflow the fields. The Island of S. Tho. and of Sumatra which are vnder the Equinoctiall, are altogether moist: that of S. Thomas hath a high mountain in the middle of it, the which is continually couered with a thick cloud, the which yelds so much water, as the fields are abundantly watered: that of Sumatra is generally full of marishes and rivers, whereof the greatest part grow from a vey great lake, which is vpon the top of a high mountain in the middle of the Island, and nature not content with the water of the aire, and of the land to moisten the burning Zone, doth produce as well in Quito, at the Molucques (countries which are vnder the Equinoctiall) certain great Canes wherein water is preserved. We must not forget that vnder the burning Zone, there is much more sea than land, as in our Zone there is more land than sea. Moreover, it is most certain that in the burning Zone the rain & waters increase, when as the Sun draws neere the line, and contrariwise, when it retires towards the Tropikes they faile. This doth shew what effects the equalitie of the day & night doth work for the increase of water, for as in our Zone they haue greatest showers at the equinoxes, so haue they vnder the burning Zone. Besides, the burning Zone is not only moist, but also temperat, touching heat, and in some parts of it, it is much more cold than hot, as at Paflo, Collao, and Potofsi, and the mountains are alwaies couered with snow and yce. The general cause of this temperature is the length of the nights neere vnto the line, whereas they are continually equall with the day: but the farther off you go, the daies grow longer and the nights shorter, and for this cause the daies in sommer are longer in England than in Italie. The shortnesse of the day is the cause why the Sunne cannot produce so many degrees of heat vnder the Equinoctiall, as farre from it: and in effect, sommer is more violent in Estremadura in Spaine, and in Pouillia in Italie, than at Quito or Collao, for that the continuation of the working of the efficient cause, doth import much to the perfection of this effect. But what shall we say of the differences which we see in the same burning Zone, whereas one part is hot and another coole? This question is not particular to the New world, but generally to all prouinces, and we haue already giuen the solution, saying, That the heat of the Sun receiues a thousand differences by the diuersitie of situations. But to speake something, we must consider that the New world is full of high mountains which refresh the ayre, and with their heigh (for that high places do participate more of cold than the lower) and the snow which doth neuer abandon them, & lakes which are exceeding cold, and the rivers which flow from them, whose water growing of snow and yce, is wonderfully cold and raw, and with the violence and swiftnesse with the which they run from the mountaines and crosse the plaines, doe wonderfully refresh the ayre and earth. Moreover, the said mountains being vey high, they must of necessity make a great shadow, sometimes of one side, sometime of another; and this shadow being added to the length of the nights, imports much to temper the burning Zone. Besides this, we must consider that these fresh winds do blow continually there: for first of all at sea, the sommer wind raines continually, and at Peru and Brasil they haue a Southerne wind, which riseth at noone day, and on the other side an Easterly.

Let

A Let vs now compare one world with another, considering the new in the East, where in it was when it was first discovered. We haue some aduantages in regard of the Heauens, some others for that of the Earth: in regard of Heauen, the one is, that our Hemisphere hath more stars and lightes than that which is opposite: for ours hath the North star within three degrees and a halfe of the Pole Artike, with a great number of other stars which do accompanie it; whereas the Antartike Pole hath not any star within thirte degrees. The other aduantage of as great importance, is, that the sunne shines seven daies in the yere towards the Tropike of Cancer, more than towards that of Capricorne, as the Equinoctiall and Soldiars do witness: from these, two things proceeds, B the coldnesse which is found greater in the other part than in ours, for that the other doth lesse enioy the light of the sunne, and hath fewer stars. As for the land, we haue also two aduantages; the one is, that ours extends more from the West vnto the East, and is consequently more fit for the life of man, than the other, which restraining it selfe from the West to the East, enlargeth it selfe wonderfully from the one Pole vnto the other: for the land goes from the West vnto the East with more equalitie, and is alwaies equally distant, from the coldnesse of the North, and the heat of the South, and the daies and the nightes go alwaies alike: but going towards the Pole, they must of necessity find nights which continue a whole Moneth together, and in the end halfe a yere. The second aduantage is, that our land is more fauourable by the sea, which makes it fit C for traffike: for besides the Ocean, which is common to vs and the New World, we haue the Mediterranean sea, which doth water Europe, Asia, and Africke, and is commodious for these three parts in diuers sorts. What shall we say of the Calpian and Balticke sea, whereof the one is very beneficiall to Asia, and the other to Europe. Let vs adde hereunto that our land is more equall and plaine, and by consequence more fit for traffike both by land and water. As for those things which the earth brings forth, the New World doth yeld vnto this, first, in the perfection of creatures, for that they had neither dogs, sheepe, goats, hogs, cats nor asses, and that which doth more import, they wanted oxen, heries, camels, moiles and elephants. As for trees, there were neither Cedars, orange trees, Lemmons, Pomgranets, Figs nor Quinces, but aboue all they wanted Oliue D trees and Vines. It is true that we had not greater aduantage in regard of beasts, than of fruits; for that touching the last, we did surmount them in bountie and diuersitie; and in the first, in bountie only. As for graine, they had neither wheat nor rie, nor any of our kinds of corne, nor yet rice, neither melons for the beautifying of their gardens. As for artes and matters of industrie, there was no comparison, for that the inhabitants of the New World vsed no iron, which is necessarie and profitable for the life of man; and they had as little vse of fire, the vniuersall instrument of industrie. They had no knowledge of arillerie, printing, letters and learning: their navigation extended no further than their sights, and herein I speake of those people that were most industrious and ciuile, as they of Mexico and Peru. Our world doth also exceed the new in the multitude of E people. There are many great mountaines, moores, and high woods and forestes which make great countries inhabitable; and that part which is inhabited is not so well peopled as ours, for that these were sooner peopled, yea were altogether peopled whenas they began. Moreover, here were found arts to maintaine life, as tillage; and to preserve it, as architecture and building, and to make it more commodious; so as the multiplying of mankind was assisted here both by nature and industrie; and there, as a man may say, by nature alone. Also vnto this day a great part of Brasil liues after a sauage manner, and in new Spaine there is a great tract of countrie held by the Chichimeques (a people without law, without head, and without aboady who liue of hunting and of the fruits of the earth). They of Florida and of the Paraguaius liue in a manner after the same sort, and when the Spaniards came into Peru, notwithstanding that they found many places peopled, yet there was not any that had the forme of a towne, but Cusco: but at this day the New World is lesse peopled than euer, partly by reason of the Spaniards ciuil wars; for that they hold that in the wars (which were betwixt the factions of Pizarro and Almagro, and betwixt the Partizans of Pizarro and the kings men) there died a million and a halfe

V iij

a halfe

a halfe of the naturall inhabitants; and partly by the cruelties and disorders of the Spaniards in the beginning, not onely murdering them most cruelly, but also toiling the people infinitely, transporting them from one place vnto another, far from their country aire, which was the death of many, and that which did also hurt them, was the theft of meates which had bene transported from Europe: they did not eat so much flesh, nor so grosse and nourishing, neither had they any wine, whereas now at Peru they haue abundance; and for that the princes did sometime employ them to build rampes, sometimes to make waies and such like things, they had no leisure to gormandise and to become drunke as they haue at this day, for they so abuse their libertie, as they abandon themselves to Idleness, whoredome, & drunkenness which consumes them miserably. Diuers generall diseases haue also consumed many as the pox, and the Cocoliste in new Spaine; many infants and young people died of the pox at Peru in the year 1567, and more females than males, the which they that had passed the age of thirtie yeares escaped. They did also particularly obserue that such as were borne in Europe were not toucht with this disease: so as for the foresaid reasons, that part of new Spaine which lies vpon the sea is at this day in a manner desart. In the Islands of the gulfes of Mexico there are scarce any Indians remaining, no more than in the countrie of Paria and the plains of Peru. But to shew the advantages which the new World hath ouer ours, it seeme that *Joseph Acosta* would infer, that America exceeds our countrie in temperature, for that neither cold nor heat are offensive in many places: but this is common to those parts of our World which are vnder, or neere the Equinoctial, as *Ethiopia*, the Indies, and the golden Cherfonese. Next he will haue the New World exceed ours in abundance of waters and pastures, and truly as touching waters, it is most certaine that there is more sea, and that the riuers of Plata and Maragnon are two of the greatest in the world: he giues it also an advantage ouer vs in greenesse of woods and diuersitie of trees and roots, whereas those people liue in many places (as in the Islands of Barlouen and Brasil) the which hath great shew of truth, for the continuation of moisure and heat which raines there continually. Last of all, he puts it out of all dispute that there are more Mines of gold and silver than in our parts, the which is hard to decide, at the least quantitie for quantitie: For I know not whether the mines of gold of Peru exceeds those of *Ethiopia*, *Monomotapa*, *Nandingue*, *Suinatra* and *Lequij*; or whether the mines of *Potosi* be richer than those of *Cambebes* in *Angola*. He adds also, that New Spaine is one of the best countries in the world, the which may well be graunted without prejudice. But taking the New world as it is now, in my opinion it exceeds ours, not in multitude (for that it is not so well manured) but in diuersitie of beasts and fruits, for they haue in a manner added all ours to those which were priuie vnto the Countrie: and it hath this advantage, that our seeds grow better in America, than those of America doe with vs.

V. The question is now, to know from whence the inhabitants of this New world came. We must first vnderstand that these people haue a foolish opinion of their beginning: The *Guanches* dwelling in the valles of *Xauxe*, hold for their first parents, a man and a woman come out of *Guaribique*, a famous fountaine amongst them. The people of *Andabaye* (a valley subiect to *Cusco*) say, that they are issued out of the lake *Sogdocoque*. They of *Cusco* draw their beginning from the great lake of *Tiquicaa*. Others say, that after the deluge making was restored by six persons which were saued in a certaine caue. But leaving all these follies, we must confesse that all men are come from *Adam* and *Eue*, & then from those which were saued in the Arke, & that by consequence the inhabitants of the New world are defended from vs. It is a hard matter to find out where they passed: wherein nothing can satisfie vs better, than the neighborhood of places: but this will not satisfie, for the little knowledge we haue of the extremitie of the earth. *Vesputius* saith, That towards the North, *Greenland* ioynes with *Estotiland*, and is a firme land: in which case it is likely that they of *Lapland* and *Norway*, continuing their multiplication and dwellings, haue by little & little gone thither: which may well be coniectured by the inhabitants of *Lapland*, *Norway*, *Estotiland* and *Baccalaos*, and their manner of liuing: for that all dwell in caues, or in hollow trees: all weare scale skinned, or those of wild

A wild beasts, all liue of fish, or of the fruits of the earth, and they do not much differ in colour. Towards the South, if it be true (as many hold) that the land opposed to the strait of Magellan is firme land, we must confesse that some part of the inhabitants of America came that way, for that this strait in some places is not about a league ouer; by reason whereof the passage was easie. We haue no knowledge of the extremitie of the East and West; only we see that the colour of the people of the New world doth more resemble the people of the East, than of the West, for that they haue a colour like brasse, and there are degrees of this colour, as of white amongst vs: for it is more obscure in some places, as at *Peru* and *Brasil*; and in others more cleare, as in *Paria* and the new Realme. There are some people found blacke, as in *Careque*, a countrie lying betwixt *Sancta Martha*, and *Carthagena*: by reason whereof we may say that these men came by some tempest, either from *Guinee* or *Ethiopia*. It seemes there haue not any yast from the ciuiler parts of Europe, before *Christopher Columbus*, for that they found not in all these countries any markes of learning, or of any thing of Europe: besides, it is not about two hundred yeares that the greatest part of the Islands which are betwixt our firme land and the New world were inhabited, as the *Agores*, *Madera*, the Islands of *Cape Verde*, *Saint Thomas*, and others of that sea. Let vs then conclude that the New world was first inhabited by people who continuing the habitation of Europe and Asia (as for *Affricke*, it seemes it could not haue any part in this) and searching continually for more commodious and safe dwelling, are by little and little arriued there, and that it hath also bin peopled by some others which haue bene driuen thither by tempests.

¶ Division of the New world.

After that *Columbus* had discovered these New lands to them of Europe, they haue alwaies continued to go on in diuers expeditions: but notwithstanding that many full of courage and singular valour, as well of *Italie*, *Spaine*, and *England*, as of *Portugal* and *France*, haue employed themselves in this search, yet could they neuer attaine vnto a perfect knowledge, especially of the farthest bounds towards the North, West, and South. For my part I will follow them of most authoritie which haue written thereof, leaving discourses full of impertinencie. This continent of land the which is called the New world (I speake of the firme land) is diuided into two parts, that is, into *America* and *Maglanica*: *America* is againe diuided into two verie great Peninsulas, ioyned by an Isthmus, or tongue of land which is seuen leagues long, betwixt *Nombre de Dios* and *Panama*: for as for the eleuen leagues which they doe commonly make more betwixt these two places, is by reason of their turnings, in seeking to find out a more easie and conuenient passage. We will name one of these Peninsulas the Northern, and the other the Southern.

As for the Northern, they giue it sixteene thousand miles of circumference, and foure thousand miles in length from the East vnto the West: the bounds towards the North are not yet knowne. *James Cartier* discovered it in the year 1535, vnto the fiftieth degree: *Gasper Corteualis* a Portugall vnto sixtie fix, and *Sebastian Gabot* an Italian to sixtie seuen, as some write, but he could passe no farther by reason of the cold. Of late yeares *Sir Martin Frobisher* made three voyages for the discouerie of this North West passage to the *Molucces*, but he could not passe on by reason of the abundance of yce, since his time this voyage hath been continued by others, and is yet, with hope of good success. This Peninsula is bounded on the other sides partly by the Northern sea, and partly by that of the South. That part which turnes towards the East contains three great countries, that is to say, *Estotiland*, *Labrador* and *Norombegue*, which are in a manner opposit to *Norway*, *England*, *France*, and *Spaine*. *Estotiland* is the most Northern Region that is knowne, and it was discovered long before *Columbus* by certain Fishermen of *Friesland*, afterwards found out againe in the year 1390 by *Anthony Zeevaen*, by the commaundement of *Zichim* king of *Friesland*: this countrie of *Estotiland* ends at the riuer of *Negeuse*, which hath sixtie degrees of elevation of the Pole,

Pole; and there begins the Isthmus of Labrador; which extends it selfe to the river of Saint Lawrence, which some term the Strait of the three brethren, and others the river of Canada. Leaving the Strait of the three brethren, they enter into a gulf which is called Cairey, almost eight hundred miles long, and in a manner stopp'd up with diuers Islands (*Parazan* and others) number them to be thirtie and seuen which lie towards the East. This countrie is called the Land of Bacalaos, of a fifth which doth so multiplye there as it is incredible. The neighbourhood of the aforesaid Islands make the sea seeme to be divided into many armes and gulfs: and for this cause there are many good and safe ports. As for the Southern Peninsula, which stretcheth to the Magellan Strait, they hold that it hath fiftene thousand miles in circuit, and foure thousand in length: the breadth is diuers; for that betwixt *Noribre de Dios* and Panama, it is but seven leagues; betwixt this gulf of *Vraba*, and that of Saint Michael, fuenie and fiae; betwixt the Cape of Saint Augustin and Cape Blanke, one thousand, and at the Strait of Magellan one hundred thirtie and foure. It is crost in a manner with very high mountaines (and by consequence with an infinite number of valleys) from the which spring many rivers; but those which fall into the North sea are greater than the others: the which is, by reason of the mountaines which crosse Peru in such sort, as they are alwaies within the sight of the South sea: so as the rivers which come from them are presently lost in the sea. You must not thinke that my meaning is at this present to describe all the New world, my designe being only to shew the Monarchie of Spaine, so as I will make no stay, but at such places whereas the Spaniard holdes something, hauing an intent to speake of other Provinces in their places.

¶ The Fort of Saint Helene, and the three of Florida.

VII.

To begin then vpon the North side, the Spaniards haue a Fort at Saint Hellens Cape, which is vpon the farthest bound of *Norumbega* or *Asamber*. The French haue plant'd Colonies in this Province, wherefore I hold it needlesse to describe it. As for Florida, it hath for bounds towards the East, *Bahian* and the Islands of *Lucayes*, towards the West Mexico, and towards the South *Cuba* and *Iucatan*, and vpon the North *Canada*, *Virginia*, and *Noua Francia*. It is foure hundred miles long, and aduanceth into the sea with a point, and it hath in breadth eightie miles. The coast is rough, and the sea full of rockes, especially against the said point where the rockes lie, the which is called the *Martires*. It is vnder the same Parallele that *Mauritania*, and hath in the middle part fiae and thirtie degrees of eleuation. The Spaniards for many vnfortunat accidents which haue befallne them, haue in a manner abandoned the enterprise of this conquest, notwithstanding that they doe partly know the riches thereof. Vpon the banks of Saint Helene, at the point of Florida, is *Rico Secco*, or the drie river, the Cape of *Croix*, that of Saint Augustine, and *Cannatual*. But in Florida the king of Spaine hath three places in which he entertaines garrisons, Saint James, Saint Augustine, and Saint Philip: and of this side vnto the Cape of the New foundland, or France Antarcticke, their vessels are small and go with oares, for that the sea is shallow in those parts. Many haue bene of opinion that there is some strait in these countries by the which the North sea ioynes with the South, of which *Melendes* was one, who attempted it first, for that there were certaine peeces of China ships found in the North sea; and secondly, for that vpon a flat which doth run three hundred leagues into the land, there came Whales at a certain time of the yeare from the other sea. And some others haue held, that maister *Candish* who took a ship coming from the Philippines at the Cape of *Californi*a in the yeare 1587, pass that way. *Stephen Comes* seeking this passage went many miles vpon the river of Saint Anthony which is in Florida, and some others haue gone by that of Saint Laurence, but without successe.

¶ The

A

¶ Qualitie of the Countrie.

This Province abounds in many things, it hath diuers fruits and many kindes of beastes. There is great quantitie of gold and siluer, which the Inhabitants gather together, cutting the rivers with little ditches. The land would carrie any kind of graine if it were sown, and it is also capable of all sorts of fruits. There hath bene pearles, turquoises, and Emeralds found there. The kine of this countrie haue haire like vnto horses, and a bunch vpon their backes like to a cammell.

B

¶ The Manners.

The Inhabitants are of a colour like brasse, the reason is, for that they annoint themselves with a certain ointment, & the heat of the sun, notwithstanding that they are born more white. They are active and light, which is by reason of their continual exercise in going a hunting, and their food, which is for the most part of wild beastes. They haue three kindes of flags, from one of which they draw milke as we do from our kine. They doe arme the points of their arrowes with fish bones, or flint stones. They vse cockle shells for coine, but they are handsomely trimmed after their manner: it is not lawfull for any to vse them but great lords, no more than among vs to coine money. Their noble men wear garments of fables, but the rest go halfe naked. They are cunning and crafty, and do naturally loue war and reuenge; for they alwaies are in war one countrie against another, killing all the men they can take, but the women and children they preferue. They haue great care of their victuals, and sow rice in March and Iune, the which they gather three monethes after when it is ripe, and put it into common storehouses to distribute to euery one according to his estate and necessitie. They fight continually against the Crocodiles, and stand continually vpon their guard, as if they were enuironed with enemies. When they want victuals they wil eat serpents, spiders, coles, and other filthie things like to the *Auanares* their neighbours. In this countrie they find many *Hermaphrodites*, whom they vse as beastes to carrie their luggage, putting them to all slavish drudgerie.

¶ The Riches.

The Inhabitants hauing gathered vp gold and siluer in the water, as I haue formerly said, carrie it to the sea side to sell, and this is the chiefe traffike of that countrie.

¶ Forces.

The Spaniards hold the foresaid three places of Saint James, Saint Augustine, and Saint Philip: and they say that, that of Saint Augustine hath bene newly fortified since it was ruined by sir *Francis Drake*. Those which stand are reasonably strong, and haue sufficient garrisons and artillerie.

¶ The Religion.

The Inhabitants of this countrie beleeue the immortallitie of the soule like vnto vs, but otherwise they are Idolaters.

¶ The Gulfe of Mexico.

This gulfe, which is also called the sea of *Cortez*, hath as it were two ports, the one by the which the tide enters with a violent streame, and this is betwixt the farthest part of *Iucatan*, and the Island of *Cuba*: the other by the which the tide goes forth, with the like force; and this is betwixt the point of Florida and *Cuba*. It doth water in a manner two hundred miles of Coast betwixt the said Florida and *Iucatan*, and this is the coast of

of new Spaine. This sea is very tempestuous, and hath few ports that are safe, except that of the Hauana towards the North. Their chiefe port is that of saint Iohn de Lua, the which hath bene wonderfully well fortified by the Spaniards, for that the fleets of Mexico and Spaine lie safely there, being couered with an Island, which hath a league in circuit.

¶ *New Spaine.*

- IX. **A**Ll the countrie which extends from Florida vnto the sea of California they containe vnder this name: on the South part it confines with Guatimala and Lucatan: It was subdued by *Ferdinand Cortez* in the yeare 1518. This Spaine contains some famous regions, the which are new Galicia, Mechouacan, Mexico, and Guathecac.

¶ *The Qualitie of New Spaine in generall.*

The aire (especially towards Mexico, which answers to that of the burning Zone) is temperate there: in the moneths of August and September it raines every day after noone. The soile is verie fertile, and abounds in a manner with all sorts of fruits, except wine and oyle; and yet there is sufficient of wine, and good store of olive trees: both which where they grow, do much increase the king of Spaines revenues. They haue in a manner all kind of beastes, as well those of the countrie as of Europe. The Spaniards haue more affected this countrie than any other of America. It is true that although they which are naturally borne of the countrie liue reasonably long, yet the Spaniards (I meane those which had Spaniards to their fathers) do seldom passe fixtie yeares, and if they exceed it, it is not much: and such as come out of Spaine being already of good yeares, liue longer than such as come thither in their youth.

¶ *New Galicia.*

- X. **T**he Inhabitants of this Prouince did formerly call it Xalisque, whereas *Nugno de Guesman* (who conquered it) caused the townes of Compostella, Saint Esprit, Saint D Michael, and Guadalajara to be built. That part which is inuironed by the riuers of Piafle, and Saint Sebastian, is called Couliacan. The Metropolitane towne is Couliacan, whereas the Spaniards haue planted the Colonie of Saint Michael. Then leauing countries little knowne vpon the right hand, for that they haue not seene of their gold nor silver, they come vnto the red sea, or of California, by Sibole and Grenados: hither to the Spaniards trade, & the countrie is inhabited. *Francis Coronado* came to Sibole by the commandement of *Antonie de Mendoza* in the yeare 1579, but finding small profit, returned with his souldiers to Mexico.

¶ *The Qualitie.*

Mines of gold are abundant in this countrie, and it is fit to beare all sorts of fruits. They take much fish in the sea that is neere it, and they haue many wild beastes in their forrests. But the countrie for the most part is rough and stonie.

¶ *The Manners.*

They that dwell vpon the sea shore liue only of fish, the rest are sauage and go continually a hunting: they are poore people which goe naked, and lie downe in the forrests whereas sleepe or the night surpriseth them. They say that many times they do not forbear to eat mans flesh. They do not acknowledge any man, and liue at libertie, but now they are vnder the dominion of the Spaniards.

¶ *Mechouacan.*

A. ¶ *Mechouacan.*

This Prouince is some fiftie leagues from Mexico, and hath eightie in circuit: in it is the towne of Saint Sinsone which is great and well peopled, whereas the kings of Mechouacan made their abode. There is also the towne of Pascuar, whereas the Bishop did first remaine, & that of Valladolid whereas he now makes his residence. There passeth through this countrie a swift streame, which goes alwaies turning, and hauing receiued other twelue riuers into it, enters into a lake called the Cephalique sea, the which hath one hundred and fiftie miles in circuit: going out of this lake, it doth sodainly fall into a verie deepe valley, and so continuing her course with a thousand turnings, she enters with great abundance of waters (which ingender Crocodiles) into the the South sea: but returning a little backe neere vnto the sea, they discover Sacatule, and within the countrie, Colima, with a towne called the Purification, and vpon the sea shore are the ports of S. Iames, of the Natiuitie, and S. Anthonie.

¶ *The Qualitie.*

This countrie is one of the best of New Spaine, for that the Mahiz and diuers other fruits doe ripen twice in the yeare; the which yeeld such increase, as *Francis* of Torazas did reape six hundred quarts of graine, for foure which he had sowne. There are also many Simples, among which one is famous, the which they call Mechouacan of the name of the countrie. There is abundance of cotton, cutchaneale, mulberrie trees, and silke. There is store of gold and silver, but it is base. There is also much honie, wax, blacke amber, salt, and fish: by reason whereof it is called Mechouacan, which signifies a place of fishing.

¶ *The Manners.*

The Inhabitants are tall, strong, and actiue; they seeme to haue good wits, the which doth appeare by their workes which they make of birds feathers, or that are cut in canes, or of such like things which come from thence: but this may be better conceiued by their language which is copious and full of words, and so figuratiue and artificiall as they that vnderstand it preferre it before the Latine. They are of a good complexion and long life, and some hold that they are descended from the Fenien Races which came out of the Northern parts to people Spaine.

¶ *Mexico.*

The prouince of Mexico is the most pleasing and fertile in all the New world, yea, according to the iudgement of *Ioseph Acosta*, one of the best of all the world. It is so called of the chiefe towne, which is a hundred degrees from the Fortunat Islands. It was taken by *Fernando Cortez* in the yeare 1521, the thirteenth of August. This Spanishe captaine led to this enterprise two hundred thousand Indians, others write but one hundred thousand, nine hundred Spaniards, eightie horse, seuentene pieces of small ordnance, thirteene brigandins, and six thousand Canoes, which are like Gondoles or Wherries. This towne stands in a great plaine inuironed with high mountaines, on which there lies snow continually, and it may haue about seuentie leagues in compasse: but there are three and thirtie of them in two lakes, whereof the one is of fresh water, and the other of salt: The water which commeth from the fresh lake enters into the salt and becomes salt, in the bottome whereof they find Saltpetre. The towne which was vpon the salt lake was ruined by *Cortez*, & then built againe, not in the water but vpon the firme land. It contains about six thousand houses of Spaniards, and sixtie thousand of Indians which dwell in the suburbs. They say that there are foure beautifull things at Mexico, the women, their apparrell, their horses, and the streets. Vpon the banks of these lakes,

IX

lakes, there were neere fittie good towns, among the which, Tescuto did yeeld little vnto A Mexico. Mexico hath in it Printing, a Mint, and a most flourishing Vniuersitie. There is moreover in this realme, the towne of Angas, with a wonderful fertile soile, distinguished into valles, little hills, and plaines, where there is to be seen many troupes of sheepe and horned beasts, with great abundance of come and fruit. On the other side stands Tlascala (which signifies a towne of bread) vpon a little hill hauing a goodly plaine territory, the which is aboute fiftie miles in circuit: there were in old time three hundred thousand soules in this towne, but at this day you shall scarce find fittie thousand. The Citizens are all noble, and free from taxes, which priuiledge they obtained for their seruice in aid to the crowne of Spaine in the conquest of Mexico, yet euery man payes a little quantity of come in signe of subiection, and of late yeares the gouernors haue laid some extraordinary charges vpon them. The other townes of most note are Tulle, Tuluca, and towards the west (besides the towne which is called the True Crosse) Zempoalan, with a countie aboute it abounding in waters: then Tausco, a great towne (whose Bishop doth also call himselfe Bishop of Capaz) which had as some say fise & twentie thousand houses built of lime and a far earth, and some of wood covered with straw and a certain kind of stone. It seemeth the greater, for that the houses stand scattering one from another, for feare of fire. The riuer of Aluata runs by these places, and enters afterwards into the Sea by three mouths. Within the countie stands Vlahan a great towne, hauing a countie full of fruits and well inhabited, in which there are mynes of Alame and C Brimstone.

¶ The Qualitie of the Countie.

ALtho this countie is exceeding temperat, and beares great abundance of fruits, and all commodities necessarie for the life of man: There are many mulberrie trees with whose leaues they doe feed great store of silke wormes. In the fresh lake of Mexico, there grows a verie good hearbe which they call euerie Moone, and as for the salt lake, they did in former times draw great store of salt from thence, but now it failes; yet they draw forth much Saliter, and the Indians doe soyle earth with dung, wherewith they make a certaine kind of salt, which is not worth any thing. They doe now feed many horses, asses, and D troupes of sheepe in this countie, and they haue some mines. There is such abundance of victuals, as eight and twentie pound weight of beefe is not worth aboute halfe a Royal or three pence, and a hog two Royals, or three at the most.

¶ Manners of the Ancients.

THe inhabitants of this countie, were in former times eaters of men, and Idolaters, and had many wifes. The king of Mexico did neuer succed by right of blood, but by the choise of Electors which were fix in number. They made choise of young men, which were aduice, iustie, and wel disposed of their persons, and fit for war, yea the Mexicans did kill one of their kings for that he was a coward. There was a foueraigne Countie consisting of foure degrees of Nobles, and officers, without whom he could not execute any thing of importance. They had not any thing in greater commendation than the breeding vp of children, and they did not esteeme of any thing but religion & war. There was a man of note among them, called Thacael, who was so valiant, as he conquered a good part of the estate of Mexico, and was so generous, as he refused the Realme, saying, That it was more contentment for the commonweale that another should be king, and that he should execute that which was necessarie for the state, than to lay the whole burthen vpon his backe, and that without being king he would not leaue to labour for the publike, as well as if he were. Their kings liued with great maiestie and state, as well in their dwellings as seruices. They extended their dominions, of the one side vnto Tegnanpec, which is two hundred leagues from Mexico, & on the other side to Guaimela, which is three hundred leagues off, and vnto the North and South seas. It is true they could neuer subdue them of Mechouacan, Tlascalla, nor Terpear, and the hatred which

A was betwixt the Mexicans and the Tlascallans opened the gate vnto the Spaniards, and made the conquest of this empire easie. The Mexicans came into these places diuided into seuen tribes or linages, from a Northern region, whereas of late they haue discovered a rich and well peopled prouince, which the Spaniards call new Mexico: their chiefe honour consisted in armes, by the which they made themselves noble. *Moteczuma* (who was the last king) instituted certaine orders of knights, whereof some were called Princes, others Lions, some Eagles, and some Leopards: these were allowed to weare gold and siluer, to be clothed in cotton, to weare breeches, and to haue vessell painted and gilt, which none of the meane sort might vse.

¶ The Manners at this day.

THe Mexicans are witty and industrious: they are full of courage, and thinke that the greatest glory of a man consists in valour. In their cumbates they vse arrows, and slings with the which they cast stones, and they can now vse the harquebuz since the Spaniards came among them. The people are very sober and giuen to traffike, which is in great request in that countie. Euery man is giuen to feede silkwormes, and the handicrafts men make a thousand pretty toys both of wood and fethers. They haue accustomed themselves for the most part to the Spanish fashions, since they receiued baptisme.

¶ The Riches.

THe herbe which they draw euery yeare out of the fresh lake, is not worth lesse vnto the Inhabitants of Mexico than twentie thousand crownes. Finally, if Peru exceeds this countie in abundance of gold and siluer which is exceeding fine, this may also vaunt that it is richer than Peru in fruits and cattell, and that it exceeds it in arts. As for cattell, there is some one that hath aboute fortie thousand oxen and kine of his owne particular, & some other hath aboute a hundred and fiftie thousand sheepe. In the fleet which came in the yeare 1587 there were brought sixtie four thousand cow hides into Spaine, D and besides this merchandise which doth amount to aboute six score thousand pounds yearly, they carrie a great quantity of siluer, some in ready money, and the rest in wools, sugars, silkes, and cochenille, which is a worme they sow vpon the leaues of Indian fig-trees, where it doth grow covered with a certaine delicate cotton: they gather it with great care, drie it in the sunne, and so send it into Spaine, and this commoditie yeelds not lesse than three hundred thousand crownes a yeare: the fig-tree that hath this seed, carries no other fruit that yeare but these wormes. New Spaine doth also traffike with China. They bring from thence flax, brasse, tin, white wax, white taffetas, gold for merchandise, paper, with many delicate toys, which are transported to Peru at easie rates, and siluer is the chiefe merchandise they send backe into China, whereas the earth yeelds more gold E than siluer; but it doth not exceed nineteene carats, and it is refined at Mexico to two and twentie.

New Spaine doth also vent into Peru for a million of crownes, in wollen cloth, silks, linnen cloth, and tables. They haue not yet found out the art to make glasse nor paper, and it may be more through the error of the workemen (especially in regard of Glasse) than of the matter. The paper is of an oliue colour, and is good for any thing but to write on, and the glasse is oblique and grosse. The Indians pay vnto the king and to the feudataries twelue rials for euery head, and nothing else.

¶ Government.

FOr that I referre it to the end of my discourse to treat of the government of America in generall, and of the forces; I will onely say, that the king giues to them that conquer, and to souldiers of note, not the government of the Indians, but the vasselage and the right of the tax which should be due to him, and this continues but for the life of the conqueror.

X.

conqueror and his sonne, with a bond to performe that which the king should: that is, to maintain preachers of Christs doctrine, and priests for the service of God, and to furnish the churches. But the Iustice and government depends wholly of the kings courts and officers. The Viceroy and the Archbishops remaine at Mexico, where the foueraigne court is for New Spaine. Tlascalla is gouerned like a common weale vnder the protection of the king of Spaine, with a Spanish gouernor, and another of the countrie.

¶ *Gaftecan.*

XII. IN conquering the New World, the Spaniards haue bene carefull, not to people it with any plantations, but vpon the sea coast, or neere vnto riuers, vntill that being growne the stronger, they extend their dominion far into the countrie. Coasting then along New Spaine, they found the mouth of the riuer of Palmes, to the conuict whereof *Armando de Narvaez* in the yere 1527 led six hundred Spaniards and one hundred horse, who were in a manner all lost and could not find it, and some of them were so prest with famine as they did eat one another. Twentie miles beneath this riuer is that of Panuco, whereas *Francis Garai* was ill intreated by cruell and barbarous people, who slew about foure hundred of his men, and did sacrifice and eat some of them, hanging their skins dried in the temples of their Idols. This countrie was afterwards subdued by the captains of *Cortez*: They called it Gaftecan, or the riuer of Panuco, and there is a place called *Zimarao*, in whose territorie there is to be seene at the foot of a mountaine two fountaines, whereof the one is of blacke pitch, and the other of red, and very hot. To this purpose I will tell you that in the Island of *Vvolues* neere vnto *Lima*, there is a fountaine of Bitumen which is like vnto pitch, the which at *Peru* they call *Copoy*; and another at *S. Helenes* point, with the which they do calke their ships exceeding well. About thirtie and nine yeres since, there was a certaine rebellion in this Prouince, the which was followed by a war, whereby the whole countrie was made desert. Then follows the red Cape, the riuer of *Aulnerie*, *Ville-riche*, or the rich towne, so called for that it is a port by the which all the trafficke doth passe betwixt old Spaine and new, and *Don Ambonie de Mendoza* caused a goodly way to be made from this place to Mexico, to make the commerce easie, and to conduct their merchandise. But the trafficke was afterwards transported to the True crosse for more commoditie, the which lies a little lower against *Saint Iohn de Lua*. The Spaniards haue two colonies here, that is to say, Panuco, and *Saint Iames* of the Valley.

¶ *Iucatan.*

XIII. IVCATAN (which they of the countrie call *Maithan* or *Maiaapar*) is a great Peninsule, the which is nine hundred miles in circuit, & is in the one and twentieth degree. The more it aduanceth into the sea, the more it doth extend and enlarge it selfe with two Capes, whereof that towards the North is called Cape Rouge or the Red Cape, and that of the South *Cotoque*. This land was first discovered by *Francis Hernandez de Cordona* in the yere 1517; it lies opposit to the Island of Cuba.

¶ *Qualitie.*

Many desert places are in this countrie, and it is poore in gold and siluer, but in many places rich in corne, fruits, hony, wax, geefe, hens, capons, hares and fags. And although there be no riuers that water it, yet the land continues alwaies fresh and in good estate, for that two or three foot vnder the ground it is stonie, from vnder the which there flowes springs of water and little brookes.

¶ *Manners.*

A

¶ *The Manners.*

THE naturall inhabitants of Iucatan, are somewhat warlike and generous, and they liue longer than the rest of New Spaine: They did sacrifice their enemies taken in war, but they did not eat them, abhorring the Mexicanes for that cause: They vsed bows and tangers, they did arme their heads with wood, and had corselets of cotton, and did paint their faces and bodies blacke: They seemed at their first discouerie to be more cruell than the rest of the Indians, for the Spaniards found a great towne, where the houses were artificially built of stone and lime; they had goodly Temples and faire Market places: They liued vnder laws, and did trafficke together with great sinceritie, by exchanging their commodities without money: They frequented their Temples much, and were great Idolaters: They vsed circumcision, but not all in generall: They did worship the Crosse to obtaine raine. Some write, That the Spaniards when they came, found Crosse amongst them, which (they said) a beautifull man had left with them for a remembrance.

¶ *Guatemala.*

XIII. IN this countrie which lies betwixt Iucatan and Nicaragua (besides the towne of Guatemala or of *S. Iames*) you may see Chappa, Saint Sauour, and Saint Michael, Colonies of Spaniards.

¶ *The Qualitie.*

THE aire of this countrie is sweet & pleasant, and the soyle fertile, having both mountaines and vales which yeeld store of fruit. The chiefe towne (which beares the same name) is in a pleasing valley, the which is alwaies full of hearbes, and pleasing fruits. Among other fruits it abounds in Cacao, the which is like vnto an Almond, but it is round, and this fruit serueth the Indians for meat, drinke, and money, especially in many parts of New Spain, twentie thousand Cacaos, which make a charge, are worth one hundred and twentie Ryals in Guatemala, and two hundred in Mexico. This tree flies the Sunne, and loues the water; so as to the end it may grow, and carrie abundance of fruit, they plant it in the water, vnder some other tree that may shadow it, and keepe it from the Sun beames. The towne was first built at the foot of a certaine hill, which did vomit forth flames of fire, and is called at the Indies a *Vulcano*. But for that in the yere of our Lord 1540, on the six and twentieth day of December, a lake hidden in the bowels of this mountaine, brake forth in diuers places, and did ouerflow (with a fearefull violence) and ruine the greatest part of the towne, it was transported two miles from thence into a better situation, and with it the kings Councell and the Bishoppes See. But in the yere of our redemption 1581, there was so great an irruption of fire out of another *Vulcano* some two miles from the towne, as it seemed all would haue bene consumed. The day following, it cast forth such abundance of ashes, as they filled the valley, and had almost buried vp the towne. But this was not the end of the feares and miseries of Guatemala, for that the yere following, this *Vulcan* or *Montgibel* did cast forth such abundance of fire, as running for the space of foure and twentie houres like a furious torrent downwards, it did burne stones and rockes, and did fo heat five small riuers or streams, as no man could passe them, yea, some write that it dried them vp. In the meane time they did heare fearefull thunders, and they saw lightnings and flames of fire wauing in the ayre, which did strike a wonderfull terrour. There is a Lake in this countrie which is one hundred miles long, and twentie broad.

¶ *The Gouernement.*

THE gouernour of the prouince makes his residence in the towne of Guatemala, or of Saint Iames, where his authoritie is verie great, for he disposeth of Comandaries that

that are void to whom he pleaseth: the which neither the gouernor of Mexico, nor he of A
may doe. There is also in this place a president with the kings Council, which hath
all power in matters which concerne justice. This towne hath also a Bishop which re-
maines there.

¶ The Firme land.

XV.

This name comprehendeth that part of firme land, which was discovered by Columbus
after the islands, and contains all that which is betwixt Paria and Iucatan, that is to
say, vpon the North sea, Fondura, Beragua, part of Golden Castille, Carthagena, and
Venezuela; whereunto they haue since added Nicaragua, with the rest of golden Castille,
which is vpon the South sea. And the better to vnderstand the situation of the said Pro-
uinces, you must know that the countrey which retires it selfe from the Southern Cape of
Iucatan, almost with a straight line betwixt the West and the South, aduanceth it selfe
againe right into the Indian sea, and leauing a great gulfe in the middest, makes two Capes,
whereof the first is called the Cape of three points, and the other of Camaron; there is al-
so another which is called the Cape of the grace of God, which answereth vnto this. Be-
twixt Iucatan and the three points, the gulfe of Higueres enlargeth it selfe: betwixt the
three points and Camaron they see Trugille; betwixt Camaron and the grace of God,
stands Caratagon. In Fondura or Hondura (the chiefe place which the Spaniards hold) is
Trugille, head of the Originaries Comaigua, with their Bishop. In this countrey is Al-
gareque, a place of some note; and a lake with many small islands, & the valley of Olance,
which is wonderfull pleasing. In Beragua there is nothing more remarkable than the ri-
uer from whence the countrey takes his name, and the Dilaguadero.

¶ Nicaragua.

XVI.

This Province lies next vnto New Spain towards the East and South: it extendeth it
selfe from the mynes of Fondura towards the South sea. There are many places well
peopled in this prouince, but they are small, among the which they hold for the best
townes those of Leon and Camaron.

¶ The Qualitie.

Some write that this prouince is so fertile, as the Spaniards called it Mahometers Para-
dise, for the abundance of all things. It is not great, but is sandie, and therefore in
summer it is so hot, that with heat as no man can in a manner travel by day, but by night.
It is not least discomfited and uneasy than Nouilla, Astragon, or Estremadura. From May
vnto October, they haue great and in a manner continuall showers, especially in the Af-
ternoons, which they waite for the other six moneths. In some places there grows cer-
taine trees whereof one they stand in stead of many: for they are so great as six men are
scarce able to cutt them. There are some trees of so strange and delicate a nature, as a
man cannot touch any one of their branches; but it withers presently. In those places
where the fountaine hath any sicer or brooke, or any kind of water, it is as fertile as any
man can desire; such is that part, which extends it selfe from the port of Succours vnto
Fondura and Granada; the which for the abundance of all things carries the name of
the Rich Coast. About fiftie and thirtie miles from Leon, there is a Vulcan or fierie hill
the flames may be seene world far in the night. Some write, That the hole out of which
the flames come is so yonder deep, as a goodly fire burning that this burning substance
was made of gold, caused a long chaine of iron and a kettle to be made, and let it down
into the vault, hoping to draw forth gold, but the fire consumed his instrument, and
had him so burnt him and his companions with the irruption. This prouince is
as much annoyed with parres as ours is with crows and rookes, they flye in great flocks,
and would destroy the same vnto they kept it. The wealth of Nicaragua consists for
the most part in a lake, which they say is 400 miles long; it comes within 12 miles of the
South

A South sea, and yet her waters fall into the North sea, which is far off. Many hold that
cutting the said Channell, and making another from the lake vnto the South sea, they
should open a happie Naigation from the West vnto the East. Others say, that they
should make a channell from the gulfe of Vraha to that of saint Michael, which is 70 and
fiftie miles. Others make a proiect in the river of Crocodiles, which takes his spring from
Ciagra, and falls into the seaneere to Nombre de Dios; others will haue it in the river
which goes from the True Crosse to Tecontepac. But it seemes that God doth not like
of such discourses, for that king Nicanor could neuer finish the channell which he had
projected from the Caspian to the Euxin sea; nor the kings of Egypt (the vndertakers of
B admirable works) the channell from Nile vnto the Red sea, & from the Red sea vnto the
Mediteranean: nor all the power of the Romans could neuer open that interuall of
fiftie miles which is betwixt the Ionian sea, and Ionia going into Morea: I leaue the diffi-
culties and great charges of such an enterprize. We must add hereunto that employing
the people of the countrey in this worke, they should loose those few which remaine.
The Negros of Angola and Guinee do scarce suffice for the names of gold and silver.
Mercouer such a channell would make the naigation so easie from Peru and new Spaine
to the Molucques, Philipppines, China, and to all that Archipelagus, as they would soone
leauie the painfull naigation which the Portugals make, coasting along Africke, beyond
the Cape of Good Hope, and every man running towards the West, would abandon
C the South, which should remaine a prey to Pirats.

¶ The Manners.

The inhabitants of Nicaragua are of a good stature, their complexion inclines more
to white than to an olive colour. Before they were conuerted to the Christian faith,
they had a certaine forme of Iustice: a theefe was adiudged to be his slave whom he had
robbed, vntill he had made him satisfaction. There was no punishment ordained for him
that should kill the Cacique or Prince, for that they said such a thing could not happen.

XVII.

¶ Golden Castille.

It will here begin the Southern Peninsula. This countrey extends from Nombre de
Dios to Panama, vnto the gulfes of Vraha and saint Michael. The most famous pla-
ces of greatest concourse are Nombre de Dios and Panama, whereof the one stands
vpon the North sea, and the other vpon the South, with two notable ports, for that all
the traffick which is made betwixt Spaine and Peru, must of necessity passe there.

¶ The Qualitie.

The aire is not good neither at Panama nor at Nombre de Dios; but if wee make
comparison of these two places, we shall find Nombre de Dios worse than Panama,
for it is wholly infected; by reason whereof they do commonly call it the Spaniards
hell. The king of Spaine seeking to remedie it, ordained in the year 1584 that they
should transport the towne of Nombre de Dios vnto a place that was lower, where the
aire was more wholesome; and that they should giue it the name of Saint Philip. Pa-
nama is also in an vniwholesome aire, and the heat is insupportable: it is in the eight
degrees of latitude towards the South. And to speake generally the truth of all this
countrey, it is little inhabited, both by reason of the bad aire which procedes from many
marshes, and also by the bad gouernement of them which first discovered it, who
did not consider their ends, as they haue done in other places. Finally, wheat doth
not growe there, but maife grows abundantly, and the sea yeelds much fish as well as
the land, wherein there do also ingender monstrous huge crocodiles, for that there are
of fiftie and twentie foot long. The river of Ciagra comes within fiftie leagues
of Panama, and by it they transport their merchandise which comes from Spaine, the
which

which is afterwards carried by land to Panama: they travel from hence to Peru, in January, February, March, and also in August and September, but not so commodiously. The mariners (going out of the port of Panama) discover the Islands of Pearles. I may not passe over with silence that our plants and seeds, which become better in many parts of new Spaine and Peru, diminish both in bountie and greauesse at Nombre de Dios and Panama, soas coleworts and letices being sowne the third time, do in a manner change their nature, and become nothing worth.

¶ The Riches.

A Little merchandise which is transported from Peru into Spaine, or from Spaine into Peru, comes into these countries, for what commodities fouer they carrie from Peru into Spaine they must be vnladen at Panama, and so carried by land to Nombre de Dios, where they are againe to be transported into Spaine: and whatsoever is transported from Spaine, must first be vnladen at Nombre de Dios to be conducted by land to Panama, and then thence againe for Peru.

¶ The New Realme of Granada.

XVIII. **V**Pon the South of Cumana, and the neighbour countries in the new realme of Granada, whereof the chiefe townes are faint Foye (an Archbishops seat, and a court of Iustice) then Tungia, Velez, the Trinitie, Molucima, Palma, Toque, Mariquie, Bague, Victoria, our ladie of Remedies, Pampelona, Merida, and faint Christopher; we see Cape aduance into the sea, almost of a triangular forme with a Basis ioining to the time land: the Western Angle is called the point of Arania, and the Eastern, the point of Salina; betwixt both is that which is called the Three points.

¶ The Qualitie and Riches.

This new realme of Granada is for the most part full of pleasing vallis, which beare much fruit: it is wonderfull strong of scituation by reason of the rockie mountaines which environ it, and therefore they haue verie narrow passages. In some places they make fall of palm-trees and of wine. Neere vnto Tungie there are mines of gold and emeralds, and some way the Cape of the Three Points, they find store of pearles: they consume many men in the fishing of them; for that the sea water (whereas the oysters in which pearles grow, are tied to rocks) is exceeding cold, and sometimes the fishermen must continue a quarter of an houre vnder water and hold their breaths: wherefore the maister suffer them to eat little, and keep them from women, and the meat they eat is very dide. The pearles grow in the fish of oysters, and it seldom happens that they find two that are like by reason whereof the Laines haue called them *Vniones*. The price is much abated, by reason of the great quantitie which they of the New World haue sent into Europe: for in the year 1587 there came for the king of Spain threene hundred, betwixt three chests, and for priuies men, one thousand two hundred Erie and some marker, and seuen small stokes of pearle by the ounce. In former times they tooke much in the Island of Cubaque; but they hold that the oysters haue beene consumed by the perpetual fishing, or rather that being terrified with the noise of arms, they haue changed their place of being, or that they haue abandoned the entrance of the top of an East-hill, which did once a good part of the towne, where there was the course of people, and where there was abundance as there was wont to be. The price of emeralds, the price is much fallen, by reason of the great store they draw here, and in the neighbour Mante, and at Poma.

¶ Brasil.

¶ Brasil.

This Province was discovered by chance, by Peter Aluares Cabral in the year 1501, XIX. begins at the riuer of Maragnon, and extends vnto that of Plata or of silver, with many bounds towards the West. According to the computation of some, that which contains the crowne of Portugal in those parts, runs one thousand five hundred miles from North to South; about five hundred miles from East to West; and almost three thousand miles along the coast: but the Portugals hold but one thousand four hundred. The chiefe places of Brasil are which follow: On this side the Cape of Saint Augustine, is Pariba, which is also called the Citie of Snow, and then Parnabuco, a good towne: The Island of S. Alexis, which is not inhabited, but is somewhat commodious for Seafaring men: Then follows the Cape of S. Augustine, which hath eight degrees and a halfe of heigh of the Southerne Pole; and this part is neerer vnto Africke than any of the New world, for they hold that it is not about a thousand miles from the one vnto another. The fleets which go from Portugal to the Indies come thither to stay for a wind, and to know their course, and for that they cannot sometimes passe, they returne backe againe. Then you may see S. Christopher, and the mouth of the riuer of S. Francis, and after that S. Sauour, or the Baye of all Saints: This towne is seated vpon a port, or rather a gulfe, which is three leagues broad at the mouth, and is thirtie in compass, whereas whales doe enter and sport themselves at pleasure. Here the Bishop remains, and the Governour of the province. Fourescore miles from thence stands Iglesos, or S. George, in the seuen and twentieth degree and a halfe is Puerto Seguro, or the safe port, famous, for that Aluares Cabral arriued there, when as driuen by the winds he discovered Brasil. Certaine rocks which haue the forme of a wall, and against which the waves doe break, cover it. After which they discover the riuer of the Holie Ghost, and Baya Hermosa, and Cape froid, or the cold Cape, which is in a manner an Island, it hath two hundred and eightie miles in circuit, and is in the two and twentieth degree and a halfe. Afterwards they come to Santos, and to Paratinga, which lies within the countie, and these places are reasonable good. Betwixt S. Sebastian and S. Vincent stands Buenabriga, which is vnder the Tropike of Capricorne, and the line drawne by Alexander the sixt. But the last Colonie of Portugals in these parts, is it of S. Vincent, and for that it is a remote place, they condemne such thither as haue defrued the gallies, or some such like punishment: This place was ruined by the English, on S. Stephens day, in the year 1591, but since hath bene repaired and made better. In the eight and twentieth degree stands Cape de Patos, so called of a great number of birds which are blacke and without feathers, having the bill of a Rauin.

¶ The Qualitie of the Countie.

The countie of Brasil is so called of a red wood which grows there abundantly, the which they transport into Europe for the vse of dying: but by the first discoverer it was called the land of the holie Croffe, for that he had erected a Croffe there. This red wood is good and wholesome, by reason of the hills and vallis, and the pleasing winds which blowe there: yet for that it is something moist, it is more fauourable to old than young persons. Along the coast two houres before noone there are certaine fresh winds which blowe from the South, the which doth much good to the inhabitants. At Sea they haue many winds which raigne halfe the year, and they of the North the other halfe. Whereof the nauigation is in a manner equally diuided. They doe come thence to Lisbon from Lisbon to Brasil in September, October, and vnto March; and returne by diuers waies at all seasons. The countie is full of mountaines, riuers, and distinguished into plaines and hills, alwaies pleasant and Greene, with many kindes of creatures which are vnkowne to vs of Europe. Among the plants, the Copiba, whose bakke being cut casts forth a balme; the which cures the

beasts

beasts know, for finding themselves bitten with serpents, and other beasts, they haue a course vnto this remedie; too as many of these plants are in a manner without baake. The Cedar is also an ordinarie tree there (as also in new Spaine, and at Barlouent) and there are many other kinds of incomparable woods. They make boats of the baake of a tree, able to containe fiftie and twentie persons, or more. The cucumbers and melons of Europe grow exceeding fine and good there. Among the beasts, there is the Talusie, which the Spaniards call *huanillo*, of the bignesse of a hog, all couered in a manner with scales, one of which he puts forth and pulls backe his head like the Tortoise. The Cetigons haue two pines vnder their bellies, where they carrie their young ones, and hide them when they are in any daunger, and char necellitie doth plesse them: They do also find of B that these be in the Islands of the Moluccas. There is a deformed kind of beast as big as a fox, which the Portugals call *Pabelle*, it is so slow of pace, as it will faste go a stones cast to forward. There is another such beaust, nor fawing, cause him to mende his pace. The *Tanagers* are such as havinge their hailes in exceeding long. He feeds of ants, and is found in the hole with his haile, he thrusts in his tongue, and drawes it forth full: He is a long tale, and so thicke with haire, as he hides his whole bodie vnder it. The *Antes* called *Antes* haue something resembling to scales, but they are not so big: they haue the nether lip like unto a Trumpet, round eares, and a short taile: they rest in the day, and feed in the night. The *Haute of Gay* is a little beast, like vnto a Cat, which was neuer seene to eat or drinke. The diuersitie of birds and fishes both in the sea and fresh waters is incredible: In the countie neere vnto S. Sebastian, wheat doth neither grow nor ripen altogether, for when as one ear doth graine; another doth bloome, and when as one grows yellow, another is greene: Before I leaue my discourse of the qualitie of Brasil, I will tell you that of late yeates, about the Baye of all Saints, one flecta monster of huge greatnesse, and horrible aspect, filled the face of an Ape, the feet of a Lion, and altho it of a man, the necke yellow, and sparkling eyes, and to speake in a word, it was so hideous, as the foule which flew with his piece, fell downe dead.

Although the aire be delubar, and the countie pleasing, yet it cannot be spoken how D barbarous and barbarous the people be. The greatest part of them lue without knowledge of learning, religion, or law; neither doe they acknowledge any princes. When they go to the war, the Brasilians follow him onely whom they hold to be most valiant. They doe generally go naked; the rich sort, or the noble, were garments made of birds feathers of diuers colours, which couer their fore and the nauell vnto the knee. The men shau the forpart of their heads vnto the crowne. They eat all kind of beasts, Apes, Lizards, Serpents, and Rats. They make their bread of an admirable fashion: They haue an hearbe as big as Purcelaine, whose root is yemenous being eaten raw, and not prepared it kills them sodainly: they take the said root, and beat it speedily and then press it, that there may no part of this mortall iuice remaine in it; they drie it afterwards in the Sun, and beat it againe, and then make meale of it, and after wards bread, which is not so toothsome as whole meale. They doe also make a milke of the same meale, like vnto beere, with the which being drunke, they grow more subtil and malicious than of custome. They are much giuen to fourthaying, and are accounted verie great forerers. They loue no labour, but affect idleness, sports, feasts, and dauncing: They vnderstand not to extend their limits, but for honour, when as they thinke that their neighbors haue wronged them. They shew them they take in war and make soleme feasts. They punish the murderer of their king, as they visit the letters F, L, and R. They build their houses of wood, and couer them with the leaues of trees. Many families lue together in one house, and for feare of the fall beausts they sleepe in the aire in nets. They lue without care of the future time; and also in common. They swim so well, as they remaine some times whole houres vnder the water, with their eyes open. They doe easily endure toyle and fasting; and on the other side, they spend whole nights in gluttonie and excessive drinking. When the women are deliuered of child, they presently

A go about their household businesse, and the husbands keepe their beds, and haue broth made them, and are visited by their neighbours, and finally, they do all things that women in that case are accustomed to do. Neere vnto Igles there are a people which fight against the Aymures, who are more like beausts than men; for that they open the wombs of women with child, and pull out poore infants whom they lay vpon the coales in the presence of the mothers, and eat halfe raw; an vsuall thing among them of Popian. Neere vnto the riuer of S. Sebastian there are men twelue foot high, which most commonly eat raw flesh.

¶ The Riches.

Of Brasil they draw great riches at this day, which consist in cottons which are verie fine, and excellent sugars, and there is not any thing transported into Europe that is more beneficial to the owners. There haue beene some yeares whenas the sugar which was brought from Brasil to Portugal hath exceeded the quantitie of a hundred and fiftie thousand arabes. The Portugals are much giuen to this trafficke, and haue built diuers places where to boile and refine their sugars: and they entertaine a great number of slaues which are brought from Guinee and Congo.

¶ Chile.

Coming out of the Strait they coast Chile, which is so called of a principall valley: it begins from the South going towards the North, at the height of fife and twentie degrees and a halfe, and extends vnto the ffeuen and twentieth degree: but from the East vnto the West it is not about a hundred miles, hauing the sea of the one side, and the great Cordeliere on the other: it is bounded in on the South side by Chica, the riuer of Plata on the East, Charcas and Gallao on the North, and the South sea on the West. They call it Chile of the nipping cold, for so that word doth signifie. In the thirtieth degree is the famous valley of Arauco, which defended it selfe for many yeares with great furie, and maintained her libertie. The Spaniards haue diuers Colonies here, as S. James vpon the riuer of Parais in the valley of Mapoco; the Concepcion, in the little valley of Penco, with a port: the Confines, in the valley of Angola: Valdiuia, neere vnto a port where there is a great lake: the Imperiall, one of the best colonies of this countie, which before the warre of Araucages had three hundred thousand men of seruice, and Valdiuia had a hundred thousand. It was called Imperiall, for that whenas the Spaniards entered into this prouince, they found eagles with two heads made of wood set vpon their doores and houses. There is also Villerich vpon the side of a little lake, neere vnto two places, which at certaine times cast forth fire and ashes. There is Chilo and Chilo, which was built in the yeare 1581, and Cochimbo in the territorie of S. James. In the yeare 1562 there was such a strange earthquake in that prouince as it ouerthrew mountains, stopt the passages of riuers, ruined Araucapi one of their fairest ciuities, and that of the Concepcion, and made the sea to go out of her boundes: they haue since runne three hundred leagues along the coast: it renewed againe in the yeare 1570, and ouerthrew the towne of Valdiuia. The metropolitan towne is saint James.

¶ The Qualities.

Chile is held to be like vnto the countries of Europe, for that it is without foggie, Zee: it yeelds store of corne and very good wines, and they haue all that we see in Spaine. There is this difference betwixt vs and them of Chile, as we haue Sommer, they haue Winter, and so contrariwise. There is much good pasture, many troupes of oxen and sheepe, with good store of the countie is not well peopled by reason of their wars with them of the Perou, mortall enemies to the Spaniard. The riuers of this countie in the day

day time run very swiftly, but in the night they are very still, as if the cold and ice had A
faded them; for the aire of this countrey is so piercing cold, as men passing through the
deserts haue lost some of their members without feeling, or else haue fallen downe so
dearly dead.

¶ The Manners.

The Inhabitants are very tall, active, and full of courage: for their armes they vse
bowes and arrowes. They go attired in the cases of wild beasts, and in Seales skins.

¶ Peru.

XXI. From the towne of Plata vnto Pasto this prouince extends, or else from the confines
of Chile vnto the limits of Popayan, betwixt the South sea and the Andes. But to vn-
derstand the disposition thereof, you must know that Peru is diuided into three parts,
according to situation, forme, qualitie, and nature, and those be plaines, mountaines, and
rivers: for that along the sea, the land is plaine and low, but with many valles: this plain
is five hundred leagues long, and but ten or fifteen broad. Towards the East, there are
two chaines of mountaines, the one in view of the other, which beginning as they say,
at the strait of Magellan, run betwixt Panama and Nombre de Dios vnto the firme land:
that which is towards the West is called Sierra, which in Spanish signifies a mountaine: C
that vpon the East is called Ande, or Cordeliere, and their breadth is not above twentie
leagues; so as Peru in plaine and mountaine is not above fortie leagues broad. There
are about fiftie valles in Peru, whereof the principall are Xauxa, which is fourteene
leagues long and five broad; Chica, Andaguala, and Iutas.

¶ The Qualitie.

It is an admirable thing, that in so small a distance as is found in the breadth of Peru,
which is not much above fortie leagues, and seeing that there is no difference of ele-
uation, it doth neither raine, snow, nor thunder in the plaines: and in the meane time vpon
the Sierra, the seasons haue their course as in Europe, where it raines from the month
of September vntill Aprill; and vpon the Andes it raines in a manner all Winter. It hath
been observed that whereas the Inhabitants go from the plaines to the mountaines, they
feele much paine in the stomacke and head, as they do commonly at sea which haue not
been accustomed vnto it; the which some attribute to the subtiltie of the aire and to
the great windes, which to the diuersitie for that in the plaines the aire is hot, grosse and
moist, and in the mountaines cold, drie, and subtille: vpon the plaines it is alwaies one,
but that there be other blowes any but Southerly windes, but vpon the mountaines it is di-
uers kind of different blowes: there is death neither raine nor snow, and here it doth
both; so that it is no wonder if the complexion of man doth feele of this diuersitie of the
aire, and suffers some alteration. The plaines being neuer watered with any raine remaine
barren, full of sand, and beare no fruit: the which they find onely in valles, through the
which, rivers (which comes from the mountaines and fall into the sea) do passe: and
these valles which are in number about fiftie, are very carefully manured, and well inha-
bitated by reason of the said rivers which water them. One river is most commonly seuen
eight leagues distant from another, and sometimes more, sometimes lesse. The tillage
in these valles is not above a league of either side distant from the rivers: and although
some of them are upon the plaines, yet the water (which begins in October and continues till
April) is full of certaine thin mists, from which fall certaine thin humors
which are called the dust, and yet it is of great importance for the ripening and
springing of the seed which is sown: and therefore vpon Lima these mists onely
without any other water to make some countries to flourish, the which by this meane are
full of good pastures. There are also some parts of the plaines, where there is not any
fountains, yet there abundance of come to grow, and all sorts of fruit, either for
the

A the humiditie which the rivers put forth, or by the meanes of rivers which are lost in the
sand, or by the moistnesse which comes from the sea. The Sierra abounds in pastures and
forrests, whereas they feed an infinit number of Vicuignes, which are like goats, and Gua-
nacos, and Pacos, which is a kind of Indian sheepe, the which they vse to beare their bur-
thens. Vpon the Andes there are great store of apes and monkeys of diuers sorts, as also
of parrots. There is also great abundance of a hearbe called Coca, much esteemed in
Peru, whereof there is such store sent euery yeare to Porosi, as it is valued at five hun-
dred thousand crowns. The best part of Peru consists in valles which beare great quan-
tities of maiz and wheat. Their common feeding at Peru is of maiz, the which notwith-
standing doth not grow well in cold countries, as is a part of the countrey of Pasto, and all
Collao, but in stead of maiz they haue other nourishing roots.

¶ The Manners.

All the people of Peru, are distinguished chiefly into three sorts of persons, whereof
A euery one contains many other people vnder them, which differ in names: These
people are different, and their languages are distinct. They were accustomed to make
war one against another, before that they came vnder the power of *Gimacane*: but when as
by his victorie all cause of contention was taken away, the chiefe amongst them,
C and the people, gaue themselves to the language of Cusco for pleasure, whereas before,
they did justice onely to euery man in this language, the which they did not practise but
in pleading: so as he which can speake the language of Cusco, may easily passe through-
out all the prouince. The women weare a garment of wooll down to their heeles, and the
men a shirt to the small of their legs, and a cloake vpon it. And although they weare one
kind of garment throughout all the prouince, yet that of the head is much different, for
that euery one according to the custome of his countrey weares bands, some of one co-
lour, some of diuers: and there is scarce any one but differs from the rest in that which he
weares vpon his head. Finally, the inhabitants of these countries, are full of simplicitie,
yet notwithstanding his manner of rudenesse, they that are neerer the Equator are great
D dissemblers; they conceal their thoughts, and murmure betwixt their teeth, neuer dis-
covering their conceptions freely. They do not differ much in their manner of living,
from the Iewes. They are subiect to loue men, and for this cause doe little esteeme wo-
men, for that they do not onely make them serue as slaues, but they doe also beat them
cruelly vpon any small matter. They that remaine neerer vnto the Equator are onely cou-
ered to the nauell with a verie fine shirt, leaving the other members bare, yea the priuie
parts. They weare bracelets of stone vpon their armes, & they make holes in their cheeks
and lips, in which they put Turquoises and Emeraldes. The entries of their Temples to-
wards the East, were onely shut with a curtaine of wooll, and within their Temples there
were two idols which haue the resemblance of he goats, before the which they burn a kind
of wood which giues a wonderfull good scent. Among the Caraces, there hath bin seen
vpon their doores images of men with Deacons stole about their necks. The Pazaons
doe with wonderfull art and care preferre the bodies of men and children that be dead,
from corruption. They did commonly worship Serpents in their Temples, and besides
that euery man had his priuie gods, according to the facultie and trade which he did
vse. They were verie ignorant of letters, and also of painting, which they of Mexico
vied in the use of Letters. They haue vied memorials made of cords of wooll, which they
called Quipos, whereas making knots of diuers colours, they did signifie diuers things, and
directed their minds. Euery prouince hath his notaries, which are called Quipocamayos,
whereby the people to vnderstand any thing which hath passed long before, by the
use of these strings and colours. Their armes are a sword, a pike, an yron nail, a
dagger, and a slinger with the edge of gold. They know how to aduance, to keep their ranks,
to rout their men, and they doe not feare death, so as they leaue a good fame behind
of good meanes to get some recompence from their captaines. The pretext of their
war before the coming of the Spaniards, was, that at the Deluge the world was saued
in

their Lakes, and that they onely had the true religion, and should teach it to others. A
 Their chiefe god was the *Viracocha*, that is to say, the Vniuersall Creator, and after him
 the Sunne. The Ingua *Paisacuti*, who inuented the greatest part of their superstitions, ha-
 ving assigned rents for the Temples of their gods, appointed none for *Viracocha*, saying,
 That he had no need, for that he was the Creator of all things: Amongst other remark-
 able things which they brought into those countries where they conquered, one was,
 that they diuided the land into three parts: the one did belong to religion, and their
 gods; the second was for the Ingua or King, who therewith did entertaine his person,
 court, kitchen, barons, and garriſons, and this part was the greatest: the third part was
 for the people: yerno man had any thing in particular, but by speciall grace from the B
 Ingua, neither was it hereditary. These lands of the communalities were distributed yearly,
 assigning to euerie one so much land as was needfull for the entertainment of his familie,
 so as this portion was sometimes greater and sometimes lesse, for the which they payed
 nothing. They were bound in stead of a tax to manure the lands of their gods and Ingua,
 and to lay the splits into great storehouses appointed to that vse, from whence they drew
 provision for the people in time of dearth: They did the like of beasts, the which they
 diuided into three parts as well as their lands. Wherein (in my opinion) they haue much
 exceeded *Lycurgus* in the distribution of lands, and the Romans in their law *Agraria*. And
 for that it neuer rained in Peru, the inhabitants care little for houses, and the Spaniards
 themselves couer not their houses but with certaine mats. Yet the king of Peru made
 many great buildings, and among others the Tambes, which were like great Magazines
 or Storehouses, wherein they did put their victuals, armes, and other provisions for war.
 These buildings were set vpon the high waies, in such sort as the one was not about three
 or foure leagues distant from the other. The kings of this countie haue made two waies
 five hundred leagues long, the one went by the plaines, and the other by the mountains:
 works in truth which for their greatnesse and profit are to be preferred before those that
 were most admirable in *Egypt* or *Rome*: For vpon the mountains they were forced
 to raise vp in a thousand places, and to fill vp deepe valles: they did cut rockes, vnder-
 prop them that were quincus, and such places that were vneasse, support precipices,
 and vpon the plaines to vanquish many difficulties, as land is accustomed to bring with
 it, in an enterprise of that nature. In many places they had goodly gardens, and trees
 which gaue great delight and profit to passengers.

¶ The Riches.

They draw abundance of gold and silver out of Peru, besides other merchandise: and
 of all the riches which comes from America into Europe, Peru doth commonly fur-
 nish two third parts, and New Spaine the other: but New Spaine hath richer merchand-
 ise, the which together with the Islands among other things doth yeeld great store of
 cochenille, cotton, sugar and pearles: but among the treasures of Peru there are two ve-
 rie admirable: the one is the silver myne of Potosi, the which was discovered in the
 year 1545, from which they haue drawne, and doe draw, so great quantitie of silver as
 the fifth part which belongs vnto the king hath amounted in fortie yeares to a hundred
 and eleuen millions of Pezeos, euerie Pezoe being worth thirteene Ryals of Spaine, and
 one fourth part, and yet there is about a third part which payes no fit. They refine this
 silver in 52 engines made vpon a riuer which is neere vnto it, and in two and twen-
 ty which are in the valley of Tarapica, besides diuers others which they turne with hores.
 They also draw out of this countie a good quantitie of gold. The other treasure consists
 in the mine of Guanaculque, whereasthey find much quicksilver. They were disco-
 uered in the year 1567, out of which the king draws cleerly euerie yeare about foure
 hundred thousand Pezeos. Before I leaue Peru, I hold it conuenient to discourse some-
 thing of her principall townes and prouinces.

Arequipa

AREQVIPA, LIMA, TRUGILLO, and others.

The first of all appears Tarapata, with a port, in the one and twentieth degree, then Arica,
 and the mouth of the riuer and port of Quilca: and within the countie the pleasing
 and delightfull towne of Arequipa, which being seated at the foot of a mountain which
 doth put forth fire, doth alwaies enioy a temperat and subtile aire, and a soile which is
 fit for husbandry. The siluer of Plata and Potosi comes to this port, and there is shipt for
 Peru: either comes much victuals and merchandise which goes to Cuzco. There is
 moreover the port of Hacarí, which is reasonabell well frequented, the point of saint
 Nicholas, Sangaile, and Collao of Lima, Lima which is also called the towne of Kings
 for that it was begun on twelfth day in the yeare 1535, is situated vpon a great riuer
 two leagues from the sea, where the port is called Collao, of an Island which is right
 against it, and it is one hundred leagues from the towne of Arequipa: it is built with
 much art, for that all the chiefe streets answer vnto the market place, and there is scarce
 any house without water, which comes from the riuer: the aire is temperat, and they
 find it somewhat colder than ordinarie during the foure moneths of Europe's Sommer. It
 standes in the twelfth degree and one third part. The Archbishop and Viceroy remaine
 there, and there is also a seat or court of Iustice, and this is the place for all the trafficke
 of the realm. They do number within the towne of Lima twelue thousand Negroe
 slaves, and foure and twentie thousand Spanish women, whereby we may easily guesse
 of the rest.

Passing on, they discover the port of Gaure, where there is great store of salt, and
 that of Casma abounding in wood and victuals: then Santa, and Quanape, from
 whence they come to Trugillo, which is two good leagues from the sea. This towne is
 seated in the fourth degree and two third parts in the valley of Chimo, vpon the banks
 of a goodly riuer. Then follows the point of Aguille in the first degree, and Payta, a
 towne of great trafficke: Tumbes in the third degree, saint Hellene in the second, and
 the Cape of saint Laurence in the first, and neere vnto it, is the old port, and S. James:
 the first of all the Cape of Passao vnder the Equinoctiall, which doth bound Peru on that
 side. Vpon the right hand fiftene leagues within the land is the towne of saint Michael,
 the first Colonie which the Spaniards planted in those parts. But before I go out of the
 plaines of Peru, I thinke it fit to speake of one or two things which are very strange. Ma-
 la is a place fiftene leagues from Lima, where there is a figure to be seene, of the which,
 that part which turnes towards the South, brings forth fruit when it is Sommer: vpon the
 mountains; and the other which looks towards the sea, brings forth fruit when it is
 Sommer in the plaine, which seasons are contrarie. In the valley of Chilca it neuer raines,
 neither is there any riuer, and yet there is abundance of Maiz, by this inuention: they
 take vpon that shoure pilchards, and such like fish, then they make certaine holes in the
 ground, whereas they sow their maiz, putting a graine in the head of one of these fishes,
 the which doth multiply beyond imagination.

COLLAO, and others.

The riches and power of Peru, consists in prouinces which are within the land,
 the first is Collao: seated whereas the two chaines of Mountaines or Cor-
 deiles are named in large themselves one from another. The Southerne bound is a
 Caracol, and the Northern Ayauire. The chiefe towne of this prouince is
 Cuzco, but the best peopled of the Originaries is Cuiquito, a great and impor-
 tant, and immediately subiect vnto the king. There are vnder this iurisdiction, Juli,
 Ayacucho, Pomata, Cepita, Quaquí, Tiaguanaco, and others. At Tiaguanaco they
 haue some of certaine great buildings: they hold them to be very auncient, and made
 of stone, and of great power: for it cannot be conceiued how they could remove stones thir-
 ty leagues broad, and six thick, without engines of yron. In this part of Peru
 is

penance him that hath slaine any one by some extraordinarie blow: they encourage A
to be furious, giving them the names of Tigers, Lions, and such like beasts. Some
of these people, for leasur sake, tumble, paint their bodies, and when it is new Moone
or full, they say that they wound their bodies with daggers of beane to accustom them-
selves to the accidents of war. They know not what their meane, neither do they tell any
thing. Thus I have said of the manner of their lives, and receive their friends in like
manner, coming from the lamenting the miseries which they have suffered; so as they
have learned to command the Originaries about Saint Croix manure the land, and
pay tribute to the Spaniards two pounds of cottonspun, for every head: for their cot-
ton is made in the shape of a cacao dole in new Spaine, and cocoin Peru: yea more,
these people live long and are healthie: they take delight in hunting and catching of
birds: they eat roasted ants, the tails of crocodiles, grasshoppers, and vipers having
taken away the head and liver. They goe naked except the women, who wear some
leather bark, or a narrow girdle of cotton, and that after marriage. But the Spani-
ards have brought into the towne the apparel which they use in Peru. When it is cold
although this countrey be, not by nature, and not subject to any cold winds) either
they goe not out of their lodgings, or else they carrie a firebrand in their hands to
warm themselves. Their heads are shaven bare of either side, leaving a tuft
of haire in the middle: in some house but one halfe, either on the right side, or on the
left, and most of them round about, suffering the haire to grow in the middle: they say
that they have received this custome from one *Pisicome*, by reason whereof they called the
first religious man that went thither to preach the gospel, *Pisicome*. Whereas the women
are delivered of child, the husband goes to bed, and doth as yet have written of them of Bra-
zil. They cannot reckon huge house, or signify fine, they flew the hand, for ten, both
hands, and for twenty, they flye many hands and many feet. When as the husband goes
aboard for any time, he leaves many fishes in the house as he meane to stay days
aboard, and during as many night, taking away one cucurie day, and the woman (or he
that remains at home) feedeth, and after this manner they reckon the daies of absence.
The *Garays* are men of the countrey, as the people called *Garays*, that is to say, warriors,
who remove all other Spaniards that is to say, slaves: yet they doe much esteeme the Spani-
ards, and say they are descended from them. They neuer forget an iniurie. They eat
meat daily, at all other seasons but their owne. They build high and spacious houses,
whereas many families live together, cucurie one apart, yet without any partition. They
picture the wives up, and hang something as it, which they thinke is verie handsome. They
have no forme of justice. Murders are not punished but by the knifmen of him that is
slaine. Their Caciques have no charge but to be leaders in warre. They doe not suffer
the Spaniards to enter into any of their places (whereof one hath at the least five
hundred families) or if they come armed, it is in so small number as they shall have no
cause to leave them, and they reproach their neighbours with their command. A hun-
dred and twenty miles from thence remaine the *Chiquites*, subjects to the Spaniards.
It is a remarkable thing that the *Varays* language extends it selfe vnto *Brasil*; and *Para-
guay*; vnto the countrey of the *Garays* and their neighbours, which is a great signe that
the sayd people have bene maistors ouer all those countries: For as with the Latine
tongue, the Arabian, and the Sclauonian, they may in a manners trauell throughout all
the world, so with the *Varay* tongue, that of *Cusco* and of *Mexico*, they may in a ma-
ner trauell the New world.

XXII.

The towne of *Tucuma* extends for the space of two hundred leagues betwixt Chile, &
Brasil, *Paraguay*, and *S. Croix*. The Spaniards which went to faire in the enterprise
of Peru, planned these colonies, that is to say, *Salta*, *Steco*, *S. Michael*, *Cordoua*, and *S.
Jame*. *Salta* is one hundred thirtie and six miles from *Tucuma*, which is the last place of
the voyage is troublesome, by reason of the want of water: It stands in a val-
ley

A ley which is eightie foure miles long, and at least thirtie broad. Neere vnto it there is
another valley which they call *Calchiaqui*, which runnes from North to South thirtie
leagues, and is full of rivers, and courageous people. The Spaniards haue fought with
them many yeeres in vaine; in the end one *John Peres* reduced the Prince of this valley
by friendship to the obedience of the king of Spaine, he making himselfe a Christian, but
being afterwards discontented at the bad usage of *Peres*, he revolted with the whole val-
ley, and so continued seven and twentie yeeres. In the end *John Ramirez* with one hun-
dred Spanish foot, five hundred horse, and three hundred archers of Peru, made an end
of this enterprise. *Steco* is the chiefe of fittie places. *Saint James* stands one hundred
and fittie miles from *Steco*, the Bishop, and Gouverneur of the *Pisicome*, make their
abode there. *Cordoua* is in the same situation that *Spaine* is, yet the ayre is colder
in winter, and more temperat in sommer: It is fittie leagues from Chile, two hundred
and fortie from *S. James*, and as much from *S. Foy of Paraguay*.

The Qualitie.

The countrey is generally plaine, and the ayre more inclining to heat than cold. It
is very rainie much; and the rivers doe easily overflow the fields, and the winds are so vio-
lent as they raine up trees by the root, and force the inhabitants to hide themselves in
caves and in the valley of *Salta* is full of waters, which abound with fish. The ayre is ve-
rie temperat, and the soyle exceeding good; where they feed much cattell: so as there
want nothing but people. The territories of *Steco* abound in cotton, come, fruit, and
cattell. In the countrey of *Tucuma* the countrey is so plaine and so commodious as they
may easily goe all in caroches for the space of two thousand miles.

Paraguay.

The Spaniards dwell upon the confines of *Tucuma*, along the river whereof they
call *Paraguay*. To passe this river, which is verie great and furious, it seems that
nature hath richly furnished them with a certain kind of fishes which they call *Zaines*: they
are great and not high, and have the root and the top but small, and the bodie big: the
hart of a wonder, and the barke verie tough; so as they may easily make them hollow:
and of them they make boats of one peece, able to containe many. This countrey was
first discovered by the North sea, by *Sebastian Gabot*, and by diuers Spanish Captaines:
and then by the way of Peru, by *Diego Ruiz*, and others. The chiefe towne is *Vraye Foy*,
or the True faith: moreover, there are the townes of the Assumption, *Saint Anne*, *Bo-
nair*, *Saint Eusebio*, and *Saint Sauour*.

Hispaniola.

This Island is called by them of the countrey *Hayti* and *Quisquia*, and by the Spani-
ards *Hispaniola*, and *S. Dominico*, by reason of the chiefe towne which they haue
built there. It is in circuit three hundred and fittie leagues, or one thousand four hun-
dred miles, and five hundred miles long, but the breadth is diuers, being in the largest
place three hundred miles. The middle of the Island is about nineteene degrees
from the Equator Northward, and the forme is long from East to West. The chiefe tow-
ne is *S. Domingo*, from which the whole Island takes her name. There is a Court
of Justice with a President: and there also remaines the Archbishop. There are
fifty monasteries in this towne. The other townes are *S. Iohn of Megruana*, the
Port of *Plaza*, *Port Royall*, *Cauana*, *Xaragua*, and some others which haue not bene
built by the Spaniards.

XXV.

to add you died it but about
 of all these and how much more
 how be it that the world is
 some you say but what of it
 require long and this doth make
 of the world.

DISCOVERY IN GENERAL

OF THE NEW WORLD.

¶ The Forces.

XXIX.

The Estates of the king of Spain at the New world are so great and powerful, as they need not to feare any enemy. The Spaniards have good places in every province, with all places belied upon the mouths of rivers, of sea ports, of cities, of passages of importances, & in a word of all places fit to command countries, either abounding in visualls or rich in mines, or fit to keep warlike people & towns of consequence in any towards the South, they have not any enemy that can annoy them: to the North they have received some losse by the English, who have lyeen vpon that coast to surpriseth their fleets, and to sack their sea towns. The greatest losse they have endured is the death of the French Duke, who sackt the town of Saint Dominico in Hispaniola, & Carthagena vpon the firme land. But this attempt of the English made the Spaniards more watchful to be outside for the safety of these Provinces, which seeme to be bound towards the North by nature, first by a great number of Ilands which serue as a rampier and defense for New Spaine, and fortifie it with many shelles which cause it to be so much feared by the North, and among others with one current which is wonderfull swift, which running by the gulle of Panama (where they have called it the Dragons mouth) then passing betwixt Iucatan and Cuba; retournes backe betwixt Cuba and the point of Florida, with such violence as a ship with all her sailes cannot passe. This current together with the difference of windes, and other dangers at sea, will alwayes amaze them that shall have no port of retreat. Moreover the king of Spaine (making vse of this benefit of nature) hath caused a fort of importance to be built in an Iland nere to the True Crosse, a towne seated vpon the banks of Mexico, and another at Panama in the Iland of Cuba right against Hispaniola the first was built from the mouth of the Isthmus to avoid the current, and the second of meanes to make vse of the port, he hath caused an excellent good fort to be built at Saint Dominico, a towne which seemes to be made for to command that sea, by reason of the commoditie of the situation. And to conclude, as the situation of Italie seems to have bene made by nature to command the Mediterranean sea, so that of Spaine seemes to be framed to rule over the Ocean; and experience teacheth, that the Spaniards are of a complexion fit to endure all climates and countries.

¶ The Civile Government of the New World.

IIIV XX.

In all the New World there are two Viceroyes, the one of New Spaine, who makes his habitation in the city of Mexico, and the other of Peru, who hath his residence at Lima. Of these two Viceroyes the first hath greatest authority, for that besides the greatnesse of provinces which are subiect vnto his government, he may of late yeares dispose of commodities that are void, the which the Viceroy of New Spaine may not do: but this is to be desired for the neighborhood of Spaine, for the beautie of the citie of Mexico, and the situation of the province.

Justice is wholly managed by seuerall courts, whereof there be fixe in New Spaine, Mexico, Saint Dominico, Guatimala, Guadalupe, and Panama: Peru hath alwayes three, that is to say, at Lima, the Imperiall of Chile, at Plata, Quinto, and at S. Foy in the New realme. The Spaniards and Indians haue recourse equally to these seats of Iustice, from the which no man may appeale. The Spaniards (except the Marquis of Val de Aragon, and some others) haue lands or people in fee, but this holds not, but during his life to whom it is given (and they be commonly given to conquerors) and to their eldest sons, to whose wives sometimes they haue not any. These Lords exact from their subiects about six crownes for euery fire, and in recompence they are bound to provide men that may instruct

A instruct the people in the Christian faith, and to serue in their Churches. The Spaniards liue most commonly separated from the Indians, for that they dwell for the most part in townes, which they haue built, the which are all intrenched with walls of a square forme, with great marker places and straight streets: whereas the Indians keepe in the suburbs of the said townes, or in their ancient boroughs; where they haue a care of their cattell, of tillage, and of mynes. When as the Commanders here, or his that holds land in fee, is dead, his subiects retorne vnto the king; by reason whereof the lands and most important Commanderies belong to the crowne of Spaine: and it is a thing worthe observation that the Commanders die most commonly poore, and seldome doth any one graue to the age of sixtie yeares. They haue often attempted to obaine these Commanderies in perpetuities, and to this end haue offered great fummes of money to Charles the first, and to Philip the second: but, for that these kings did feare that those conquerors might eat the people to the bone and oppresse them, or else that these conquerors might one day reuolt, they would neuer giue care vnto this demand.

¶ The Ecclesiasticall government.

A T the New world there are foure Archbishops, one at S. Dominico, another at Mexico, the third at Lima, and the fourth at S. Foy in the New realme. The first hath three Bishops vnder him, that is, Port-Rico, Cuba, and Iamaica. The second hath ten Bishops vnder him, that is to say, they of Tlascala in the towne of Angels, of Guayaquil, of Mechouacan, of Salisco, of Iucatan, of Gipe, of Fondures, of Guatimala, of Nicaragua, and of the True Crosse. The third hath nine Bishops, that is, of Cusco, of Plata, of Quilo, of Popayan, of Panama, of Tucuma, of Paraguay, of the Imperiall, and of the Conception. The Archbishop of S. Foy hath vnder him the Bishops of Carthagena, Santa Marta, and Margareta. There are at the New world fixe sorts of religious men, that is, of S. Francis, S. Dominick, S. Austine, de la Merced, and Iesuits; and besides these, some Carmelites which goe bare footed, and there are in all about fixe thousand religious men. There are also diuers Cloisters of Nuns. The Cures are for the most part of the kind of the foure first religions, and they of S. Francis haue more than all the rest. The Iesuits haue no Cures, as they say, but in the land of Iulie. The Curat makes his abode in the most commodious place of his iurisdiction, which is most commonly verie great: from thence he sends his substitutes into other places, sometimes to say Masse, and sometimes to teach the Christian doctrine; and for that the number of Priests is small, the Pope hath giuen libertie to say two Masses in one day, in places that lie farre off: and the Curat is not onely bound to instruct the people in the faith and Christian manners, but he must also teach the children to read, write, and sing, and he must teach his parish once to sow corne, plant fruit trees, build houses, and liue together; so as these people who receive spirituall and temporal goods from these religious men, do loue and reverence them much. The commanders, and the king in his land, giue an honest entertainment to the Curat, both for himselfe, and the seruice of the Church. The king giues to these Bishops, for the least two thousand crownes rent, but they grow soone rich. The Bishop of Mexico hath foure and twentie thousand crownes rent, he of Lima foure and thirtie, the Bishop of Cusco hath 70, he of Mechouacan twentie, Plata seuentene, and Quilo eightene. The Indians are not admitted to the Communion but after long proofe, and with more difficultie in Peru than at Mexico; and they doe seldome admit themselves by orders, by reason of their inclination to drunkennesse. They doe not commonly suffer them to studie Philosophie, and much lesse Diuinitie. There are two Inquisitions in the New world, the one at Lima, and the other at Mexico. There are also two Inquisitions in the same townes. By this diligence they haue made easie the conversion of the Indians, both in Peru and New Spaine: and in the year 1584, the Archbishop of Lima held a Prouinciall Synod, where it was ordained, That they should be bound to instruct the Indians in the Christian faith, to the end that all might be saved, and by that meanes prevent many errors.

¶ Of

Of the knowledge which the people of the New world haue of God.

XXX

These nations (though barbarous) lift vp their eyes to heauen in aduersitie and danger, and hold, that it is his dwelling place that gouernes all things. But it belongs not, but to the children of light to know that this soueraigne Lord is God alone. This naturall instinct, and this knowledge of God; is more or lesse cleerein the Gentils, as they do more or lesse participat of reason, and of moral vertues. Among the people of the New world, the Chichimeques of New Spain, and certaine people of Brasil were most barbarous: these leading a savage and brutish life, without commandes without laws, without any forme of ciuillitie, or policie, shew not in their actions any discourse of reason, but what they need for their entertainment; Sence in them doth darken the vnderstanding, and putteth them in the judgement: they do not cleare their thoughts about the earth, and they doe not thinke, but of things that are present. So the neighbours to Brasil haue not any knowledge of God, nor of religion. But for that man cannot subsist without a support, it is necessary that he which doth not reke vpon God, should make himselfe subiect, if not to false gods, at the least to fouthlayings, and such like vanities, and after this manner these Brasilians (although they do neither worship God nor Idols) are as it were, tyrannised by fouthlayers and conseruing Montebancks, and gouernethemselues by the prediction of future things. The people of S. Croix of the Mount, although they had no Idols, yet they worshipped the Deuill, not to obtaine any good from him, but to auoid some euill. They take and treat with him, and present vnto him diuers things, they poure forth their drinke to his honour, and drinke with great ceremonies, not daring to touch the fruits of the earth vntill they haue offered the first vnto him. But there is not any thing where they submit themselves more vnto him, than in their hunting and fishing, which are the arts and exercises wherewith they entertaine themselves. The Varays, their neighbours, being in a manner mad, at a certaine time of the year, run furiously into woods and solitary places, and with certain leapes and brutish howlings, call vpon one *Candiz*, of whom they tell diuers follies, they go with this name their mouths, through Precipices and forrests, from whence they can hardly retie themselves; they tread vpon burning coles, and snakes, and haue no harme. They haue knowledge also of seven *sorts of spirits*, and doe reuerence them for feare of being beaten or slaine, and they are also much giuen to fouthlayings. They carrie their arrows to fouthlayers, and according to their judgements, they either hold them for good and happie, and so keepe them, or for bad and vnfortunat, and so cast them away: but comming to those people which are a little more ciuile, they of Cusco, and the inhabitants of Peru, confesse a Creator of the Vniuerse, and a soueraigne Prince, whom they called *Viracoca*, and *Pacacamac*, that is to say, Creator of heauen and earth, and they did worship him in lifting vp their eyes to heauen. But they had no word answerable to the name of God, and euen at this day, they cannot say God, but in vsing the Spanish word. These things make it easie to perswade them that there is a soueraigne God, but not to let them know that there is not any other. Yet they exceed the auncient Greekes in vnderstanding, and in a certaine shadow of religion; for that although they place a soueraigne God, with a great number of others, yet they do not attribute adulteries, and other detestable vices, to their Viracoca, as the Greekes did to their Iupiter; but contrariwise they ascribe vnto him, high and maruallous things, by reason whereof they doe also call him *Visapu*, that is to say, Admirable. Next to the Viracoca, they of Peru did worship the stars; and for that reason, there is not any whose vertue is more manifest than that of the Sun, they giue him the second place, and the third to the god of Raine, and of things which are ingendered in the aire, but principally to the god of Thunder, for the terror he giues to men. They did beleue that there were in Heauen all kinds of beasts, of whom depended the generation and increase of troupes, and other beasts of their kind; and therefore they did beleue that every kind of beast had a star which did rule over it, the which they did worship, to the end that if it were a tame beast it should preserve it, and make it prof-

A

A per; and if it were venomous or wild, it should keepe them, and defend them from it. The Varays (with great howlings and strange motions of the body) did worship the New Moone; and when it increased they cut their armes in many places, to the end that they might shoot straight, being their chiefe exercise: & they make incisions vpon their thighs and legs; that they may run more swiftly, which done, they cast on them the ashes of those beasts which they hold to be swift: and in like manner the women cut their faces, thighs, and armes; then they paint them with blew which will neuer out. The Chianes, neighbour people to Saint Croix of the Mount, diuide the year into twelue moneths, ouer which they make twelue stars to rule, the which they worship, making certaine sacrifices vnto them, especially to those that rule during the time of haruest; they inuoke them and intreat them to be propitious and fauourable vnto them: they do also superstitiously obferue the singing of birds, and it cannot be spoken how much they abhor the shrieking of an owle; whereas they heare any one, the old men come forth with their armes, and coniure them to be gon and not to hurt them: in the meane time the young men and women keepe within doores, least that this bird should presage some disaster vnto them. But they of Peru (to retume from whence we came) did attribute a diuinitie to the earth and sea, vnder the names of Pacacuma, and Mamacoca, and likewise to the Rainebow, and to every thing that had any greatnesse or wonder in it; to trees, to the tops of mountains, to riuers, to huge rockes, to beares, to snakes, to tigres, to the end they receiue no hurt from them. In their voyages they did cast and offer their old shooes, and such like things, vpon the mountains, rockes, and in the high waies, to the end that they should giue them force & passage. They pulled the haire off their eyebrows, & offered them to the Sun, to the Mountaines, to the Windes, & to other things wherof they did stand in feare. The Guacaulques made offerings to their gods of the teeth which they pulled out. In Cusco they did great honour vnto a fox which they kept in their Guaca or Temple. At Manta (which is in the countrie of Port-Viel) they did worship an Emerald of extraordinary greatnesse and beautie, recommending themselves vnto it in their sicknesses, and made diuers offerings vnto it. At Casmalca they held for gods certaine stones of the biggnesse of an egge, and some bigger: they were very superstitious to fountains and running waters, and did wash themselves diuers times in them, to recouer their health.

In the province of Cinaloa, which is beyond New Spaine, they hold that there is a Creator and Gouernor of the world, but they did not extend his gouernment and providence to man, least he should restrain his free will: they did burne their dead men without any ceremony, or cast them into a pit which was six hundred yards deepe. They of Mechouacan had some knowledge of the beginning of the world, of the framing of man, of the firme of the earth, and of the deluge (this last was common to them of Peru and Brasil) but with a thousand follies: they did beleue that the gods aboute made the celestiall things, and they belowe the terrestriall; and they appointed a mother to all the gods, as the Grecians made Cybilla. Euery art and trade had a peculiar god among them; and they did thinke that these gods had bene men of merit, who appeared to them of the countrie after their death, with diuers other praifes of the deuill.

Of the Indians Idolatries towards the deceased.

The people of Peru did carefully preserve the bodies of their deceased kings, which were kept in Cusco, euery one in his chappell, wherof some had remained aboute two hundred years; euery one of these left all his treasures for the entertainment of the chappell, wherof some would be interred; and of those which should be appointed to attend and minister vnto them, one of them caused his image of stone to be made in his life time, the which he caused to be carried aboute himselfe, both whilest he liued, and after his death. In time of war and conquest they carried these images to obtaine victorie, and raine, and they made diuers sacrifices vnto them. It was a thing generally practised in Mechouacan, Peru, and the neighbouring countreies, at the death of the Inguas and others, to kill their best beloued

XXXI

Z

wiues

wildes and seruants, or to burie them quicke, to the end they should not want people to A
ferue them: after diuers songs and dances they flue them, and these miserable wretches
hold themselves happy to be so interred. Some of the familiars or household seruants
made to the Ingua, and the Lords of the Realme (for that they might not lie in the tombe) made
certaine holes in those places, whereas the dead bodie had been accustomed to passe their
time, hauing a conceit that the king passing that way, would carrie them to another life
for his seruice. At the funeral of the Ingua they did sacrifice young children vnto him,
and did paint his face with the blood, drawing a line from one eare vnto the other: they
visited other ceremonies at the death of any of the common sort. They did set much meat
vpon the graine, and did put gold, silver, and other precious things in the mouth, bofoe, B
and hands of the deceased, giuing them new clothes, to the end they might be furnished
for the better life, for they did beleue that the soules of dead men went wandering vp
and downe, and were subiect to hunger, thirst, cold and heat: and therefore they did ce-
lebrate the end of the yeare, and did carrie thither diuers sorts of meat, and stufies to
clothe them. *John de la Tour* (a Captain to *Gonzaluo Pizarro*) drew out of a tombe the value
of fiftie thousand crowns in stufies, which had been put there to that end. In *Mechou-*
acan, for that they beleued that men did live in the other world as in this, dying they
made prouision not onely of victuals, and apparell, but also of other things belong-
ing to those exercises which they were wont to vse.

Of their Idolatrie to Images.

XXXII. They of Peru are no lesse foolish about Idols of stone and wood, and for that they
were moued to worship the Idols for the feare of harme, which they did, or might
do them; they did figure them in terrible shapes. The deuill spake in many of these Im-
ages, and made answer to their Priests. The Mexicans (besides their Images) did also worship liuing Idols: They took a priso-
ner (and sometimes more) whom they thought fit for the sacrifice; they did attire him
and trimme him vp like vnto the Idoll, to the which they would sacrifice, and they gave
him the same name: during the time of this representation, which continued many
daies, and sometimes whole monethes, they did worship him, and did him as much ho-
nour as to the Idoll it selfe; and in the meane space he past the time merrily and made
good chere; when he went through the streets, the people came flocking to doe him
honour, offering diuers things vnto him; they brought children and sick persons before
him, that he might blesse them, and cure them; they suffered him to do any thing at his
pleasure, onely by day he was garded by ten or twelue men or more, and by night he was
shut vp in a cage, when the time of this comedie was expired, and that he was growne
fat, they slew him for the sacrifice, and made a solemne feast among them.

XXXIII. There was in Peru some Guacocs that were common to all the realme, and others
that were priuat to euery province. There were three of the greatest fame, the one foure
leagues from Lima, the which was called *Pacacama*, whose ruines at this day doth shew
the grameste thereof: the deuill spake in this place, and made answers to their Priests,
whom most commonly went in the night to consulte the Oracle, hauing their backs turned
vnto the Idoll, when they bowled their heads as if a will abouts gesture; so much doth the deu-
ill delight in such filthie effects: they drew out the combe of hair, and he commonly answered
with a low and piercing silling, or with a horrible cry. If he other Guaco was in *Con-*
co, whereas the Ingua had put all the gods and goddes of the nations that were sub-
iect vnto them, in cages of their subiection and fidelitie; and euerie Idoll was entertained
by the province, with a wonderful charge. Among others, there was the image of the
Satane, of massie gold, seated with such art, as it seemed as if he had as when the Sun rising did
shew vpon it, there was such a light by reason of the reuerberation of his beames, as it
doubled

A doubled the light of the day. The third Guaco was in the Island of *Titicaca*, dedicated to
the Sun, for that they said their countie hauing bene long without any light, the Sun
appeared sodainly in this Island, and gaue them day and light, by reason whereof the In-
guas built a stately Guaco there. But the Mexicans exceeded them of Peru much in great-
ness of Temples and ceremonies: there was one of the Idoll *Vitzilpuitzi*, with so great
a Gloister about it, as eightene thousand persons assembled there during their feast,
to dance; and this Temple was inuironed with a wall, made of great stones in forme of ser-
pents: there were foure doores turned to the foure parts of the world; and there was a
way paved about six miles long, which answered to either of them. They did ascend v-
to the Temple by a staire of thirtie steps, being thirtie fadome broad. Betwixt the staire
and the Temple there was a little square place which was thirtie foot broad, with a row of
trees and poles going crosse from the one vnto the other, whereon did hang the heads of
such as were sacrificed. There were within the towne eight other temples of the same
forme, but not so great.

Of Priests, and religious persons.

THE priests at Mexico were diuided into little, greater, and greatest of all, and these
were called Popes. Their perpetual exercise was to cast incense vpon their Idols; the
which they did at the rising, or setting of the Sun, at noone day, or at midnight. They did
sacrifice in their temples euery one according to his degree. Besides the priests, there were
monasteries of women; in Peru there was at least one in euery province, in which there
remained two sorts of women; for some of them were young virgins, and the other wo-
men of a ripe age, who were called *Mamacones*, and these did command and instruct the
others. There was in euery monasterie a gouernor, who commanded, and had power to
make choice of such young virgins as he thought worthe of this place, for their beautie
and grace, and these must be vnder the age of eight yeares. The virgins hauing learned
the ceremonies of their superstition, and diuers things for the vse of life, they were sent
vnto the Court, hauing exceeded the age of foureteene yeares, whereas some remained
to serue the Guacocs with perpetual virginite, and some were referred for the ordina-
rie seruices which they made of virgins, and for the extraordinarie which were made for
the occurrents of the Ingua: and another part of them were given in marriage to the In-
guas, gentlemen and capitaines, or kept for himselfe. If any of them were found vnchaste, they
did either burie her alive, or put her to death with cruell torment.

The Mexicans had also a kind of religious women, whose profession continued but a
yeare, and they remained in the Gloister of the Temple, or in certain houses, and they were
called *The daughters of penance*. They did not exceed the age of thirteene yeares; they
liued shut vp with chastitie; they swept the Temple, and prepared the meat which was
set before the Idoll, the which his ministers did eat. They did rise at midnight to pray, and
for penance they did cut the tops of their eares with certaine little knives, and layed the
blood vpon their cheeks. They took it for a signe of vnchastitie in these virgins, if the raw
did growe anything in their Guacocs, or came into them, and then they made a curious
search, and if they had offended. Right against these virgins, there was a Conuent of
young men of fifteene yeares of age, whom they called religious men: These carried
certaine flauen crownes like vnto our Monkes, wearing the rest of their haire vpon their
shoulders: they liued in pouertie, chastity, and obedience: they did serue the priests in the
Guaco. There were also lesser or inferior Monkes appointed for manuell seruices, & bafe
offices. They went foure or six together, with so great modestie, as they durst not lift vp
their eyes, especially where there were women: they fought for almes in the towne, and
if they got them not; they went into the fields and tooke what they could find, neither
did any woman hinder them, or offer them any violence; and this libertie was giuen
them, for that they liued poorely and of almes: at midnight they drew blond from their
tresses, and this life they continued during the whole yeare. But let vs now speake of the
priests, and how they were inuironed to the Idoll about midnight; they did assemble at the gates
of the Idoll, where being set in order they did stab themselves into the legges, and rub their
Z ij temples

examples with blood, after which they did sticke the instruments which they had imployed in this effect in certain bags of flum, to the end that all men might see them, and know what sharpe penance they did undergoe for the people. They did fast foure or five daies before they did sacrifice. They observed chastitie with great rigour, as many of them did sit their gentioles for this they would not breake it; and did many other things to make themselves nable. They drinke not any thing that might prouoke them to lust.

XXXV.

They did sacrifice whatsoever they had good or goodly, to their gods; gold, silver, on cows, oxen, and beasts. In Peru they did commonly sacrifice 100 sheepe a month, but of diuers colours; and with different ceremonies. They did sacrifice every day vnto the Sunne the egiptus was thorne, the which they burnt being in a red shirt. They pulled off their eye browes and offered them to the Sun. But there is nothing so horrible as the sacrifices of men, which they vsed in Peru, but more at Mexico. In Peru they did sacrifice children from the age of foure yeres vnto ten, and especially for the prosperitie of the Ingua in his enterprises of warre: and vpon the day of his coronation they did sacrifice two hundred young children. They did also sacrifice a good number of those virgins which they drew out of monasteries, for the Ingua's service. When he was grievously sicke, some man of qualitie, or some foreracer (whereof there were many) telling him that he was past hope of recoverie, they did sacrifice his sonne to Viracoca, or to the Sun, beseeching him that he would rest satisfied therewith.

But the Mexicans did sacrifice any but such as they rooke in war; and to the end they might haue a great number, they did not care to subdue Tlascalla, a great towne nere vnto them. The manner how they sacrificed these wretches was after this sort: First they made them kneele in order before the doore of the Temple, then went the Priest round about them with this Idoll in his hand, and shewing it to euery one, he sayd, Behold thy god; after which he led them to the place where they should be sacrificed: there he appointed six or seuen Priests, pointed for this ministerie, with so strange a behaviour as they seemed rather Devils than men; two of them tooke the wretched sacrificie by the feet, and another by the backe, and a third hold him by the throat; thus they laid him vpon a stone of pyramidal forme; whose point was verie sharpe; then the fourth priest did open his breast with a knife, and pulled out his heart; which he did first shew vnto the sun, offering vnto him his heart and his life; then he cast it at the Idolls feet, then licking the bodie, he rolled downe the staires, whereas they that had taken him in the way did praise him, and made a solemn feast. The neighbour nations did the like in imitation of this sacrifice. In some sacrifices they vsed another kind of sacrifice: They took a slave, and made him to stand vpon a stone, then one of them couered himselfe with his skin, and being thus clothed, he went through the carbane, where as euery man was bound to giue him something, as some comedie, or another tragédie, continued vntill the skin did fling vpon the bodie. Sometimes they did tie a slave vnto a wheele of stone, giuing him a sword and a target: he that would sacrifice him carried the field presently after, with the same stone on his shoulde, and he suffered himselfe to be vanquished, he was instantly sacrificed, but he did giue his life for his free, and held for a great Captaine.

XXXVI.

They did sacrifice and deuote themselves to their gods, but the Devil to take from vs the true religion, and to destroy the true religion of Iesus Christ, fained many yeres before, for to draw men to it, by the names of Priests, for example. That Bacchus was twice borne, and was a god, and another of his kind, to blissh the diuinitie and humanitie of Iesus Christ. This god was borne of a virgin: that Hercules went into the world vnder the Emperour Augustus, with such like inventions, to the end that men should be led to the true religion of our Ladie, nor the descent of Christ into hel, nor the other dignitie which he had.

At the New world he hath not made vse of Poets to this effect, but he himselfe hath impudently counterfeited the sacraments of the church, especially that of the Eucharist. For at Mexico the religious men of the Sunne made certaine cakes with the meale of maize, and the blood of white sheepe, which they did sacrifice that day, giuing a morfell to euery stranger that came at that time to the court, as a sacrament of consideration and remembrance of the Ingua; and they, receiving this present with great honour, protested that they would neither thinke nor do any thing against the Sunne nor against the Ingua; and that this meat should remaine in their bowells as a testimonie of the fidelitie and affection which they had vnto the Sunne and the Ingua. This ceremonie was done twice in the yere, in September and December: and they sent of these morfells to all the Guacocos of the prouince, to haue them distributed to the people.

But that which the Mexicans did was more remarkable. Two daies before the feast of Vitzilpuitzi, the religious men of that Temple made an Idoll of roasted maize, and the seed of an hearbe which they call Blite, mingled with honie, of the bignesse of that of wood which was in the Temple: afterwards they set it vpon a forme, and carried it with great speed through the fields, all the people following in procession, and then they returned to the Temple: after which the virgins came attired in white, with garlands of flowers and certaine peeces of past like vnto great bones, who deliuered them to young men that laid them at the Idolls feet: they termed these peeces, the flesh and bones of Vitzilpuitzi: afterwards appeared the priests and ministers of the Temple in their ornaments, with garlands vpon their heads, and after them their gods and goddeses, who going about these peeces of past, sang and dsuined: and by this meanes they remained consecrated, and were from that time held for the Idolls flesh and bones: afterwards they performed the sacrifices of captiues, and then they strip the Idoll, doing with these peeces as with other consecrated pasts, distributing them to the people, who received them with great reuerence, saying that they did eat the flesh and bones of their God.

The Devil had also counterfeited Confession, which the Papists make a sacrament: for that in Peru there were Priests appointed to heare confessions, in forme of great and lesse penitenciers, and in cases partly common and partly referred to superiors. They heldes great offence to conceale any sin in confession, and if the Confessor discouered it, for the which they vsed enchantments they did beat the penitent grievously vpon the shoulders vntill he had confessed himselfe. They went to confession in adueritie, for that they thought their finnes were the cause of it, and all the people confessed themselves; whereas the Ingua was sicke. The finnes which they confessed were all actual, and especially in murder, theft, adulterie, want of reuerence to the Temples and to festiual daies, ill speech of the Ingua, and their obedience to him. The Ingua confessed his finnes not to any Priests, but vnto the Sunne, to the end he should tell them to Viracoca, then going into running brooke, he spak these words: I haue confessed my sins vnto the Sunne, thou receiue them into the sea where they may remaine for euer drowned.

They did also counterfeite the myserie of the holie Trinitie, for that they did worship three images of the Sunne, naming one Sunne the Father, another the Sonne, and the third the Brother. And in like manner they had three statues of Chuchille, which was the god of Thunder, and they gaue them the same names of Father, Son, and Brother. The people of Saint Croix du Mont haue some causes which hinder marriage, and distribute which is contracted, and some wherein they cannot be separated although

This hath some resemblance to the opinion of the Papists touching the Eucharist.

Of the dispositions of the New world to receive the Gospel.

Christ offered the people of New Spaine, Peru, and other countries, to so strange X XXXVII. by diuers meanes: First, as to make easie the preaching of the Gospel, he sent the world vnder the Emperour Augustus, so he ordained that the Gospel should be preached to the world, when as the Empires of the Ingua at Peru, and the Mexicans of New Spaine were come vnto their height. And to shew how much the large bounds of

An Empire serues for the aduancement of the Gospell, I say first of all, that vnder a great A
 Monarch we do commonly see peace and rest to flourish, and peace doth open the Ports
 of realmes, and the gates of townes for the commerce and communication of people,
 and by consequence for the propagation of the word of God. Peace makes learning, ver-
 tue, ciuilitie, pollicie, good manners, and arts to flourish, fit things to make a man more
 mild, and the Empire of one alone more capable to maintaine this peace: Whereas ma-
 ny Princes breed diuision, from whence grows war, shedding of blood, with the ruine
 of townes and people, and of vertue, faith, and religion. The greatnesse of an Empire
 brings this good with it, for the preaching of the Gospell, for that one language is com-
 mon to many people, and is far dispersed; the Conquerors language extending it selfe B
 with his dominion.

At the New World the Mexican tongue extended it selfe for the space of one thou-
 sand leagues, and that of Culco had no lesse boundes: for the kings of Mexico and Pe-
 ru had no lesse care to extend their language, than their Empires; and although they vied
 in two realmes many languages, and much different among themselves, yet that of
 Mexico is eloquent and rich, and common to all New Spaine, and that of Culco to Pe-
 ru, as among vs the Latine, and among the Turkes, the Sclauonian in Europe, and the
 Arabian in Asia: so as it is sufficient for them that preach the word of God to learne one
 language, to passe through a countie three thousand miles long, whereas otherwise they
 should haue need of fiftene or twentie languages. Besides the foresaid two languages, C
 there are some others which are well vnderstood in many countries, as the Gorgotoque,
 and the Chanoise; but there is none more vniuersall than the Varayque: this is spoken
 in all Paraguay and Brasil, the Icarins vnderstand it, and many other people, almost from
 the strait of Magellan vnto faint Maria.

The third benefit which doth grow thereby, is that the greatnesse of the Empire
 drawes into one place people that are far scattered & dispersed, for you must vnderstand
 that in New Spaine and Peru, the people before they were subdued by them of Mexico
 and Culco, liued like beasts, without commander, without law, and without communi-
 tie; euery man planted himselfe where he thought best, and liued there with his familie: D
 so, they of Florida, some of the Chichimeques, they of Brasil, and the Varays liue at this
 day: they do often change their dwellings, and they remaine one day in one place, and
 the next in another: wherefore if they be not first drawne to liue together, and to stay
 their dwellings, they cannot be instructed in the word of God. The kings of Mexico
 and Culco did first the preachers of Gods word of this trouble, for to the end they
 might the more easily rule the people which they had conquered; they would haue them
 liue together, and to this end they built townes and villages.

Finally, the greatnesse of an Estate and rule makes the people more ciuile, and courts
 do quicken their wits, and ripen their judgements, and the diuersitie of conuersation
 makes a man more pollicie and wise. The people of Peru in the beginning liued in the
 mountains naked, rude, and brutish, eating that which the earth brought forth, yea, and
 mans flesh. Vnder the Empire of the Ingua, they did learne diuers arts, with ciuilitie: E
 they did till and manure the ground, they did sowe and reape their corn and roots: they had
 care of mines of gold, silver, and brasse: they did feed great troupes of cattell, they did
 sheare them, and made cowles and cloth of the wool, wherewith they did not only co-
 uer, but also adorne themselves: and besides this, they did build pallaces and houses of
 importance, and also Temples. They had some forme of iustice and reason, and some
 laws and ordinances, but otherwise alwaies full of brutishnesse, crueltie, confu-
 sion, and disorder: vnder a great Monarch, the people grow ciuile, and practise humani-
 tie; the superiors learne to gouerne, and the subiects to obey and to put in execution
 that which is commanded. Wherefore iustice being brought into the Estates of great
 Princes at America, did serue much to bring in the Gospell, for that it disposed the
 people to mildnesse, which is required in the life of a Christian, and without doubt, ex-
 tended doth plainly shew vs the truth thereof, for that the word of God hath more
 prospered in one day in New Spaine and Peru, than it hath done in many yeeres at Brasil,
 Florida,

A Florida, Chichimeca, the Andes, and other countries, where it hath not found the like
 dispositions: For although they were capable of Christian doctrine, yet would it be
 difficult to maintaine them long in good estate, by reason of their perpetuall rolling vp
 and downe, and the vncertainie of their aboad. It is certaine that the people of Brasil
 doe continue long in the faith, if they be not neere vnto the Portugals: for being far
 from them, they returne sodainly to their vomit, either by a natural inclination, or by the
 suggestion of others. And for this cause the religious men which haue this charge, do
 commonly thinke them fit for baptisme, vnlesse it be in some great sicknesse, or when
 they are verie old; for that then the passions which stirre in them are more quiet, by rea-
 son of the weaknesse of nature, and doe lesse darken reason and vnderstanding; and be-
 sides they keepe them from all dangerous companie. The like may be said of the Chi-
 chimecans, and such like nations.

Of some other dispositions.

The foresaid reasons make easie the conuersion of America, as it were outwardly;
 but let vs speake of more liuely and important dispositions.

The first was the yoke of kings, and the insupportable burthen of the people: For
 the Ingua of Peru, and the king of Mexico did so charge their subiects, as they seemed
 rather beasts than men; and these princes would not be honoured like men, but as Gods.
 We may well guesse at their burthens by that which follows. The new king did not in-
 herit any of his predecessors goods or treasure, but was forced to make a new house, and
 to furnish himselfe with gold, silver, clothes, and such like, without employing the means
 of the deceased, which were all appointed for the entertainment of the Guasco, Chap-
 pell, and house of the king deceased, who was presently put among the number of the
 gods: They erected statues vnto him, and ordained sacrifices, and his house was employed
 from generation to generation in ceremonies; and other things inuented to his honour:
 so as the subiects were continually troubled to gather vp gold, and to dig in the mines,
 to make cloth, and to heape vp treasure; being in no sort eased by that which had beene
 formerly gathered together.

Secondly, the people of Peru, vnder the Ingua, did sometimes build Tambes, and some-
 times they made mountaines euen, and they filled vp valleis to make waies. Those Tam-
 bes were certaine storehouses made in diuers parts of the realme, where they put their
 munition for war, and victuals for the Ingua Court. Among other waies there were
 two made with the hand, which extended aboue one thousand five hundred miles in
 length; the one went by the mountaine, and the other by the plaine. We may iudge of
 the toyle of these waies by the roughnesse of rocks, and the depth of the sand in the
 plaines, and yet they must vanquish these difficulties, with many others, without the vse
 of yron instruments, and without carts or any beasts of burthen, onely with the force of
 their armes. It is much more easie to imagine what a toyle it was to cut great rocks, to
 transport them from one place vnto another, to lodge them and to ioyne them toge-
 ther, without any helpe of yron, than to expresse it in words. It was yet a more insuppor-
 table thing for them of Peru, to giue their children to be sacrificed, for the recouerie and
 for the successe of the Ingua enterprises, and to be forced to burie themselves with their
 deceased king, and the Caciques. When as Guaynacapa died, he had a thousand per-
 sons in his household slaine and buried with him, to serue him in the other world. The
 same king hauing receiued some displeasure of a certaine people which inhabit betwixt
 Quito and Pasto, caused twentie thousand to be slaine, and to be throwne into a lake,
 which for this cause was called Ajaquarcoc, that is to say, a sea of blood.

Thirdly, the reason which moued them of Peru to burie their families and riches with them,
 (as they say) for that in their opinions they did sometimes see them that were dead
 to walke in those places which they had most loued, hauing the same apparell they had
 worn when they were liuing, and being accompanied with their families: by reason whereof per-
 haps they furnished them the best they could.

The

The yoke of the kings of New Spaine was nothing more easie. *Moteczuma*, who was the last, ordained, That none of the common people should looke him in the face vpon paine of death. When he went any journey, both he and his Barons were carried vpon a scaffold at pleasure, and the rest went here and there: He had diuers palaces, some for pleasure, others for mourning and affaires, according to occurrents: he had a great house with diuers partitions, full of beasts, fishes, and fowles of all sorts, and for each fish he had pooles of salt water, and for the others little lakes of fresh waters, with inestimable fruit: so as the greatest part of his estate was employed for his pleasures. For this reason those people were so readie to receiue the law of Iesus Christ, hoping to haue some ease, and they that were most oppressed, much more than the rest.

What shall we say now of the insupportable yoke of the Deuill? We haue formerly discouered of the religion of Mexico, and of the sacrifices which they made of men, whom they slew with so great cruelty, as it seemed the Deuill did not so much seeke the death of these poore wretches, as their torments in death: but I will not forbear to speak of one thing which is remarkable. The Idoll Priests when as they saw a fit occasion, went vnto the king and princes, telling them their gods died for hunger, and that they should remember them: then the Princes sent Embassadors one vnto another, and gaue aduice of the necessitie wherein their gods were, inuited them for this cause to make Ieolus of men to go to battaile, to the end they might haue wherewithall to feed their Idols. So they marched in order to the place appointed, and joynt battaile: hauing no other designe but to take as many prisoners as they could, to be sacrificed. In Mexico the king could not be crowned before he had made some enterprize, and brought backe a great number of sacrifices. The Mexicans were so oppressed by the cruelty of their Deuils, and the multitude of sacrifices which they desired, as they could no more indure it, yet knew they not how to avoid it, if the light of the law of Iesus Christ (full of mildnesse) had not been offered vnto them: the which they receiued with great willingness and joy. They of Mechouacan hearing of the fame of the Gospell, sent Embassadors presently to *Fernand Cortez*, who had some few daies before made himselfe maister of Mexico, intreating him to send them his Law, and maisters to expound it, for that they were resolu'd to quit their owne, as insupportable and wicked. *Ioseph Acosta* reports, That the Spaniards one day standing to behold the tragedie of those cruell sacrifices, a young man whose heart they had pulled out, being cast downe the staires of the Temple, said vnto the Spaniards, My maisters they haue slain me: the which bred a great horror and compassion in them.

Of some dispositions proceeding from the malice of the Deuill.

The Deuill, maugre himselfe, did in some sort dispose these Infidels to the Faith, for that the wisdom of God is so high and profound, as it makes vse of euill for good, and turnes vnto his owne glorie, the meanes wherewith the Deuill seekes to darken his holie name. The greatest mysteries of the Christian faith, are those of the Trinitie, the Incarnation, and the Eucharist, the which doe surpass all light of reason, all humane discouerie, yea, and the intelligence of Angels. But the Deuill, seeking by his pride herein to crosse the maiestie of God, disposed the New world to the truth by his deceipts. The hardest and most austere points of Christian discipline to the fence of man, are, Confession of sins, and Repentance: for that the Deuill exacted of these miserable wretches, greater austerities, than Iesus Christ enioynes to penitent sinners: the which is not strange, for that the Deuill is the tormentor of mankind, and Iesus Christ the physician, yea, the father. The kings of New Spaine, when as they tooke the crowne and possession of the realme, did sacrifice the blood which they drew with great pain, from their armes and eares, to their Idols: for the Deuill sells nothing but for the price of blood. He did also inure those poore people to pouertie, chastitie, obedience, and religion, as we haue formerly shewed: which made that the Councells of the Gospell did not seeme altogether strange vnto them.

of

A

Of some predictions of the future preaching of the Faith.

God meaning to dispose marking for the coming of Iesus Christ, not onely gaue XXXVIII prophets vnto the Iewes, but also Sybilles to the Gentiles; who did so plainly foretell the coming of the eternal Word into the world, his life, and death, as their works did not seeme predictions of future things, but narrations of some euents past: by reason wherof, Christians were forbidden (during the persecutions) to read Sibilles verses: our Saviour hath not left the New world without the like helpe. There was in the Island B of Hispaniola a king, whose name was *Guarionex*, who demanded of one of his Chemes (for so they called their Idolls) what should happen vnto his people after his death; and the Cheme answered, That within few years there should come into that Island men which should be apparelled, and wear long beards, who should destroy the Idolls, with the ancient religion of the countie, and all their ceremonies.

In the countie which confines with the riuer of Plata a little before the coming of the Spaniards, there was one *Origuara*, much esteemed among those nations for his good life, who inspired (as it is likely) by the holy spirit, ran vp and downe those countries, foretelling the coming of certaine men, who should teach a new religion, exhorting euery man to receiue it, and to leaue the pluralitie of wiues: and to the end that this doctrine should be the better imprinted in their mindes, he put it into certaine verses, which they sing at this day.

In Acuzamilan Island neere vnto Iucatan, they found a crosse some two fadoms high, to the which they of the countie had recourse, as to a celestiall and diuine thing, especially in the time of great drought, to obtaine raine for that which they had sown.

In Mechouacan there was a priest of great authoritie and reputation among those people, who foretold them, that within a short time the Truth should be reuealed vnto them: the lead a Christian life (as some reported that had knowne him, and especially one that had serued him) for he did celebrate the Natiuitie of the resurrection of Iesus Christ, and to performe it with more deuotion, he withdrew himselfe some daies before from all dissaires. With these and such like workes, he had purchased vnto himselfe so great a reputation of holinesse, and doctrine, as his words were held for Oracles: so as many which had conuersed with him, hauing heard the preachers of the Gospell, said that in their opinions they did not heare any new thing. And they were no sooner aduertised of the coming and progresse of *Fernand Cortez* in New Spain, but the king of Mechouacan went vnto him with all the flower of his realme, and made himselfe vassall to the Emperour: he required to bee baptised, and obtained from *Cortez* men to instruct his people in the Christian faith.

Moreover all the people of Peru and New Spaine, did firmly beleue the immortalitye of the soule, and the paines of the wicked, and the reward of the good. Some among them (namely them of Chicora) held, That after death the foules did purge themselves in certaine cold places, and past afterwards into pleasing countries, where they did lead a happie and a contented life. They had knowledge (but very obscure, and full of a thousand fables and dreames) of the generall Deluge, and of the Resurrection of the dead; by reason whercof in Peru, when as the Spaniards seeking the treasures which were buried with their Princes, and destroying the tombes, scattered the bones of the dead, they of the countie were much grieved, and intreated them not to offer so great an outrage to the foules of their ancestors, for that they beleued, that in dispersing these bones they should hinder their resurrection.

F of the

Of diuers prodigies, and subiects, which made the entrie of the Gospell easie.

The Spaniards entred Peru and New Spain with good meanes to extend both their XX XIX. Estate, & the kingdome of God: for in New Spain the people of Tlascalla (which was a mightie towne and well peopled) were at war with the Mexicans; and to fortifie them.

themselves, they entred into league with *Fernand Cortez*, who with the ayd of the Tlascallans preuailed in his enterprize, and subdued the realme of Mexico, both to Iesus Christ and to the Emperor, whose captaine he was. But they had seene strange prodigies and accidents, which made way for the passage of the Gospell, with the wonderfull amazement of king *Moteczuma*. In the towne of Cholola they did worship a famous Idoll, which they called *Quetzalcoatl*: he told them plainly that there came strangers to conquer and possesse these realmes. At Tescuco their gods foretold, that many calamities did hang ouer the head of *Moteczuma*, and all the Mexican Empire; the Magicians foretold the same: whereat *Moteczuma* was in such a rage, as he caused them to be put in prison; and for that they escaped easily and fled away, he flew their wives and children, his furie was so great. Then bending all his cogitations how to pacifie the wrath of his gods, he commaunded that they should bring a goodly great stone into the citie, whereon to make his sacrifices: but notwithstanding that there were many assembled to that end, and that they did their best endeouours, yet could they not moue it; and whilst they labored about it, they heard a voice which seemed to come out of the stone, and said vnto them, That they laboured in vaine, for it was impossible to remoue it: which being vnderstood, *Moteczuma* commaunded that they should sacrifice where the stone had staied: they say that at that time there came forth a voice to this purpose: Haue I not told you that you laboured in vaine? and to the end you may be the better assured, I will suffer my selfe to be drawne some little space, then will I stay againe, and you shall not moue me: the which happened, for it fell in the end into a channell of water, and was afterwards found in his first place.

There did also appeare in the firmament a great flame like vnto a Pyramide, which they saw about midnight, then at the Sunne rising, and at noonday; and this spectacle continued a yeare. They did see in the day time running from the East vnto the West, a Comet, like vnto a very long tayle of a beast with three heads: the Temple burnt, and there was no light seen neither within nor without, nor any thunder heard, nor any lightning scene in the aire, and although that multitudes of men ran to quench this fire, yet could they not do it: the fire did seeme to come out of the very walls, and it encreased by casting on water, vntill all was consumed. The lake began sodenly without any apparant cause to boile with such violence, as the neere buildings fell to the ground. There were lamentable voices heard, as of a woman in labour and in great extremitie; which voice spake these words, Alas my children, the time of your ruine is come; whether shall I lead you that you perish not quite? There were diuers monsters scene with two heads, which being carried before the king vanished away. The fishers of the lake tooke a bird in bignesse and colour like vnto a Crane, but of a forme which had neuer bene scene, the which they presented vnto the king, who was much amazed.

This beast had vpon the top of the head a certaine creft like vnto a looking glasse: which *Moteczuma* beholding, he saw the firmament and stars at noone day, whereat he was much astonished; then viewing it againe, he saw armed men come from the East, who fought furiously, and made a strange slaughter of those that encountered them: whereat being much troubled, he assembled his Divines, who were also much distracted and could giue him no reason for it, whereupon the bird vanished away. At the same time there came vnto *Moteczuma* a peasant who was generally held to be an honest true dealing man, who said vnto him, that as he was sowing his field, an Eagle of extraordinary greameffe tooke him vp sodenly and did him no harme, but carried him into a caue, where he heard one say: Most mightie Lord I haue brought thee him, whom thou commaundest me; then without fight of any man he heard a voice which directed it selfe vnto him with these words, Dost thou know that man which lies vpon the ground? and then looking downe he saw a man in a sound sleepe having royall habiliments, flowers, and a perfume which burnt by him, according to the manner of the countrie: The peasant taking courage, answered, Mightie Lord, this seems to be our great king *Moteczuma*: Thou saiest true (replied one) behold how soundly he sleeps, and yet there are strange accidents and great miseries which hang ouer his head; it is now time that he receiue

A punishment for so many offences which he hath committed against God; take this coale of perfume which burns in his hand, and set it to his nose, and thou shalt see that he hath no feeling; and for that the Peasant durst not well approach, the voice said againe vnto him, Fear not any thing, for I am much greater than he, and will keepe thee from harme: then resuming courage, he took the coale and set it to *Moteczuma*'s nose, who had no feeling: Now, said the voice, for that thou seest how soundly he sleeps, go and awake him, and report to him all that hath past. And at the same instant, the Eagle tooke the peasant and raising him vp into the aire, he carried him to the place where he first tooke him.

Besides these things, you must vnderstand, the Mexicans had an opinion that in former times a certaine great Prince, whom they called *Topilchin*, had abandoned them, and that he should returne againe to comfort them. The newes of the coming of *Cortez* vpon the Easterne coast of New Spaine, being come vnto them, they did all beleue that their great freind and lord *Topilchin* was returned according to his promise: They therefore sent fise Embassadors vnto *Cortez*, who were men of qualitie, with many rich presents: these men being come to the Spaniards, told them, That they knew well that their lord *Topilchin* was returned with them, and that his seruant *Moteczuma* had sent them to visit him, and to kisse his hands. *Cortez* making vse of this good occasion, fained himselfe to be *Topilchin*, and accepted the presents and complement: He could not with a fitter meanes and opportunitie to bring the Gospell and the name of Christ into this realme.

C But it seems that God would not haue the truth of his Gospell brought in by any counterfeiting, and that the sins of these people, especially the Idolatrie, the crudelie sacrifices, and the pride of *Moteczuma*, opposed themselves so peaceable a manner of change in these estates: hence grew so many reuolts, bloudie bartailles, ruine of townes, and losse of men of either side.

The Spaniards in like manner entred Peru with as fauourable an occasion. *Gusynacapa*, Ingua of Peru, had two sonnes, *Guscar*, and *Attabalipa* (whom others call *Atabalipa*) of which *Guscar* or *Guscar* was the lawfull succesor to his father, and as such tooke possession of the realme: but his brother made war against him, and tooke him: whereat his subjects being wonderfully discontent, and hauing not power sufficient to deliuer him, they made (according as they had beene accustomed in necessities) a great and solemne sacrifice to *Viracocha*, beseeching him, that seeing they were not able to free the Ingua their lord, he would send men from heauen to set him at libertie. Liuing thus in great hope, they heard news, That certain strangers being come by sea into Peru, had put *Attabalipa* to rout at Cassimilca, and had taken him prisoner: so as imagining that these men (this was *Francis Pizarro* and his companions) were come thither, by reason of the great sacrifice which they had made to *Viracocha*, they called them *Viracoches*; a name which remains vnto the Spaniard to this day, as to men descended from heauen, and sent by God. Wherefore, as God opened a passage for the Spaniards at New Spaine, by the discord of the king of Mexico, and the common weale of Tlascalla, and by so many prodigies, as happened during the raigne of *Moteczuma*: so he made them a way into Peru by the discord which was betwixt the sonnes of *Gusynacapa*, and by the successe of their sacrifices, by reason whereof the Spaniards were held the children of God, and men descended from heauen.

Of the Ordinance or Decree of Pope Alexander the sixth.

Alexander the sixth hearing of the discoverie of so many new lands, and seeing that the Spaniards made shew to haue a will to extend religion, as much as their estates the first of all bound the kings of Spaine and Portugal, to haue a speciall care to the conuersion of those nations; and afterwards, to encourage them all he could to so good and generous a worke, and to take away all occasion of debate betwixt these two kingdoms, he diuided the enterprises of these two nations, by that famous line of partition: and to prevent all kinds of contentions of other princes, who had not bene engaged in the charge nor paine, he found them all in general to enter within the said bounds. But *Alexander* had no more autho-

authoritie to dispose of the New world, nor to give vnto them the kingdomes which had neither beene discovered nor conquered, than his successors haue had sence to arrogate vnto themselves power to depole lawfull kings and princes from their crownes and estates.

What made the conuersion of the Indians easie.

XL.

There was neuer countrie whereas the Gospell did sooner flourish than at the New world, for that whole countries were conuered, and one Frier of the order of Saine Francis baptised in many years about foureteene hundred thousand in New Spain: and some write, That there were ten millions christened in five or six yeares, others say but eight. The souldiers did helpe much in this sodaine progresse of the faith: for that although there be none more vnfit to bring in pietie and religion than souldiers, and that in the waye of armes the voice of ciuile lawes is not heard, and much lesse of the gospell, (which is full of mildnesse) and holinesse, yet the libertie and insolencie of souldiers did much assist the preachers for the ruining of the Idols and Temples in New Spaine, and Peru. Our nature is such, as it cannot subsist without religion, nor without a place where to exercise it; so as if the hath no knowledge of the true religion, she abandons herselfe to superstitions; and if she wants holie places made with the hand, she seeks God vpon mountaines, or in caues. The Indians being wonderfully giuen to the adoration of their gods, both by nature and custome, remaining now without Idols, and without Guacoes, for that the furie of souldiers and the violence of warre had broken downe and ruined all; they went easly to Churches, and did accommodate themselves to the religion whereunto they were inuited by Christian preachers, and the rather for that it was much more mild than their old Idolatrie: for as a streame finding the ordinarie passage stoppt, turns easly his course to that place whereas they haue made a new channell: so man not able to performe his accustomed voyage, makes one like to it, or that approacheth neerer: and the Indians hauing no more their Idols, nor their accustomed places of deuotion, did easly change the way of their losse to that of health, idolatrie to pietie, and the bondage of Sathan to the seruice of God. Some politicians dispute, Whether he that makes new conquests should make such changes sodainly, as the Spaniards did at Peru and Mexico: Or, Whether he should doe it by degrees, like vnto the Roman Emperors? But this question may be easly resolved, for that whereas a conquest is made with a great aduantage of fortune, by meanes whereof they surmount all difficulties, in that case they may take away all lets at one instant; or else when they haue not forces sufficient, and whereas they want power, they must vse art, and win that by opportunitie and time which they could not effect by force. The Turke, for that he executes his enterprises with great aduantage, hauing once obtained a victorie, and made himselfe maister of a towne or realme, he sodainly giues it what forme he pleaseth, and rootes out the princes and men that are great either by pretogative of blood, or by greatnesse of authoritie; he deprives the people both of goods and libertie, conuersts townes into villages, palaces into cottages, Churches into Mosques or stables; and to be short, he makes himselfe absolute maister of their goods and persons. But Christian princes, for that they doe not execute their enterprises with so great forces, follow another course, which requires more time and policie. But returning from whence we parted, the Indians hauing neither Idols nor temples whereunto they should tie in their necessities, according to their custome, they came easly to the Christian churches which they had before their eyes, and without any great difficultie embraced the faith which was preached vnto them. The Guacoes of Peru were esteemed by the furie of the souldiers, and rage of warre; and the most famous of these Guacoes were those of Pacacama, foure leagues from the towne of Kings, whereas the deuill made a sanctuery to that which was demanded of him. There was another at Cusco, whereas they say (as in a Pantheon) all the gods of the prouinces and nations conquered by the Incas, as hostages of their fidelitie: There was in the same towne about foure hundred other Guacoes. But in New Spaine, the ruine of Idols, and of their houses, proceeded not so much from the custome of warre (whose proprietie is to wast and destroy)

A sroy) as from the wisdome and zeale of *Fernand Cortez* which conquered it, who commanded his Captaines and Lieutenants to ruine all the Idols and Temples: so as the Indians not able to go where they had beene accustomed to doe euill, were easly drawn to those places where they might doe good.

Of hindrances in the conuersion of the Indians.

HAuing shewed the meanes whereby our Lord aduanced the faith and preaching of his word in America, it is fit to speake something of that which was opposit to this B aduancement. One thing which did much hinder this spirituall plantation at the New World, was the bad opinion which they had in the beginning of the capacite of those people, for that partly, for their pouertie they were contemned, and partly for their rudenesse of behauiour they were ranked with beasts of burthen, especially by the souldiers, who were accustomed to do all things with violence, and to make vse of all pretexts (be they neuer so vaine, weak, and impertinent) yea there were some amongst them which had no desire to see the Indians conuered, least they should be bound to intreat them more mildly after they had receiued baptism. But the greatest let of their conuersion proceeded from the Spaniards themselves, first from their Priests and Friers, who did not seeke to win them by doctrine and good example, as Christ and his Apostles had taught them, being dissolute themselves in their liues and conuersation, and giues to all vices and disorders: neither did they instruct them in the faith, or take knowledge of their liues, but forced them to be baptised, as some of their owne orders and profession haue written, to their shame and reproach: whose manner of preaching was to send forth a proclamation enioining all men vpon paine of confiscation of life, lands, libertie, goods and all, to acknowledge God, the Pope, and the King of Spaine, of whom they had neuer heard. These with many other detestable courses of churchmen, made a Franciscan Frier to exclaime openly, That there was neither Priest, Monk, nor Bishop good at the Indies, whose ends were onely gaine. The second let was; by reason of the auarice of commanders, and crueltie of the souldiers, which were most horrible and inhumane, whereof many of their owne nation haue written large treatises: these courses caused the Indians to conceaue an implacable hatred against the faith, being incensed at the Spaniards cruelties. It seemed that this manner of proceeding against these miserable wretches was iustificable, by reason of the detestable vices and sinnes wherein they were plunged, especially for their Sodomic, Idolatrie, and eating of men: and the matter proceeded so far, as for the said three vices the Caribes or Canibals were giuen for slaves; and this edict was extended (by the aduice of Frier *Thomas of Ortis* and some others) to all the rest; in the time of the Emperor *Charles* the first in the yeare 1523, by reason whereof the insolent souldiers (who naturally haue no measure) seeing themselves fauoured by the countenance of their Superiours, and counselled therein by religious persons, grew more outrageous, and burst forth like a furious torrent which swells with a sodain raine and snow. Countenance is by nature vnreasonable and cruell, neither humane, nor diuine lawes can restrain it, no nor the feare of death, nor of Hell it selfe: What shall the then doxe souldiers, to whose discretion they haue abandoned a feeble multitude? and what shall they do in those places whereas being far from their Prince, they see themselves masters of all things? To conclude, the countrie was in a manner vnpeopled by the barbarous and butcherly crueltie of the Spaniards, and by the seruile workes whereunto they forced them, for many poore Indians perished in the mines of Cibao, in the fishing for pearls at Cubaqua, and Tiraqui, and in the seeking of Emeralds at Saint Martha; and in other workes of the countrie. Many found these things vnworthie, and it was a great burthen of conscience to some men of vnderstanding, so as some did write to the Emperour *Charles* touching this subject, and others being come to court did treat with him and his counsell of the Indies.

The Emperour who was both iudicious and religious, hearing of these intemperate and disorders in his Estates, and how badly they intreated them of the countrie, de-

A a

firing

ing to remedie it, and to discharge his conscience, he propounded the matter in coun- A
sell, where three assisted men that were excellent in pietie and doctrine; by whose aduice
he decreed in the year 1543, that no man should presume to employ any Indians in their
mines, to fish for pearle, nor to beare any burthens, but in cases of necessitie, and then
they should pay them for their paines: that the tributes which the Indians were to pay
vnto Spaniards should be taxed, and that all they of the countrie which should be freed
by the death of Spaniards, who were then their Maisters, should remaine immediatly
subiect to the crowne of Spaine, and that neither Bishops, Conuents, nor Hospitalls
should haue any Vassalls in America: with these ordinances and some others, the busi-
nesse was reduced vnto those termes, as the Spaniards were all without Vassalls, which
was the cause of a war which followed, and of an open rebellion, whereof Pizarro was
the head, in which the rebells slew *Blasco Nunez de Vela*, Viceroy of Peru: to pacifie
these disorders, the Emperour sent the Licentiat *Gasca* to Peru, a man very circumspect
and wise, who surmounted force by his dexteritie, and furie by policie; he defeated the
rebells in battaile, and pacified all things by the taking and death of Pizarro: since which
time, matters of religion and gouernment haue been better mannaged.

¶ Of the diuersitie of barbarous people, and of the manner of
preaching the Gospel.

XLI. WRITERS giue the name of barbarous to people whose manners stray from reason, C
and from the common kind of liuing; if this definition were true, the name of
barbarous (touching the second part) would agree more sily to the Grecians and La-
tines, than to other nations: for if we shall call that manner of liuing common which
most men lead, and if we shall call them barbarous which stray from it, (seeing that the
Grecians and Latines haue liued otherwise than the rest, they should rather be termed
barbarous: Let vs therefore say that they are to be held barbarous, whose manners and
customs stray extraordinarily from perfect reason, which happens either by fiercenesse
of courage, by ignorance, or by rudenesse of manners: Fiercenesse is a kind of brutish-
nesse which hath foure degrees: the first, is of them that haue not any knowledge of Di-
uinitie, or religion; and these are of many sorts, for that some liue without any God,
and yet giue themselves to inchaunments and forceries; and it is a strange thing, that
they, which neither know a God in heauen, nor vpon earth, yet submit themselves to
forcesters and inchauners: wherein they are like vnto certaine horses, which being ter-
rified by nature, not fearing either yron or fire, will yet be restie, and start at the noife of a
cart or some such like thing: such are the Chichimeques, and they of Brasill: the second
sort is of those which haue some forme of religion, or rather superstition, but without
any ground or probabilitie, being more like to fables and dreames than to discourses of
reason: such were the people of Hispaniola, and such are at this day the inhabitants of
the Islands of Salomon; the third, is of those which worship diuers gods and idolls, and
yet doe not acknowledge one Soueraigne Prince and Creator: the fourth, is of those
which hold the Creator of the world to be the Soueraigne, but not the onely God as
they of Cusco do. They of the first and second kind haue no forme of ceremonies, or else
they haue them without solemnitie: they of the third and fourth haue them lawful, firme
and solemn, as the Mexicans, and they of Cusco.

The second degree of brutishnesse consists in feeding, and this is after two sorts: some
of them, that they lay low, nor haue any care of tillage, but eat, like beasts, that
the earth doth produce of it selfe. And for that our complexion is according vnto
our nature, it follows of necessitie, that a savage breeding will haue a savage nature
and customs. Others are brutish, for that they feed vpon mans flesh, either indifferent-
ly, or onely of their enemies taken in war, as they of Popayan and of Mexico: In the
countrie of Popayan they did plant before their houses the heads of such as they had
slayned vpon great canes, for a shew of their crueltie and horrible brutishnesse: in
some places hauing eaten their enemies, they did fill their skins with ashes, and did hang
them

A them on their walls: they did trim their faces with wax, putting a lance or an arrow
in their hands, which was a horrible spectacle, and this was their rapistrie. In some places
they perswaded themselves that they would chase the Spaniards out of the countrie
through hunger; but victualls not onely failing the Spaniards, but themselves by this
neglect of eating of mans flesh hath bene brought in of late years among them of
America, where it had neuer bene. But there is nothing more prodigious than that of
the valley of Not, vpon the confines of Popayan: The Caciques of those places went
into their enemies countrie to hunt for women, bringing away as many as they could;
they kept them onely to haue children, whom they deuoured being twelue or thirteene
years old. In the valley of Guaca they married their prisoners to their kinfolmen,
and the end they might haue children to eat, and afterwards they did eat their slaues when
they were no more able to ingender.

The third degree of brutishnesse consists in nakednesse, which is of many kinds. For
some haue no feeling of honestie (which was the first reason which moued Adam to
cover himselfe) do not hide their priuie parts; others couer them in some sort, but for the
rest they go naked; others are clothed onely from the nauell vnto the knees. Some
although they shew their nakednesse in all or in part (for that they vse not any garments)
yet they paint their bodies of diuers colours to make themselves faire or terrible, and
they carrie stones of little or no value, fastened to their lips, nose, and eares, as they of
C. Brasill doe. Some are altogether couered, but with the skins of wild beafts or of Seales;
the which notwithstanding doth not argue so much brutishnesse as rudenesse of the
people.

The fourth sort consists in the habitation, which is diuers. The most barbarous haue
no other dwelling but in caues or hollow trees, and in that which defends them from
the wind, cold, and raine, without any industrie. They passe the day whereas they find
meat, and sleepe whereas night surpriseth them. They haue a certaine kind of policie;
for hauing no certaine aboad touching the place, yet haue they it settled concerning the
forme; so liue the Tartarians vpon their chariots couered with felt, and the Arabians
in their Adiuaires: the first attaine to the perfection of policie, who not onely haue cer-
taine aboads touching the forme, but also for the place; and the others liue in townes,
villages, or houses disperfed. Betwixt these three kinds of habitation, there is this dif-
ference; that the first seeke their food whereas necessitie and occasion doth lead them;
the second lead cammels with them, or some other kind of beast, of whom their liues
depend, who change their aboad according to the commoditie of pastures which they
seeke; the last being stayed touching their aboad in one place, draw all their victualls
and necessarie commodities thither. Among the Arabians, some liue in the open field
in their Adiuaires, and these retaine the name of Arabians: the others liue in townes,
and they are called Moores. In like manner some Tartarians liue in fields, and others in
townes, as they of Zaquetay; and yet both the Arabians and Tartarians which campe

E after this manner, hold themselves more noble than the rest. The fifth sort of brutish-
nesse consists in gouernement. For some being altogether barbarous, liue without any
lawes or commander, either in peace or warre; some others haue neither lawes nor com-
manders in time of peace, but onely on occasions of warre: others haue in peace and
warre, and these gouerne themselves in forme of a common-weale, as Tlafcalla, and
Chiololla; or by way of monarchie, which comes by election, as it did in New Spain;
or by succession, as in Peru: They are barbarous which gouerne themselves according
to the first sorts. And vndoubtedly we must confesse that at the New world the first
inhabitants were in the beginning without any forme of gouernment, but by little and
little some men more capable than the rest, perswaded their countreimen to liue to-
gether, and to build themselves lodgings, first of the bows of trees, then of great wood, and
in the end of earth and stone. From this mutual communication grew lawes, & arts, which
are the ornaments of mans life. Touching nourishment, the first art was breeding of cat-
tles, the which was much vsed and esteemed in Peru, whereas they made great account of
the increase of their troupes: They did not sacrifice any female beafts, neither did they
kill

them, or take them in their hunting: and if they found any cattell that were scab. A
or sicke, they buried them quick, lest they should infect the rest. The art of spin-
ning, weaving, and making of cloth to cloath and adorne themselves withall, was as it
were a branch springing from the art of gouerning their troupes. Tillage came after-
wards, and first that which bath cause of come, then they busied themselves about fruit
and trees. In the end followed architecture and the building of houses, first of wood, then
of earth, and last of all, of stone and marble, whereof they of Cacao and Mexico had
knowledge, but the last more than the first: and although both the one and the other
made excellent buildings both for greatnesse and state, yete build they not make any
vaile: notwithstanding they had wit and art sufficient to make admirable bridges, of a
verie weake substance, to passe ouer great and deepe rivers, for they make them of a
 certaine kind of reed, which they call Totoras, and also of straw, the which (for that it is
light) sinkes, not: they cast vpon these bridges much reed and such like matter, and fast-
ned them so either side of the river, both men and cattell passe ouer safely. There is one
of these bridges, being three hundred foot long, vpon the channell of the Lake of Cu-
cuyrd, which is without bottome. Trafficke is a companion to husbandrie, by meanes
whereof we doe interchange our commodities one with another: the greatest traf-
ficke, which they haue discovered at the New world hath bene that of Salt, Cacao, and
Synamon: other arts and industries speeing vp afterwards by degrees. The last are lea-
ning and sciences, especially speculative, as the fruits of peace, science, idleness, and
abundance: and therefore humane sciences flourish in peaceable townes, and among
men which liue at their ease; and the speculative are refined in religious houses
and cloisters: for these require attention, and are nothing pleasing nor popular, as eloquence,
poetrie, and such like.

Herby we may comprehend that barbarousnesse carries with it an incapacie of ce-
lestiall things, for two reasons, the first to say, by reason of brutishnesse and stupiditie:
The first reigned in Chichimeque, Brasil, and among the Caribes; and the latter in the
Islands of Barlouent and Salomon, in the valles of Peru and other places: wherefore
religion is not to be gouerned after one manner in all places. They must proceed with
the Canniballs and others which denioure mans flesh indifferently, as with the enemies
of mankind, or madmen; they must first make them capable of reason and humanitie,
and then instruct them in vertue, and the Christian faith. Neither is it impertinent to
use force and armes, to the end that they might know that they are men, and then
teach them the Gospell. Aristotle saith, That such men should be taken as beasts, and
tamed by force. The neighbours to these people are those which abstaine from mans
flesh, but yet gonaked without any shame, for that there is not any thing that doth more
distinguish a man from a beast than his shamefastnesse, for the which Adam couered him-
selfe, first with fig leaues, and then clothed himselfe with skins. Yet it is not lawfull to
use violence, and the sword to these men; but rather a restraint, neither must they teach
them Christian doctrine, before they learne bashfulness and honestie. Others haue no
need of force or violence to retire them from barbarisme, but rather conduct and direc-
tion; for that they are not wild and brutish like vnto Wolves and Tigres, but simple
and dull like vnto sheepe, and beasts of burthen, and these haue more need of threats,
than of blowes, and of feare, than of force, for that fawnings and flatteries preuaile
little with them. But for that neither the one nor the other perseuer in the faith once
received vnder their natural prince, and for that both Princes and subiects returne calli-
ng idolatrie: it is needfull that they be vnder the gouernement of a Christian Prince,
which may haue a care to maintaine both the people and their lords in their duties
and in the faith: for that as God giuing the forme to naturall things, doth presently fur-
nish them with those things which shall follow; so giuing vnto his deputies and mini-
sters the precept to teach the truth to euerie creature, he doth also giue them the authori-
tie to use fit meanes to make ease the conversion and preservation of such as are con-
uered. And herein I find no cause of doubt or scruple, so as they exclude ambition and
crueltie from this care.

The

A The conuersion of the New World began by armes and victories, and was followed
by preaching; and now it must be continued, in adding vnto the preaching the authori-
tie of magistrats and gouernment. The Apostles did purchase authoritie to the Gos-
pell by the greatnesse of miracles, with the which they did confound the arrogance of
the Gentiles, and the haughtinesse of the Gentiles, for that the Iewes were accustomed to see
prodiges, and things about the course of heaven, and the force of nature. Contrari-
wise the Grecians were put vp with an opinion of their learning and wildome: and
therefore for that it was not fit for the messengers of Iesus Christ to encounter them
with affected words and eloquent discourses, or that the worlds conuersion should be
attributed to humane reason and pollicie; the Apostles did conuict them by miracles,
and workes impossible to the force of man, by meanes whereof they made them see, That
the God which they preached was about Nature, and by consequence much about their
wildome: and yet they found some difficultie to beleue that Iesus Christ crucified and
dead, was he by whose vertue they did all those miracles: for that the croffe was a scan-
dal vnto the Iewes, and held as a folly by the Grecians. But at the New World, for that
there were neither Iewes which might remember *Moses*, and the miracles which God
had done by his meanes, nor Grecians who esteemed not any thing but what was about
their knowledge; being inhabited by people that were either brutish or dull, there was
not any need of miracles, but of humane helpe, with the which these people might be
brought to the use of reason; for that hauing attained therunto, they did speedily im-
brace the truth, the which was simply propounded vnto them by their preachers, or by
the maisters of the Christian doctrine; for that the light of the Gospell is so sweet and
pleasing of itselfe, and the yoke of Iesus Christ so light, as it hath no need of miracles to
make men desire it: neither was there euer countrey whereas the gospell was more speedi-
ly receiued at the first, than at the New World, of which I do adu conuersion there were
many reasons; but the chiefe was the bad estate wherein the inhabitants were, and the
bounty of the law of God. Their Idolatrie was not full of sensuality, as that of the
Gentiles; or of prosperitie, and worldly delights, like vnto the law of *Mahomet*, which
might draw and flatter them: and on the other side they fought no miracles like the
Iewes, or the subtiltie of Philosophie as the Grecians, who contemned all the world; but
they were simple without arrogancie or presumption, and they did not much loue their
Idolls whose seruice was painefull, nor their sacrifices which cost them their blood and
liues; and for this cause they were ready to receiue a better law: and there cannot be a
better than that which Iesus Christ hath giuen vs. Moreover the duller they were of vnder-
standing, the more they admired heauen, and heavenly things, and whatsoeuer was
propounded vnto them of the greatnesse, power, and maiestie of God, and of the mer-
cie, sweetnesse, and passion of Iesus Christ; for that the more things did passe their ca-
pacitie and vnderstanding, the more they seemed answerable to the greatnesse of God,
and the infinite bounty of Iesus Christ.

¶ Of the difficulties they found in the conuersion of the Americans.

VVE must not thinke that the conuersion of the New World past without many
great difficulties, and that these roses had no thorns: the first difficultie was the
ignorance of the tongue, for that there being not any thing which requires a greater fa-
cilitie to expresse the conception, and the grace of a language, than the mysteries of our
holie faith. The preaching was begun in America by men which vnderstood not their
auditors language, neither was vnderstood by them; wherefore they were constrained to
use certaine interpreters or truchmen, who vnderstanding not well what was said vnto
them, deliuered one thing for another, and in stead of Catholike doctrine sowed errors
among the assistants; so as it was a great trouble for the one to deliuer their concepi-
ons, and to heare others by a third person, in all which things they lost much time. This
trouble increased by another which was of no lesse importance, for that in their pro-
posals they used no certaine and common forme: there being no superiour who had
the

A a iij

XLII.

the care & authoritie to prescribe an order for so many things, and in such different countries. Another difficulty grew by the want of workemen fit for such an important enterprise as the conversion of America; there was a great harvest and few labourers, and they which imployed themselves vnderstood not, nor were vnderstood; from these two difficulties proceeded diuers defects in the conversion of the Indians; the one was ignorance, in which the *Mechouacans* remained Christians, and their little vnderstanding of matters necessarie to saluations for that being baptised without instruction, they had scarce any notion of a Christian, but baptism, and they required it rather to content their *Caciques*, or the Spaniards, and to do that which they saw others do, than for any firme resolution. The first religious men which imployed themselves, took for their first resolution to multiply the number of the faithfull, as they cared for no more, being partly moued therunto by the consolation which the conversion of soules brings with it, and partly for the impossibilitie there was to attend the instruction of so many persons, so as they held it better to leave them without catechising, than without baptism. We read that of those twelve *Friers* of the order of *S. Francis* there was not any one which had baptised at the least one hundred thousand persons in New Spaine, and one of them baptised four hundred thousand; how then could they instruct to great a multitude of men that were rude and savage, in the doctrine of Iesus Christ, especially, they but yet learning the Mexican tongue. But the worst of all is that in so final a number of teachers, there were & are yet many which haue bin imployed in so great a ministration, which are ignorant, careless, and of a bad life. In the prouince of Paraguay in the yeare 1587, there was a priest who had charge of a very great countie, this man vied no other diligence towards them that came to be baptised, but only asked them if they would haue the name of *Peter*, or *John*; and at this day in New Spaine, where there are bishops and a great number of religious men, one *Cure* hath vnder his charge fiftie, yea leuente villages, and fiftie miles in circuit or more. The people therefore continued as much inclined to their ancient superstition and idolatrie as before, for that hauing no knowledge of diuine things, they did not eleuate their spirits more than ordinarie, and liued with many wives or concubines, the other defect which they found in the conversion of the Indians was, for that these first Fathers baptised these Indians not one by one, but by hundreds and thousands; it fell out therefore that of many which ran to baptism, some were in doubt whether they were baptised or not; moreover, euery one of them hauing about one wife some of them continued after baptism in their first estate: but the greatest part of them knew not what they should retaine or leaue, and the preachers themselves were also in doubt.

Of the Remedies of the foresaid defects.

LXIII. The first which imployed himselfe to amend and better the condition of the New Christians at America, was the Marquis of Vallee; for besides the good order which he did set in New Spaine for matters of ciuile gouernment, he procured also in the year 1524 the celebration of a prouinciall Synode, at the which there assisted fise Priests, nineteen Monkes or Friers, and six Lay men, of the which the said Marquis (who was of the house of *Cortez*) was one, and Friar *Martin* of Valencia the Popes Vicar: there they made cleere the point of the Indians marriages, that is to say, with which wife they should remaine, and it was resolved, that for as much as the forme of their contract of marriage was not knowne, nor what stile they followed in that case, they should for that time retaine which of them they would, and dismisle the rest. But there was not any one which did more assist the zeale of the New Christians in New Spaine, than *Pasco* of *Quito*; the first Bishop of *Mechouacan*, who made very good ordinances, & put in practise the most necessarie instructions, both concerning the spiritual and temporall affaires of the Indians, whose memorie doth liue vnto this day; so as there is not any thing which those people do prach with more affection, than the vertues of that Prelat: he tooke away the pluralitie of wives, abolished idolatrie and superstition, and procured that such as had yet receiued baptism should be first catechised & instructed; and he did wonderfully increas

A increase the seruice of God, the holiness of Churches, and the reuerence vnto sacred things; He obtained this, in procuring to haue the Churches well built, to haue good reuerence, & to be furnished of all that was necessarie for the celebration of diuine seruice, and the administration of the sacraments. But he made himselfe chiefly famous for his charities towards the poore and needie; whereof there were worthie makes to be seene throughout the realm of *Mechouacan*; for that there is not any borough or village how liue so poore soeuer, where there is not a lodging for pilgrims, and an hospitall for diseased persons. And for the entertainment of those places which haue no certaine reuerence, there are certaine companies appointed, whose charge is to provide and serue the sick, and to giue them all things that shall be necessarie. Euen one of these (which are appointed by countries) serues his weekes. The time of the countie being come, all go forth with their families, and carrie whatsoeuer the sick shall need for that weeke. Euen the countie hath a man into whose hands they deliuer whatsoeuer hath bene prepared for the sick, as wine, meat, napkins, vessell, and such like, and he disposeth of all according to the necessitie of the diseased. He that hath the charge of all, doth aduertise them seuen daies before, of the weeke they are to serue. In this time the men of the countie make great provision of wood, both great and small, the which they seeke six miles or more, and in the meane time their wives make provision of corne and other necessaries. The time being come, euenie man brings vnto the Hospitall what he hath prepared, some wood, some bread, some flesh; and there are some which do gouern the sick persons; for as soone as they vnderstand that any one is fallen sicke, they of the company go presently vnto him, they carrie him to the Church to be confest, and from thence vnto the Hospitall, where he is attended day and night with great care, and a charitable worthe of commendation: these customes brought in by this Bishop continue vnto this day. They haue no lesse care of the seruice of God, and the ornament of Churches; for they thinke if all should go to ruine, yet should they rather abandon the Church: They imploy much money to buy images, and ornaments for the Altar, and although they be poore, and lead a miserable and painefull life, yet in that which concerns the ornament of sacred places, and the celebration of feasts, they spare not their goods, nor labours; and they deprime themselves of necessarie things, to the end that the seruice of God may be performed worthily, and with maiestie. They vnturnish their houses of their moucables, to furnish the Church, and they spare bread out of their owne mouthes (as a man would say) to feed their curat, and when as money failes them, they supplie that want with their labour. That which was verie important also to repaire those defects, which happened in the first conversion of the Indians, was the multitude of religious men, and the foundation of conuents, of the orders of *S. Francis*, *S. Dominicke*, *S. Augustine*, and *de la Merced*, to whom they haue since added the Iesuits, and some Carmelites, the Cathedrall and Collegiall Churches, Vniuersities, Seminaries, prouinciall Councells, Catechismes printed, and visitations made by the Bishop.

An estimate of all that the king of Spaine receiues out of all his countries.

BEFORE we enter into this discourse, it shall be fit to instruct the Reader touching the money or coyne wherewith the Spaniards make their accounts. You must therefore vnderstand that alwaies in Spaine they account by *Maraueidis*, or duckats, and not in any other kind of money, notwithstanding that they haue crossadoes, pistolls, and royalls both of eight and foure, but their most viual accounting is by *Maraueidis*, which kind of coyne being verie small, doth easily amount to millions, and yet the sum is of no great value: as for example, a million of *Maraueidis*, or *Quento* (as the Spaniards call it) worth two thousand six hundred leuente three duckats, eight royalls, twentie and six *Maraueidis*. Foure and thirte *Maraueidis* make a royall or six pence, eleuen royalls make a ducat, and twelue a French crowne.